

Arabic Today

Second Edition

Arabic Today

A student, business and professional course in
spoken and written Arabic

Second Edition

John Mace

EDINBURGH UNIVERSITY PRESS

© John Mace, 1996, 2008

Edinburgh University Press Ltd
22 George Square, Edinburgh

First published in 1996
This edition 2008

Typeset by the author in Palatino, Times and Arial
and in Traditional Arabic, Giza and Ruq'a,
and printed and bound in Great Britain by
CPI Antony Rowe, Chippenham, Wilts

A CIP record for this book is available from the British Library

ISBN 978 0 7846 3557 3 (hardback)
ISBN 978 0 7846 3558 0 (paperback)

The right of John Mace to be identified as the author of this work
has been asserted in accordance with the Copyright, Designs
and Patents Act 1988.

The audio material in the CD accompanying this book is also available to
download from our website at
www.euppublishing.com/page/ArabicToday/audio

Contents

Introduction	vii
Pronunciation	ix
Part I: Spoken Arabic	
Lesson 1 Greetings	3
Professions and countries. Gender and Number. Pronouns. to beq Adjectives.	
Lesson 2 At the Airport	11
Travel. Gender of nouns. Article. Adjectives. Prepositions. Possessives. to haveq	
Lesson 3 In the Hotel	19
Construct. Triliteral verb. Past tense of sound and initial- w verbs. Sound nouns. Transition vowel.	
Lesson 4 In Town	29
Demonstratives. Object pronouns. Indirect Statement. Numbers 0. 10. Negative. Adverbs.	
Lesson 5 In the Office	39
Administration. Present tense and imperative of sound and initial- w verbs. Numbers 11. 199. Interrogatives. Indirect questions. Regional variations.	
Lesson 6 A Visit to Friends	49
Egyptian speech. House and family. Past tense of hollow verbs. Clauses of circumstance. Broken plural. Continuous past tense. Regional variations.	
Lesson 7 On the Telephone	61
Present tense and imperative of hollow verbs. may /can/must/mightq Numbers above 199. Fractions and percentage. Time. Days of the week. Indirect Command. Regional variations.	
Lesson 8 Teaching and Training	71
Doubled and final-weak verbs. Auxiliary verbs. Relative clauses. Interrogatives. some /same/allq Ordinal numbers. Activities, instruments and places. Regional variations.	
Lesson 9 In the Restaurant	83
Food and drink. Collective nouns. Verbs of Form II. Comparison of adjectives and adverbs. Indefinite pronouns.	
Lesson 10 A New Project	93
Meetings. Participles. Verbal nouns. Future tense. Calendar.	
Lesson 11 Visit to a Factory	103
Levantine speech. Industry and economy. Verbs of Forms III and IV. Pluperfect tense. Conditional and concessive sentences. Regional variations. Adverbs. Participial verb.	

vi	ARABIC TODAY	
Lesson 12	At the Surgery Body and health. Verbs of Forms V and VI. Absolute object. Special adjectives. Quadriliteral verb. Expressions of circumstance. Age. Regional variations.	117
Lesson 13	A Visit to the Village Geography and climate. Verbs of Forms VII and VIII. Abstract nouns. Reflexive. Passive. Diminutives.	129
Lesson 14	In the Market Shopping. Clothes. Verbs of Forms IX and X.	141
Lesson 15	The News Politics and international relations. Broadcasting. Written forms. Recapitulation of verb, Forms I to X.	149
Part II: Written Arabic		
Lesson 16	Reading and Writing. Alphabet. Article. Sound plural and dual endings. Doubled letters.	159
Lesson 17	Reading and Writing. Alphabet.	169
Lesson 18	Reading and Writing. Alphabet. Arabic transcription. Pointing.	177
Lesson 19	Insurance Full and short pronunciation. Nouns and adjectives. Possessive suffixes. Prepositions. Pronoun suffixes.	187
Lesson 20	Transport and Communications Subject pronouns. Verbs with sound final root letter. Dictionary.	197
Lesson 21	Personnel Management Object pronouns. Complements. Negatives. Interrogatives. Sentence structure. Future.	205
Lesson 22	Petroleum Demonstratives. Clauses of purpose. Auxiliary verbs. Comparison of adjectives and adverbs.	215
Lesson 23	From the Newspapers Relative pronouns. Final-weak verbs. Dictionary.	223
Lesson 24	Correspondence <i>ruqʿa</i> script. Numbers. Time. Calendar. Anomalous nouns and adjectives.	235
Lesson 25	The Transfer of Technology Auxiliaries with the present tense. Doubly weak verbs.	249
Lesson 26	The United Nations Expressions with the jussive. Conditional sentences. Passive. Improper agreement. Equivalent spoken and written forms.	257
	Key to exercises	269
	Index of words	281
	Arabic, Part I	281
	English, Parts I and II	309
	Arabic, Part II	339
	Grammar index	351

Introduction

You can learn Arabic.

This course is designed to help people visiting the Arab world – whether for work, study or other reasons – who wish to communicate at first hand with the people and the institutions of the region. It is written in a manner suitable either for self-tuition or for use in a classroom.

One problem facing teachers and students of Arabic is the divergence between the written language and the many regional forms of speech. Teachers and students feel forced to make a choice, and this sometimes highlights or even exaggerates this divergence.

This course attempts to cut through the dilemma. **Part I** offers, in a simple and reliable Roman-letter transcription, a form of educated spoken Arabic which leads without strain to the written language explained in **Part II**. Here the Arabic letters are learned in groups, the most useful ones first, while the written language is presented not as a contrast but as a complement to the spoken.


Grammatical terms, kept to a minimum, are explained in the text.

Part I is based on the speech of the Levant, Egypt and the Arabian Peninsula which is also widely understood from Morocco to Oman. The reasons for this choice lie in the cultural, political and economic importance of the region. Not only will this form of speech enable you to understand and be understood in the Arab Middle East, among rich and poor alike, as well as among educated people in North-west Africa, but it also serves as a base on which the bridge to standard written Arabic is easily built.

At the same time, you will find in Part I important regional speech variations.

You may choose to stop at the end of Part I, if you have no time, or no need, for reading and writing. Or you may, after a time if not immediately, go on to Part II, building on what you learned in Part I.

This course rejects the premise that Arabic is very difficult, remote or mysterious, accessible only to specialists. It recognises the need for our better understanding of the Arabs, and offers some help in achieving it. True, it is possible to live and work in an Arab country with no knowledge of the language. But it is rather like listening to Bach with your head under a pillow. You always feel you are missing something.

For the pronunciation, you should make full use of the compact disc accompanying this book. Some Arabic sounds are not easy, and, while they are described in the following chapter, the best result is achieved by hearing a native produce the real thing. Everything marked  is recorded on the disc.

References in the lessons and indexes indicate: lesson no./paragraph no.

I take this opportunity to express my gratitude to Dr Julia Bray of the University of Paris VIII for many valuable suggestions and corrections made for an earlier edition, and to Professor Carole Hillenbrand of the University of Edinburgh for her support and encouragement in this venture. I am likewise indebted to Marilyn Moore for her tireless help in checking the text of both editions, and to

Jihad Haddad for checking the Arabic text. My thanks also go to Dolly Saba, Alain Chbeir and Jihad Haddad for recording parts of the text. Willem Herpels gave me valuable and unstinting help with the computer technology, for which I am also very grateful. Any shortcomings remaining in the book are my responsibility.

I dedicate this book to the memory of my teacher, and to the many other Arab refugees who have contributed to development in the Middle East and elsewhere.

Pronunciation

1. General

Throughout this book, the Arabic sounds are transcribed in a simple system of symbols. The following description of the sounds represented by the symbols refers by comparison to standard English pronunciation. It does not replace the disc available with this book; good Arabic pronunciation can be learned only by listening to a native voice.

Bearing this in mind, pronounce the symbols of the transcription (in italic type) as shown below. Every symbol should be pronounced wherever it occurs; none is silent as is the case with some letters in English spelling.

2. Vowels and diphthongs

- a* as a in English ~~man~~*aq bada* ~~to~~ begin*q*
- ā* as a but long: ~~ma~~*a-a-anq kān* ~~to~~ be*q*
- i* as i in English ~~pit~~*q min* ~~from~~*q*
- ī* as i in English ~~ma~~*chineq kīs* ~~bag~~*q*
- u* as u in English ~~put~~*q zurt* ~~to~~ visited*q*
- ū* as u in English ~~ru~~*leq bidūn* ~~without~~*q*
- aw* as ou in English ~~loud~~*q law* ~~if~~*q*
- ay* as ay in English ~~day~~*q bayn* ~~between~~*q*
- ou* as ou in English ~~soul~~*q youm* ~~day~~*q*

3. Consonants similar to English

- b, d, f, k, m, n, s, t, v, w, z* much as in English.
- dh* as th in English ~~that~~*q kadha* ~~so~~*q*
- g* as g in English ~~good~~*q gārāj* ~~garage~~*q* (see under *j* below).
- h* as h in English ~~head~~*q hum* ~~they~~*q lahja* ~~accent~~*q*
- j* as j in English ~~jam~~*q jamb* ~~beside~~*q* in Egypt this sound is replaced with *g*, see above.
- l* as light or front l in English ~~leaf~~*q li* ~~for~~*q* not as dark or back l in English ~~wall~~*q*
- r* always rolled: ~~rama~~ ~~to~~ throw*q yirmī* ~~he~~ throws*q*
- sh* as sh in English ~~she~~*q masha* ~~to~~ walk*q*
- th* as th in English ~~thin~~*q thalātha* ~~three~~*q*
- y* as y in English ~~year~~*q* (i.e. a consonant): ~~yamīn~~ ~~left~~*q*

4. Consonants different from English

- kh* as ch in German ~~Buch~~*q* Welsh ~~bach~~*q* Scots ~~loch~~*q kham**sa* ~~five~~*q* if you have difficulty, first form *k*, but before pronouncing it, release the closure slightly. The result will be *kh*.
- gh* as r in the French pronunciation of ~~Paris~~*q ghāz* ~~gas~~*q* this is the voiced counterpart of *kh*. Proceed as for *kh*, but starting with *g* instead of *k*
- ḥ* as h but pronounced far back in the throat: ~~hāl~~ ~~condition~~*q baḥr* ~~sea~~*q ḥ* is the sound produced when you breathe on glass to clean it

- ' glottal stop: *sa'al* ~~to~~ ask *q* this is the sound heard before each word in the expression ~~%~~absolutely awful~~;~~ which we could transcribe as [*'absolutely 'awful*]. In the text we often refer to the glottal stop as *hamza*, which is the sign marking it. There is more about *hamza* in paragraph 9 below.
- q* as *k* but pronounced far back in the throat: *qāl* ~~to~~ say *q* for *k* the closure is at the rear of the palate, while for *q* the closure is as low in the throat as you can make it.
- 9 a sound like a gulp: *sā9ad* ~~to~~ help *q* Proceed as follows. Repeat several times the name Maggie; as you say it, try to stop making contact in the throat for the sound -gg-; let this middle consonant become progressively more vague until it is no more than a gulp, with no contact. The result is near to the Arabic word *ma9ī* ~~with~~ me *q* Probably the most difficult sound in Arabic. Listen carefully to the disc.

5. Deep ('velarised') consonants

t, ḍ, ṣ, ḍ and *ẓ* are the deep or velarised counterparts of *t, d, s, dh* and *z*. The difference is important. In pronouncing *t, d* and *dh*, the end of the tongue touches the top front teeth or teeth-ridge. For *s* and *z* the contact is between the middle of the tongue and the teeth-ridge. In both cases the rest of the tongue follows the curve of the palate. For each of the velarised counterparts, the point of contact is unchanged, but the rest of the tongue is dropped as far as possible, forming a deep cavity. Prepare, for example, to pronounce *t*. Now, maintaining the contact between the tip of the tongue and the top front teeth-ridge, create a cavity by dropping the rest of the tongue as low as possible. Say *t* with this position. It will sound something like *ṭ*.

Proceed in like manner for each of the other velarised consonants. Prepare the unvelarised sound, then, holding the point of contact, drop the body and base of the tongue to make the cavity for the velarised counterpart. Feel the cavity clearly when pronouncing the velarised consonants, which are unmistakable on the disc.

ḍ and *ẓ* are the velarised counterparts of *dh* and *z* respectively. But Arabs use either *ḍ* for both velarised sounds, or *ẓ* for both velarised sounds. *ḍ* is the 'classical' pronunciation and is especially common in the Arabian Peninsula and the Gulf. Both forms are correct.

6. Vowel-attraction: velarised *a* and *ā*

Next to a velarised consonant (*t, ḍ, ṣ* or *ḍ/z*, see above), the vowels *a* and *ā* automatically acquire a deeper sound because of the cavity. They are 'attracted'. This happens also when *a* or *ā* occur next to *q* because of the latter's depth, and very commonly with *kh* and *r*, especially when the vowel is stressed (see below). Distinguish carefully, and listen for the difference on the disc. In the following examples, and at certain other points in the book, we mark the velarised *a*'s as *ḡ* and *ā* for clarity.

ḡ sounds like u in English ~~but~~ *maḡar* ~~ain~~ *ḡ* sounds like a in English ~~alm~~ *ṭḡr* ~~to~~ fly *q* Compare the *a*'s in the two columns:

tamm to end

ṭabīb doctor

<i>'afād</i>	to benefit	<i>fāḍī</i>	empty
<i>hādhā</i>	this	<i>ḡall</i>	to remain
<i>sāda</i>	plain	<i>ṣār</i>	to become
<i>mazrū9</i>	planted	<i>maqzbūt</i>	correct
<i>kānat</i>	she was	<i>qālat</i>	she said
<i>dākhil</i>	inside	<i>khārij</i>	outside

Vowel-attraction also occurs with *a* before the combination *9t* or *9ḏ*; the velarised consonant appears to exercise the attraction through the *9*:

<i>'a9tū</i>	they gave	<i>bā9ḏ</i>	some
--------------	-----------	-------------	------

The two diphthongs *aw* and *ay* are also attracted when next to a velarised consonant, and often after *q*, *kh* or *r*. The *a* of the diphthong deepens to *a*:

<i>ṣawt</i>	voice	<i>ḏayf</i>	guest
-------------	-------	-------------	-------

In the vocabularies and text we will show the velarisation as *a* and *ā* only when drawing attention to it.

7. Stress

In an Arabic word of several syllables, one syllable is stressed, i.e. spoken with more force than the others. In the first three lessons we show the stress with an acute accent, *ˈ*. There are simple rules:

- Stress the last heavy syllable when there is one. A heavy syllable is one consisting of either:
 - a diphthong or long vowel + consonant, or
 - a short vowel + two consonants or a doubled consonant*

<i>lubnān</i>	Lebanon	<i>dābbar</i>	to arrange
<i>dabbārt</i>	you arranged		
- Stress the first syllable when there is no heavy syllable:

<i>'āna</i>	I	<i>kātabat</i>	she wrote
-------------	---	----------------	-----------

* See below for doubled consonants.

In the first three lessons the stress is fully marked. For four special cases, the stress is marked throughout the book:

- on words carrying a stressed ending in the form of a long vowel. These are explained as they arise:

<i>dabbartū</i>	you arranged it	<i>warā</i>	behind him
-----------------	-----------------	-------------	------------
- on words ending *-iya*, which always carry the stress on the previous syllable; this is to avoid confusion with the ending *-īya* which is always stressed on its long *-ī* :

<i>thāniya</i>	second	<i>qāriya</i>	village
----------------	--------	---------------	---------
- on certain verb forms having irregular stress:

<i>insāhabū</i>	they withdrew	<i>ittāṣal</i>	to contact
-----------------	---------------	----------------	------------

 (not *[īns-, ītt-]* as the rule states)
- where certain words carry the stress of the whole expression:

<i>fī shī</i>	there ^{is} something	<i>mā fī shī</i>	there ^{is} nothing
---------------	-------------------------------	------------------	-----------------------------

8. Hyphens

A hyphen is sometimes shown in the transcription, for grammatical or phonetic clarity. It should be ignored in pronunciation:

al the + *bayt* house → *al-báyṭ* the house

Pronounce the expression without a pause: *albáyṭ*.

To avoid confusion with the consonants *dh*, *kh*, *sh* and *th*, the consonants *d*, *k*, *s* and *t* followed by *h* are shown with a hyphen: *d-h*, *k-h*, *s-h*, *t-h*. Ignore the hyphen in pronouncing, but be sure to sound two separate consonants:

t-himmiṇī it concerns me *náṣṣ-ha* herself

9. Weak vowels

A vowel beginning a word is called a weak vowel. It is dropped when the preceding word in the same phrase ends with a vowel:

li to + *al-bálad* the town → *li l-bálad* to (the) town

húwa he + *ibtáda* began → *húwa btáda* he began

Pronounce each combination without a pause: *lilbálad*, *húwabtáda*.

This rule applies only when the second word begins with a *vowel*, not when it begins with *hamza* (see paragraph 4 above) + a vowel, since *hamza* itself is a *consonant*:

húwa he + *'ársal* sent → *húwa 'ársal* he sent

Further, when a long vowel at the end of a word is followed by a word which has lost its initial weak vowel and now begins with two consonants, the long vowel becomes short:

shāḥḥū they saw + *al-báyṭ* the house

→ *shāḥḥu l-báyṭ* (pronounced *shāḥḥulbáyṭ*, short -u-) they saw the house

10. Doubled consonants

Consonants transcribed double must be pronounced double, i.e. held longer than single consonants:

dáras to study *dárras** to instruct

zamīl colleague *az-zamīl* the colleague

* pronounce as if it were transcribed *dár-ras*.

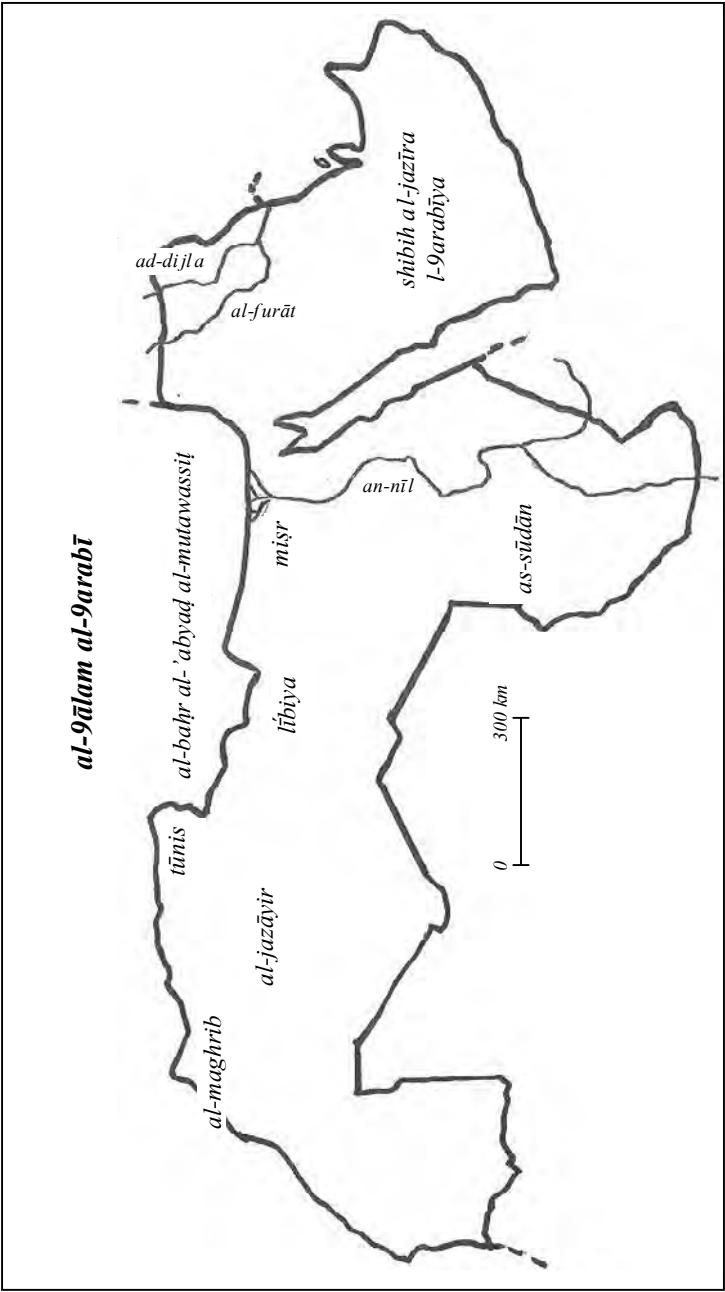
We have the phenomenon also in English, in the pronunciation of words such as ~~unknown~~ and of expressions such as ~~eight times~~

11. Written pronunciation

In the text, reference is made to 'written pronunciation'. This is not nonsense; it is the pronunciation used in reading from a prepared text. We study it in Part II. It differs in a few respects from the pronunciation of unscripted speech, which we study in Part I.

Part I

Spoken Arabic



ad-dárs al-'áwwal . Lesson 1

taḥīyāt . Greetings

🎧 1. *al-ḥiwār* – Dialogue

(Peter Brown, an engineer from Cambridge, boards a flight to Amman. He sees a passenger, Dr Fuad Sharif (*fu'ād sharīf*) reading an Arabic newspaper, sitting next to an empty seat.)

	<i>mása l-kháyr</i>	good afternoon/ evening
	<i>mása n-nūr</i>	good afternoon/ evening (in reply)
Peter:	<i>mása l-kháyr.</i>	Good evening.
fu'ād:	<i>mása n-nūr.</i>	Good evening.
	<i>'ismaḥ lī</i>	permit me; (here:) excuse me
	<i>ḥādha l-maḥáll</i>	this place
	<i>fāḍī</i>	empty, free
	<i>min fāḍlak</i>	please
Peter:	<i>'ismaḥ lī, ḥādha l-maḥáll</i>	Excuse me, is this place free,
	<i>fāḍī, min fāḍlak?</i>	please?
	<i>ná9am</i>	yes
	<i>tfāḍḍal</i>	please (offering something)
fu'ād:	<i>ná9am, fāḍī. tfāḍḍal.</i>	Yes, it's free. Help yourself.
	<i>shúkran</i>	thank you
	<i>9áfwan</i>	don't mention it
Peter:	<i>shúkran.</i>	Thank you.
fu'ād:	<i>9áfwan.</i>	Don't mention it.
	<i>'ismī</i>	my name
	<i>'ána</i>	I
	<i>muhándis</i>	engineer
	<i>kayf</i>	how
	<i>ḥālak</i>	your condition
Peter:	<i>'ismī Peter Brown. 'ána</i>	My name is Peter Brown.
	<i>muhandis. kayf ḥālak?</i>	I'm an engineer. How are you?
	<i>u</i>	and
	<i>ṭabīb</i>	doctor
fu'ād:	<i>u 'ána fu'ād sharīf, ṭabīb.</i>	And I'm Fuad Sharif, a doctor.
	<i>mabsūṭ</i>	pleased; (here:) well
	<i>(al-)ḥamdilla</i>	God be praised; (here:) thank you
	<i>'int</i>	you
	<i>mabsūṭ, al-ḥamdilla</i>	I'm well, thank you.

	kayf ḥālak 'int? <i>kamān</i> 'amāyrkī	How are you? also, too American
Peter:	'āna mabsūt kamān, ḥamdīlla.	I'm well too, thank you.
fu'ād:	'int 'amāyrkī? <i>la'</i> 'inglīzī <i>wa</i> 'ūrdunī	Are you American? no English, British and Jordanian
Peter:	la', 'āna 'inglīzī. wa 'int 'ūrdunī? <i>min</i> <i>al-'ūrdun</i> <i>9ammān</i>	No, I'm British. And you're Jordanian? from Jordan Amman
fu'ād:	nā9am, 'āna min al-'ūrdun, min 9ammān. 'āhlan <i>bīk</i>	Yes, I'm from Jordan, from Amman. welcome to you
Peter:	'āhlan. 'āhlan bīk. <i>al-muḏīfa</i> <i>mārḥaba</i> <i>yā</i> <i>sādatī</i> <i>marḥabtāyn</i>	Welcome. Welcome to you. the stewardess hello (a particle of address) gentlemen hello (in reply)
al-muḏīfa:	mārḥaba, yā sādatī.	Hello, gentlemen.
Peter:	marḥabtāyn. <i>qāhwa</i> <i>willa</i> <i>shāī</i> <i>sāyyid</i>	Hello. coffee or (in questions) tea gentleman, Mr
al-muḏīfa:	qāhwa willa shāī, yā sāyyid Brown? <i>law samāḥtī</i> <i>dúktur</i> <i>min fādlik</i>	Coffee or tea, Mr Brown? please Dr, doctor please
Peter:	qāhwa, law samāḥtī.	Coffee, please.
al-muḏīfa:	wa 'int, yā dúktur?	And you, Doctor?
fu'ād:	qāhwa kamān, min fādlik. <i>tfāḏḏalū</i> <i>jazīlan</i>	Coffee too, please. please (offering something) abundantly; (here:) very much
al-muḏīfa:	tfāḏḏalū.	Here you are.
fu'ād:	shúkran jazīlan.	Thank you very much.
al-muḏīfa:	9āfwan.	You're welcome.

	<i>ṣabāḥ al-kháyr</i> <i>ṣabāḥ an-nūr</i> <i>al-yóum</i>	good morning good morning (reply) today
fu'ád:	<i>ṣabāḥ al-kháyr,</i> <i>yā sāyyid Peter.</i>	Good morning, Mr Brown.
Peter:	<i>ṣabāḥ an-nūr, yā dúktur.</i> <i>kayf ḥálak al-yóum?</i> <i>mish baṭṭāl</i> <i>jíddan</i> <i>nushkurálla</i>	Good morning, Doctor. How are you today? not bad very thank God; (here:) thank you
fu'ád:	<i>mish baṭṭāl, shúkran.</i> <i>kayf ḥálak 'int?</i>	Not bad, thank you. How are you?
Peter:	<i>mabsūt jíddan, nushkurálla.</i>	Very well, thank you.

2. mufradāt 'iḍāfiya – Additional vocabulary

al-míhan wa l-buldān – Professions and countries

<i>mu9állim</i>	teacher (man)	<i>mu9állima</i>	teacher (woman)
<i>ṣūḥufī</i>	journalist	<i>muḥāmī</i>	lawyer
<i>mudīr shárika</i>	company director	<i>mudīr bank</i>	bank manager
<i>diblumāsī</i>	diplomat	<i>tājir</i>	businessman, trader
<i>muḥāsib</i>	accountant	<i>mu 'állif</i>	writer
<i>ṭālib</i>	student (man)	<i>ṭāliba</i>	student (woman)
<i>muwázẓaf ḥukúma</i>	civil servant	<i>'ingíltra</i>	England, Britain
<i>'amáyrka</i>	America	<i>'almāniya</i>	Germany
<i>faransa</i>	France	<i>'īṭāliya</i>	Italy
<i>al-yābān</i>	Japan	<i>al-hínd</i>	India
<i>miṣr</i>	Egypt	<i>súriya</i>	Syria
<i>lubnán</i>	Lebanon	<i>al-9irāq</i>	Iraq
<i>as-sa9ūdīya</i>	Saudi Arabia	<i>sa9ūdī</i>	Saudi
<i>al-kuwáyt</i>	Kuwait	<i>lībiya</i>	Libya
<i>túnis</i>	Tunisia, Tunis	<i>al-jazá'ir</i>	Algeria, Algiers
<i>al-mághrib</i>	Morocco	<i>as-sūdān</i>	Sudan
<i>filasṭīn</i>	Palestine	<i>9arabī</i>	Arab
<i>'urúbba</i>	Europe		

an-náḥū – Grammar

3. Greetings

Many polite expressions in Arabic are in two parts: a 'greeting' and a 'response'. Sometimes the first speaker makes a further response. Examine:

Greeting	→	Response
<i>ṣabāḥ al-kháyr</i>	Good morning	<i>ṣabāḥ an-nūr</i> Good morning
<i>'ismaḥ lī</i>	Excuse/Permit me	<i>tfáḍḍal</i> Please do/Go ahead
<i>min fáḍlak</i>	Please (requesting)	<i>tfáḍḍal</i> Here you are/Go ahead
<i>tfáḍḍal</i>	Please (offering)	<i>shúkran</i> Thank you

(further response:) <i>9áfwān</i>		Don't mention it/You're welcome	
<i>kayf ḥālak?</i>	How are you?	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} mabsūṭ, al-ḥamdilla \\ mabsūṭ, nushkurālla \\ mabsūṭ, shúkran \\ mish baṭṭāl*, shúkran \end{array} \right\}$	Fine, thank you
* informal response			
<i>āhlan</i>	Welcome	<i>āhlan bīk</i>	Welcome yourself
<i>mārḥaba</i>	Hello	<i>marḥabāyn</i>	Hello
<i>māsa l-kháyr</i>	Good afternoon/evening	<i>māsa n-nūr</i>	Good afternoon/evening

Greetings may be repeated during the day, as a sign of courtesy.

4. Gender and number

Some greetings and responses change according to whether they are said to a male person (masculine, m.), a female person (feminine, f.), or a group (plural, pl.). Examine:

to a male person (m.)	to a female person (f.)	to a group (pl.)	
<i>'ismaḥ lī</i>	<i>'ismaḥī lī</i>	<i>'ismaḥū lī</i>	Excuse/Permit me
<i>tfāḍḍal</i>	<i>tfāḍḍalī</i>	<i>tfāḍḍalū</i>	Please (offering)
<i>law samāḥt</i>	<i>law samāḥtī</i>	<i>law samāḥtū</i>	Please (requesting)
<i>'āhlan bīk</i>	<i>'āhlan bīkī</i>	<i>'āhlan bīkum</i>	Welcome
<i>min fāḍlik</i>	<i>min fāḍlik</i>	<i>min fāḍilkum</i>	Please (requesting)
<i>kayf ḥālak?</i>	<i>kayf ḥālik?</i>	<i>kayf ḥālkum?</i>	How are you?

This looks more complicated than it really is; we shall learn simple rules later. The distinction between masculine, feminine and plural runs right through the language and is important.

5. Pronouns

The personal pronouns (I, you, he etc.) are:

1st person:	<i>'āna</i>	I	<i>'ihna/nihna</i>	we
2nd person:	<i>'int</i>	you (m.)	<i>'intū</i>	you (plural)
	<i>'inti</i>	you (f.)		
3rd person:	<i>hūwa</i>	he, it (m.)	<i>hum</i>	they (animate)
	<i>hīya</i>	she, it (f.)	<i>hīya</i>	they (inanimate)

Note:

- The two forms for ~~we~~ are equally common.
- The ~~you~~ form varies for gender in the singular, but not in the plural.
- There is no neuter gender; we express 'it' with the masculine (m.) *hūwa* or the feminine (f.) *hīya* according to the gender of the corresponding noun (i.e. person, place, creature, thing or idea).
- The ~~they~~ forms are not distinguished for gender, but there is one form used for people (the *animate* form ['an.', 'anim.']) and an *inanimate* form ('inan.') used elsewhere, i.e. for other creatures, and for places, things and ideas. The distinction between animate and inanimate is important in Arabic. The inanimate plural has the same form as the feminine singular.

Inanimate plural rule: For all parts of speech except nouns, the inanimate plural has the same form as the feminine singular.

The personal pronouns are used only when needed for extra emphasis, since other parts of the sentence usually indicate who or what is intended.

6. The verb 'to be'

The equivalent of the verb **to be** in present time (**am, is, are**) is omitted in Arabic, being inferred from the context:

'*ána mabsūt.* (I) well. *kayf ḥālak?* (How [is] your condition?)
How are you?

When both verb and pronoun are omitted we may get a one-word sentence:

mabsūt. (I) well. *mabsūt?* (Are you) well?

7. Article

There is no indefinite article (**a, an**) in Arabic:

'*ána muḥāndis. ḥuwa ṭabīb.* *lqan* (an) engineer. He **is** (a) doctor.

8. Interrogative

Questions can be indicated by making the voice rise momentarily on the stressed syllable of the word questioned:

ḥādhā l-maḥall fādī? Is this place free?
kayf ḥālak? How are you? *mabsūt?* Are you well?

9. nisba adjectives

Adjectives are words which describe or qualify nouns or pronouns. Many adjectives are formed from nouns by adding the ending *-ī*. We call such adjectives *nisba* ('relationship') adjectives. The prefix *al-* attached to some nouns, and the endings *-a* and *-iya*, are dropped before *-ī* is added:

<i>mīṣr</i>	Egypt	<i>mīṣrī</i>	Egyptian
<i>al-hīnd</i>	India	<i>hindī</i>	Indian
<i>ḥukūma</i>	government	<i>ḥukūmī</i>	governmental
<i>'īṭāliya</i>	Italy	<i>'īṭālī</i>	Italian
<i>'urūbba</i>	Europe	<i>'urūbbī</i>	European

A few are otherwise modified before *-ī* is added:

<i>farānsa</i>	France	<i>faransāwī</i>	French
----------------	--------	------------------	--------

10. Agreement of adjectives

Adjectives are made m. or f., and singular ('s.') or pl., to agree in gender and number with the noun or pronoun which they qualify. Most *nisba* adjectives, and some others, are 'sound', i.e. they form their f. and pl. regularly, as follows:

	$-\bar{i}$	$-'iya$	$-\bar{y}\bar{i}\bar{n}$	
example:	$f\acute{a}d\bar{i}$	$f\acute{a}diya$	$f\acute{a}d\bar{y}\bar{i}\bar{n}$	empty, free

A few *nisba* adjectives have a 'broken' (irregular) plural:

Adjectives used in greetings and responses must also agree:

11. Word-order; qualifying words

Qualifying words such as adjectives and adverbs* usually follow the word or expression which they qualify:

*An adverb is word describing or modifying an adjective, a verb or another adverb. In the expression ~~very well~~ ~~very~~ is said to modify the adjective ~~well~~

Qualifying word rule: A qualifying word follows the word which it qualifies.

When addressing a person we use the vocative particle *yā* before the name or title. Arabs often use the first name, preceded, for politeness, by *sāyyid* **السيد** *sitt* **السيدة** *Mrs/Miss/Msqor* another title:

13 'Please'

Distinguish between the expressions for μ and σ

min fāḍlak (etc.), *law samáht* (etc.) (enquiring or requesting)
tfāḍḍal/-ī/-ū (offering or proposing)

14 *u* 'and'

Although consisting only of a weak vowel (see Pronunciation, paragraph 9), the word *u* and *qis* never elided:

shāī u qāhwa

tea and coffee

15. *jūmal mithālīya* – Model sentences

'int min kuwáyṭ? – la', 'ána sa9ūdī.

Are you from Kuwait? . No, I'm Saudi.

híya ṭālība? – ná9am, híya ṭālība miṣrīya.

Is she a student? . Yes, she's an Egyptian student.

fu'ād mudīr bank? – la', húwa ṭabīb.

Is Fuad a bank manager? . No, he's a doctor.

'int fāḍī? – ná9am, al-yóum fāḍī, tfāḍḍal.

Are you free? . Yes, today I'm free. How can I help you?

16. *at-tamārīn* – Exercises



1. Give the response to the greeting:

e.g.: mása l-kháyr. – mása n-nūr.

(a) kayf ḥālak?

(b) tfāḍḍal.

(c) ṣabāḥ al-kháyr.

(d) kayf ḥālik?

(e) márḥaba.



2. Repeat the following greetings or responses, speaking to a woman:

e.g.: tfāḍḍal. – tfāḍḍalī.

(a) kayf ḥālak?

(b) law samáht.

(c) 'int mabsūt?

(d) márḥaba.

(e) 'áhlān bīk.



3. Repeat Ex. no. 2, speaking to a group:

e.g.: tfāḍḍal. – tfāḍḍalū.



4. Repeat the following greetings or responses, speaking to a man:

e.g.: min fāḍlik. – min fāḍlak.

(a) kayf ḥālkum?

(b) 'áhlān bīki.

(c) ṣabāḥ al-kháyr.

(d) tfāḍḍalī.

(e) 9áfwan.



5. Make the expression feminine singular:

e.g.: húwa 'inglīzī. – híya 'inglīzīya.

(a) mu9állim miṣrī

(b) 'int 'amáyrkī?

(c) mabsūt jíddan, shúkran.

(d) 'ána 'inglīzī.

(e) húwa min al-'úrdun.

6. Repeat Ex. no. 5, making the expression plural:

e.g.: húwa 'inglīzī. – hum 'inglīz.



7. Make the expression masculine singular:

e.g.: 'ána mabsūṭa. – 'ána mabsūṭ.

- (a) hum sūrīyīn. (b) muḡállima 'inglīzīya
(c) 'intī lubnānīya? (d) fāḍiya (e) fāḍiyīn

8. Answer the question:

e.g.: Peter muḡāndis? – náḡam, húwa muḡāndis.

Peter mīṣrī? – la', húwa 'inglīzī.

- (a) fu'ād muḡāsīb? (b) fu'ād 'úrdunī willa mīṣrī?
(c) Peter mabsūṭ? (d) hādha l-maḡáll fāḍī? (e) kayf ḡālāk?

9. Mark the stress:

e.g.: muḡāndis – muḡāndis

- (a) nushkuralla (b) fāḍī, fāḍiya, fāḍiyīn (c) mabsūṭīn
(d) ḡarabī, ḡarabīya, ḡarab (e) ṭālib 'inglīzī

ad-dárs ath-thāniya . Lesson 2

fī l-maṭār . At the Airport

1. al-ḥiwār – Dialogue

	<i>fī, fī</i>	in
	<i>al-muhājara</i>	immigration
	<i>fī l-muhājara</i>	in Immigration
	<i>al-ma'mūr</i>	the official
	<i>ḥaḍirtak</i>	you (deferential form)
	<i>wayn</i>	where
	<i>jawāz sāfarak</i>	your passport
(fī l-muhājara		In Immigration)
al-ma'mūr:	ḥaḍirtak min wayn?	Where are you from?
Peter:	min 'ingīltra	From England.
al-ma'mūr:	jawāz sāfarak, min fāḍlak	Your passport, please.
Peter:	tfaḍḍal.	Here you are.
	<i>kam</i>	how much, how many
	<i>waqt</i>	time
	<i>tībqa</i>	you stay
al-ma'mūr:	kam waqt tībqa fī l-'ūrdun,	How long are you staying in
	yā sāyyid Brown?	Jordan, Mr Brown?
	<i>shahr</i>	month
	<i>wāḥid</i>	one
	<i>taqrīban</i>	approximately
	<i>kwāyyis</i>	good
	<i>hay</i>	here is, here are
	<i>jawāzak</i>	= <i>jawāz sāfarak</i>
Peter:	shahr wāḥid taqrīban.	One month approximately.
al-ma'mūr:	kwāyyis. tfaḍḍal, hay jawāzak	Good. Here you are, here's
		your passport.
	<i>al-jumruk</i>	Customs
	<i>hunāk</i>	there
	<i>wāra</i>	behind
	<i>an-nās</i>	the people
Peter:	shúkran. wayn al-jumruk,	Thank you. Where's Customs,
	min fāḍlak?	please?
al-ma'mūr:	hunāk, wāra n-nās. tfaḍḍal.	There, behind the people.
Peter:	shúkran.	Thank you.
	—	
(fī l-jumruk		In Customs)
	<i>āhlan wa sāhlan</i>	welcome
	<i>shānta</i>	suitcase. case
	<i>9indak</i>	you have
al-ma'mūr:	'āhlan wa sāhlan.	Welcome.
Peter:	'āhlan bīk.	Thank you.

al-ma'mūr:	kam shānta 9indak?	How many cases do you have?
	<i>thalātha</i>	three
	<i>kīs</i>	bag
	<i>ṣghīr</i>	small
Peter:	thalātha, wa kīs ṣghīr .	Three, and a small bag.
	<i>shū</i>	what
	<i>fī</i>	there is, there are
	<i>fī sh-shānta</i>	in the bag
	<i>mashrūbāt</i>	drinks (here:) liquor
	<i>'aw</i>	or
	<i>sīgāra</i>	cigarette
		(here:) cigarettes
al-ma'mūr:	shū fī, fī sh-shānta?	What is there, in the case?
	fī 9indak mashrūbāt 'aw	Have you got any liquor or
	sīgāra?	cigarettes?
	<i>'aghrāḍ</i>	things, possessions
	<i>shākhṣī</i>	personal
	<i>bas</i>	only
Peter:	la', 'aghrāḍ shakhṣīya bas;	No, only personal things;
	<i>malābis</i>	clothes
	<i>kam</i>	(also:) some
	<i>kitāb</i>	book
	<i>kādha</i>	thus, so; (here:) such
Peter:	malābis, kam kitāb u kādha.	clothes, some books and the like.
	<i>ziyārtak</i>	your visit
	<i>ṭawīla</i>	long
	<i>fāqaṭ</i>	only
al-ma'mūr:	ziyārtak ṭawīla?	Is your visit long?
Peter:	shahr wāḥid fāqaṭ.	Only one month.
	<i>ṭāyyib</i>	good
	<i>ma9 as-salāma</i>	goodbye
	<i>'alla yisāllimak</i>	goodbye (response)
al-ma'mūr:	ṭāyyib. ma9 as-salāma.	Very well. Goodbye.
Peter:	'alla yisāllimak.	Goodbye.

2. 9ibārāt – Expressions

ḥāḍirtak (your presence) you. A polite way of addressing a stranger. It is in no way servile. It varies with the person(s) addressed: *ḥāḍirtik* to a woman, *ḥaḍrātkum* to a group. For referring to such a person or persons, we can use *ḥāḍirtu* (m.), *ḥaḍrīt-ha* (f.), *ḥaḍrāt-hum* (pl.) The apparent irregularities in the stress are explained later.

'āhlan wa sāhlan Welcome (invariable greeting). The response is *'āhlan bīk/bīki/bīkum*.

ma9 as-salāma ([Go] with safety) Goodbye (invariable greeting).

'*alla yisállimak* (God save you) Goodbye (response). This response agrees with the person or group addressed, thus:

(to a male person)	' <i>alla yisállimak</i>
(to a female person)	' <i>alla yisállimik</i>
(to a group)	' <i>alla yisallimkum</i>

3. *muḥradāt 'iqāfiya* – Additional vocabulary. *as-safarāt* – Travel

<i>muṣāfir</i>	traveller	<i>rākib</i> , pl. <i>rukkāb</i>	passenger(s)
<i>tādhkara</i>	ticket	<i>tāksī</i>	taxi
<i>sayyāra</i>	car	' <i>utubīs</i> , <i>bās</i>	bus
<i>ṭayyāra</i>	aeroplane	' <i>ujra</i>	fare
<i>vīza</i>	visa	' <i>iqāma</i>	stay, residence
<i>maṭār</i>	airport	<i>ṣandūq</i>	box, trunk
<i>mughādara</i>	departure	<i>wuṣūl</i>	arrival
<i>ta'khīr</i>	delay	<i>muta'akhkhir</i>	late, delayed
<i>jādwal</i>	timetable	<i>fulūs</i> (pl.)	money
<i>jināyh</i>	pound (£)	<i>dīnār</i>	dinar
<i>riyāl</i>	rial, riyal	<i>līra</i>	lira
<i>doulār</i>	dollar	' <i>ūro</i> , <i>yūro</i>	euro

an-nāḥū – Grammar

4. Gender of nouns

Nouns (see 1/5) are either masculine or feminine.

Feminine are:

- nouns denoting females;
- nouns denoting double parts of the body, which we shall point out as they occur;
- nouns ending in *-a* and not denoting males;
- a very small number of other nouns, which we shall point out as they occur.

All other nouns are masculine.

Examples: f.: *muḡāllima*, *ṭāliba*, *shānta*, *sayyāra*
m.: *muḡāllim*, *ṭālib*, *kīs*, *'ism*

There are a few exceptions to these rules; for example, *māsa* is masculine. Such exceptions will also be noted as they occur.

Some words like *dūktur* are masculine but refer also to women.

5. Article

The definite article in English is ~~the~~ *the*. The Arabic definite article is used more than its English counterpart. It takes the form of a prefix, i.e. it is attached before the word which it defines. The article is invariable for gender or number. In transcription it is usual to show the attachment of the article with a hyphen.

It has the form *al-* before most words: *al-muḡāllim*, *al-muḡtīfa*, *al-maṭār*; but before words beginning with sounds pronounced with the tip or near-tip of the tongue, i.e. *t*, *d*, *ṭ*, *ḍ*, *th*, *dh*, *s*, *ṣ*, *sh*, *z*, *ẓ*, *ḏ*, *r*, *l* and *n*, the *-l-* of the article

assimilates, i.e. assumes the sound of that letter, which is then pronounced double:

as-sayyāra, ash-shānta, az-ziyāra, ad-dūktur, an-nās

The *-a-* of the assimilated article is always deepened (see Pronunciation) when next to the velarized consonants *ṭ, ḍ, ṣ* and *ḏ/z*; and is often deepened next to *r*. In the examples shown below the deepened *a* is shown dotted, for clarity:

aṣ-ṣūḥufī, aṭ-ṭayyārā, ar-rukkāb

The vowel of the article is always weak and unstressed.

6. Agreement of adjectives

When an adjective is the complement (i.e. completes the sense) of a verb, including an implied verb **to be** it agrees in gender and number with the noun or pronoun which it qualifies:

aṭ-ṭabīb miṣrī. hiya lubnānīya. ar-rukkāb mabsūṭīn.

But when it is not a complement, the adjective must in addition be definite if its noun is definite. The definite adjective takes the prefixed article, under the same rules as for nouns:

aṭ-ṭabīb al-miṣrī hunāk. wayn al-muḥallima s-sūṭīya?

The inanimate plural rule (see 1/5) holds for adjectives, definite or not:

(ar-)rukkāb (al-)amayrkān but: *(as-)sayyārāt (al-)amayrkīya*

7. Prepositions

Here are common prepositions (**in** etc.), some known to you:

<i>fī</i>	in	<i>ʿāla</i>	on
<i>dākhil</i>	inside	<i>khārij</i>	outside
<i>wāra</i>	behind	<i>'amām, quddām</i>	before, in front of
<i>maʿ</i>	with (accompanied by)	<i>bi</i>	with (by means of), in
<i>bidūn</i>	without	<i>ʿind</i>	at, in the presence of
<i>'ila, li</i>	to, for	<i>min</i>	from
<i>baʿd</i>	after	<i>qabl</i>	before
<i>fouq</i>	above	<i>taht</i>	under
<i>ḥawl, ḥawālī</i>	around, about	<i>ʿan</i>	from, about
<i>bi ṣābab</i>	because of	<i>bi r-raghm min</i>	despite
<i>ḥatta</i>	until, as far as	<i>mundh, min</i>	since
<i>khilāl</i>	during	<i>ṭūl</i>	for the whole (duration) of
<i>bi khuṣūṣ</i>	concerning	<i>jamb</i>	beside
<i>'illa</i>	except	<i>bayn</i>	between, among
<i>mithl</i>	like	<i>didd</i>	against

A preposition governing a noun precedes that noun, as English:

dākhil al-maṭār inside the airport *fī ʿammān* in Amman

8. Possessive suffixes; Pronouns with prepositions

The possessive adjective (**my** etc.): takes the form of a suffix, i.e. it is attached after the noun denoting the person or thing 'possessed':

<i>-ī</i>	my	<i>-na</i>	our
<i>-ak</i>	your (m.)	<i>-kum</i>	your (pl.)

-ik	your (f.)		
-u	his/its	-hum	their (animate)
-ha	her/its	-ha	their (inanimate)

These possessives correspond in person and use exactly to the personal pronouns given in 1/5.

After a noun ending in a consonant, the suffix has the form shown above:

mu9állimī my teacher; *kitābu* his book; *ṭabībna* our doctor

After final *-ī*, the suffixes *-ī*, *-ak*, *-ik* and *-u* become *-ya*, *-yak*, *-yik*, *-yu*:

muhāmīya, *muhāmīyak*, *muhāmīyik*, *muhāmīyu* my, your, his lawyer

The noun-ending *-a* becomes *-t* before a suffix beginning with a vowel, and *-it* before a suffix beginning with a consonant:

sayyārītī, *sayyārtak/sayyārtik*, *sayyārtu/sayyārīt-ha*;

sayyārītna, *sayyārītkum*, *sayyārīt-hum* my, your, his (etc.) car

For ease of pronunciation, nouns ending in two consonants + *-a*, or in *-ta*, *-da*, *-ṭa*, *-ḍa* keep their final vowel and add *-t* before all the suffixes: *shāntatī*

A noun with a possessive suffix is definite; its adjective, when not a complement, must therefore also be definite:

kitābak al-9ārabī *shāntatu l-ǧāḍiya*

A possessive suffix is also added to a preposition to express the pronoun governed by it. The meaning is then ~~meq~~ *youq* ~~himq~~ (etc.):

má9ī with me *dākhilu* inside it
'amāmma in front of us

When the suffixes *-ha* and *-hum* are added after *t*, *d*, *k* or *s* we shall transcribe with a hyphen to make the pronunciation clear:

sayyārīt-ha *fulūs-hum*

With some prepositions, either the preposition or the suffix, or both, may be modified:

- min* and *9an* double their *n* before a suffix beginning with a vowel:
minnī, *minnak/minnik*, *minnu* *9ānnī*, *9ānnak/9ānnik*, *9ānnu*
but: *minha*, *minna* (*min* + *na*), *minkum*, *minhum*
9ānha, *9ānna* (*9an* + *na*), *9ānkum*, *9ānhum*
- bayn* meaning ~~between~~ governs two concepts. If one is a pronoun, *bayn* is repeated: *bayn miṣr u lubnān*
but: *bāynhum u bayn al-mudīr*; *bāynī u bāynak*

The prepositions ending in a vowel have the following forms when the suffixes are added; at the same time the suffix itself may be modified:

wāra: *warāī*, *warāk/warāki*, *warā/warāha*;

warāna, *warākum*, *warāhum*

bi: *bīya* or *bīnī*, *bīk/bīki*, *bī*/bīha*;

bīna, *bīkum*, *bīhum*

9āla: *9alāyy* or *9alāyya*, *9alāyk/9alāyki*, *9aláy/9aláyha*;

9aláyna, *9aláykum*, *9aláyhum*

ǧī follows the pattern of *bī*; *īla* and *ḥawāǧī* follow the pattern of *9āla*.

* Throughout this book we show the accent on the last syllable of words like *bī* ~~with~~ *it/himq*, *ǧī* ~~in~~ *it/himq*, *9aláy* ~~on~~ *it/himq* (etc.), for clarity.

The modified ending (long vowel *-ā* or *-ī*, or vowel-combination *-ay*) of the preposition always carries the stress before a suffix; the 3rd person m. sing. has no suffix, but the stress remains, as shown.

Note that *li* has two forms: *lī*, *lak/lik*, *lu/lāha*; *lāna*, *lākum*, *lāhum* and: *'ilī*, *'ilak/'ilik*, *'ilu/'ilha*; *'ilna*, *'ilkum*, *'ilhum*
hatta and *'illa* are not commonly used with pronouns.

9. *kam*

The adjective *kam* has two meanings. In statements, ~~someq~~ a littleq In questions: ~~how much/many?q~~

In both uses, it precedes the noun which it qualifies, which is always in the singular, even when a plural (animate or inanimate) is intended:

<i>kam waqt</i>	some/a little time
<i>kam waqt?</i>	how much time/how long?
<i>kam rākib</i>	some/a few passengers
<i>kam rākib?</i>	how many passengers?

In its interrogative use, it may also be a pronoun, i.e. stand without a noun:

<i>kam?</i>	how much? how many?
-------------	---------------------

10. Final long vowel

See Pronunciation, paragraph 9. A long vowel at the end of a word is shortened when followed by two consonants or a doubled consonant in the next word of the same phrase. This most commonly happens when the second word has the article. (The hyphen of the article is disregarded in pronunciation; it is purely a transcription device.) In this circumstance final *-ā*, *-ī* and *-ū* become respectively *-a*, *-i* and *-u*. Examine:

<i>kitābī hunāk.</i>	but:	<i>kitābi l-9ārabī hunāk.</i>
<i>fī 'ingiltra</i>	but:	<i>fī l-'ūrdun; fī t-tayyāra</i>

Long vowel rule: A final long vowel is shortened before two consonants or a double consonant in the same phrase.

11. *fī*

fī ~~in~~ itq (2/8 above) also means ~~there isq~~ ~~there areq~~ or the corresponding interrogatives ~~is there?q~~ ~~are there?q~~

<i>fī nās khārij al-maṭār.</i>	There are people outside the airport.
<i>shū fī, fī sh-shānta?</i>	What is there, in the suitcase?

12. 'to have'

The concept ~~to haveq~~ is not normally expressed with a verb in Arabic. We use the preposition *9ind* ~~withq~~ ~~in~~ the possession ofq




<i>9indī</i> , <i>9indak/9indik</i> , <i>9indu/9ind-ha</i> ; <i>9indna</i> , <i>9indkum</i> , <i>9ind-hum</i>	
in my, your, his, her, its; our, your, their possessionq	
<i>9indī waqt.</i>	I have time.
<i>9indu shānta.</i>	He has a suitcase.

9ind-hum 'aghrāḍ shakhsīya. They have personal effects.
 The expression with *9ind* may be reinforced with *fī* ~~there~~ is/areq
fī 9indak waqt? *kam shānta (fī) 9indak?*
 The negative of this expression is *mā fī 9ind* (*fī* is obligatory here; note also that the stress shifts to *mā*):
mā fī 9ind-hum vīza. They have no visa.
mā fī 9indak waqt? Have you no time?
 We avoid using *9ind* in this possessive meaning directly with a noun. If a noun is to be used, we restate with a pronoun suffix:
al-musāfir, 9indu vīza. The passenger, he has a visa.q

13. *jūmal mithālīya* – Model sentences

al-musāfir, kam ṣandūq 9indu?	How many boxes has the traveller got?
wayn 'aghrāḍak? – hunāk, wāra s-sayyāra.	Where are your things? . There, behind the car.
ar-rukkāb al-miṣrīyīn, kam tādhhkara 9ind-hum?	How many tickets have the Egyptian passengers got?
malābisik fī shāntatik?	Are your clothes in your case?
– nā9am, wa hay ash-shānta. hīya ṣghīra bas.	. Yes, and here's the case. It's only small.
fī kam musāfir khārij al-jumruk.	There are some travellers outside Customs.

14. *at-tamārīn* – Exercises

-  1. Make definite with the article:
 e.g.: maḥāll fāḍī – al-maḥāll al-fāḍī; sayyāra – as-sayyāra
 (a) maṭār (b) ziyāra ṭawīla (c) rākib 'amāyrkī
 (d) kīs ṣghīr (e) ṭabīb miṣrī
-  2. Make the suffix plural:
 e.g.: maḥāllī – maḥāllna; fīki . fīkum
 (a) sayyārtu (b) shāntatik (c) 9indu
 (d) warāī (e) ṣandūqak
-  3. Make indefinite:
 e.g.: ar-rākib al-lubnānī – rākib lubnānī
 (a) fī s-sayyāra (b) al-'aghrāḍ ash-shakhsīya
 (c) tadhkārtak (d) shantátkum
4. Make a sentence:
 e.g.: āna, sayyāra – 9indī sayyāra.
 (a) hum, tādhhkara (b) hīya, shānta ṣghīra (c) 'inti, fulūs
 (d) aṭ-ṭālib, kam kitāb (e) aṭ-ṭabīb, waqt



5. Make the suffix singular:

e.g.: ziyārít-kum – ziyārtak, ziyārtik

- | | | |
|--------------|-------------------|--------------|
| (a) kitābna | (b) tadhkarít-hum | (c) fulúskum |
| (d) 'amāmhum | (e) warāhum | (f) fīna |
| (g) 'ilāyhum | (h) 9alāy-kum | (j) 9ánhum |
| (k) mín-kum | | |



6. Make the adjective agree:

e.g.: sayyāra ('almānī) – sayyāra 'almānīya

- | | | |
|------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------|
| (a) rukkāb (lubnānī) | (b) tayyāra (muta' ákhkhir) | |
| (c) al-mu9állim (sūrī) | (d) šūḥufī (9árabī) | (e) dīnār (kuwáytī) |

ad-dárs ath-thálish . Lesson 3

fi l-'utáyil . In the Hotel

1. *al-ḥikāya wa l-ḥiwār* – Narrative and Dialogue

(Peter recounts his arrival at the hotel.)

	<i>lámma</i>	when
	<i>kharájt</i>	I came/went out
	<i>bināya</i>	building
Peter:	<i>lámma kharájt min bināyat</i>	When I came out of the
	<i>al-maṭār,</i>	airport building,
	<i>wajādt</i>	I found
	<i>musāfirīn</i>	travellers
	<i>kthīr, ikthīr</i>	much/many
	<i>sayyārāt</i>	cars
	<i>wajādt musāfirīn ikthīr u</i>	I found many travellers and
	<i>sayyārāt ikthīr.</i>	many cars.
	<i>9iríft</i>	I knew
	<i>'utáyil</i>	hotel
	<i>walākin</i>	but
	<i>mā 9iríft</i>	I did not know
	<i>ṭarīq (m./f.)</i>	road
	<i>bálad</i>	town
	<i>9iríft 'ism al-'utáyil, walākin</i>	I knew the name of the hotel,
	<i>mā 9iríft ṭarīq al-bálad.</i>	but I didn't know the road to
		town,
	<i>ṭalábt min</i>	I asked, I requested
	<i>sawwāq</i>	driver
	<i>'innu</i>	that he
	<i>yākhúdhni</i>	he takes me
	<i>u ṭalábt min sawwāq táksī</i>	and I asked a taxi driver to
	<i>'innu yākhúdhni 'ila l-'utáyil.</i>	take me (that he takes me) to the hotel.
	<i>rikíbt</i>	I mounted, got in
	<i>tarákna</i>	we left
	<i>wa rikíbt at-táksī u tarákna</i>	I got into the taxi, and we
	<i>l-maṭār.</i>	left the airport.
		—
	<i>yá sīdna</i>	sir
	<i>ḥiladīlfiya</i>	Philadelphia
	<i>tíkram</i>	certainly
as-sawwāq:	<i>li wayn, yá sīdna?</i>	Where to, sir?
Peter:	<i>li 'utáyil ḥiladīlfiya, min ḥáqlak.</i>	To the Philadelphia Hotel,
		please.
as-sawwāq:	<i>tíkram.</i>	Certainly
Peter:	<i>shúkran.</i>	Thank you.

wiṣīlna
bāb
kbīr, ikbīr
 ba9d kam waqt wiṣīlna
 quddām bāb 'utāyl ikbīr.

nizīlt
daḡā9t
dakhālt
shantāt
 nizīlt min at-táksī u daḡā9t
 'újrāt u dakhālt al-'utāyl
 ma9 shantātī.
istiqbāl
muwázẓaf
sa'álnī

9ind al-istiqbāl, al-muwázẓaf
 sa'álnī 'ismī

ṭálab
'áyḡan
ḡammāl
yákhudh
fouq
ghúrfā
 u ṭálab mínī jawāz sáfarī.
 ṭálab 'áyḡan min ḡammāl
 al-'utāyl 'innu yákhudh
 shantātī fouq 'ila ghúrfī.

ba9d mā
kátab
9unwān
 ba9d mā kátab muwázẓaf
 al-istiqbāl 'ismī wa 9unwānī,

'akhádht
miftāḡ
ṭilī9t
'ouḡa
fatáḡt
'amárt
fuṭūr
 'akhádht miftāḡ ghúrfī u ṭilī9t
 'ila l-'ouḡa u fatáḡt shantātī

we arrived
 door
 big
 After some time we arrived in
 front of the door of a big
 hotel.

I went/got down
 I paid
 I entered
 suitcases, cases
 I got out of the taxi, paid the
 (ḡisq) fare and went into the
 hotel with my suitcases.
 reception
 employee, clerk
 he asked me, enquired of
 me

At Reception, the clerk asked
 me my name
 he asked for, requested
 also
 porter
 he takes
 (also:) up
 room

and asked me for my
 passport. He also asked the
 hotel porter to take (ḡhat he
 takesq my cases up to my
 room.

after
 he wrote
 address
 After the reception clerk
 wrote my name and (ḡnyḡ)
 address,

I took
 key
 I went up
 = *ghúrfā*
 I opened
 I ordered
 breakfast
 I took my room key, went up
 to my (ḡheḡ room, opened

u 'amárt al-fuṭūr.

my cases and ordered
breakfast.**2. 9ibārāt – Expressions**

tikram Certainly. Varies with the person(s) addressed: *tikramī* to a woman,
tikramū to a group. There is no prescribed response.
ba9d kam waqt after some time

3. mufradāt 'iḍāfiyya – Additional vocabulary – al-'utáyl

<i>ḡayf</i>	guest	<i>ḡisāb</i>	bill, account
<i>bawwāb</i>	doorman	<i>māṭ9am</i>	restaurant
<i>ḡhadā'</i>	lunch	<i>9ashā'</i>	dinner
<i>fārsha</i>	bed	<i>baṭṭānīya</i>	blanket
<i>mukhādda</i>	pillow	<i>shārshaf</i>	sheet
<i>ḡammām</i>	bath	<i>mīnshafa</i>	towel
<i>'asansáyr</i>	lift	<i>másbah</i>	swimming-pool
<i>mafiṭḡh</i>	open	<i>musákkar</i>	closed
<i>'ouḡat noum, ḡhúrfat noum</i>			bedroom
<i>'ouḡat ḡammām, ḡhúrfat ḡammām</i>			bathroom

an-náḡū – Grammar**4. Construct**

Examine the expressions

<i>bināyat al-maṭār</i>	the airport building
<i>'ism al-'utáyl</i>	the name of the hotel
<i>ṭarīḡ al-bálad</i>	the road to town
<i>mīṭāḡ ḡhúrfī</i>	my room key
<i>shantāt Peter</i>	Peter's cases

In each of these expressions, the two nouns are associated; the association is often possession, but not always so. Such an expression is called a *construct*. For convenience we can call the first noun of the construct the *theme*, and the second noun the *attribute*. In the constructs shown here both nouns are definite; the attribute is obviously definite because it has an article or a possessive suffix, or because it is a proper noun (e.g. *Peter*); the theme looks indefinite but is deemed to be made definite by the attribute. These are definite constructs.

Indefinite constructs also exist; in these, both nouns have the indefinite form:

<i>muwázzaḡ hukúma</i>	a government employee
<i>mīṭāḡ ḡhúrfa</i>	a room key

Nouns ending in *-a* add *-t* when used as the theme of a construct:

<i>'újrat táksī</i>	a taxi fare
<i>'újrat at-táksī</i>	the taxi fare
<i>sayyárat ad-dúktur</i>	the doctor's car

We may have a 'string' construct with more than two nouns, each noun but the last being defined by its successor:

<i>mīṭāḡ ḡhúrfat at-ṭabīb</i>	the doctor's room key
-------------------------------	-----------------------

It is a most important rule that only the last noun of a construct may have a definite 'marker', i.e. a definite article or a possessive suffix, or be a proper noun.

Construct rule: Only the last noun in a construct may be explicitly defined.

An adjective cannot interrupt a construct. It must follow it, whichever noun it qualifies:

'ism al-'utáyl al-'úrdunī *mudīr al-bank al-mīsrī*

The second of these expressions has two possible meanings: ~~the~~ Egyptian bank manager or ~~the~~ manager of the Egyptian bank. We shall learn later how to avoid the ambiguity.

5. The triliteral verb – roots and root letters

A verb is a word denoting an action which is performed or a situation which is experienced: ~~arrived~~, ~~knows~~.

Most Arabic verbs are *triliteral*, i.e. built on a *root* consisting of three letters. The root is not a word; it is simply the theoretical base. A typical triliteral root is *k t b*; the three letters are its root letters, which remain through all forms of the verb.

Spoken Arabic has five classes of triliteral verb, of which we deal with two in this lesson.

In English we quote a verb by its so-called *infinitive* form, e.g. ~~to write~~. Arabic has no such form; it denotes its verbs by their simplest or basic form, which is the *húwa* form of the past tense, e.g. *kátab*. In a sentence this means ~~he wrote~~ but in the vocabulary we quote it as ~~to write~~ following English practice.

6. Past tense of sound verbs

Sound verbs are so called because their three root letters – initial, middle and final – are all consonants and are all ‘stable’, i.e. invariable. We add the following personal endings to the basic form to make the past tense (~~did~~ ~~have done~~):

(<i>'ána</i>)	- <i>t</i>	I	(<i>'ihna</i>)	- <i>na</i>	we
(<i>'int</i>)	- <i>t</i>	you (m.)	(<i>'intū</i>)	- <i>tū</i>	you (pl.)
(<i>'inti</i>)	- <i>ti</i>	you (f.)			
(<i>húwa</i>)	- (no ending)	he, it	(<i>hum</i>)	- <i>ū</i>	they (animate)
(<i>hiya</i>)	- <i>at</i>	she, it			

Thus, for *kátab* (~~he wrote~~, ~~to write~~) root *k t b*:

(<i>'ána</i>)	<i>katábt</i>	(<i>'ihna</i>)	<i>katábnā</i>
(<i>'int</i>)	<i>katábt</i>	(<i>'intū</i>)	<i>katábtū</i>
(<i>'inti</i>)	<i>katábtī</i>		
(<i>húwa</i>)	<i>kátab</i>	(<i>hum</i>)	<i>kátabū</i>
(<i>hiya</i>)	<i>kátabat</i>		

I, you, he, she; we, you, they wrote/have written/has written

The pronouns are used only for emphasis or extra clarity.

So also: *kháraj* to come/go out, root *kh r j*:

kharájt, kharájt/kharájtī, kháraj/khárajat; kharájna, kharájtū, khárajū

I, you, he, she; we, you, they came/went out

I, you, he, she; we, you, they have/has come/gone out

The vowels vary from verb to verb; *a-a* is the commonest pattern.

You can now understand the following sound verbs in the text:

Root 9 <i>r f</i> , basic form 9 <i>irif</i> to know;	9 <i>irift</i> I knew		
Root <i>r k b</i> , <i>rikib</i> to mount, get in:	<i>rikibt</i> I mounted, got in		
so also: <i>tarákna</i>	we left	<i>nizilt</i>	I got down/out
<i>dafá9t</i>	I paid	<i>dakhált</i>	I entered
<i>ṭili9t</i>	I went up	<i>fatáḥt</i>	I opened
<i>ṭalábt</i>	I requested	<i>ṭálab</i>	he requested

To the persons shown above we can add the inanimate *ḥeyq* form, which is always the same as *ḥeq* (inanimate plural rule, see 1/5); it is used only where it can make sense, e.g. (*hiya*) *khárajat ḥey* (animals, things) went outq (*hiya*) *ṭili9at ḥey* went upq Since it is completely regular, it is not shown separately in the verb tables in this book.

The past tense is also called, in some books, the *perfect* tense.

7. Verbs with root letter *hámza*

Verbs which have as initial or middle root letter *hámza* (‘ – see Pronunciation) count as sound verbs in spoken Arabic. We have encountered in the past tense:

Root ‘ *m r*, basic form ‘*amar* to order:

‘*amárt*, ‘*amárt*/‘*amárti*, ‘*amar*/‘*amarat*; ‘*amárna*, ‘*amártū*, ‘*amarū*
I, you, he, she; we, you, they (have/has) ordered

Root ‘ *kh dh*, basic form ‘*akhadh* to take:

‘*akhádht*, ‘*akhádht*/‘*akhádhti*, ‘*akhadh*/‘*akhadhat*;
‘*akhádhna*, ‘*akhádhntū*, ‘*akhadhū*

I, you, he, she; we, you, they took, have/has taken

Root *s ’ l*, basic form *sá’al* to ask, enquire:

sa’ált, *sa’ált*/*sa’álti*, *sá’al*/*sá’alat*; *sa’álna*, *sa’áltū*, *sá’alū*

I, you, he, she; we, you, they (have/has) asked, enquired

To these we can add the common verb ‘*akal* to eatq root ‘ *k l*:

‘*akált*, ‘*akált*/‘*akálti*, ‘*akal*/‘*akalat*; ‘*akálna*, ‘*akáltū*, ‘*akalū*

I, you, he, she; we, you, they ate, have/has eaten

Verbs with *hámza* as final root letter behave differently. We study them later.

8. Initial-*w* verbs

Verbs with initial root letter *w* (‘initial-*w* verbs’) follow the sound-verb pattern in the past tense. Examine:

Root *w ṣ l*, basic form *wiṣil* to arrive:

wiṣilt, *wiṣilt*/w*ṣilti*, *wiṣil*/w*ṣilat*; *wiṣilna*, *wiṣiltū*, *wiṣilū*

I, you, he, she; we, you, they (have/has) arrived

Root *w j d* basic form *wájad* to find:

wajādt, *wajādt*/w*ajādti*, *wájad*/w*ájadat*; *wajādtna*, *wajādtū*, *wájadū*

I, you, he, she; we, you, they (have/has) found

9. Negative of the past tense

Any verb in the past tense can be made negative by putting the particle *mā* before it:

<i>mā 9irift</i>	I didnq know	<i>mā wiṣilū?</i>	havenq they arrived?
<i>mā ’akálna</i>	we didnq eat		

10. Use of the past tense.

The past tense is used in Arabic for any completed action or situation:

<i>mā wiṣilū 9āla l-waqt.</i>	They didn't arrive/haven't arrived on time.
<i>'akhādht al-fulṭis?</i>	Did you take/Have you taken the money?
<i>mā 9irif al-9unwān.</i>	He did not know the address.

It can be used for pluperfect actions (± had done):

<i>ba9d mā kátab 'ismī, 'akhādht al-miftāḥ.</i>	After he wrote/had written my name, I took the key.
---	---

A pluperfect tense exists, but it is little used. We learn it later.

11. Long vowel

The long vowel rule (2/10) applies to the endings of verbs, as it does everywhere else:

<i>tárukū</i>	they left	but:	<i>táruku l-maṭār.</i>	They left the airport.
<i>'akáltū</i>	you ate	but:	<i>'akáltu l-fuṭūr?</i>	Have you eaten breakfast?

12. Word-order

The subject of a verb (i.e. the person or thing performing the action or experiencing the situation) usually precedes its verb, as in English:

<i>ar-rukkāb wiṣilū.</i>	The passengers have arrived.
--------------------------	------------------------------

But the verb may precede the subject in two possible circumstances; either to emphasise the verb:

<i>wiṣilu r-rukkāb.</i>	The passengers (really) have arrived.
-------------------------	---------------------------------------

or when the subject is much longer than the verb:

<i>ba9d mā kátab muwázẓaf al-istiqbāl 'ismī u 9unwānī ...</i>	After the reception clerk wrote my name and address ...
---	---

This word-order is borrowed from written Arabic, in which it is common.

13. Sound plurals of nouns

In 1/10 we studied the sound masculine plural pattern of certain adjectives. Some masculine nouns denoting people ('sound masculine animate nouns') also make their plural on this pattern:

- for sing. ending *-ī*, add *-yīn*:

<i>ṣūḥufī</i>	a journalist	<i>ṣuḥufīyīn</i>	journalists
<i>mīṣrī</i>	an Egyptian	<i>mīṣrīyīn</i>	Egyptians
- for any other sing. ending, add *-īn*:

<i>muḥándīs</i>	an engineer	<i>muḥandīsīn</i>	engineers
<i>al-musāfir</i>	the traveller	<i>al-musāfirīn</i>	the travellers

Sound masculine *inanimate* nouns, and all sound feminine nouns whether animate or inanimate, make their plural on the so-called sound feminine pattern.

This pattern is found only with nouns:

- for f. sing. ending *-a*, substitute *-āt*:

<i>ṣuḥufīya</i>	a journalist (f.)	<i>ṣuḥufīyāt</i>	journalists
<i>mīṣrīya</i>	an Egyptian lady	<i>mīṣrīyāt</i>	Egyptian ladies
<i>ash-shárika</i>	the company	<i>ash-sharikāt</i>	the companies

<i>as-sayyāra</i>	the car	<i>as-sayyarāt</i>	the cars
• for the (very rare) m. sing. ending <i>-a</i> , add <i>-yāt</i> :			
<i>al-māsa</i>	the evening	<i>al-masayāt</i>	the evenings
• for any other sing. ending, add <i>-āt</i> :			
<i>maṭār</i>	airport	<i>maṭārāt</i>	airports

All sound plurals, masculine and feminine, are stressed on the ending.

The following nouns learned so far (in addition to those given above) have sound plurals, animate or inanimate:

- all *nisba* adjectives used as nouns, except *'amayrkī*, *'inglīzī*, *hindī* and *9ārabī* in the masculine (plurals *'amayrkān*, *'inglīz*, *hunūd* and *9ārab*);
- all nouns ending in *-a* except *ghūrfa*, *'ouḍa* and *tādhkara*;
- all nouns beginning with *mu-*, except *mudīr*;
- *'asansāyr*, *'utāyl*, *bawwāb*, *doulār*, *ḥammāl*, *ḥammām*, *ḥisāb*, *jawāz*, *jīnāyh*, *ma'mūr*, *riyāl*, *sawwāq*, *ṣabāḥ*, *tāksī*, *vīza*.

The other nouns learned so far have so-called 'broken' (= irregular) plurals, which we shall study later.

The only difference between sound noun plural and sound adjective plural endings is that nouns also have the sound feminine ending *-āt*.

In Arabic the plural noun does not denote more than *one* but more than *two* of a kind; for two of a kind we use not the plural, but the dual form of the noun, which is studied in Lesson 4.

14. Verbs with plural subjects

The inanimate plural rule (1/5) holds for the third person of verbs:

<i>al-musāfirīn dākhalu l-maṭār.</i>	The travellers	} entered the airport.
<i>as-sayyārāt dākhalat al-maṭār.</i>	The cars	

15. Time expressions

mundh and *min* are used with present time-sequence for a situation beginning in the past and lasting into the present:

hūwa hunāk mundh/min waqt ṭawīl. He ϕ been there (since) a long time.

qabl before an expression of time means \pm . ago for a past action or situation:

wiṣilū qabl shahr. They arrived a month ago.

16. 'to ask'

Distinguish between the two verbs meaning \pm ask

<i>sā'al</i>	to ask a question, to enquire
<i>ṭālab min</i>	to ask for something, to request

sā'al takes two direct objects*; *ṭālab* has one direct object (the thing sought), and one prepositional object* (the person asked) after *min*:

sa'alt ar-rākib 'ismu. ṭālab at-tādhkara min ar-rākib.

* a direct object is the person or thing directly affected by the action of the verb; a prepositional object is indirectly affected, i.e. through a preposition such as \pm o, with, from

17. *kthīr* ‘much, many’

This adjective has a regular feminine but a ‘broken’ plural: f. *kthīra*, pl. *kthār*. But it is common to use the masculine *kthīr* for all forms:

<i>waqt ikthīr</i> (m.)	<i>qāhwa kthīr</i> (f.)
<i>fulūs ikthīr</i> (inan. pl.)	<i>nās ikthīr</i> (an. pl.)

The following paragraph explains the initial vowel of forms like *ikthīr*.

18. Transition vowel

When three consonants form a block which is difficult to pronounce, a transition or relief vowel is introduced after the first of the consonants. This vowel is *i*, which is never stressed. Examine:

	<i>‘ākhadhu kthīr</i>	(no block)
but:	<i>(nās kthīr)</i>	(block <i>s-k-th</i>) → <i>nās ikthīr</i>
	<i>shānta ṣghīra</i>	(no block)
but:	<i>shantāt iṣghīra</i>	(block <i>t-ṣ-gh</i>)
	<i>ḥadrīt-ha, ḥadrāt-hum</i>	(no block)
but:	<i>ḥāḍirtu, ḥāḍirtak</i>	(block <i>d-r-t</i>)
	<i>shānta kbīra</i>	(no block)
but:	<i>ash-shānta li-kbīra</i>	(block <i>l-k-b</i>)

This explains the apparently anomalous stress of words like *fāḍilkum* (Lesson 1) and *ḥāḍirtak/tik* (Lesson 2), and the alternative forms for e.g. *kthīr*, *ṣghīr* and *kbīr* given in the vocabulary.

When neighbouring consonants in the block are identical or compatible, we pronounce without the transition vowel:

ash-shānta ṣ-ṣghīra *kīs ṣghīr* *‘akhādhkt tāksī*.

19. *jūmal mithālīya* – Model sentences

‘akhādhna l-‘asansāyr u nizīlna ‘ila māsbaḥ al-‘utāyl.

We took the lift and went down to the hotel swimming-pool.

kamān baṭṭānīya fī ghūrftī, law samāht.

Another blanket in my room, please.

kayf māt9am al-‘utāyl, ‘akāltū fī?

How9 the hotel restaurant, have you eaten in it?

rukkāb aṭ-tayyāra l-miṣrīya wīsilū, walākin ba9d kam waqt tāraku l-‘utāyl.

The passengers of the Egyptian aircraft arrived, but after some time they left the hotel.

9ind al-istiqbāl sá‘alū ‘ismī u 9unwānī fī ‘amāyrka.

At Reception they asked my name and address in America.

20. *at-tamārīn* – Exercises

🔊 1. Make definite constructs:

e.g.: *bāb*, ‘utāyl – *bāb al-‘utāyl*

(a) *shantāt*, *musāfir* (b) *sayyāra*, *mudīrna* (c) *miṭfāḥ*, ‘ouḍa, fu’ād

(d) jádwal, ṭayyārāt (e) jawāz, rākib

2. Make definite constructs with the noun *ṭālib*:

e.g.: 'ism – 'ism aṭ-ṭālib

(a) shānta (b) shantāt (c) 'aghrāḍ
(d) tádhkara (e) ghúrfa



3. Make plural:

e.g.: muhándis – muhandisīn

(a) mu9állim (b) sayyāra (c) mu9állima
(d) maṭār (e) musāfir

4. Make plural:

e.g.: wiṣil. – wiṣilū.

(a) dākhalat. (b) āna nizilt. (c) shū 'amārti?
(d) 'int mā dafā9t. (e) aṭ-ṭayyāra ṭili9at 9ala l-waqt.

5. Make singular:

e.g.: musāfirīn – musāfir

(a) mu9allimāt (b) maṭārāt (c) miṣrīyīn
(d) muhandisīn (e) 9ārab



6. Make negative:

e.g.: tárak al-'utáyil al-youm. – mā tárak al-'utáyil al-youm.

(a) wajádt as-sayyāra. (b) dakhált al-ghúrfa? (c) fī rukkāb ikthír.
(d) at-táksī wiṣil 'ilak. (e) al-musāfirīn nízilū min aṭ-ṭayyāra.



7. Give the opposite:

e.g.: 'amām al-bināya – wāra l-bināya

dakhált al-ghúrfa. – kharájt min al-ghúrfa.

(a) rikíbt at-táksī. (b) dākhlil al-júmruk (c) aṭ-ṭayyāra nízilat.
(d) fouq al-fārsha (e) 'íla l-bálad



8. Add the adjective 'urubbī, making it agree:

e.g.: muhandisīn – muhandisīn 'urubbīyīn

(a) sayyāra (b) sayyārāt (c) 'iḥna
(d) rukkāb (e) 'inti

ad-dars ar-rābi9 . Lesson 4

fi l-balad . In Town

1. *al-ḥiwār*

	<i>9afwan</i>	(also:) excuse me
	<i>tánmiya</i>	development
	<i>simi9</i>	to hear
	<i>qarīb min</i>	near to
	<i>huna</i>	here
Peter:	9afwan, wayn bank at-tánmiya?	Excuse me, where is the Development Bank?
	simi9t 'innu qarīb min huna.	I heard it was near here.
	<i>shakhṣ</i>	person
	<i>shāri9</i>	street
	<i>mazbūṭ</i>	correct
	<i>mish</i>	not
	<i>ba9īd 9an</i>	far from
	<i>thālith</i>	third
	<i>yamīn</i>	right
	<i>raqm</i>	number
	<i>tis9a</i>	nine
shakhṣ	mazbūṭ, mish ba9īd 9an huna.	That's correct, it's not far
fi sh-shāri9:	al-bank fi sh-shāri9 ath-thālith	from here. The Bank's
	9ala yamīnak. bināya kbīra,	on the third street on
	raqm tis9a.	your right. A big building,
		number nine.
	<i>ba9dayn</i>	then, afterwards
	<i>9alayy</i>	(here:) I have
	<i>mou9id</i>	appointment
	<i>sifāra</i>	embassy
	<i>brīṭānī</i>	British
Peter:	u ba9dayn 9alayy mou9id	Then I have an
	fi s-sifāra l-brīṭānīya.	appointment at the
		British Embassy.
	<i>hādhi</i>	this, that
	<i>hādha l-ḥayy</i>	this quarter/part
		of town
	<i>'aḥsan</i>	better
ash-shakhṣ:	hādhi mish fi hādha l-ḥayy.	That's not in this part of
	'aḥsan 'ilak bi t-taksī.	town. For you it's better
		by taxi.
Peter:	shukran jazīlan.	Thank you very much.
ash-shakhṣ:	9afwan.	Don't mention it.
	<i>sayyida</i>	lady

	<i>bouṣṭa</i> <i>intáḡir, intázir</i> <i>shwayy</i> <i>'ayna9am</i>	post office wait a little = <i>na9am</i>
Peter:	9afwan yā sayyidatī, fī bouṣṭa huna?	Excuse me, maḡam, is there a post office here?
as-sayyida:	bouṣṭa? intáḡir shwayy. 'ayna9am.	A post office? Wait a bit. Yes.
	<i>'ishāra</i> <i>murūr</i> <i>mish kadha?</i> <i>'imshī</i> <i>shimāl</i> <i>mitr</i> hunāk 'ishārat murūr, mish kadha? 'imshī 'ila shimālak 9ind al-'ishāra, wa l-bouṣṭa ba9d kam mitr, 9ala shimālak,	signal, sign traffic isn't that so? walk (here:) go left metre There's a traffic light over there, isn't there? Go to your left at the light, and the post office is after a few metres, on your left,
	<i>sitta</i> <i>sab9a</i> <i>mamnūn</i> <i>kthīr</i> <i>shī</i> <i>mā fī shī</i> raqm sitta, sab9a, kadha.	six seven grateful (also:) very thing there's nothing. number six, seven, something like that.
Peter:	mamnūn ikthīr	l'm very grateful.
as-sayyida:	9afwan. mā fī shī.	Don't mention it. It's nothing.
	— <i>9ala ra'sī</i> <i>ya9nī</i> <i>khamṣa</i> <i>9ashra</i> <i>daqāyiq</i>	(on my head here:) certainly it means, that is to say five ten minutes
Peter:	'ila s-sifāra l-brīṭānīya, min faḡlak	To the British Embassy, please.
as-sawwāq:	9ala ra'sī.	Certainly
Peter:	ba9īd, ya9nī?	Is it far?
as-sawwāq:	la', khamṣa, 9ashra daqāyiq.	No, five, ten minutes.
Peter:	ṭayyib.	Good.
as-sawwāq:	9afwan yā sīdī, ḡadirtak 'amayrkī?	Excuse me sir, are you

Peter:	la', 'inglīzī, min Cambridge, simi9t 9annu?	American? No, British, from Cambridge. Have you heard of it?
	<i>ṭab9an</i> <i>jāmi9a</i> <i>ma9rūf</i> <i>fa</i> <i>daras</i> <i>lugha</i>	of course university famous so, then to study language
as-sawwāq:	ṭab9an, jāmi9a ma9rūfa. fa wayn darast al-lugha l-9arabīya?	Of course, a famous university. So where did you study the Arabic language?
	<i>darast-ha</i> <i>dimashq</i> <i>sana</i> <i>wallāhi</i> <i>9imilt-ha</i> <i>lahja</i> <i>jamīl</i>	I studied it Damascus year Good Heavens you did it accent beautiful
Peter:	darast-ha fī sūriya, fī dimashq. qabl kam sana.	I studied it in Syria, in Damascus. A few years ago.
as-sawwāq:	wallāhi, 9imilt-ha kwayyis jiddan. 9indak lahja jamīla.	Good Heavens, you did it very well. You have a good accent.
	<i>laṭīf</i> <i>ṣaḥīḥ</i>	kind (adjective) true
Peter:	laṭīf jiddan.	Very kind (of you).
as-sawwāq:	ṣaḥīḥ ya9nī.	But it's true.
	<i>hayāna</i> <i>tākhudh</i> <i>dīnārayn</i> <i>fakka</i> hayāna, hādhi hiya s-sifāra l-brīṭānīya.	here we are you take two dinars small change Here we are, this is the British Embassy.
Peter:	kam tākhudh?	How much do I owe you?
as-sawwāq:	'ilak, dīnārayn.	For you, two dinars.
Peter:	hay khamsa. 9indak fakka?	Here are five. Have you got change?
	<i>mā9alaysh</i>	never mind, all right

as-sawwāq:	mā9alaysh, 9indī. tfaḍḍal. ma9 as-salāma.	That's all right, I've got (some). Here you are. Goodbye.
Peter:	shukran, 'alla yisallimak.	Thank you, goodbye.

2. 9ibārāt

mish kadha? Isn't that so?

mamnūn ikthīr, mamnūna kthīr, mamnūnīn ikthīr I/qn/We're very grateful.

mā fī shī (stress on *mā*) It's nothing.

9ala ra'sī (on my head) Certainly (complying with a request). Note also, with the same meaning: *9ala 9aynī* on my eye

ṭab9an (naturally) of course

ya9nī (it means) that is to say. Also *9er ...* (looking for one's word).

wallāhi (by God) Good Heavens. Expresses surprise or admiration.

kam tākhudh? How much do you charge (take)?

mā9alaysh Never mind. Also a question, *mā9alaysh?* You don't mind?

3. mufradāt 'iḍāfiya

al-balad wa l-bināyāt wa l-ma'mūrīn – Town, buildings, officials

<i>madkhal</i>	entrance	<i>makhraj</i>	exit
<i>maktab</i>	office	<i>ra'īsī</i>	principal, main
<i>maktaba</i>	library, bookshop	<i>maḥallāt</i> (pl.)	department store
<i>mustashfa</i>	(masc.) hospital	<i>mafraḡ</i>	crossroad
<i>dukkān</i>	shop	<i>markaz</i>	centre
<i>shurṭī</i>	policeman	<i>ash-shurṭa, al-būlīs</i>	police force
<i>mouqif baṣ</i>	bus stop	<i>makhzan</i>	warehouse
<i>sāḡa, maydān</i>	square	<i>jīs</i>	bridge
<i>maṣjid</i>	mosque	<i>kanīsa</i>	church
<i>timthāl</i>	statue	<i>saḡīr</i>	ambassador
<i>qunṣulīya</i>	consulate	<i>qunṣul</i>	consul
<i>wakāla</i>	agency	<i>wakīl</i>	agent
<i>wizāra</i>	ministry	<i>wazīr</i>	minister
<i>wizārat/wazīr:</i>	Ministry/Minister of:		
<i>aṣ-ṣinā9a</i>	Industry	<i>al-9amal*</i>	Labour
<i>at-tijāra</i>	Trade	<i>ad-diḡa9</i>	Defence
<i>az-zirā9a</i>	Agriculture	<i>at-tārbiya</i>	Education
<i>aṣ-ṣiḡḡa</i>	Health	<i>ad-dākhilīya**</i>	Interior
<i>al-mālīya**</i>	Finance	<i>al-khārijīya**</i>	Foreign Affairs

* also, popularly, *wizārat/wazīr ash-shughl* (shughl = work).

** abbreviated titles; in full, *wizārat/wazīr al-'umūr ad-dākhilīya/al-mālīya/ al-khārijīya* ('umūr = affairs).

an-naḡū

4. Demonstratives

Here are the demonstrative adjectives or pronouns *this*, *that*, *these*, *those*

	masculine	feminine	plural
this, these	<i>hādha</i>	<i>hādhi</i>	<i>hadhoul</i>
that, those	<i>hadhāk</i>	<i>hadhīk</i>	<i>hadhulāk</i>

The inanimate plural rule (1/5) applies here. The demonstrative adjective precedes its noun, which always has the article:

hādha l-maktab this office *hādhi s-sayyida* this lady
hadhoul an-nās these people *hādhi sh-shantāt* these cases
hadhāk (etc.) is used only when remoteness is emphasised; otherwise we use *hādha* (etc.) for both ~~th~~is/these and ~~th~~at/those

When used as a pronoun (i.e. with no noun), the demonstrative has the appropriate gender and number of the inferred noun:

hādha tayyib. This is good.
hādhi tayyiba. This is/These are good. (of things)
hadhoul tayyibīn. These are good. (of people)

If the noun is unknown, the masculine is used:

shū hādha? What is this?

For ~~th~~is is ... we restate with a pronoun. This is optional if the noun does not carry an article, but obligatory when it does:

hādha (huwa) kitāb/kitābī. This is a book/my book.

but: *hādha huwa l-kitāb.* This is the book.

since *hādha l-kitāb* ... means only ~~th~~is book ... and is not a full sentence.

5. *hādha* in constructs

When a demonstrative adjective qualifies the attribute (i.e. the last noun) of a construct (3/4), it precedes that noun, interrupting the construct:

ṭarīq hādha l-balad *raqm hādhi s-sayyāra*

When it qualifies the theme (i.e. any earlier noun in the construct), it must follow the whole construct;

ṭarīq al-balad hādha/hādhi this road to town
raqm as-sayyāra hādha this car number

Demonstrative rule: A demonstrative is the only word which may interrupt a construct.

6. Object pronouns

A direct object pronoun (~~me~~, him etc) takes the form of a suffix attached to the verb. These suffixes are identical to the possessive suffixes (2/8), except for ~~me~~ which is *-nī*:

sa'alnī, sa'alak/sa'alik, sa'alu/sa'alha; sa'alna, sa'alkum, sa'alhum
 he asked me, you, him (etc.)

When the verb form ends in a vowel, that vowel is stressed and the suffixes beginning with a vowel take the same form as with *fī*:

sa'alūnī, sa'alūk/sa'alūki, sa'alū, sa'alūha; sa'alūna, sa'alūkum, sa'alūhum
 they asked me, you, him (etc.)

<i>sa 'alīnī, sa 'alī/sa 'alīha</i>	you asked me, him, her
<i>sa 'alnā.</i>	We asked him.
<i>sa 'altū?</i>	Did you ask him?
<i>sa 'alīhum?</i>	Did you ask them?

Object pronoun rule: A vocalic verb-ending before a pronoun suffix is always long and stressed.

7. 'inn: Indirect statements

A *direct statement* quotes another's words verbatim: **He** said: %am ill+q An *indirect statement* paraphrases: **He** said that he was ill.q

The conjunction 'inn **that**q is used to introduce indirect statements. A pronoun following 'inn is expressed as a direct-object suffix attached to it. The second *n* is dropped before -nī and -na:

'innī, 'innak/'innik, 'innu/'innha; 'inna, 'innkum, 'innhum
that I, you, he, she; we, you, they ...

Indirect statement follows not only a verb of saying, but also a verb of perceiving. Further, in the Arabic indirect statement we retain the time-sequence or tense of the original statement. Compare the Arabic and English:

simī9t 'innu qarīb min huna. I heard that it was (**is**) near here.
'irifna 'innkum fi l-maktab. We knew you were (**are**) in the office.

We can omit the conjunction, as in English; we then use the subject (i.e. personal) pronoun:

simī9t, huwa qarīb min huna. *'irifna, 'intū fi l-maktab.*

The construction with 'inn is considered more elegant.

Indirect speech rule: In indirect speech the verb retains the tense of the original speaker.

8. walākin

The conjunction *walākin*, meaning **but**q can also take the appropriate object-pronoun suffix; its final -*n* doubles before a suffix beginning with a vowel:

walākinnī, walākinnak/walākinnik, walākinnu/walākinnu;
walākinna, walākinkum, walākinhum
but I, you, he, she; we, you, they ...

With *walākin*, the suffix is not obligatory as with 'inn:

walākin(nī) mā 'irift qarīq al-balad.

9. 9ala

9ala + pronoun suffix can mean **to** have as an obligationq

9alayna mou9id mā9 as-saḡr. *al-qunṣul, 9alāy shughl ikthīr al-youm.*
9alayk. (It's) up to you (to do, to decide etc.)

Note also the shortened form *9a* + definite noun, meaning **to**q

9a dimashq to Damascus *9a l-bank* to the bank

10. *hay*

hay + pronoun suffix takes the form *hayā-*:

hayānī, hayāk/hayākī, hayā/hayāha; hayāna, hayākum, hayāhum
here I am, here you are (etc.)

11. Numbers

Cardinal numbers (i.e. those denoting a quantity) from 0 to 10 are:

0	<i>ṣifr</i>		
1	m. <i>wāḥid</i> , f. <i>wāḥida</i>	2	m. <i>ithnāyn</i> , f. <i>thintāyn</i>
3	<i>thalātha</i>	4	<i>'ārba9a</i>
5	<i>khāmsa</i>	6	<i>sitta</i>
7	<i>sāb9a</i>	8	<i>thamāniya</i>
9	<i>tis9a</i>	10	<i>9āshra</i>

Note:

- 0 is a noun, and cannot be used with a further noun.
- 1 follows its noun and agrees with it: *ghurfā wāḥida dīnār wāḥid*
- 2 has masculine and feminine forms, used mostly in counting, otherwise the quantity ~~two~~ is better expressed with the dual of the noun; see below.
- 3 to 10 inclusive are invariable for gender; the counted noun follows them if indefinite:

thalātha muhandisīn three engineers
tis9a shantāt nine suitcases

But if the noun is definite, the number behaves like an adjective:

rukkābna l- 'ārba9a our four passengers
al-bināyāt al-jamīla th-thamāniya the eight beautiful buildings

12. Dual

The quantity ~~two~~ is normally expressed with the *dual* form of the noun itself. All nouns, whether sound or not, form the dual with the stressed ending *-āyn* added to the singular, as follows:

- nouns ending in a consonant, add *-āyn*:
saḡfīrāyn two ambassadors
- masculine nouns ending in *-ī* or *-a*, add *-yāyn*:
ṣuḡḡfīyāyn two journalists *mustaḡḡḡfayāyn* two hospitals
- feminine nouns ending in *-a* (not *-ta/ṭa*), substitute *-tāyn*:
mu9allimātāyn two teachers *sayyārtāyn* two cars
- feminine nouns ending in *-ta/ṭa*, add *-tāyn*:
shantatāyn two suitcases

When adding a possessive suffix to a dual noun, drop the final *-n* and follow the pattern of *9ala* (2/8):

kitābāyya, kitābāyk/kitābāyki, kitābāy/kitābāyha;
kitābāyna, kitābāykum, kitābāyhum both my, your (etc.) books

Adjectives qualifying dual nouns of any kind are always in the *animate plural* form:

wazīrāyn 'almānīyīn two German ministers
sayyārtayn 'almānīyīn two German cars

hadhoul al-kitābayn

these two/both these books

Dual noun rule: An adjective (including a demonstrative) qualifying a dual noun is always in the animate plural form, even when the noun itself is inanimate.

13. *mish*

To negate any word or expression other than a verb, we use not *mā* but *mish* preceding the negated word or expression. We also use *mish* to negate the inferred verb **to be** in present time:

al-bank mish ba9īd 9an huna.

The bank isn't far from here.

mish sitta, walākin sab9a.

Not six, but seven.

mish 'ana!

Not I/me!

mish kadha?

Isn't that so?

14. Adverbs

Many common adjectives can be used, in the m. sing. form, as adverbs (see 1/11). This is true of *kwayyis* and *kthūr*, among others:

shughlha kwayyis.

Her work is *good*. (adjective)

9imilat shughlha kwayyis.

She did her work *well*. (adverb)

The adverb *kthūr* ~~very~~ may precede the modified word, breaking the qualifying word rule (1/11):

shughlha kwayyis ikthūr/kthūr kwayyis.

9imilat shughlha kwayyis ikthūr/kthūr kwayyis.

Some adverbs can be repeated to show intensity:

kthūr ikthūr

very much, lots and lots

shwayy ishwayy

little by little, gradually

15. *jumal mithālīya*

ba9d mou9idu ma9 as-safīr, kharaj
min as-safāra u 'akhadh taksī
'ila wizārat al-khārijīya.

After his appointment with the
ambassador, he left the
embassy and took a taxi to
the Ministry of Foreign
Affairs.

fī sitta wizārāt u sifārtayn fī ḥayy al-balad
hādha.

There are six ministries and
two embassies in this part of
town.

'imshī 9ala yamīnak 9ind al-'ishāra
wa maktabna 9ala shimālak.
thamāniya rukkāb wiṣilū ba9d mā ṭili9at
aṭ-ṭayyāra.

Go right at the lights and our
office is on your left.
Eight passengers arrived after
the aeroplane had taken off.

kharaj min al-jāmi9a, walākinnu mā wajaḍ
shughl khilāl waqt ṭawīl.

He came out of university but
found no work for a long
time.

16. *at-tamārīn*1. Add the right form of *hādha*:

e.g.: dukkān – hādha d-dukkān

- | | | |
|-------------|------------------------|--------------------|
| (a) shurṭī | (b) madkhal | (c) wazīr al-9amal |
| (d) timthāl | (e) sayyāra 'amayrkīya | |



2. Add the object pronoun suffix:

e.g.: 9irift (huwa) – 9iriftu

- | | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|------------------|
| (a) 9irifna (huwa) | (b) mā katabna (hiya) | (c) simi9 ('ana) |
| (d) ṭalabū min ('int) | (e) shū sa'altū (huwa)? | |



3. Make the sentence negative:

e.g.: wiṣilū – mā wiṣilū. huwa mabsūt – huwa mish mabsūt

- | | | |
|----------------------|-------------------------|----------------------|
| (a) dakhalt al-bank. | (b) hādha kthīr 9alayk. | (c) fī 9indak fakka? |
| (d) katabu kwayyis. | (e) shughlu kwayyis. | |



4. Make dual:

e.g.: tadkhkara – tadhkartayn; al-mu9allim – al-mu9allimayn

- | | | |
|-------------|------------------------|--------------|
| (a) sayyāra | (b) sayyāra 'amayrkīya | (c) al-balad |
| (d) ṣuḥufī | (e) kitābu | |

5. Put the number with the noun:

e.g.: maḥall (3) – thalātha maḥallāt

- | | | |
|----------------|----------------------|---------------|
| (a) shanta (1) | (b) muhandis (4) | (c) rākib (2) |
| (d) shurṭī (6) | (e) al-mustashfa (5) | |

ad-dars al-khāmis . Lesson 5

fi l-maktab . In the Office

1. al-ḥiwār

(Peter calls at the Amman office to start his assignment.)

	<i>ʿabdarraḥmān</i>	Abdarrahman (name)
	<i>ʿashkurak</i>	I thank you
	<i>luṭfī</i>	Lutfi (name)
	<i>fannī</i>	technical
ʿabdarraḥmān:	<i>ʾahlan yā sayyid Brown. tfaḍḍal.</i>	Welcome, Mr Brown. Please come in.
Peter:	<i>ʾashkurak.</i>	Thank you.
ʿabdarraḥmān:	<i>ʾana ʿabdarraḥmān luṭfī, al-mudīr al-fannī. kayf al-ḥāl?</i>	Iʿan Abdarrahman Lutfi, the Technical Manager. How are you?
Peter:	<i>mabsūṭ jiddan, shukran. kayf ḥālak ʾint?</i>	Very well, thank you. How are you?
	<i>al-ḥamdulilla</i>	= (al-)ḥamdilla
	<i>jawla</i>	tour
	<i>khallīnī</i>	let me
	<i>ʾashraḥ</i>	I explain
	<i>tanzīm</i>	organisation
ʿabdarraḥmān:	<i>al-ḥamdulilla. tfaḍḍal. yā sayyid Peter, qabl jawltak fi l-bināya, khallīnī ʾashraḥ lak tanzīm u shughl ash-sharika,</i>	Fine, thank you. Mr Brown, before your tour of the building, let me explain to you the organisation and work of the company,
	<i>ḥatta</i>	(also:) so that
	<i>fikra</i>	idea, thought
	<i>ṣūra</i>	picture, form, shape
	<i>ʿāmm</i>	general, public
	<i>ḥatta tākhudh fikra ʿan ash-sharika bi ṣūra ʿāmma.</i>	so that you get (take) an idea of the company in general.
	<i>tiẓhar</i>	it appears
	<i>kull</i>	whole
Peter:	<i>min al-kharij tiẓhar ash-sharika kbīra. kam shakhṣ fī, fī kull ash-sharika?</i>	From the outside the company looks big. How many people are there, in the whole company?
	<i>mīya</i>	hundred
	<i>tisʿīn</i>	ninety

	<i>qism</i>	division, department
	<i>khamst9ashr</i>	fifteen
	<i>9ishrīn</i>	twenty
9abdarrahmān:	mish ikthīr, mīya u tis9īn muwazzaf. kam qism 9indu khamst9ashr, 9ishrīn shakhṣ bas.	Not many, 190 employees. Some departments have only fifteen or twenty people.
	<i>mas'ul 9an</i>	responsible for
	<i>takhṭīṭ</i>	planning
	<i>kama</i>	as
	<i>ta9raf</i>	you know
	<i>moujūd</i>	present
	<i>thalāthīn</i>	thirty
	<i>9idda</i>	number
	<i>mutakhaṣṣiṣ</i>	specialising, specialist
	<i>ḍarūrī</i>	essential, vital
	walākin hādha l-qism mas'ul 9an at-takhṭīṭ, kama ta9raf. 9indna moujūdīn thalāthīn muwazzaf. 9iddit-hum mutakhaṣṣiṣīn fi t-takhṭīṭ al-fannī. hādha ḍarūrī 'ilna.	But this divisionṣ responsible for planning, as you know. We have thirty staff. A number of them are specialists in technical planning. Thatṣ essential for us.
	<i>tudkhul</i>	she enters
	<i>maryam</i>	Maryam (name)
	<i>sikritayra</i>	secretary
	<i>ta9rafī</i>	you know
	<i>hilāl</i>	Hilal (name)
(tudkhul maryam, sikritayrat al-mudīr.)		(Maryam, the managerṣ secretary, comes in.)
maryam:	'ismah lī yā 9abdarrahmān.	Excuse me, Abdarrahman.
9abdarrahmān:	yā maryam, mā ta9rafi s-sayyid Peter Brown, mutakhaṣṣiṣ min mutakhaṣṣiṣīnna min Cambridge. yā Peter, sikritayrtī maryam hilāl.	Maryam, you donṣ know Mr Peter Brown, one of our specialists from Cambridge. Peter, my secretary Maryam Hilal.
	<i>ma9riḥa</i>	knowledge, acquaintance
	<i>furṣa</i>	occasion, opportunity
	<i>sa9īd</i>	happy
maryam:	mabsūṭa bi ma9rifak, yā sayyid Peter. 'ahlan.	Iṣ pleased to meet you, Mr Brown. Welcome.

Peter:	furṣa sa9īda, yā sitt maryam. 'ahlan bīki. <i>muhimm</i> <i>su'āl</i> <i>'aktub bi l-mākīna</i> <i>jawāb</i> <i>risāla</i> <i>ad-douḥa</i>	Pleased to meet you also, Mrs Hilal. important question I type, lqṇ typing (w riting with the machineq reply letter Doha
9abdarraḥmān:	tfaḍḍalī yā maryam; fī shī muhimm?	Yes, Maryam, is there something important?
maryam:	su'āl iṣghīr, yā 9abdarraḥmān. 'aktub lak bi l-mākīna jawāb 'ila risālat al-wakīl fi d-douḥa. <i>maktūb</i> <i>mudda</i> <i>lāzim</i> <i>kalīma</i> <i>ghalaṭ</i> <i>'uktubī</i> walākin huna maktūb "li muddat shahr wāḥid". mish lāzim "shahrayn"?	A small question, Abdarrahman. lqṇ typing a reply to the agentq letter in Doha for you. written period of time necessary word mistake write But here itq written for a period of one monthq Shouldnq it be two monthsq Correct, Maryam. The words one month qare a mistake. Write two monthsq
9abdarraḥmān:	ṣaḥīḥ, yā maryam. kalīmāt "shahr wāḥid" ghalat. 'uktubī "shahrayn". <i>'aktubu</i> <i>tirja9</i> <i>mumtāz</i> <i>zouj</i> <i>hassa</i>	l(q) write it she returns excellent husband now
maryam:	shukran, 'aktubu kadha. (tirja9 li maktabha.)	Thank you. l(q) write it like that. (She returns to her office.)
9abdarraḥmān:	sikritayra mumtāza, u laṭīfa jiddan. zoujha 9indna fī qism al-mālīya. u hassa, yā Peter, tfaḍḍal ma9ī.	An excellent secretary, and very pleasant. Her husbandq with us in Finance Department. And now, Peter, please come with me.

2. *9ibārāt*

kayf al-ḥāl? How are you? (a less formal variant of *kayf ḥālak/ḥālik/ḥālkum?*) It is invariable for gender and number. Note also an even less formal variant *kayfak/kayfik/kayfkum?* which should be used only with close friends.

'akhadh fikra 9an to get an idea of.

bi šūra 9āmma in general.

mabsūṭ/mabsūṭa/mabsūṭin bi ma9rifak/ma9rifik/ma9rifikum. Pleased to meet you.

furṣa sa9īda (a happy occasion) Pleased to meet you.

9imil jawla fi to make a tour of

3. *mufradāt 'idāfiya*

al-'idāra l-9āmma wa l-khāṣṣa – Public and private administration

<i>'idāra</i>	administration	<i>qīṭā9</i>	sector
<i>al-qīṭā9 l-9āmm</i>	public sector	<i>barlamān</i>	parliament
<i>waṭan</i>	home country	<i>waṭanī</i>	national
<i>dawla</i>	state	<i>duwalī</i>	international
<i>siyāsa</i>	policy, politics	<i>siyāsī</i>	political
<i>mas'ūl</i>	official, person in charge	<i>mashghūl</i>	busy
<i>rasmī</i>	official (adjective)	<i>khāṣṣ</i>	special, private
<i>al- qīṭā9 al-khāṣṣ</i>	private sector	<i>mudīr 9āmm</i>	general manager
<i>'intāj</i>	production	<i>lajna</i>	committee
<i>shu 'ūn al-muwazzaṣīn</i>	personnel (matters)	<i>zamīl</i>	colleague
<i>baḥṭh</i>	discussion	<i>ijtimā9</i>	meeting
<i>mīzānīya</i>	budget	<i>nuskha</i>	copy
<i>milaḥḥ</i>	file	<i>barīd</i>	mail
<i>waraqa</i>	paper	<i>'āla kātiba, mākina</i>	typewriter
<i>kambyutir</i>	computer	<i>faks</i>	fax
<i>barīd 'iliktrounī, 'īmayl</i>	e-mail		

an-naḥū

4. Present tense of sound verbs

The Arabic present tense (أفعل, I am doing), often also called the *imperfect* tense, uses both personal prefixes and personal endings. Examine the present tense of *katab*:

(<i>'ana</i>)	<i>'aktub</i>	(<i>'ihna</i>)	<i>nuktub</i>
(<i>'int</i>)	<i>tuktub</i>	(<i>'intū</i>)	<i>tuktubū</i>
(<i>'inti</i>)	<i>tuktubī</i>		
(<i>huwa</i>)	<i>yuktub</i>	(<i>hum</i>)	<i>yuktubū</i>
(<i>hiya</i>)	<i>tuktub</i>		I, you, he, she (etc.) write(s)

The initial and middle (or first two) root letters come together throughout this tense, after the personal prefix. Examine now the present tense of three other verbs, *dafa9*, *9irif* and *nizil*:

<i>'adfa9, tidfa9/tidfa9ī, yidfa9/tifa9; nidfa9, tidfa9ū, yidfa9ū</i>
I, you, he (etc.) pay(s)
<i>'a9raf, ta9raf/ta9rafī, ya9raf/ta9raf; na9raf, ta9rafū, ya9rafū</i>

I, you, he (etc.) know(s)

'anzil, tinzil/tinzilī, yinzil/tinzil; ninzil, tinzilū, yinzilū

I, you, he (etc.) get(s) down

The vowels are different, except that the 'ana person always has *a* as its first vowel. Almost all sound verbs follow one or other of these four patterns; we shall use *katab* as the model for them all.

We shall indicate new verbs with the basic forms of the past and present tenses, thus: *katab yuktub*. These are the *principal parts* of the verb.

Principal parts of other sound verbs encountered so far:

'amar yu'mur	to order	daras yudrus	to study
dakhal yudkhul	to enter	kharaj yukhruj	to go/come out
tarak yutruk	to leave	shakar yushkur 9ala	to thank for
ṭalab yuṭlub min	to ask (request)	sa'al yis'al	to ask (enquire)
samah yismaḥ li	to permit	sharah yishrah	to explain
zahar yiẓhar	to appear	riji9 yirja9	to return
rikiḥ yirkab	to mount, get in	ṭili9 yiṭla9	to go/get up
simi9 yisma9	to hear	fataḥ yiftaḥ	to open
9imil yi9mal	to do/make		

5. Verbs with initial *hamza*

Two verbs with initial root letter *hamza* are irregular in the present, with *ā* instead of [*a'*]:

'akhadh yākhudh:

'ākhudh nākhudh

tākhudh tākhudhū

tākhudhī

yākhudh yākhudhū

tākhudh I, you, he (etc.) take(s)

'akal yākul:

'ākul nākul

tākul tākulū

tākulī

yākul yākulū

tākul I, you, he (etc.) eat(s)

The combination [*'a'*] always becomes 'ā. Thus the present tense of 'amar yu'mur is:

'āmur, tu'mur/tu'murī, yu'mur/tu'mur; nu'mur, tu'murū, yu'murū

I, you, he (etc.) order(s)

We have not yet examined verbs with final root letter *hamza*, which are different.

6. Present tense of initial-*w* verbs

In the present tense of initial-*w* verbs the initial root letter *w* vocalises to (i.e. becomes a vowel) *ū* except in the 'ana person, which also keeps the vowel of the personal prefix. Otherwise these verbs form their tenses like the sound verbs.

wiṣil yūṣal:

'awsal nūṣal

tūṣal tūṣalū

tūṣalī

yūṣal yūṣalū

tūṣal I, you, he (etc.) arrive(s)

wajad yūjid:

'awjid nūjid

tūjid tūjidū

tūjidī

yūjid yūjidū

tūjid I, you, he (etc.) find(s)

7. Negative of the present tense

Like the past tense, the present tense is negated by putting *mā* before the affirmative:

yudrusu l-9arabī. mā yudrusu l-9arabī. They (don't) study Arabic.

8. Use of the present tense

The present tense is used for all actions or situations occurring as they are reported, however expressed in English:

yūṣal al-youm. He arrives/is arriving today.

nirja9 li l-maktab. We're going back to the office.

It is also used for the near future:

'aktub al-jawāb al-youm. I'm writing/I'll write the answer today.

There is a separate future form, not consistently used, which we shall study later.

9. Imperative

The imperative or command form is derived from the present for all verbs. It exists only in the second persons (*'int*, *'inti*, *'intū*).

For the affirmative imperative of sound verbs, substitute *'* (*hamza*) for the initial *t*- of the second persons, thus:

tuktub, tuktubī, tuktubū you write

→ *'uktub, 'uktubī, 'uktubū* write

so also, e.g.:

'udkhul, 'udkhulī, 'udkhulū enter

'inzil, 'inzilī, 'inzilū get down, get off

The imperative of initial-*w* verbs having the form *wiṣil yūṣal* or *wajad yūjid* is not used in spoken Arabic; another form is used, which we shall study later.

Three verbs with initial root letter *hamza* drop everything before the middle root letter to make their imperatives:

mur murī murū order *kul kulī kulū* eat

khudh khudhī khudhū take

The *negative* imperative of all verbs without exception is made by putting the negative particle *lā* before the appropriate second-person form of the present:

lā tuktub, lā tuktubī, lā tuktubū don't write

You may hear some speakers use *mā* here. *lā* is better.

10. Pronoun suffixes

Verbs in the present tense and the imperative take object-pronoun suffixes following the rules already learned:

ya9rafūna kwayyīs. *mā tisma9hum?*

khudhu. *lā tuktubī*

11. *khallī-*

This verb, the structure of which we shall examine later, means 'let (me, him etc.)'. It is followed by the object pronoun (on the pattern of *fī*, see 2/8) and the present tense:

khallīnī, khallīk/khallīkī, khallī/khallīha; khallīna, khallīkum, khallīhum

<i>khallī yuktub al-jawāb.</i>	let me, you, him (etc.) ...
<i>khallī-</i> is an imperative, with a negative formed regularly with <i>lā</i> :	Let him write the reply.
<i>lā tkhallīhum yismaʿūk.</i>	Don't let them/Let them not hear you.
<i>khallī-</i> and <i>lā tkhallī-</i> are both m. sing. and f. sing. The plural is <i>khallū-</i> , <i>lā tkhallū-</i> , addressing a group:	
<i>lā tkhallū yudkhul.</i>	Don't (pl.) let him (come) in.

12. Numbers 11–199

Cardinal numbers above 10 and below 200 are:

11	<i>'iḥd9ashr</i>	12	<i>ithn9ashr</i>
13	<i>thalatt9ashr</i>	14	<i>'arba9t9ashr</i>
15	<i>khamst9ashr</i>	16	<i>sitt9ashr</i>
17	<i>saba9t9ashr</i>	18	<i>thamant9ashr</i>
19	<i>tisa9t9ashr</i>	20	<i>9ishrīn</i>
21	<i>wāḥid(a) u 9ishrīn</i>	22	<i>ithnayn/thintayn u 9ishrīn</i>
30	<i>thalāthīn</i>	35	<i>khamṣa u thalāthīn</i>
40	<i>'arba9īn</i>	50	<i>khamṣīn</i>
60	<i>sittīn</i>	70	<i>sab9īn</i>
80	<i>thamānīn</i>	90	<i>tis9īn</i>
100	<i>mīya</i>	123	<i>mīya u thalātha u 9ishrīn</i>

In combinations of tens and units, the unit number comes first. All counting elements are connected with *u*.

When the expression is *indefinite*:

- if the last stated number is 1, or is higher than 10, the noun is singular:
mīya u wāḥid muwazzaf 101 employees
mīya u sitta u thalāthīn muwazzaf 136 employees
- if the last stated number is 3 to 10, the noun stands in the plural:
mīya u khamṣa muwazzafīn 105 employees
- mīya* immediately before a noun becomes *mīt*:
mīt rākib 100 passengers

When the expression is *definite*, the number follows the noun, which is plural if the *entire number* is 3 or higher:

<i>al-muwazzafīn al-mīya u khamṣīn</i>	the 155 employees
<i>muwazzafīn ash-sharika l-mīya u tis9īn</i>	the 190 company employees
<i>muwazzafīn hum as-sitta u sab9īn</i>	their 76 employees

13. *lī*

The form *lī*, *lak* (etc.) is used to imply ~~on~~ on behalf of or ~~in~~ in the interest of or not necessarily expressed in English:

<i>ta9raf lī ma9am kwayyis?</i>	Do you know (for my information) a good restaurant?
<i>sa'alū lana l-mudīr.</i>	They asked the director for us/on our behalf.

14. Construct

Compound constructs exist, with more than one noun as either theme or

attribute:

tanẓīm u shughl ash-sharika (two themes)

the organisation and work of the company

shughl al-qism 'aw ash-sharika (two attributes)

the work of the division or (of) the company

Do not confuse the compound construct with the 'string' construct (*miftāḥ ghurfat aṭ-ṭabīb*, 3/4).

We can express ~~one~~ of ...qas follows:

mutakhaṣṣiṣ min mutakhaṣṣiṣīnna

one of our specialists

(~~a~~ specialist from our specialists)

15. Interrogatives

Here are the main interrogative pronouns, adjectives and adverbs:

Pronouns	<i>mīn</i>	who	<i>shū</i>	what
	<i>kam</i>	how much/many	<i>li mīn</i>	whose
	<i>'ayy wāḥid(a)</i>	which one		
Adjectives	<i>kam</i>	how much/many	<i>'ayy</i>	which
	<i>mīn</i>	whose	<i>'ayy nou9 min</i>	what kind of
Adverbs	<i>kayf</i>	how	<i>laysh</i>	why
	<i>mata</i>	when	<i>wayn</i>	where

Some are already known to you. Note:

- The pronouns are all masculine singular, except for one feminine form *'ayy wāḥida*:
mīn katab ar-risāla? Who wrote the letter?
- The adjectives *precede* their noun, with the exception of *mīn* ~~whose~~ which forms a construct with its noun:
'ayy kitāb? which book?
(fī) maktab mīn? (in) whose office?
- Remember that after *kam* used as an adjective, the noun is always singular:
kam shakḥ? how many people?
- 'ayy* can be used non-interrogatively, meaning ~~any~~
'ayy risāla any letter
min 'ayy wāḥid minhum from any one of them
- Distinguish between the interrogative adverb *mata* ~~when~~ and the non-interrogative conjunction *lamma* ~~when~~
mata tarakt al-maktab? When did you leave the office?
lamma tarakt al-maktab, riji9t li l-'utayl. When I left the office, I returned to the hotel.

16. Indirect questions

All the interrogatives can introduce indirect questions. The indirect speech rule (4/7) holds. Examine:

mā 9irift kayf yi9malu.

I didn't know how he did (~~does~~) it.

mā 9irift kayf 9imilu

I didn't know how he had done (~~did~~) it.

Indirect questions inviting the answer ~~yes~~ or ~~no~~ are introduced by *'idha* ~~whether~~ The indirect speech rule still applies:

<i>sa'alt 'idha yūṣal al-youm.</i>	I asked whether he was arriving today.
<i>sa'alt 'idha wiṣil al-youm.</i>	I asked whether he (had) arrived today.

17. Regional variations

In this lesson we deal with some pronunciation variations found in Egypt, the Levant, the Arabian Peninsula and North-west Africa.

q. In the Peninsula, *q* is pronounced as taught in this course. This is the pronunciation of the written language. In Egypt and the Levant, *q* is pronounced as *'*, i.e. like *hamza*, without deepened *a/q̣*. Compare:

Peninsula, written language: *ṭarīq, qabl, istiḡbāl*

Egypt, Levant: *ṭarī', 'abl, isti'bāl*

But the proper names *ḡirāq, dimashq* and *al-qāhira* ~~Ḥ~~airoq and their derivatives are pronounced with *q* everywhere.

j. In the Peninsula and North-west Africa, and in the written language, this consonant is pronounced *j*. In Egypt it has the sound *g*, i.e. that of hard English *g* (see Pronunciation, paragraph 3). In the Levant it is pronounced like *s* in English ~~pleasure~~ We can transcribe this consonant as *zh*. Examine:

Peninsula, written, NW Africa: *jawāb, moujūd, 'intāj*

Egypt: *gawāb, mouḡūd, 'intāḡ*

Levant: *zhawāb, mouzhūd, 'intāzh*

dh, th. In Egypt and the Levant, these consonants are mostly pronounced as *d, t* or (less frequently) as *z, s* respectively. Note:

d, t: *hāda* (etc.), *'akhaḍ yākhud* (etc.), *itnayn/tintayn, talāta, tamāniyi* (= *thamāniya*), *itn9ashr, ktīr*


z, s: *kaza, timsāl*

ḡ and ẓ. *ḡ* is the velarised counterpart of *dh*. In Egypt and the Levant, it is mostly pronounced *ẓ* (velarised *z*). This course gives *ẓ* where it is commoner. But in the Peninsula, and sometimes elsewhere, we hear the written pronunciation *ḡ*, in (e.g.) *muwaḡḡaf, ḡahar yiḡhar* (etc.), *maḡbūt, intāḡir*

18. *jumal mithālīya*


mudīr hādhi sh-sharika, mā 'a9rafu. 'int ta9rafu?	I donḡ know the director of this company. Do you?
li mīn hādhi n-nuskha? wajadt-ha fī milaffi l-9āmm.	Whose is this copy? I found it in my general file.
fī l-qism at-tijārī fī tis9at9ashr shakhṣ faqaṭ. – wallāhi, hādha mish ikthīr.	In the Commercial Division there are only nineteen people. . Good Heavens, thatṣ not many.
bi ṣūra 9āmma, al-qīṭā9 al-khāṣṣ muhim jiddan li l-waṭan.	In general, the private sector is very important for the country.
laysh mā katabt jawāb li risālat 'umūr al-khārijīya? – katabtu, mā wajadtu?	Why havenḡ you written a reply to Foreign Affairsḡ letter? . Iḡe written it, havenḡ you found it?

19. *at-tamārīn*

 1. Give the principal parts of the verb:

e.g.: katab – katab yuktub

- | | | |
|------------|-----------|-----------|
| (a) daras | (b) wiṣil | (c) 9irif |
| (d) shakar | (e) 'akal | |

 2. Give the affirmative imperative and negative imperative:

e.g.: sa'al yis'al – 'is'al, 'is'alī, 'is'alū; lā tis'al, lā tis'alī, lā tis'alū

- | | | |
|--------------------|------------------|---------------------|
| (a) kharaj yukhruj | (b) nizil yinzil | (c) 'akhadh yākhudh |
| (d) samah yismaḥ | (e) katab yuktub | |

 3. Make plural:


e.g.: yākhudh – yākhudhū

- | | | |
|----------------------|-----------------|-------------|
| (a) 'aṭlub | (b) lā tirkabī. | (c) yushkur |
| (d) khallīnī 'anzil. | (e) mā ta9raf? | |

4. Add the object-pronoun suffix:

e.g.: ta9raf (huwa) – ta9rafu

- | | | |
|---------------------------|-------------------|----------------------|
| (a) mā yisma9ū ('ihna) | (b) ya9raf (hiya) | |
| (c) khallīna nushkur(hum) | (d) sa'alt ('int) | (e) mā 'akalt (huwa) |

 5. Put the right form of *khallī-* before the verb:

e.g.: nis'alhum – khallīna nis'alhum

- | | | |
|------------------|-----------------------------|-------------|
| (a) yuṭlubū. | (b) hiya tukhruj. | (c) 'ajlis. |
| (d) yinzil huna. | (e) nidfa9 'ujrat at-taksī. | |

6. Make an indirect question with *sa'alt*:

e.g.: ya9rafu l-9unwān. – sa'alt 'idha ya9rafu l-9unwān.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|---------------------|
| (a) laysh mā 'akhadht al-fulūs? | (b) dafa9u l-ḥisāb. |
| (c) mata tūṣal as-sayyāra? | (d) wayn al-mudīr? |
| (e) li mīn hādha l-milaff? | |

7. Put the number with the noun:

e.g.: sayyāra (16) – sitt9ashr sayyāra

as-sayyāra (6) – as-sayyārāt as-sitta

- | | | |
|-----------------|-------------------|----------------------|
| (a) shakhṣ (14) | (b) musāfir (100) | (c) al-musāfir (127) |
| (d) risāla (8) | (e) muwazzaf (30) | |

ad-dars as-sādis . Lesson 6

ziyāra 9ind al-’aṣḍiqā’ . A Visit to Friends

1. *al-ḥiwār*

(NB: In this dialogue one speaker uses the Egyptian form of spoken Arabic, examples of which are shown underlined in the vocabulary.)

	<i>zār</i>	he visited
	<i>sābiq</i>	former
	<i>’ustādh</i>	professor (title of respect used for any learned person)
	<i>khalīl sulaymān</i>	Khalil Suleiman (name)
	(khalīl ’iqāmtu fī 9ammān Peter zār mu9allimu s-sābiq li l-lugha l-9arabīya, al-’ustādh khalīl sulaymān.)	(During his stay in Amman Peter visited his former Arabic teacher Khalil Suleiman.)
	<i>shuftak</i>	I saw you
	<i>zamān</i>	time
	<i>kunt</i>	you were
	<i>hal-ghayba</i>	this absence
	<i>jūwa</i>	inside
	<i>bilād</i>	country
khalīl:	’ahlā-ā-ān yā Peter! mā shuftak min zamān! wayn kunt fī hal-ghayba? tfaḍḍal yā Peter, tfaḍḍal jūwa.	Welcome, Peter! I haven’t seen you for ages! Where have you been all this time? Come in, Peter, come in please.
Peter:	’ahlan bīk yā ’ustādh. kayf ḥālak yā khalīl?	Same to you, professor. How are you, Khalil?
khalīl:	wallāhi, ’iḥna kwayyisīn. mā 9irift ’innak fī l-bilād.	Heavens, we’re fine. I didn’t know you were in the country.
	<i>ṣār</i>	it became
	<i>shufnāk</i>	we saw you
	ṣār lana waqt ṭawīl mā shufnāk.	It’s a long time since we saw you (it became for us a long time we didn’t see you).
	<i>’usbū9</i>	week
	<i>luṭfiya</i>	Lutfiya (name)
	<i>’inshalla</i>	(if God wills I hope)
Peter:	’ayna9am, ṣār zamān ṭawīl. wiṣilt hādha l-’usbū9. u kayf luṭfiya? ’inshalla mabsūṭa?	Yes, it’s been a long time. I arrived this week. And how is Lutfiya? Well, I hope?

	<i>daḥak yidḥak</i>	to laugh
	<i>ta9ālī</i>	come
	<i>shūfī</i>	look, see
	<i>zouja</i>	wife
	<i>māshalla</i>	(h whatever God wishes)
	<i>kull shī</i>	Good Heavens
	<i>tamām</i>	everything
	<u><i>mougūd</i></u>	perfection, perfect
(khalīl yidḥak.)		= <i>moujūd</i>
		(Khalil laughs.)
khalīl:	hiya moujūda. yā luṭfiya, ta9ālī	She's here. Lutfiya, come
	shūfī mīn.	and see who it is.
(tudkhul zoujtu luṭfiya.)		(His wife Lutfiya comes in.)
luṭfiya:	māshalla, Peter! kayf al-ḥāl yā Peter?	Good Heavens, Peter!
		How are you, Peter?
Peter:	mabsūt jiddan, 'alla yisallimik yā	I'm fine, thank you Lutfiya.
	luṭfiya. u 'inti?	And you?
luṭfiya:	kull shī tamām u 'int mougūd.	Everything's fine now
	u kayf Mary?	you're here. And how's
		Mary?
	<i>tsallim 9alaykum</i>	she sends her
		regards
	<i>ḥafaz yihfaz</i>	to keep
	'alla yihfazha	Good bless (h keep)
		her.
	<i>sallim 9alayha</i>	give her my/our
		regards
Peter:	hiya kwayyisa, shukran. u tsallim	She's well, thank you, and
	9alaykum.	she sends her regards.
luṭfiya:	'alla yihfazha. sallim 9alayha.	God bless her. Give her our
		regards.
	<i>tis9at 'ashhur</i>	nine months
	<i>bi9na</i>	we sold
	<i>bayt</i>	house
	<u><i>'igīna</i></u>	= <i>'ijīna</i> we came
	<u><i>al-bayt da</i></u>	= <i>hādha l-bayt</i>
	<i>ash-shām</i>	Damascus; Syria
	<u><i>hina</i></u>	= <i>huna</i>
	<i>min sha 'n</i>	for the sake of,
		because of
Peter:	kam waqt šār lakum fī 9ammān?	How long have you been in
		Amman?
luṭfiya:	tis9at 'ashhur bas. bi9na l-bayt da	Only nine months. We sold
	fī sh-shām u 'igīna li hina min sha 'n	that house in Damascus

shughlna.

ruḥna
zurna
9adad min
'asdi 'ā'
talāmīz
gāmi9a
ṣayf

walākin ruḥna li sh-shām u zurna
 9adad min 'asdi 'ā'ī u talāmīzī
 fi l-gāmi9a khilāl aṣ-ṣayf.

khabar
shuft-hum
lissa

u shū l-khabar min talāmīz khalīl?

Peter: mā shuft-hum min zamān, 'illa Liza.
 hiya lissa fi l-'umūr al-khārijīya.

kānat
al-baḥrayn
rāḥat
bayrūt
ka

mulḥaq
thaqāfī

kānat fi l-baḥrayn, u ba9dayn rāḥat
 'ila bayrūt ka mulḥaq thaqāfī.

'ahā
dāyiman
tilmīdh
shāṭir
mujtāhid (NB stress)
u
kān yudrus

khalīl: 'ahā, Liza. kānat tilmīdha mumtāza.
 walākin yā luṭfiya, Peter kān
 dāyiman tilmīdh shāṭir u mujtāhid
 kamān, u huwa kān yudrus 9indī.

and came here because of
 our work.

we went
 we visited
 a number of
 = 'aṣḍiqā' friends
 = talāmīdh pupils
 = jāmi9a
 summer

But we went to Damascus
 and visited a number of my
 friends and pupils at the
 university during the
 summer.

news
 I saw them
 still;
 (+ negative:) not yet

And what's the news of
 Khalil's pupils?

I haven't seen them for a
 long time, apart from Liza.
 She's still with the Foreign
 Office.

she was
 Bahrain
 she went
 Beirut
 as, in the capacity
 of
 attaché
 cultural

She was in Bahrain, then
 she went to Beirut as
 cultural attaché.

ah!
 always
 pupil
 clever
 industrious
 (here:) while, when
 he was studying

Ah, Liza. She was an
 excellent pupil. But Lutfiya,
 Peter was always a clever
 and industrious pupil as

		well, when he was studying with me.
<i>wāḍiḥ</i>		clear
<i>nisī</i>		he forgot
<i>'abadan</i>		ever; (+ negative:) never, not at all
<i>ya9īk al-9āfiya</i>		(ﷲ) give you healthq well done!, keep it up!
<i>'akhū</i>		my brother
u min al-wāḍiḥ 'innu mā nisī 9arabīyitu 'abadan. ya9īk al-9āfiya, yā 'akhū.		And it's clear he hasn't forgotten his Arabic at all. Well done (my brotherq.
<i>'alla ya9īk</i>		(ﷲ) restore youq
<i>9ala fikra</i>		thank you by the way, incidentally
<i>9āwiz</i>		wanting
<i>'ahwi</i>		= <i>qahwa</i>
<i>shī</i>		(also:) something
<i>bārid</i>		cold
Peter:	<i>'alla ya9īk yā 'ustādhī. laḥīf jiddan.</i>	Thank you. Youq most kind.
luḥfiya:	<i>9ala fikra, yā Peter, shū 9āwiz, 'ahwi willa shī bārid?</i>	By the way, Peter, what would you like, coffee or something cold?

2. 9ibārāt

min zamān since a long time ago, for a long time now.

wayn kunt/kunti/kuntū fī hal-ghayba? (ﷲ) Where were you in this absence?q

Where have you been all this time?

'inshalla (ﷲ) God willsq I hope (so).

māshalla! Good Heavens! (expressing surprise or admiration).

yaṣallim/tsallim/yaṣallimū 9alayk/9alayha/9alaykum. He/she/they send(s)
his/her/their regards.

sallim/sallimī/sallimū 9aláy/9alayha/9alayhum Give him/her/them my/our
regards.

'alla yihfazū/yihfazha/yihfazhum (ﷲ) God keep ...q God bless him/her/them. Used
more frequently than its English counterpart.

'abadan ever, (+ negative) never, not at all. *'abadan!* Never!

ya9īk/ya9īkum al-9āfiya, ya9īki l-9āfiya (ﷲ) give you healthq Bravo; Well
done. This is a greeting, with the response:

'alla ya9īk/ya9īki/ya9īkum (ﷲ) restore youq Thank you.

9ala fikra by the way

3. *mufradāt 'iḍāfiya. al-bayt wa l-9ayla* – House and Family

<i>shaqqa</i>	apartment	<i>9imāra</i>	building, block
<i>ṣāloun</i>	living-room	<i>maṭbakh</i>	kitchen
<i>gārāj</i>	garage	<i>shubbāk</i>	window
<i>sullam</i>	staircase	<i>jinayna, bustān</i>	garden
<i>fouq</i>	(also:) upstairs	<i>taḥt</i>	(also:) downstairs
<i>'ujra</i>	(also:) rent	<i>ṣāhib bayt</i>	landlord
<i>'athāth</i>	furniture	<i>kursī</i>	chair
<i>ṭawla</i> (Levant/Peninsula), <i>ṭarabayza</i> (Egypt/Sudan), <i>ṭābla</i> (NW Africa) table*			
<i>barrāda</i>	refrigerator	<i>mukayyifa</i>	airconditioner
<i>tādfiya</i>	heating	<i>sakan yuskun</i>	to live (reside)
<i>9ayla</i>	family	<i>'oulād</i>	children
<i>raḥul</i>	man	<i>mara</i>	woman
<i>'ab</i>	father	<i>'umm</i>	mother
<i>walad</i>	child, boy	<i>wālid</i>	parent
<i>'ibn</i>	son	<i>bint</i>	girl, daughter
<i>'akh</i>	brother	<i>'ukht</i>	sister

* *ṭawla* is from Italian, *ṭarabayza* from Greek, *ṭābla* from French.

an-naḥū

4. Past tense of hollow verbs

Hollow verbs are those whose middle root letter is one of the weak consonants *w* or *y*. In most forms of such verbs, the weak middle root letter vocalises, i.e. becomes a vowel. Examine the past tense of a typical hollow verb:

Root *sh w f*, first principal part *shāf* to see, look (at):

(<i>'ana</i>)	<i>shuft</i>	(<i>'ihna</i>)	<i>shufna</i>
(<i>'int</i>)	<i>shuft</i>	(<i>'intū</i>)	<i>shuftū</i>
(<i>'inti</i>)	<i>shufti</i>		
(<i>huwa</i>)	<i>shāf</i>	(<i>hum</i>)	<i>shāfū</i>
(<i>hiya</i>)	<i>shāf</i>	I, you, he, she (etc.) saw, looked (at)	

The personal endings are the same as for the sound verbs. Also, when the personal ending begins with a consonant, the middle root letter takes the form of its related short vowel: *w* becomes *u*. Elsewhere in the tense, the middle root letter becomes *ā*. Another example:

Root *r w ḥ*, first principal part *rāḥ* to go:

ruḥt, ruḥt/ruḥti, rāḥ/rāḥat; ruḥna, ruḥtū, rāḥū I, you, he (etc.) went

so also:

Root <i>k w n</i> , <i>kān</i>	to be	<i>q w l</i> , <i>qāl</i>	to say
<i>z w r</i> , <i>zār</i>	to visit	<i>q w m</i> , <i>qām</i>	to rise, get/stand up
<i>s w q</i> , <i>sāq</i>	to drive	<i>q w m</i> , <i>qām bi</i>	to undertake

Similarly, middle root letter *y* changes to *i* (the related short vowel) and *ā*, under the rule given earlier:

Root *s y r*, first principal part *ṣār* to become:

ṣirt, ṣirt/ṣirti, ṣār/ṣārat; ṣirna, ṣirtū, ṣārū I, you, he (etc.) became

so also:

Root *b y 9*, *bā9* to sell *ṭ y r*, *ṭār* to fly

j y b, jāb to bring *z y d, zād* to increase

Two important verbs with middle root letter *w* form their past tense as if this root letter were *y*:

Root *n w m*, first principal part *nām* to sleep:

nimt, nimt/nimti, nām/nāmat; nimna, nimtū, nāmū I, you, he (etc.) slept

Root *kh w f*, first principal part *khāf* or *khāf min* to fear:

khift, khift/khifiti, khāf/khāfat; khifna, khiftū, khāfū I, you, he (etc.) feared

Hollow verb rule: In hollow verbs, the middle root letter, when vocalised, is short before a consonantal personal ending and long elsewhere.

5. Negative; Object pronoun

All these verbs form their negative past tense with *mā*, and take the object-pronoun suffixes, as do the sound verbs:

mā shuftu?

Didn^q you see him/it?

mā jābu.

He didn^q bring it.

6. *kān*

Unlike the concept ~~to be~~ in present time, the past tense of *kān* is never omitted:

huwa moujūd, mish kadha? but: *kān moujūd, mish kadha?*

7. *kān fī*

The past form of *fī* in its meaning ~~there is~~, ~~there are~~ and in its use with *9ind*, is expressed with *kān fī* ~~there was~~, ~~there were~~ negative *mā kān fī*. These expressions are normally invariable for gender and number. Note that the stress is on the first syllable of the whole expression in each case:

kān fī nās ikthīr fī l-maktaba.

mā kān fī 9indu waqt.

The *fī* may be omitted from the affirmative *kān (fī) 9ind*, but not from the negative *mā kān fī 9ind*.

8. *šār lī*

The past-tense form *šār* ~~it became~~ with the preposition + pronoun suffix *lī, lak* (etc.), gives us an idiom indicating or enquiring how long a situation has been so for the person indicated:

kam waqt šār lak huna?

How long have you been here?

šār lī shahrayn huna.

I've been here for two months.

9. *ha-*

hādha (etc.) preceding a noun can be abbreviated to the invariable prefix *ha-*:

hādha l-balad → *hal-balad*

hādhi s-sayyāra → *has-sayyāra*

hadhoul an-nās → *han-nās* 'ustādh *hādha t-tilmīdh* → *ustādh hat-tilmīdh*

10. Circumstantial *u*

u can also mean ~~while~~ (either in the sense ~~when~~ or ~~whereas~~ or ~~now (that)~~ in some contexts. The *u* must be followed either by a personal pronoun or a

negative *mā* or *mish* to give this meaning. We call such expressions *clauses of circumstance*:

<i>kull shī tamām u 'int moujūd.</i>	Everything is fine now you are here.
<i>kān mujtāhid u huwa (kān) ṭālib.</i>	He was hardworking when/while (he was) a student.
<i>kunt 'ana fi l-baḥrayn u mā 'a9raf shū šār li l- 'aṣḍiqā'.</i>	I was in Bahrain, while/whereas I don't know what happened to my (the) friends.

11. Broken plurals

We have already studied in 1/10 and 3/13 the regular or so-called sound plurals. Most nouns and many adjectives have an irregular or so-called broken plural, formed on a different pattern and without suffixes like the sound plurals. Some have more than one possibility. Here are the broken plurals of the most important nouns already learnt (singular/plural), grouped according to the plural pattern:

<i>bank bunūk</i>	<i>'amr 'umūr</i>	<i>sha 'n shu 'ūn</i>	<i>bayt buyūt</i>
<i>jisr jusūr</i>	<i>baḥth buḥūth</i>	<i>ḍayf ḍuyūf</i>	
<i>muḍīr mudarā'</i>	<i>saḡīr sufara'</i>	<i>wazīr wuzarā'</i>	<i>wakīl wukalā'</i>
<i>zamīl zumalā'</i>			
<i>bāb 'abwāb</i>	<i>ḥāl 'aḥwāl</i>	<i>shakhṣ 'ashkhāṣ</i>	<i>khabar 'akhbār</i>
<i>shughl 'ashghāl</i>	<i>waqt 'ouqāt</i>	<i>raqm 'arqām</i>	<i>qism 'aqsām</i>
<i>fikra fikār</i>	<i>rajul rijāl</i>	<i>balad bilād</i>	
<i>ghurfa ghuraf</i>	<i>'ouḍa 'uwaḍ</i>	<i>dawla duwal</i>	<i>furṣa furaṣ</i>
<i>nuskha nusakh</i>	<i>ṣūra ṣuwar</i>		
<i>kitāb kutub</i>	<i>ṭarīq ṭuruq</i>		
<i>maṭ9am maṭā9im</i>	<i>minshafa manāshif</i>	<i>madkhal madākhil</i>	<i>maktab makātib</i>
<i>maktaba makātib</i>	<i>makhraj makhārij</i>	<i>makhzan makhāzin</i>	<i>mou9id mawā9id</i>
<i>shāri9 shawāri9</i>	<i>daqīqa daqāyiq</i>	<i>tadhkara tadhākīr</i>	
<i>ṣandūq ṣanādīq</i>	<i>miṣṭāḥ maṣāṭīḥ</i>	<i>dīnār danānīr</i>	<i>'usbū9 'asābī9</i>
<i>shubbāk shabābīk</i>	<i>tilmīdh talāmīdh</i>	<i>bustān basātīn</i>	

and less common examples:

<i>sayyid sāda</i>	<i>'ustādh 'asātidha</i>	<i>ṣadīq 'aṣḍiqā'</i>	<i>shahr 'ashhur</i>
<i>su'āl 'as'ila</i>	<i>bilād buldān</i>	<i>mara niswān</i> (from another root)	
<i>ṭālib ṭullāb</i>	<i>ṭabīb 'aṭibba</i>	<i>sana sinīn</i> (also sound:) <i>sanawāt</i>	

Before a plural beginning with *hamza*, the numbers from 3 to 9 add a final -t:

<i>thalāthat 'aṣḍiqā'</i>	three friends
<i>sittat 'asābī9</i>	six weeks
<i>thamāniyat 'ashhur</i>	eight months

Learn also in this context the essential word *yum*, pl. *'ayyām* ~~day~~q

<i>sab9at 'ayyām</i>	seven days
----------------------	------------

Here are important adjectives with broken plurals, some already known to you:

<i>kthīr kthār</i>	<i>kbīr kbār</i>
--------------------	------------------

<i>ṣghīr ṣghār</i>		<i>ṭawīl ṭiwāl</i>	
<i>laṭīf luṭafā'</i>		<i>shāṭir shuṭṭār</i>	
<i>rkhīṣ rkhāṣ</i>	cheap	<i>mnīḥ mnāḥ</i>	good
<i>lazīz lizāz</i>	pleasant	<i>qaṣīr qīṣār</i>	short
<i>khaṭīf khiṭaf</i>	light (in weight)	<i>ṣa9b ṣi9āb</i>	difficult
<i>qadīm qudamā'</i>	old (of things)	<i>faqīr fuqarā'</i>	poor
<i>ghanī 'aghniyā'</i>	rich	<i>9aẓīm 9uẓamā'</i>	huge, splendid
<i>baṣīṭ busaṭā'</i>	simple	<i>karīm kuramā'</i>	generous
<i>naḍīf nuḍafā'</i>	clean	<i>thaqīl thuqalā'</i>	heavy
<i>marīḍ marḍa</i>	sick	<i>jadīd judud</i>	new

Remember, with respect to the adjectives:

- *kthīr* is often used invariably (3/17),
- the inanimate plural rule (1/5) still holds,
- the adjective plurals shown above are used only with animate meaning, or with (animate or inanimate) dual nouns (Dual noun rule, 4/12).

Some adjectives have a broken *feminine*:

m. 'awwal, f. 'ūla, pl. (sound) 'awwalīn	first
m. 'ākhar, f. 'ukhra, pl. (sound) 'ākharīn	other

'awwal, and a broken plural 'awā'il, are used as nouns with special meanings:

(fī) 'awwal as-sana	(at) the beginning of the year
(fī) 'awā'il as-sana	early in the year

Likewise 'ākhīr (NB not 'ākhar) plural 'awākhīr ~~last~~

(fī) 'ākhīr ash-shahr	(at) the end of the month
(fī) 'awākhīr ash-shahr	late in the month

12. In addition to 'ākhar and 'ākhīr shown above, the root ' *kh r* provides a third important adjective. Do not confuse the three:

'ākhar, 'ukhra, 'ākharīn	other	} (see above)
'ākhīr, 'ākhīra, 'āwākhīr	last	
'akhīr, 'akhīra, 'akhīrīn	recent	

13. We shall show new nouns and adjectives having broken plurals thus: *qism* 'aqṣām. Where no plural is shown, it is sound.

14. 'ab, 'akh, 'ukht, 'umm

These words merit special attention:

'ab 'ābā'	father	'umm 'ummahāt	mother
'ukht 'ikhwāt	sister	'akh 'ikhwa	brother(s) (in a family)
'akh 'ikhwān	brother/brethren (of a community)		

'ab and 'akh add -ū- before the possessive suffixes, on the pattern of *fī*. Note the stress of 'abūū and 'akhūū:

'abūū, 'abūk/'abūki, 'abūū/'abūha; 'abūna, 'abūkum, 'abūhum	my (etc.) father
'akhūū, 'akhūk/'akhūki, 'akhūū/'akhūha; 'akhūna, 'akhūkum, 'akhūhum	my (etc.) brother

'*akhū*' also has the variant '*akhī*'. The suffixed forms of '*akh-*', and also the expression '*al-'akh*' (with or without a name) are used as a cordial form of address or reference to a male colleague or friend:

ṭfaḍḍal, yā 'akhū/'akhī. Please come in, old chap.
wiṣil al-'akh ḥasan. (Our friend) Hassan arrived.

'*ikhwān*' is commonly used to address or refer to a group of male associates; it can be used even in formal situations:

ṭfaḍḍalū, 'ikhwān. Help yourselves, friends/gentlemen/chaps.

Women use '*ukht 'ikhwāt*' identically for women friends:

kayf ḥālik, yā 'ukhtī? How are you, dear?
al-'ikhwāt moujūdīn ḥassa. The girls are here now.

A Christian clergyman is addressed or referred to as '*abūna*'.

'*abū*' followed by the given name of the eldest son is a cordial way (used by men and women) of addressing or referring to a man:

'abū fu'ād Fuad's father

Similarly, '*umm*' (also pronounced '*imm*' in this context) for a woman:

'umm/'imm ḥasan Hassan's mother

If an Arab calls you '*akh*' or '*ukht*', you have cause to feel flattered. You have been accepted as a friend.

15. Finally, '*abū*' is also used jocularly in construct, combined with a recognisable characteristic of a man:

'abū liḥya (father of a beard) he/him with a beard
'abū 'aghlāt (father of errors) the bungler

This picturesque idiom occurs in the opening lines of James Elroy Flecker's haunting drama of medieval Baghdad, '*Hassan*' (1911). Our hero is unhappy in love, and is boring his friend Selim with the fact:

HASSAN (*rocking on his mat*): Eywallah! Eywallah!

SELIM: Thirty-seven times have you made the same remark,
 O father of repetition.

You should know this structure, but be wary of using it yourself.

16. Continuous past tense

The verb '*kān*' in the past tense, followed by another verb in the present, makes the *continuous past tense*, which can be used for a continuous or repeated action in the past:

... u huwa kān yudrus 9indī ... while he was studying with me
kān dāyiman yis'al ḥawlak. He always used to ask about you.

17. Use of adjectives

Most adjectives can be used as nouns, whether to indicate a person or persons, or an understood thing:

al-ghanī the rich man *al-9arab* The Arabs
al-muhimm 'innak moujūd. The important thing is that you're here.

It is ... that ... is often expressed with *min al-... 'inn ...*:

min al-wāḍiḥ 'innhum 'agħniyā' jiddan. It's clear (that) they're very rich.

18. Prepositions and conjunctions

Distinguish between prepositions and their related conjunctions. A preposition governs a noun or pronoun; a conjunction introduces a further clause (a clause is a group of words centred on a verb and its subject). A few examples:

preposition (+ noun/pronoun)		conjunction (+ clause)	
<i>qabl</i>	before	<i>qabl mā</i>	before
<i>ba9d</i>	after	<i>ba9d mā</i>	after
<i>9ind</i>	at the time of	<i>lamma</i>	when

wiṣilū qabl/ba9d al-ijtimā9.

They arrived before/after the meeting.

wiṣilū qabl mā/ba9d mā kharajt.

They arrived before/after I left.

shuft-ha 9ind wuṣūlha.

I saw her on her arrival.

shuft-ha lamma wiṣilat.

I saw her when she arrived.

19. Regional variations: Egypt and Sudan

We examine below two important characteristics of Egyptian and Sudanese speech.

da. The demonstrative *hādha* (etc.), used in the Levant and the Peninsula, is close to the standard written form. In Egypt and Sudan, another form is commoner:

da m., *dī* f., *doul* pl.

this/these

dāk m., *dīk* f., *dulāk* pl.

that/those

When used as adjectives, they follow (NB) the qualified noun, which always has the article:

Levant/Peninsula

Egypt/Sudan

hādha sh-shakhṣ

ash-shakhṣ da

this person

hadhīk ar-risāla

ar-risāla dī

that letter

mudīr hādha l-bank

mudīr al-bank da

this bank manager/
the manager of this bank

mudīr al-bank hādha

(see 4/5)

9āwiz. This word, meaning ~~am~~ wantingq is used in Egypt and Sudan to express the verb ~~to~~ wantq. It agrees with its subject, and can be followed by a direct object (noun or pronoun), or a present tense:

'ana 9āwiz jāwabu.

I want (~~am~~ wantingq) his answer.

'int 9āwizu?

Do you want it?

hiya 9āwiza tuktub al-jawāb.

She wants to write the answer.

The past sequence ~~wanted~~q is expressed with *kunt 9āwiz(a)* (etc.), with the same structures:

shū kānū 9āwizīn minnak?

What did they want from you?

In present time-sequence, this expression is negated with *mish*; in past sequence we negate the *kān* (etc.) with *mā* as usual:

'ihna mish 9āwizīnu.

We donq want it.

mā kunna 9āwizīnu.

We didnq want it.

20. *jumal mithālīya*

ṣār lak kam waqt tudrus al-lugha

How long have you been

l-9arabīya?– šār lī kam shahr bas.	studying Arabic? . Only a few months.
jābū lana l-milaff ma9 'arqām 'intāj has-sana.	They brought us the file with this year's production figures.
kam nuskha lāzima? – 'i9mal 'arba9a nusakh, 'aḥsan.	How many copies are necessary? Make four copies, that's better.
muhandisīn ash-sharika zāru l-youm 9iddat ṭuruq wa jusur qadīma fī l-balad, ḥatta yākhudhū fikra bi-khuṣūṣ al-murūr 9alayha.	The company engineers today visited a number of old roads and bridges in the town, to get an idea of the traffic on them.
kayf 'ashraḥ lu r-risāla u huwa mā yifham al-9arabī?	How do I explain the letter to him, when he doesn't understand Arabic?

21. at-tamārīn



1. Give the first person singular and plural of the past tense:

e.g.: kān – kunt, kunna

- (a) shāf (b) ṭār (c) sa'al
(d) nām

2. Put into the past continuous tense:

e.g.: darasti l-kitāb. – kunti tudrus al-kitāb.

- (a) dakhalna l-bayt. (b) wiṣilū li l-balad. (c) yūṣalū 9indna.
(d) katabu l-jawāb. (e) sakan huna.

3. Put into the abbreviated form of *hādha* (etc.):

e.g.: hādhi s-sana – has-sana

- (a) kutub hādha l-mu9allim (b) hadhoul aṭ-ṭullāb (c) fī hādha l-waqt
(d) 9ind hadhoul an-nās (e) hādha l-maktab

4. Give the plural:

e.g.: kitāb – kutub

- (a) bayt (b) ṭarīq (c) zamīl
(d) mara (e) bint

5. Put into the plural:

e.g.: kitāb qadīm – kutub qadīma; musāfir 9arabī – musāfirīn 9arab

- (a) ṭālib shāṭir u mujtāhid (b) makhzan ikbīr (c) nuskha wāḍiḥa
(d) shakhṣ laṭīf (e) ṣandūq thaqīl

6. Put into the past tense:

e.g.: fī 9indak fakka? – kān fī 9indak fakka?

- (a) 9indna waqt ikthīr. (b) kam ṭālib fī huna?

- (c) aṭ-ṭabīb 9ind al-marīd. (d) 'iḥna mish mabsūṭīn.
(e) huwa moujūd al-youm.

7. Put the number with the noun:

e.g.: ṭālib (3) – thalātha ṭullāb

- | | | |
|-----------------|----------------|--------------|
| (a) ṭālib (2) | (b) 'ouḍa (12) | (c) ṣūra (6) |
| (d) musāfir (4) | (e) shakhṣ (1) | |

ad-dars as-sābi9 . Lesson 7

9ala t-tilifoun . On the Telephone

1. *al-ḥiwār*

	<i>tilifoun</i>	telephone
	<i>mahamma mahāmm</i>	task, assignment
(Peter yi9mal mawā9id 9ala t-tilifoun ma9 9iddat 'ashkhāṣ min sha'n mahammtu.)		(Peter makes appointments by telephone with a number of people for the purpose of his assignment.)
	<i>halóu</i>	Hello (on the telephone)
	<i>mitayn</i>	two hundred
	<i>sitt mīya</i>	six hundred
	<i>ṣawt 'aṣwāt</i>	voice, noise
	<i>madrassa madāris</i>	school
	<i>thānawī</i>	secondary
Peter:	halóu, huna mitayn u thalātha u 'arba9īn, sitt mīya u sab9a u sab9īn?	Hello, is this 243677?
aṣ-ṣawt:	na9am, huna l-madrassa th-thānawīya l-fannīya. tfaḍḍal.	Yes, this is the secondary technical school. Can I help you?
	<i>siyāda</i>	Excellency
	<i>muta'assif</i>	(courtesy title)
	<i>hāshim</i>	sorry
	<i>ghāyib</i>	Hashim (name)
	<i>musā9id</i>	absent
	<i>khabar 'akhbār</i>	assistant
Peter:	siyādat al-mudīr moujūd, law samaḥt?	(also:) message
aṣ-ṣawt:	muta'assif, ad-duktur hāshim ghāyib al-youm. 'ana musā9idu. fī khabar 'ilu?	Is the Director in, please?
	<i>'ashūf</i>	I'm sorry, Dr Hashim is absent today. I'm his assistant. Is there a message for him?
Peter:	'ana Peter Brown, muhandis min 'ingiltra, u lāzim 'ashūf siyādatu.	I see, I look
	<i>9ala 9ilm bi</i>	I am Peter Brown, an engineer from Britain, and, and I have to see the Director.
	<i>'asaf</i>	informed of, aware of
	<i>yiṣīr</i>	regret
al-musā9id:	na9am, sayyid Brown, 'ana 9ala 9ilm bi buḥūthkum. ma9 al-'asaf al-youm mā yiṣīr,	it becomes
		(here:) it will do
		Yes, Mr Brown, I know about your discussions.
		Regrettably today won't do,

	<i>yirūḥ</i>	he goes
	<i>mu'támar</i>	conference
	<i>'imkānīya</i>	possibility
	<i>tshūfu</i>	you see him
	huwa yirūḥ 'ila mu'támar kull	he's going to a conference all
	al-youm wa mā fī 'imkānīya	day, and there's no possibility
	tshūfu.	of your seeing him.
	<i>bukra</i>	tomorrow
	<i>yikūn</i>	it will be
	<i>mumkin</i>	possible
	<i>youm al-'aḥad</i>	Sunday
	<i>yishūfak</i>	he sees you
	<i>sā9a</i>	hour, clock, watch
	<i>nuṣṣ</i>	half
	<i>thulth</i>	a third
	<i>ra'ī 'ārā'</i>	opinion
Peter:	u bukra, yikūn mumkin?	And tomorrow, will it be possible?
al-musā9id:	khallīnī 'ashūf, youm al-'aḥad,	Let me see, Sunday, yes, I'd
	na9am, 'aṭlub minnu 'innu	ask him to see you at half-past
	yishūfak fī s-sā9a tis9a u nuṣṣ,	nine or twenty to ten; what do
	9ashra 'illa thulth; shū ra'yak?	you think?
Peter:	fikra 9aḏīma. 'akūn hunāk fī	Excellent idea. I'd be there at
	s-sā9a tis9a u nuṣṣ. ma9 as-salāma.	half-past nine. Goodbye.
	<i>nshūfak</i>	we see you
al-musā9id:	nshūfak bukra yā sayyid Brown.	Wed'd see you tomorrow, Mr
	'alla yisallimak.	Brown. Goodbye.
	—	
aṣ-ṣawt:	na9am.	Hello
	<i>markaz marākiz</i>	(here:) exchange
	<i>mushkila mashākil</i>	problem
	<i>'aywa</i>	yes
	<i>numra numar</i>	number
Peter:	'ismaḥ lī, huna l-markaz?	Excuse me, is that the exchange (there)?
al-markaz:	na9am yā sīdī. fī mushkila?	Yes, sir. Is there a problem?
Peter:	'aywa. 9imilt numra, walākin	Yes. I have dialled a number,
	mā fī ṣawt 'abadan.	but there's absolutely no sound.
	<i>'arba9 mīya</i>	four hundred
	<i>yumkin</i>	perhaps
	<i>khaṭṭ khuṭūṭ</i>	line
	<i>kharbān</i>	defective
al-markaz:	'ayy numra?	What number?
Peter:	'arba9 mīya u khamst9ashr,	415601.
	sitt mīya u wāḥid.	

al-markaz: daqīqa, 'ashūf. yumkin al-khaṭṭ kharbān.	One minute, look. Perhaps the lines out of order.
Peter: 'akūn mamnūn jiddan.	I'd be very grateful.
<i>shūf</i>	look
<i>yā sīdī</i>	sir
<i>ghayr musta9mal</i>	not used
al-markaz: shūf yā sīdī, hādhi n-numra ghayr musta9mala. 'i9mal numra 'ukhra: 'arba9 mīya u khamst9ashr, sitt mīya u sab9īn.	Look, sir, this number is out of use. Dial another number: 415670.
Peter: mumtāz. 'ashkurak jiddan.	Excellent. Thank you very much.
al-markaz: 9afwan.	Don't mention it.

2. 9ibārāt

siyāda Excellency. Used either with a possessive suffix:

siyādatak/siyādātik/siyādātkum Your Excellency/Excellencies, *siyādatu/*

siyādat-ha/siyādāt-hum His/Her Excellency, Their Excellencies, or in

construct with certain titles:

siyādat al-wazīr Your/His Excellency the Minister

siyādāt as-sufarā' Your/Their Excellencies the Ambassadors. It is used more frequently than its English counterpart.

9ala 9ilm bi informed of

shū ra 'yak? (etc.) (What's your opinion? What do you think? This can also be followed by either a preposition + noun or pronoun:

shū ra 'yak 9an/hawl/bi khuṣūṣ al-mushkila? or a verb in the present tense:

shū ra 'yak ninzil li l-balad? What do you say we go down to town? The final -ī

of *ra'ī* changes to -y- before a possessive suffix beginning with a vowel:

ra 'yī, ra 'yak/ra 'yik, ra 'yu

fī khabar 'ilu/'ilha/'ilhum? Is there a message for him/her/them?

3. mufradāt 'idāfiya. at-tilifoun wa z-zaman – Telephone and time

<i>ḍarab yuḍrub*</i> <i>tilifoun</i>	to telephone	<i>ittiṣāl</i>	(telephone) call
<i>dalīl 'adilla</i>	directory	<i>tilifounīyan</i>	by telephone
<i>9āmil 9ummāl (tilifoun)</i>			telephone operator (m.)
<i>9āmila(t) 9āmilāt (tilifoun)</i>			telephone operator (f.)
<i>maqtū9</i>	cut off	<i>'ams</i>	yesterday
<i>'awwal 'ams</i>	the day before	<i>ba9d bukra</i>	the day after
	yesterday		tomorrow
<i>ṣubḥ 'aṣbāḥ</i>	morning	<i>zuhr 'aḥḥār</i>	noon, midday
<i>ba9d aḥ-ḥuḥr</i>	afternoon	<i>nahār 'anhur</i>	daytime
<i>layla layālī</i>	night	<i>nuṣṣ layl</i>	midnight

ma9 murūr az-zaman/zamān with the passage of time

* (*ḍarab yuḍrub* to strike)

NB.: In some Arab countries the person being telephoned may answer simply with *mīn?* Who (is it)? expecting the caller to identify him/herself first.

an-naḥū**4. Present tense of hollow verbs**

In the present tense of hollow verbs the weak middle root letter vocalises. Since this tense has no consonantal endings, the vocalised root letter is always long *ū* or *ī*.

The prefixes and endings are the same as for sound verbs, except that the prefixes *t-* and *n-* have no vowel after them.

Verbs with middle root letter *w*:

Root *sh w f*, *shāf yishūf* to see, look (at):

'*ashūf*, *tshūf/tshūfī*, *yishūf/tshūf*; *nshūf*, *tshūfū*, *yishūfū*

I, you, he (etc.) look(s), see(s)

In some situations the personal prefixes *t-* and *n-* may need a transition vowel:

al-youm inshūf al-wazīr.

So also other middle-*w* verbs:

zār yizūr

qāl yiqūl

rāḥ yirūḥ

qām yiqūm (bi)

sāq yisūq

kān yikūn

The present tense of *kān yikūn* is used with future meaning:

'*akūn mammūn*.

لڤ be grateful.

'*int tkūn moujūd bukra?*

Will you be present tomorrow?

The two anomalous *w*-verbs have *-ā-* throughout the present:

Root *n w m*, *nām*:

'*anām*, *tnām/tnāmī*, *yinām/tnām*; *nnām*, *tnāmū*, *yināmū*

I, you, he (etc.) sleep(s)

Root *kh w f*, *khāf*:

'*akhāf*, *tkhāf/tkhāfī*, *yikhāf/tkhāf*; *nkhāf*, *tkhāfū*, *yikhāfū*

I, you, he (etc.) fear(s)

Verbs with middle root letter *y*:

Root *j y b*, *jāb* to bring:

'*ajāb*, *tjāb/tjābī*, *yijāb/tjāb*; *njāb*, *tjābū*, *yijābū* I, you, he (etc.) bring(s)

so also:

bā9 yibī9

ṣār yiṣīr

lār yiḻīr

zād yizīd

In the present tense all such verbs form their negatives, and take suffixes, in the usual manner: *tshūfū? ma njībha ma9na*.

5. Imperative of hollow verbs

To form the affirmative imperative of these verbs, drop the *t-* prefix of the present:

shūf/shūfī shūfū

jīb/jībī/jībū

etc.; the negative imperative is formed regularly, by negating the appropriate person of the present tense with *lā*:

lā tqul/lā tqūlī/lā tqūlū etc.

6. *yiṣīr*

This word, used invariably, can mean ~~it~~ is acceptable

bukra mā yiṣīr.

Tomorrow won't do/Tomorrow's no good.

khamṣa danānīr, yiṣīr?

Five dinars, all right?

yikūn (fī) 9indna mashākil ikthīr.

mumkin 'ashūf al-mudīr? *mumkin itqūl lī mata fādī?*

mish mumkin huwa yidfa9 al-hisāb? Can he pay the bill?

lāzim 'ashūfu l-youm. lāzim yizūr as-saḡīr.
lāzim huwa yishūf, mish 'ana. lāzim al-mudīr yirūh ma9hum.

*mish darūrī nirja*⁹. We needn't go back.

qālat lī 'inn yumkin mā trūh. She told me that she might (maybe) not go.

lāzim itkūnū moujūdīn bukra. mumkin al-mudarā' yikūnū hunāk?

<i>(mā) kān mumkin yudkhul?</i>	Was(he) able to go in?
<i>kān lāzim 'ashrah lu l-mushkila.</i>	I had to explain the problem to him.
<i>(mā) kān yumkin yikūn kadha.</i>	It could(n) be so.
<i>(mā) yikūn lāzim inzūrhūm.</i>	We shall/shall(n) have to visit them.

muta'assif, al-fikra mish mumkina. mish mumkin 'innu wiṣil 'ams.
fī 'indak al-'aghrād al-lāzima?

yumkin 9irif, yumkin la'. Perhaps he knew, perhaps not.

The higher numbers are as follows:

200	<i>mitayn</i>	300	<i>thalāth mīya</i>
400	<i>'arba9 mīya</i>	500	<i>khams mīya</i>
600	<i>sitt mīya</i>	700	<i>sabi9 mīya</i>
800	<i>thamān mīya</i>	900	<i>tisi9 mīya</i>
1000	<i>'alf</i>	2000	<i>'alfayn</i>
1 million	<i>malyūn</i>	2 million	<i>malyūnayn</i>

Compounds are made following the rules already learned.

mīya, *'alf* and *malyūn* are nouns. They have a dual and a plural:

<i>mīya</i> , <i>mitayn</i> , <i>mīyāt</i>	<i>'alf</i> , <i>'alfayn</i> , <i>'ālāf/'ulūf</i>
<i>malyūn</i> , <i>malyūnayn</i> , <i>malāyīn</i>	

The duals are used for counting, with or without a noun, in a compound or not.

The plurals are used to indicate indeterminate numbers; with a pronoun we use *min* + suffix; with a noun *min* + the article:

<i>mīyāt</i> , <i>'ālāf/'ulūf</i> , <i>malāyīn</i>	hundreds, thousands, millions
<i>mīyāt minhum/minha</i>	hundreds of them
<i>'ulūf min an-nās</i>	thousands of people

mīya (*mīt* immediately before a noun) is singular after another number, including 3 to 9:

<i>'arba9 mīya</i>	<i>'arba9 mīt shakhṣ</i>
<i>'arba9 mīya u thalāthīn shakhṣ</i>	

but *'ālāf* and *malāyīn* are used in the plural after 3 to 9, and in the singular otherwise:

<i>khamsat 'ālāf* (īlīb)</i>	<i>khamsīn 'alf (īlīb)</i>
<i>'arba9a malāyīn (dīnār)</i>	<i>arba9īn malyūn (dīnār)</i>

* Numbers 3 to 9 add *-t* before *hamza* (see 6/11). Further, the unit numbers do not lose their final *-a* before *malāyīn* as they do before *mīya* and *mīt*.

Telephone and similar long serial numbers are expressed differently in different Arab countries:

$$446762 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} 'arba9a, 'arba9a, sitta, sab9a, sitta, ithnayn \\ 'arba9a u 'arba9īn, sab9a u sittīn, ithnayn u sittīn \\ 'arba9 mīya u sitta u 'arba9īn, sabi9 mīya u thnayn u sittīn \end{array} \right.$$

11. Fractions and percentages

Fractions other than ~~half~~ have the pattern of *thulth* ~~third~~

<i>nuṣṣ*</i>	(one/a) half	<i>thulth</i>	(one) third
<i>rub9</i>	quarter	<i>khums</i>	fifth
<i>suds</i>	sixth	<i>sub9</i>	seventh
<i>thumn</i>	eighth	<i>tus9</i>	ninth
<i>9ushr</i>	tenth		

* Some speakers use the written form *niṣf*

wāḥid is not used, but the dual is:

<i>an-niṣfayn</i>	both halves	<i>thulthayn/khumsayn</i>	two thirds/fifths
-------------------	-------------	---------------------------	-------------------

The plurals are mostly formed on the model *'athlāth* ~~thirds~~

<i>'anṣāf</i> , <i>'athlāth</i> , <i>'arbā9</i> , <i>'akhmās</i> , <i>'asdās</i> , <i>'asbā9</i> , <i>'athmān</i> , <i>'atsā9</i> , <i>'a9shār/9ushūr</i>	halves, thirds, quarters, fifths, ...
--	---------------------------------------

These are the forms used without a numerator. Not all denominators are in frequent use; the commonest are:

(<i>thalāthat</i>) ' <i>arbā</i> 9	(three) quarters
(<i>'arba</i> 9at) ' <i>akhmās</i>	(four) fifths
(<i>sab</i> 9at) ' <i>athmān</i>	(seven) eighths
(<i>tis</i> 9at) ' <i>ash</i> 9ār	(nine) tenths

We can also express such fractions with the cardinal numbers and *min* or *9ala*:

<i>kham</i> sa min/ <i>9ala</i> <i>sab</i> 9a	five sevenths
' <i>ihd</i> 9ashr min/ <i>9ala</i> <i>9ishrīn</i>	eleven twentieths
<i>wāḥid</i> min/ <i>9ala</i> <i>thn</i> 9ashr	one twelfth
<i>ithn</i> ayn min/ <i>9ala</i> <i>kham</i> st9ashr	two fifteenths

For percentages we use *fī l-mīya* or *bi l-mīya*:

<i>sittīn fī/bi l-mīya</i>	sixty per cent
----------------------------	----------------

12. Time

Time on the hour is expressed with the number 1 to 12 (1 and 2 in the feminine), preceded, optionally, by *as-sā*9a:

(*as-sā*9a) *wāḥida*, *thintayn*, *thalātha*, '*arba*9a, *kham*sa ... *ithn*9ashr

We do not use the dual of *sā*9a in this context.

Minutes in the first half-hour are expressed with *u* and *nuṣṣ*/*rub*9/*thulth* or a number of minutes; for minutes not in multiples of five add *daqīqa*, *daqīqtayn*, *daqāyiq* minute(s)

(<i>as-sā</i> 9a) <i>sitta u nuṣṣ</i>	half-past six
(<i>as-sā</i> 9a) <i>sab</i> 9a <i>u rub</i> 9	a quarter past seven
(<i>as-sā</i> 9a) <i>tis</i> 9a <i>u thulth</i>	twenty past nine
<i>9ashra u kham</i> sa	five past ten
<i>tis</i> 9a <i>u 9ashra</i>	ten past nine
' <i>ihd</i> 9ashr <i>u daqīqtayn</i>	two minutes past eleven
<i>ithn</i> 9ashr <i>u saba</i> 9t9ashr <i>daqīqa</i>	seventeen minutes past twelve

In the second half-hour we use '*illa* and the next hour:

' <i>arba</i> 9a ' <i>illa kham</i> sa <i>u 9ishrīn</i>	twenty-five to four
' <i>ihd</i> 9ashr ' <i>illa thulth</i>	twenty to eleven
<i>thalātha</i> ' <i>illa rub</i> 9	a quarter to three
<i>kham</i> sa ' <i>illa daqīqtayn</i>	two minutes to five

In the middle third of the hour, we can also refer to the half-hour:

(<i>as-sā</i> 9a) <i>tis</i> 9a <i>u nuṣṣ u kham</i> sa	twenty-five to ten
<i>thalātha u nuṣṣ</i> ' <i>illa daqīqtayn</i>	twenty-eight minutes past four

Note also: *kam as-sā*9a?/*as-sā*9a *kam*? What time is it?

Atqis *fī*: *fī* '*ayy sā*9a? At what time?

13. Other time expressions

Distinguish between:

<i>waqt</i> ' <i>ouqāt</i>	time in general
<i>zaman/zamān</i> ' <i>azmān</i>	time in general, period of time
<i>mudda mudad</i>	period
<i>fatra fatarāt</i>	interval, period

<i>marra</i>	a time, occasion
<i>yum 'ayyām</i>	day (24 hours)
<i>nahār, 'anhur</i>	period of daylight, daytime
<i>as-sā'at thintayn</i>	two o'clock
<i>sā'atayn</i>	two hours

Note also an important noun *thāniya thawān* a second, seconds and important adjectives:

<i>jārī</i>	current	<i>hādir</i>	present
<i>māqī</i>	past	<i>muqbil, jāi</i>	next

jārī is invariable in this usage; the other adjectives agree with their noun. *jārī* and *māqī* have f. and pl. forms like *fāqī, fāqīya, fāqīyīn*:

<i>as-sana l-jārī/l-muqbila</i>	<i>al-fatra l-hādira/l-jārīya</i>
<i>ash-shahrayn al-māqīyīn</i>	

14. Days of the week

The days of the week are:

<i>(yum) al-jum'a</i>	Friday	<i>(yum) as-sabt</i>	Saturday
<i>al-'ahad</i>	Sunday	<i>al-ithnayn</i>	Monday
<i>ath-thalātha</i>	Tuesday	<i>al-'arba'a</i>	Wednesday
<i>al-khamīs</i>	Thursday		

The word *yum* is often used, especially before those names most resembling the numbers.

15. Indirect commands and requests

Direct command or request is the imperative, studied in 5/9. Indirect command or request is expressed with *'inn* and the present tense:

<i>'atlub minnu 'innu yishūfak.</i>	Id ask him to (ask that he) see you.
<i>ṭalabū minnī 'innī 'adkhul.</i>	They asked me to come in.

The indirect speech rule (4/7) applies.

16. *ghayr*

This word is used as an invariable adjective meaning *other, different*. It precedes the qualified noun when the latter is singular:

<i>hādhi ghayr mushkila.</i>	That's another/a different problem.
------------------------------	-------------------------------------

With a plural noun, it is usually followed by *min*, and the noun is defined. In this construction, *ghayr* can be regarded as a pronoun:

<i>shuft hāshim u ghayr min az-zumalā'.</i>	I saw Hashim and other colleagues (others of the colleagues).
<i>fī ghayr min 'aṣdiqā'ī moujūdīn?</i>	Are there other friends of mine (others of my friends) present?

When the noun is inferred, *ghayr* itself is usually made definite:

<i>tuṭlub ikthīr min al-ghayr.</i>	You're asking a lot of others (the other).
<i>mā fī ghayru.</i>	There's nothing else/but this/other than this.
<i>laysh tkhāf min ghayrak?</i>	Why are you frightened of others?

ghayr is also used as a preposition, *except (for), besides*:

<i>ghayr hādha, shū qālū lak?</i>	What did they tell you besides this?
-----------------------------------	--------------------------------------

Note also *u ghayru/u ghayrha* and so on, etc.

al-murūr, ya9nī sayyārāt, taksīāt u ghayru traffic, that is to say cars, taxis and so on.

Finally, an important adverbial use of *ghayr*. It negates almost any adjective or other adverb, as an alternative to *mish*:

<i>ghayr/mish mumkin</i>	impossible
<i>ghayr/mish musta9mal</i>	unused, disused
<i>ghayr 9arabī</i>	non-Arab, un-Arab, non-Arabic

17. Regional variations: *u, a* → *i*

In Egypt and the Levant the short vowels *u* and *a* in the vicinity of *ī, i, ay* or *y* are frequently pronounced as *i*:

yimkin, 'imkānīyi, tiltayn (= *thulthayn*)

18. *jumal mithālīya*

'ana mish fāḍī bukra, walākin ba9d bukra
yiṣīr.

I'm not free to-morrow, but the
day after tomorrow's all
right.

shū ra'yak inqūl ba9d bukra, bayn as-sā9a
'iḥd9ashr u 'iḥd9ashr u thulth?

Supposing we say the day
after tomorrow, between
eleven o'clock and twenty
past?

'uḍrub lī tilifoun lamma tūṣal li l-bayt.

Give me a ring when you get
home.

fī 'awwā'il as-sana l-jāī mā yikūn fī
maḥall 'ilhum. 'aḥsan 'ilhum 'innhum
yūṣalū hassa.

Early next year there will be no
room for them. It's better for
them to arrive now.

kān lāzim yibī9u d-dukkān u yirūḥū
9a sh-shām. mā kān 'ilhum ghayr
'imkānīya.

They had to sell the shop and
go to Damascus. There
was no other possibility for
them.

al-'oulād kānū yināmū u 'ana dakhalt.

The children were sleeping as
I came in.

19. *at-tamārīn*

1. Give the principal parts of the verb:

e.g.: *rāḥ* – *rāḥ* *yirūḥ*

- | | | |
|-----------------|------------------|----------------|
| (a) <i>shāf</i> | (b) <i>ṭalab</i> | (c) <i>nām</i> |
| (d) <i>ṭār</i> | (e) <i>bā9</i> | |

2. Put into the present tense:

e.g.: *al-walad nām.* – *al-walad yinām.*

- | | | |
|------------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------|
| (a) 'ana shuftu l-youm. | (b) wayn rāḥ? | (c) ṣirna 'aghniyā'. |
| (d) bā9ū bayt-hum fī bayrūt. | (e) jibtu l-fulūs ma9kum? | |

👂 3. Add *kān lāzim*, changing the verb where necessary:

e.g.: 'ana shuft-hum. – kān lāzim 'ashūfhum.

- (a) ruḥna li l-balad. (b) 'ashūfu bukra. (c) zāru l-mudīr.
(d) jābu l-kutub? (e) ṭalabna minnu.

4. Give the affirmative and negative imperative:

e.g.: shāf – shūf, shūfī, shūfū; lā tshūf, lā tshūfī, lā tshūfū

- (a) kān (b) khāf (c) kharaj
(d) qāl (e) jāb

5. Today is Saturday. Answer the questions:

e.g.: bukra yikūn 'ayy youm? – bukra yikūn youm al-'aḥad

- (a) 'ams kān 'ayy youm? (b) ba9d bukra yikūn 'ayy youm?
(c) 9indak shughl al-youm? (d) 'awwal 'ams kān 'ayy youm?
(e) kam youm fī l-'usbū9?

6. Report the command or request, using *ṭalabt min ...*:

e.g.: rūḥū bukra. – ṭalabt minhum 'innhum yirūḥū bukra.

- (a) shūfī kitābik. (b) jīb al-fulūs ma9ak. (c) rūḥ 9a l-madrasa.
(d) 'udkhulū 9indī. (e) 'irkabu t-taksī.

7. What time is it?

e.g.: 12.20 – as-sā9a 'iḥd9ashr u thulth

- (a) 4.15 (b) 6.30 (c) 10.14
(d) 11.40 (e) 1.38 (two possibilities)

8. Read the number:

e.g.: 345 – thalāth mīya u khamisa u 'arba9īn

- (a) 200 (b) 4,338 (c) 369½
(d) 4,500,000 (e) 772

9. Put the number with the noun:

e.g.: sana (3) – thalātha sanawāt/snīn

- (a) youm (12) (b) 'usbū9 (2) (c) shahr (6)
(d) 'imkāniya (4) (e) thāniya (45)

ad-dars ath-thāmin . Lesson 8

at-ta9līm wa t-tadrīb . Teaching and Training

1. *al-ḥikāya wa l-ḥiwār*

munāsib

bada

ma9had ma9āhid

ta9līmī

(ba9d mā 9imil Peter al-mawā9id
al-munāsiba, bada jawltu fī 9iddat madāris
wa ma9āhid ta9līmīya fi l-balad,

yihkī

ta9āwun

ta9līm

9ilmī

'aḥmad

ḥatta yihkī ma9 al-mudarā' ḥawl at-ta9āwun
9ala t-ta9līm al-9ilmī wa l-fannī. fa 'awwal
mou9id kān 9ind mudīr al-madrasa
th-thānawīya l-fannīya, ad-duktur
'aḥmad hāshim.)

'azunn

ḥaka

gharaḍ 'aghrāḍ min

'aḥmad: 'ahlan yā sayyid Brown. 'ana
'aḥmad hāshim, mudīr al-madrasa.

Peter: furṣa sa9īda, yā 'ustādh 'aḥmad.
'azunn 'inn mudīrī ḥaka ma9ak
bi khuṣūṣ al-gharaḍ min ziyārtī?

jalas yijlis

mas'ala masāyil

'aḥibb

'awwalan

(yijlisū.)

'aḥmad: 'ayna9am, 'ana 9ala 9ilm bi
l-mas'ala. 'aḥibb 'awwalan
'ashraḥ lak shughl al-madrasa.

takhaṣṣuṣ

mukhtálif

suitable, appropriate

he began

institute

educational

(After making the appropriate
appointments, Peter began his
tour of some schools and
educational establishments in
town,

he talks

cooperation

teaching, education

scientific

Ahmad (name)

so as to talk to the directors
about cooperation on scientific
and technical education. His
first appointment was with the
Director of the Secondary
Technical School, Dr Ahmad
Hashim.)

I suppose, I presume

he spoke, he talked

purpose of

Welcome, Mr Brown. Iqan
Ahmad Hashim, Director of the
school.

Very pleased to meet you, Dr
Hashim. I presume my director
has spoken to you about the
purpose of my visit?

to sit

matter

I like

firstly

(They sit.)

Yes, I know about the matter. I
would like first to explain to
you the work of the school.

specialisation

varied, various

	<i>kullha</i> <i>ḥaql ḥuqūl</i> <i>'asāsī</i> 9indna takḥaṣṣuṣāt mukhtálifa, kullha fi l-ḥuqūl al-'asāsīya.	all of them field basic We have various specialis- ations, all of them in the basic fields.
	<i>qarayt</i> <i>kull</i> <i>'asās 'usus</i> <i>9ilm 9ulūm</i>	I (have) read all basis, foundation science
Peter:	qarayt 'inn yudrusū 9indkum 'oulād u banāt kamān.	I read that boys and girls both study here.
'aḥmad:	ṭab9an. kull aṭ-ṭullāb wa ṭ-ṭālibāt yudrusū 'usus al-9ulūm.	Of course. All the students, boys and girls, study basic sciences (the bases of science).
	<i>bi ṣūra naẓarīya</i> <i>qidir yiqdar</i> <i>al-'ān</i> <i>khiyāṭa</i> <i>ṭibākha</i> bi-ṣūra naẓarīya, yiqdaru l-banāt yudrusū 'ayy takḥaṣṣuṣ. ḥatta al-'ān yudrusū l-khiyāṭa wa ṭ-ṭibākha,	theoretically can, to be able now sewing, dressmaking cookery Theoretically, the girls can study any specialisation. Until now they have studied dressmaking and cookery,
	<i>yījī</i> <i>ba9d</i> <i>yibdū</i> <i>kahraba</i> <i>mathalan</i> <i>musta9idd</i> walākin lamma yīji l-youm wa ba9d al-banāt yibdū yudrusu l-kahraba mathalan, 'ana musta9idd, wa l-ma9had musta9idd.	he comes some of they begin electricity for example ready, prepared but when the day comes that some girls start studying electricity for example, I am ready and the institute is ready.
	<i>ẓannayt</i> <i>wa9d 'ouḍā9</i> <i>mā huwa/hiya</i> <i>sharṭ shurūṭ</i> <i>dukhūl</i>	I supposed/presumed situation, position what condition entry
Peter:	ẓannayt 'inna l-wa9d kadha. fa mā hiya shurūṭ ad-dukhūl fi l-ma9had?	I presumed that was the situation. So what are the con- ditions of entry to the institute?
	<i>murashshaḥ</i> <i>illī</i>	candidate who, that, which (relative pronoun)

	<i>raghba fī</i> <i>dirāsa</i>	wish for study
'aḥmad:	al-murashshaḥ illi 9indu raghba fi d-dirāsa huna, <i>mutawassiṭ</i> <i>shahāda</i> <i>yibda</i> <i>mamnū</i> lāzim yukhruj min al-madrasa l-mutawassiṭa ma ⁹ ash-shahāda l-munāsiba. mā yiqdar yibda huna 'illa bi ḥādhi sh-shahāda. ḥādha mamnū ⁹ . <i>9ādatan</i> <i>'aktharīya</i> <i>yibqū</i> <i>'imma ... 'aw</i> 9ādatan mā fī mushkila. 'aktharīyat at-talāmīdh al-mutawassiṭīn, 9ind-hum shahāda. yibqū huna 'imma thalātha 'aw 'arba ⁹ a sanawāt. <i>ḥāla</i> <i>istithnā'ī</i> <i>lājī</i> <i>'aj nabī ajānib</i> fī ḥālāt istithnā'īya, ya ⁹ nī lājī 'aw 'aj nabī u kadha, <i>nḥuṭtu</i> <i>ṣaff' ṣufūf</i> <i>ḥatta</i> <i>tamm</i> <i>imtiḥān</i> <i>taḥḍīrī</i> yumkin inḥuṭtu fī ṣaff' khāṣṣ ḥatta tamm imtiḥān taḥḍīrī. <i>maṣhūm</i> <i>yihimmna</i> <i>9amalī</i>	The candidate who wants to study here, middle, medium (adjective) certificate he begins prohibited, forbidden must come from the middle school with the appropriate certificate. He can ⁹ start here without this certificate. That ⁹ forbidden. usually majority they stay either ... or Usually there ⁹ no problem; most middle-school pupils have a certificate. They stay here for either three or four years. case exceptional refugee foreign In exceptional cases, say a refugee or a foreigner or such, we put him, we place him class (also conjunction:) until it was/has been completed (academic) examination preparatory we might put him into a special class until a preparatory exam- ination has been completed. understood it is important for us practical
Peter:	maḥmūm. yihimmna kthīr at-ta ⁹ līm al-9amalī 'ayḍan.	I see. For us practical instruc- tion is also very important.

	<i>ma9lūm</i>	known,
	<i>mashghal mashāghil</i>	(here:) of course
	<i>hayk</i>	workshop
	<i>shirib yishrab</i>	so, therefore, thus
	<i>nafs-ha</i>	to drink
		herself
'aḥmad:	ma9lūm; ash-shughl fi l-mashghal ḍarūrī ya9nī. fa hayk, khallīna nzūr ba9dayn al-mashāghil ḥatta tākhudh fikra maḥbūṭa. walākin 'awwalan, tishrab qahwa, yā sayyid Peter? 9imilat-ha zoujtī nafs-ha.	Of course; work in the work- shop is essential. So let's visit the workshops later so that you get an accurate impression. But first, will you have some coffee, Mr Brown? My wife made it herself.

2. 9ibārāt

ḥatta l-'ān until now, up to now
al-gharaḍ min the purpose of

3. mufradāt 'iḍāfiya. at-ta9līm wa t-tadrīb

<i>tārbiya</i>	education, upbringing	<i>ibtidā'ī</i>	primary (school etc.)
<i>tarbawī</i>	educational	<i>tadrīb</i>	training
<i>tadrīs</i>	instruction	<i>mudarris</i>	instructor
<i>'ijbārī</i>	compulsory	<i>ikhtiyārī</i>	optional
<i>thaqāfa</i>	culture	<i>muthaqqaf</i>	educated, cultured
<i>qirāya</i>	reading	<i>kitāba</i>	writing
<i>riyāḍiyyāt</i>	mathematics	<i>jabr</i>	algebra
<i>ḥisāb</i>	arithmetic	<i>handasa</i>	geometry, engineering
<i>tārīkh tawārīkh</i>	history, date	<i>jughrāfiya</i>	geography
<i>kīmiya</i>	chemistry	<i>fīziya</i>	physics
<i>fann funūn</i>	art	<i>riyāḍa</i>	sport
<i>liḥām</i>	welding	<i>sibāka</i>	plumbing
<i>tabrīd</i>	refrigeration	<i>takyīf al-hawa</i>	air conditioning
<i>nijāra</i>	carpentry	<i>mikānik</i>	mechanics
<i>taqrīr taqārīr</i>	report	<i>diblōm</i>	diploma
<i>kullīya</i>	faculty, college	<i>mutakharrij</i>	graduate
<i>kaslān kasla</i>	lazy	<i>jāhil juhhal</i>	ignorant
<i>at-ta9līm al-'9ālī /al-jāmi9ī</i>	higher/university education		
<i>najaḥ yinjah (fi mtiḥān)</i>	to pass (an examination)		
<i>rasab yursub (fi mtiḥān)</i>	to fail (an examination)		
<i>al-lugha l-9arabīya l-fuṣḥa; al-9arabīya l-fuṣḥa; al-faṣīḥ</i>	literary Arabic		
<i>al-lugha l-9arabīya d-dārija; al-9arabīya d-dārija; ad-dārij</i>	colloquial Arabic		

an-naḥū

4. Past tense of doubled verbs

In doubled verbs the middle and final root letters are identical, e.g. *ḥaṭṭ* ~~to~~ put, to place. These two root letters stay together in both tenses. Note the diphthong

-ay- inserted before the ending of the first two persons of the past tense:

Root *h ṭ ṭ*, first principal part *ḥaṭṭ* to put, to place:

ḥaṭṭayt, ḥaṭṭayt/ḥaṭṭayti, ḥaṭṭ/ḥaṭṭat; ḥaṭṭayna, ḥaṭṭaytū, ḥaṭṭū

I, you, he (etc.) put, placed

so also:

<i>ḥabb</i>	to like, love	<i>zann</i>	to suppose
<i>marr bi/9ala</i>	to pass by	<i>madd</i>	to extend
<i>ḥall</i>	to solve	<i>tamm</i>	to be completed
<i>ḥass</i>	to feel	<i>dall</i>	to direct, indicate
<i>shakk fī</i>	to doubt	<i>hamm</i>	to be important
<i>ḡall/zall</i>	to remain		

5. Present tense of doubled verbs

The present tense prefixes of doubled verbs are the same as for the hollow verbs (i.e. *t-* and *n-* have no vowel). The middle vowel of the verb varies with the verb:

ḥaṭṭ yihṭṭ:

'aḥṭṭ, ṭḥṭṭ/ṭḥṭṭī, yihṭṭ/ṭḥṭṭ; nḥṭṭ, ṭḥṭṭū, yihṭṭū

I, you (etc.) put(s), place(s)

so also:

<i>ḥabb yihibb</i>	<i>zann yizunn</i>	<i>marr yimurr bi/9ala</i>
<i>madd yimudd</i>	<i>ḥall yihill</i>	<i>tamm yitimm</i>
<i>ḥass yihiss</i>	<i>dall yidill</i>	<i>shakk yishukk fī</i>
<i>hamm yihimm</i>	<i>ḡall yiḡall/zall yizall</i>	

6. Imperative of doubled verbs

The imperative of doubled verbs is formed under the same rules as for hollow verbs:

ḥuṭṭ/ḥuṭṭī/ḥuṭṭū; lā ṭḥuṭṭ/lā ṭḥuṭṭī/lā ṭḥuṭṭū

7. Past tense of final-weak verbs

Final-weak verbs have a weak (i.e. unstable) final root letter, *w*, *y* or *'*. In the past tense this final root letter takes the following forms:

- before consonantal personal endings (*-l, -ti, -na, -tū*): *-ay-*
- in the third person masculine singular (*huwa*): *-a*
- before the personal endings *-at* and *-ū*: it disappears

Apart from the third person m. sing. (*huwa*), the personal endings are the same as for verbs with a sound final root letter.

Root *ḥ k y*, first principal part *ḥaka* to speak, to talk:

ḥakayt, ḥakayt/ḥakayti, ḥaka/ḥakat; ḥakayna, ḥakaytū, ḥakū

I, you (etc.) spoke, talked

so also:

Root <i>r j w, raja</i>	to request	<i>m sh y, masha</i>	to walk
<i>r m y, rama</i>	to throw	<i>j r y, jara</i>	to flow
<i>n w y, nawa*</i>	to intend	<i>b d ', bada</i>	to begin
<i>q r ', qara</i>	to read		

* *nawa* has also a weak *middle* root letter, but this remains stable as *w*:

nawayt, nawayt/nawayti, nawa/nawat; nawayna, nawaytū, nawū

8. Present tense of final-weak verbs

Whereas in the past tense all three final weak root letters behave similarly, in the present tense each one has its own pattern. In the present tense each final root letter vocalises into a different vowel:

- final root letter *w* vocalises to *ū*
- final root letter *y* vocalises to *ī*
- final root letter *'* vocalises to *a*

and each is dropped before the vocalic personal endings *-ī* and *-ū*.

The prefixes are the same as for the sound verbs (*'a-*, *tī-*, *nī-*, *yī-*).

Final *w*; *raja yirjū*:

'arjū, tirjū/tirjī, yirjū/tirjū; nirjū, tirjū, yirjū I, you (etc.) request(s)

This is the only common final-*w* verb used in this form of spoken Arabic.

Final *y*; *haka yihkī*:

'ahkī, tihkī/tihkī, yihkī/tihkī; nihkī, tihkū, yihkū I, you (etc.) speak(s)/talk(s)

so also:

masha yimshī rama yirmī jara yirjī nawa yinwī (*w* stable)

Final *hamza*; *bada yibda*:

'abda, tibda/tibdī, yibda/tibda; nibda, tibdū, yibdū I, you (etc.) begin(s)

so also: *qara yiqra*

9. Irregular final-weak verbs

Three final-weak verbs are irregular, two of them similarly:

Root *n s y*, *nisī yinsa* to forget; root *biqī yibqa* to remain:

Past: *nisīt, nisīt/nisīti, nisīt/nisyat; nisīna, nisītū, nisū* I, you (etc.) forgot

biqīt, biqīt/biqīti, biqīt/biqyat; biqīna, biqītū, biqū I, you (etc.) remained

Pres.: *'ansa, tinsa/tinsī, yinsa/tinsa; ninsa, tinsū, yinsū* I, you (etc.) forget(s)

'abqa, tibqa/tibqī, yibqa/tibqa; nibqa, tubqū, yibqū I, you (etc.) remain(s)

Root *' j y*, *'aja yījī* to come:

Past: *'ijīt, 'ijīt/'ijīti, 'aja/'ajat; 'ijīna, 'ijītū, 'ajū* I, you (etc.) came

Pres.: *'ājī, tījī/tījī, yījī/tījī; nījī, tījū, yījū* I, you (etc.) come(s)

10. Imperative of final-weak verbs

The imperative of final-weak verbs is formed under the same rules as that of sound verbs:

'ihkī/'ihki/'ihkū; lā tihkī/lā tihkī/lā tihkū

'insa/'insī/'insū; lā tinsa/lā tinsī/lā tinsū

The affirmative imperative of *'aja yījī* is not used. Use instead:

ta9āl/ta9ālī/ta9ālū (from another root) Come

The negative imperative is regular: *lā tījī/lā tījī/lā tījū* Don't come

Final-weak verb rule: In the tenses and imperative of final-weak verbs, the weak final root letter is dropped before the vocalic endings *-ī*, *-at* and *-ū*.

11. Negatives and pronoun suffixes

Both doubled and final-weak verbs are negated as usual: tenses with *mā*, imperative with *lā*. Suffixes are added as usual. For the final-weak verbs, the object pronoun rule (4/6) is especially important:

yiqraʾ he reads it *lā tinsāhum* donʿ forget them

12. Auxiliary verbs

An auxiliary verb expresses the will, inclination or potential to carry out the action of another ('dependent') verb: ~~He~~ *wants* to know ~~I~~ *can* go. The English verbs italicised here are auxiliaries. Almost any Arabic verb whose meaning permits it can be used as an auxiliary. Examples are:

<i>qidir yiqdar</i>	can, to be able	<i>nawa yinwī</i>	to intend
<i>bada yibda</i>	to begin	<i>nisī yinsa</i>	to forget
<i>ḥabb yiḥabb</i>	to like	<i>khallī-</i>	let
<i>najaḥ yinjah</i>	to succeed	<i>samaḥ yismaḥ li</i>	to permit

The auxiliary can be in any form, but the following dependent verb is always in the present tense, as after *mumkin*, *lāzim* and *yumkin*:

<i>mā yiqdar yiḥkī 9arabī.</i>	He canʿ speak Arabic.
<i>'anwī 'arūḥ ma9kum.</i>	I intend to go with you.
<i>'aḥibb 'ākul huna.</i>	I like eating/to eat here.
<i>lā tinsa tījī.</i>	Donʿ forget to come
<i>khallīnī/'ismaḥ lī 'ashraḥ kayf.</i>	Let me/Permit me to explain how.
<i>bada yimshī warāī.</i>	He began walking/to walk behind me.
<i>mā qidirt/mā kunt 'aqdar 'ashūfu.</i>	I wasnʿ able to see him.
<i>mā najaḥt ti9malu?</i>	Didnʿ you succeed in doing it?

The present tense of *kān yikūn* has present meaning after an auxiliary verb:

<i>khallīʿ yikūn kadha.</i>	Let it be so.
-----------------------------	---------------

13. Adjective (relative) clauses

See 6/18 for the definition of a clause. Relative clauses are those which qualify an *antecedent*, i.e. a preceding noun or pronoun.

After a *definite* antecedent, we use the relative pronoun *illī* ~~who~~, that, which

<i>at-tilmīdh illī yibda yudrus 9indna, lāzim yikūn 9indu ...</i>	The pupil who begins studying with us must have ...
<i>at-tilmīdha llī katabat hādha ...</i>	the pupil who wrote that ...

In these examples *illī* is the subject of its verb. When *illī* is the direct or prepositional object of its verb (3/16), the verb or preposition carries the appropriate pronoun suffix:

<i>al-kitāb illī qaraytu ...</i>	the book which I read (it) ...
<i>wayn al-fulūs illī jibt-ha?</i>	Whereʿ the money which you brought (it)?
<i>al-bilād illī kānū yuskunū fī ...</i>	the country in which they were living/which they were living in (it) ...
<i>an-nās illī darast 9ind-hum al-9arabī ...</i>	the people with whom I studied Arabic/whom I studied Arabic with (them) ...

After an *indefinite* antecedent, *illī* is omitted:

Subject: <i>shakhṣ yiqūl hādha ...</i>	a person who says that ...
--	----------------------------

Direct object: *kitāb qaraytu ...* a book which I (have) read ...
 Prep. object: *bilād kānū yuskunū fī ...* a country which they lived in ...
 In English we can often omit the relative pronoun at will: ~~the~~/the person (whom) I met yesterday ...
 The Arabic rule is different, and is not optional.

Relative rule: The relative pronoun is omitted when the antecedent is indefinite.

14. Pronoun antecedent

In a relative sentence having a *pronoun* as antecedent, the same rules apply as shown above, except that the pronoun antecedents *huwa*, *hiya*, *hum* are omitted:

illī yihkī kadha ma ya9raf al-9arab. He who/Whoever talks like that
 doesn't know the Arabs.
shuftu llī 'aja? Did you see the person who came?
illī shuft-hum ... those (whom) I saw ...

15. Interrogatives

With the interrogative *'ayy* ~~what~~, which the pronoun suffix on the verb or preposition is optional:

'ayy kitāb tiqra/tiqrā? What book are you reading?
khilāl 'ayy fatra sakantū hunāk? For how long (During what period) did you live there?

But better is *mā huwa/mā hiya* plus *illī*, with obligatory suffix:

mā huwa l-kitāb illī tiqrā? ~~What~~ What is the book that you are reading?
mā hiya l-fatra llī sakantū khilālha hunāk? ~~What~~ What is the period during which you lived there?

mā here is ~~what~~ not a negative.

Note also *mīn illī*, often preferred to *mīn*:

mīn illī kān yihkī? Who (~~is~~ it who) was speaking?
mīn illī ḥaka ma9u 'ams? Who (~~is~~ it who) spoke to him yesterday?
mīn illī ḥakayt ma9u 'ams? Whom did you speak to (~~Who~~ is it that you spoke to) yesterday?

If you know French, you will recognise a close parallel for the first two examples:

Qui est-ce qui parlait? Qui est-ce qui lui a parlé hier?

16. *nafs*

The noun *nafs* *'anfus* ~~self~~ has three important uses:

- in the m. sing., in a definite construct: ~~the same~~
nafs ash-shī the same thing *nafs an-nās* the same people
- reflexive or emphatic pronoun with suffix: ~~self~~
9imilat-ha zoujtī nafs-ha. My wife made it herself.
badū yishukkū fī 'anfus-hum. They began to doubt themselves.
- in its original meaning as a noun: ~~self~~
i9timād 9ala n-nafs self-confidence

17. *ba9d*

This word has three important uses:

- invariable reciprocal pronoun: ~~each~~ otherq
mashū 9an ba9d They walked away from each other.
- reciprocal pronoun or noun: ~~each~~ otherq repeated; first with a suffix, next with the article:
mā 9irifū ba9dhum al-ba9d. They didnq know each other.
- in a definite construct or with a possessive suffix: ~~some~~ (of)q
ba9d waqtak some of your time *ba9d al-waqt* some of the time
ba9dhum mā 'ajū 'abadan. Some of them did not come at all.

18. *kull*

Three important uses:

- as a definite noun: ~~the~~ wholeq
al-kull the whole (lot)
- before an indefinite singular noun: ~~every~~, eachq
kull shī everything *kull wāhid wāhid bas!* Only one each!
- in a definite construct or with a possessive suffix: ~~all~~ (of)q
kull al-'oulād all the children *kullu/kullha* all of it

19. *jamī9*

This is a synonym for *kull* ~~all~~q in the plural only:

kull/jamī9 an-nās all the people *li l-jamī9* for all/everybody

20. Ordinal numbers

Ordinal numbers show a position in a sequence. The ordinal numbers 1st to 10th are as follows. All but the first two are derived on the model *thālith* ~~third~~q

1st	'awwal, 'ūla, 'awwalīn	2nd	thānī, thāniya, thāniyīn
3rd	thālith	4th	rābi9
5th	khāmis	6th	sādis
7th	sābi9	8th	thāmin
9th	tāsi9	10th	9āshir

They are used in two ways:

- m. sing. form in indefinite construct with the qualified noun. The construct is, however, *definite* in meaning:
rābi9 wāhid the fourth one *thālith marra* the third time
- as an adjective, following and agreeing with the noun:
as-sana l-'ūla the first year *ash-shahr as-sādis* the sixth month

thānī also means ~~other~~q

thānī marra

(fī) shī thānī?

the other/another time; the second time

(Is there) anything else?

Note also *thānī youm* ~~the~~ next dayq

21. For ordinal numbers above ~~enth~~q we use the cardinal number following the noun, or after a noun such as *raqm*:

ad-dars (raqm) 'iḥd9ashr

al-youm al-9ishrīn

22. mithl

Note the structure

mithl hādha sh-shakhs

a person like this/that; such a person

mithl hādhi l-buyūt

houses like this; such houses

Distinguish between:

preposition: *mithl*

like

conjunction: *mithl mā*

as

huwa mish mithlak.

He isn't like you

9imil mithl mā 9imilt 'ana.

He did as I did.

23. Activities, instruments, places

Some activities have typical patterns for profession, person, instrument and place:

Root	Profession, model <i>nijāra</i>	Person, model <i>najjār</i>
<i>n j r</i> carve:	<i>nijāra</i> carpentry	<i>najjār</i> carpenter
<i>ṭ b kh</i> cook:	<i>ṭibākha</i> cooking	<i>ṭabbākh</i> cook
<i>kh y ṭ</i> sew:	<i>khiyāṭa</i> sewing	<i>khaṣyāṭ(a)</i> tailor/dressmaker
<i>s b k</i> smelt:	<i>sibāka</i> smelting, plumbing	<i>sabbāk</i> smelter, plumber
<i>l ḥ m</i> weld:	<i>liḥām</i> (no final -a) welding	<i>lahḥām</i> welder, butcher
<i>n q sh</i> paint:	<i>niqāsha</i> painting	<i>naqqāsh</i> painter
Instrument, models <i>miftāḥ mafātīḥ</i>, <i>minshafa manāshif</i>		
<i>f t ḥ</i> open:	<i>miftāḥ mafātīḥ</i>	key
<i>n sh r</i> saw:	<i>minshār manāshīr</i>	saw
<i>s m r</i> nail:	<i>mismār masāmīr</i>	nail
<i>q y s</i> measure:	<i>miqyās maqāyīs</i>	measure(ment)
<i>n sh f</i> dry:	<i>minshafa manāshif</i>	towel
Place, models <i>maktab/maktaba makātib</i>		
<i>k t b</i> write:	<i>maktab makātib</i>	office
	<i>maktaba makātib</i>	library, bookshop
<i>ṭ b kh</i> cook:	<i>maṭbakh maṭābikh</i>	kitchen
<i>9 h d</i> know:	<i>ma9had ma9āhid</i>	institute
<i>sh gh l</i> work:	<i>mashghal mashāghil</i>	workshop
<i>9 m l</i> make:	<i>ma9mal ma9āmil</i>	workshop, laboratory
<i>ṭ 9 m</i> taste:	<i>maṭ9am maṭā9im</i>	restaurant
<i>d r s</i> study:	<i>madrassa madāris</i>	school
<i>ṣ n 9</i> fabricate:	<i>maṣna9 maṣāni9</i>	factory
<i>ḥ ṭ ṭ</i> put:	<i>maḥaṭṭa</i> (sound plural)	station
<i>ḥ k m</i> judge:	<i>maḥkama maḥākim</i>	law-court
<i>ṭ y r</i> fly:	<i>maṭār</i> (sound plural)	airport
<i>f r q</i> split:	<i>mafraq mafāriq</i>	crossroad
<i>n z l</i> reside:	<i>manzil manāzil</i>	residence

24. Regional variations: Iraq, Gulf, North-west Africa

In Iraq and north-west Africa *q* is often pronounced *g*:

qal → *gāl*

qism → *gism*

mafraq → *mafrag*

An *a* or *ā* next to the *g* in such words may be velarised (see Pronunciation):

gāl, mafrāg.

In Iraq and some parts of the Gulf, *k* next to a front or middle vowel (*i, ī, a, ā*) sounds in some words like *ch* in English ~~church~~ a sound not represented in the Arabic alphabet. We can transcribe it *ch*:

kam → *cham*

kayf ḥālik? → *kayf ḥālich?*

Iraq and the Gulf have a special word for ~~howq~~ *shloun*:

shlounach/shlounich/shlounkum? = *kayfak/kayfik/kayfkum?*

Iraqis pronounce *ch* and *p* (the latter also as in English) for certain words borrowed from their Turkish and Persian neighbours:

chāī = *shāī*

pouṣṭa = *bouṣṭa*

25. *jumal mithālīya*

at-ta9āwun ma9 mithl hal-’askhās ghayr
mumkin. mā yisma9ū ’abadan.

Cooperation with such people
is impossible. They never
listen.

mīn illī ’aja yiḥkī ma9kum?

Who (was it who) came to talk
to you?

mīn illī ’ijīt tiḥkī ma9u?

Who did you come to talk to?

mā hiya l-fatra llī kānat tijrī khilālha
l-buḥūth bayn al-ḥukūmtayn?

How long did the talks
between the two govern-
ments go on (~~howq~~)?

hiya mara muthaqqafa jiddan tiḥkī
thalātha ’aw ’arba9a lughāt.

She is a very cultured woman
who speaks three or four
languages.

kānu l-mudarrisīn yiḥkū ma9 ba9d
bi khuṣūṣ tawārīkh al-imtiḥānāt.

The instructors were talking
together about the exam-
ination dates.

26. *at-tamārīn*

1. Give the principal parts of the verb:

e.g.: nawa – nawa yinwī

(a) bada

(b) shakk

(c) ’aja

(d) nisī

(e) ṣann



2. Give the affirmative and negative imperative of the verb:

e.g.: ḥaka – ’iḥkī, ’iḥkī, ’iḥkū; lā tiḥkī, lā tiḥkī, lā tiḥkū

(a) dall

(b) biqī

(c) ’aja

(d) ḥaṭṭ

(e) ḍaḥak

3. Put into the present tense:

e.g.: dallayna – ndill

(a) nisyat

(b) marr

(c) mā ’ajū

(d) shū nawaytū?

(e) bada yiqra

4. Rephrase, using *qidir yiqdar* in the present tense:

e.g.: 'ana mā qarayt al-kitāb. – mā 'aqdar 'aqra l-kitāb.

(a) mashayna ḥatta l-mafraq.

(b) 'int tiḥkī 9arabī?

(c) dallū lana ṭ-ṭarīq.

(d) mā yibda l-youm.

(e) 'asma9ak kwayyis.



5. Give the ordinal number, in the masculine and feminine:

e.g.: thalātha – thālith, thālitha

(a) ithnayn

(b) wāḥid

(c) thamāniya

(d) 'arba9a

6. Make the two sentences into one relative sentence:

e.g.: hay al-kitāb. 'akhadhtu minnu. – hay al-kitāb illī 'akhadhtu minnu.

hay kitāb. 'akhadhtu minnu. – hay kitāb 'akhadhtu minnu.

(a) ta9raf al-mu9allim? katab hādha t-taqrīr.

(b) fī thānī su'al. nisīt 'as'alu.

(c) 'ishraḥ lī l-mushkila. kuntū tiḥkū ḥawlha.

(d) wayn al-milaff? ḥaṭṭaytu 'amāmak yā 'akhūi.

(e) bā9ū bayt. sakanū fī min 9ishrīn sana.

ad-dars at-tāsi9 . Lesson 9

fi l-maṭ9am . In the Restaurant

1. *al-ḥiwār*

(Dr Sharif has invited Peter out to dinner in a restaurant.)

(9ala ṭarīq al-maṭ9am)

twaṣṣilna

'a9arrifak

Peter: li wayn twaṣṣilna?

fu'ād: 'a9arrifak 'aḥsan maṭ9am

fi l-balad.

jaddadū

tamāman

jaddadū tamāman.

(On the way to the restaurant)

you take us

I acquaint you with

Where are you taking us?

I'm going to introduce you to

the best restaurant in town.

they renewed/

renovated it

completely

They have completely

renovated it.

—

(fi l-maṭ9am)

zayy

līsta

fu'ād: tfaḍḍal yā Peter, zayy baytak.

hay al-līsta. shū tu'mur?

'afaḍḍil

mazza

dajāj

musakkhkhan

ruzz

Peter: 'afaḍḍil 'abda bi l-mazza, u

ba9dayn dajāj musakkhkhan

bi r-ruzz.

fu'ād: mumtāz. u shū tishrab yā Peter?

bīra

rashīd

gārsoun

shouraba

banadūra

Peter: bīra min faḍlak.

fu'ād: yā rashīd ...

(yīji l-gārsoun rashīd.)

rashīd: na9am, yā duktur.

fu'ād: jīb lana min faḍlak wāḥid māzza

u 'ilay shourabat banadūra,

u ba9dayn

(In the restaurant)

like

menu

Here you are, Peter, make

yourself at home. Here's the

menu. What will you order?

I prefer

maza (hors d'œuvres)

chicken

cooked in spices

rice

I prefer to begin with

the maza, and then spiced

chicken with rice.

Excellent. And what are you

drinking, Peter?

beer

Rashid (name)

waiter

soup

tomatoes

Beer, please

Rashid ...

(Rashid, the waiter, comes.)

Yes, doctor.

Please bring us one maza,

and for me a tomato soup, and

then

	<i>ṣaḥn suḥūn</i>	plate
	<i>samak</i>	fish
	<i>maqlī</i>	fried
	<i>khudra</i>	vegetables
	<i>makhluṭ</i>	mixed
	min sha'n ḡayfī dajāj musakhkhan bi r-ruzz. 'ana 'ākhudh ṣaḥn samak maqlī bi khudra makhluṭa.	for my guest spiced chicken with rice. I have a plate of fried fish with mixed vegetables.
	<i>kās ku 'ūs</i>	(drinking) glass
	<i>9araq</i>	arrack
	<i>ma9rūf</i>	(here:) kindness
	<i>ḥāḡir</i>	ready, (here:) certainly
	<i>9ala ṭūl</i>	immediately
	u wāḥid bīra, fa 'ilayy, kās 9araq, 'i9mal ma9rūf.	And one beer, and for me a glass of arrack, if you would be so kind.
rashīd:	ḥāḡir. 9ala ṭūl.	Certainly. Right away.
	—	
Peter:	yā fu'ād, hal-maṭ9am mnīḥ jiddan.	Fuad, this restaurant is very good.
	<i>'arkhaṣ</i>	cheaper
	<i>dhakar yudhkur</i>	to mention
	<i>lā 'aḡad</i>	nobody
	<i>yiqaddim</i>	he offers, he serves
	<i>'akl</i>	food
	<i>ḥilwiyāt</i>	sweets, dessert
	<i>fākiha fawākih</i>	fruit
	<i>tamr</i>	dates
fu'ād:	ṣaḡīḥ. wa 'arkhaṣ min ḡayru, kama dhakart lak. lā 'aḡad yiqaddim 'akl 'aḡsan. fa min sha'n al-ḥilwiyāt, shū ṭhibb tu'mur? ṭhibb fawākih?	Right. And it's cheaper than others, as I mentioned to you. And for dessert, what would you like to order? Would you like some fruit?
Peter:	'aḡibb at-tamr, min faḡlak.	I would like some dates, please.
fu'ād:	u qahwa ba9dayn? <i>mazbūṭa</i>	And coffee afterwards? (here:) Turkish coffee with medium sugar
	<i>wala shī</i>	nothing
	<i>salāmtak</i>	(your safety) no, thank you
	<i>tuffāḡa</i>	apple
Peter:	ma9lūm. 'afaḡḡilha mazbūṭa, law samaḡt.	Of course. I prefer it medium sweet, please.
fu'ād:	shī thānī?	Anything else?

Peter:	wala shī, salāmtak.	Nothing, thank you.
fu'ād:	yā rashīd, 'i9mal ma9rūf u jīb lana tamr u tuffāḥa, u thnayn mazbūṭa kamān.	Rashid, please bring us some dates and an apple, and also two medium sweet coffees.
—		
	(quddām 'utayl Peter) <i>jārī, jāriya, jāriyīn</i> <i>quduman</i>	(in front of Peter's hotel) (also:) flowing ahead
fu'ād:	fa kayf shughlak, yā Peter? lissa jārī quduman? <i>širt</i> <i>ḥill ḥulūl</i> <i>al-wāḥid</i> <i>yijarrib</i>	So how's your work, Peter? Still moving ahead? (here:) I began solution one (indef. pronoun) he tries
Peter:	bi šūra 9āmma, māshī kwayyis. širt 'awjid kam mushkila, walākin nūjid ḥill 'ilha. lāzim al-wāḥid yijarrib.	In general, it's going well. I've begun to encounter a few problems, but we'll find a solution for them. One must try.
	<i>ta9bān</i> <i>'ashadd</i> <i>jadīdan</i> <i>'idha</i>	tired stronger recently (here:) if
fu'ād:	walākin 'int mish ta9bān shwayy? fī ra'yī, kunt 'ashadd lamma shuftak jadīdan. 'uḍrub lī tilifoun 9ala ṭūl 'idha mish kwayyis. lā tinsa. <i>sharraftūna</i> <i>tsharrafna</i> <i>qalbīyan</i> <i>tiṣbiḥ 9ala khayr</i> <i>wa 'int bi khayr</i>	But aren't you a bit tired? I think you were stronger when I saw you recently. Ring me at once if you're not well. Don't forget. (I) you honoured us it was a great pleasure (I) we were honoured the pleasure's mine/ ours heartily, cordially (I) awake in wellbeing good night (I) and you in wellbeing good night
Peter:	sharraftūna yā Peter. tsharrafna yā fu'ād, wa 'ashkurak qalbīyan 9ala hal-masa. tiṣbiḥ 9ala khayr.	It was a great pleasure, Peter. The pleasure's mine, Fuad, and thank you very much for this evening. Good night.
fu'ād:	wa 'int bi khayr, yā Peter.	Good night to you, Peter.

2. 9ibārāt

zayy baytak/baytik/baytkum (I like your house) Make yourself/yourselves at

home.

'i9mal/'i9malī/'i9malū *ma9rūf* (Do a kindness) Be so good as to ...

salāmtak/salāmtik/salāmitkum (I wish only) your safety) No, thank you. A polite way of refusing an offer.

jārī/jāriya quduman going (flowing) ahead, proceeding

sharraftūna (You honoured us) It was a great pleasure. Said by the host on parting, always in the plural. The guest's response is:

tsharraftna (We were honoured) The pleasure is mine/ours. Also always plural.

tiṣbiḥ/tiṣbiḥū/tiṣbiḥū 9ala khayr (Awake in wellbeing) Good night. Said by either the person leaving or the person staying. Response:

wa 'inti/'inti/'intū bi khayr (And you in wellbeing) Good night.

3. *mufradāt 'idāfiya. al-'akl wa l-mashrūbāt*

<i>sufra sufār</i>	dining table	<i>sikkīn sakākīn</i>	knife
<i>shouka shuwak</i>	fork	<i>mal9aqa malā9iq</i>	spoon
<i>finjān fanājīn</i>	cup	<i>khubz</i>	bread
<i>miliḥ</i>	salt	<i>filfil</i>	pepper
<i>sukkar</i>	sugar	<i>sukhn</i>	hot
<i>zibda</i>	butter	<i>jibna</i>	cheese
<i>murabba</i>	jam	<i>qinnīna qanānī</i>	bottle
<i>nbīdh</i>	wine	<i>9aṣīr</i>	juice
<i>may*</i>	water	<i>may* ma9danī</i>	mineral water
<i>thalj</i>	ice	<i>būza/būza</i>	ice-cream
<i>ḥalīb</i>	milk	<i>maslūq</i>	boiled
<i>laḥm</i>	meat	<i>muḥammar</i>	roast(ed)
<i>sāda</i>	(invariable) plain	<i>tāza</i>	(invariable) fresh
<i>ḥilu, f. ḥilwa</i>	sweet	<i>mubahhar</i>	spicy
<i>jou9ān, jou9a, jiyā9</i>	hungry	<i>9aṣhān, 9aṣsha, 9iṭash</i>	thirsty
<i>qahwa: sāda</i> no sugar; <i>mazbūṭ(a)</i> medium sweet; <i>ḥilwa</i> very sweet			
* The word <i>may</i> (<i>may</i>) has the only velarised <i>m</i> in spoken Arabic.			

an-naḥū

4. Ordering food and drink

When ordering food and drink we use the masculine of *oneq* and *twoq* we do not use the dual or plural of the noun:

wāḥid bīra *ithnayn qahwa* *thalātha shāī*

Also, with the exception of *ḥilwa*, the feminine adjective is little used:

'arba9a (qahwa) mazbūṭ(a) four medium-sweet coffees

5. Collective nouns

Many living creatures, natural substances and artisanal products are designated with a singular collective noun, usually masc. with no plural, for the whole species or group:

<i>samak</i>	fish	<i>baqar</i>	cattle	<i>dajāj</i>	chickens
<i>khayl</i>	horses	<i>'ibil</i>	camels	<i>dhubāb</i>	flies
<i>tuffāḥ</i>	apples	<i>9inab</i>	grapes	<i>tīn</i>	figs

<i>tamr</i>	dates	<i>mouz</i>	bananas	<i>burtuqān</i>	oranges
<i>bayḍ</i>	eggs	<i>shajar</i>	trees	<i>ḥabb</i>	grains, seeds
<i>ṭoub</i>	bricks	<i>balāṭ</i>	tiles	<i>waraq</i>	foliage, paper

6. Most such words have a (fem.) unit noun with final *-a*, pl. sometimes sound, sometimes broken:

<i>samaka</i>	'asmāk	<i>baqara</i>	COW
<i>dajāja</i>		<i>dhubāba dhubbān</i>	
<i>ḡinaba</i>	'aḡnāb	<i>tīna</i>	
<i>mouza</i>		<i>tamra tumur</i>	
<i>tuffāḥa</i>		<i>shajara</i>	
<i>burtuqāna</i>		<i>bayḍa</i>	

7. Some of the vegetables and fruits have an alternative unit noun formed with *ḥabba* (pl. *ḥubūb*) in construct. The plural of this form is little used:

<i>ḥabbat tuffāḥ</i>	<i>ḥabbat ḡinab/mouz/tin/tamr</i>
----------------------	-----------------------------------

8. Two important animals have unit nouns different from their collectives:

<i>ḥiṣān ḥuṣn</i>	horse	<i>jamal jimāl</i>	camel
-------------------	-------	--------------------	-------

Otherwise, most mammals have only a unit noun:

<i>kharūf khirāf</i>	sheep	<i>kalb kilāb</i>	dog
<i>bissa bisās</i>	cat		

and note: *ḥayawān* animal *ḥashara* insect

<i>ḡaṣṣūr ḡaṣṣīr</i>	bird
----------------------	------

9. Increased forms of verbs

The verbs studied so far are all in the so-called Form I or 'unincreased' form of the root. There exist also 'increased' forms, II to X, for all the verb classes. No root has all forms; some even lack Form I. Only existing forms may be used; do not derive your own. Form II is examined below.

10. Verbs of Form II

Verbs of Form II are built on the models:

- Verbs with sound final root letter: *ḥaḍḍar yiḥaḍḍir* to prepare
- Final-weak verbs: *rabba yirabbī* to educate, bring up

Note: The middle root letter doubles, and the vowels are invariable.

Form II verbs can take a direct object. Some have a causative meaning, i.e. they cause their object to perform the action of the verb. Personal endings and prefixes are as for Form I hollow verbs, except that the final-weak verb rule (8/10) applies to final-weak roots.

Sound final root letter (sound, initial-w, hollow, doubled classes):

Root *ḥ ḍ r*, Form II *ḥaḍḍar yiḥaḍḍir* to prepare:

Past: *ḥaḍḍart, ḥaḍḍart/ḥaḍḍarti, ḥaḍḍar/ḥaḍḍarat;*

ḥaḍḍarna, ḥaḍḍartū, ḥaḍḍarū I, you, he (etc.) prepared

Pres.: *'aḥaḍḍir, ṯaḍḍir/ṯaḍḍirī, yiḥaḍḍir/ṯaḍḍir;*

nḥaḍḍir, ṯaḍḍirū, yiḥaḍḍirū I, you, he (etc.) prepare(s)

so also many verbs, e.g.:

<i>faḍḍal yifaḍḍil</i>	to prefer	<i>9allam yi9allim*</i>	to teach
<i>nazzal yinazzil</i>	to take down	<i>darras yidarris</i>	to instruct
<i>qaddam yiqaddim</i>	to offer/serve/present	<i>9arraḥ yi9arriḥ*</i>	to acquaint
<i>dhakkar yidhakkir bi</i>	to remind	<i>ṣaddaq yiṣaddiq</i>	to believe
<i>kallaḥ yikalliḥ*</i>	to cost	<i>dabbar yidabbir</i>	to arrange
<i>kassar yikassir</i>	to shatter	<i>sharraḥ yisharriḥ</i>	to honour
<i>jarraḥ yijarriḥ</i>	to try	<i>ṣanna9 yiṣanni9</i>	to industrialise
<i>khallaṣ yikhalliṣ</i>	to finish	<i>sakkar yisakkir</i>	to shut
<i>'akhhkar yi'akhhkir</i>	to delay		
<i>'aththar yi'aththir</i>	<i>9ala</i> to affect, have an effect on		
<i>qarrar yiqarrir</i>	to decide, to report	<i>jaddad yijaddid</i>	to renew, renovate

* Some of the verbs (e.g. those marked * above) take two direct objects:

<i>t9allim al-'oulād al-ḥisāb.</i>	She teaches the children arithmetic.
<i>9arraḥt-hum al-mudīr.</i>	I acquainted them with the director.
<i>kallaḥnī fulūs ikthīr.</i>	It cost me a lot of money.

In initial-*w* and hollow roots the weak root letter stabilises, i.e. keeps its consonantal form *w* or *y*:

<i>waṣṣal yiwaṣṣil</i>	to convey	<i>wazzaf yiwazzif</i>	to recruit
<i>waqqaf yiwaqqif</i>	to stop	<i>kawwan yikawwin</i>	to constitute
<i>mawwal yimawwil</i>	to finance	<i>zawwar yizawwir</i>	to show round
<i>ṣawwar yiṣawwir</i>	to depict, photograph		
<i>ghayyar yighayyir</i>	to change		

Final-weak

Root *r b w*, Form II *rabba yirabbī* to educate, bring up:

Past: *rabbayt, rabbayt/rabbayti, rabba/rabbat; rabbayna, rabbaytū, rabbū*
I, you, he (etc.) educated, brought up

Pres.: *'arabbī, trabbī/trabbī, yirabbī/trabbī; nrabbī, trabbū, yirabbū*
I, you, he (etc.) educate(s), bring(s) up

so also: *khalla yikhallī* to let, release *samma yisammī* to call, name

The final-weak verb rule (8/10) applies.

11. Imperative of Form II

The imperative of Form II is made in the same manner as for Form I hollow verbs:

<i>jarrib/jarribi/jarribū</i>	try	<i>khallī/khallī/khallū*</i>	let, let go
<i>lā tsakkir/lā tsakkirī/lā tsakkirū</i>		<i>donq</i>	shut

* see 5/11 and 8/12.

12. ṣār as auxiliary verb

ṣār, in the past tense only, can mean ~~to~~ begin as an auxiliary verb (see 8/12), mainly in involuntary or unwelcome situations:

<i>ṣirt 'awjid mashākil.</i>	I've begun to encounter problems.
<i>ṣār yikassir al-'athāth.</i>	He began breaking up the furniture.

13. Comparison of adjectives and adverbs

The comparative degree (**أكبر**) of simple (i.e. triliteral, basic form) adjectives and adverbs is made on the following models:

Root	Model	Comparative
Sound (three stable consonants)	<i>kbīr</i>	' <i>akbar</i>
Initial-w	<i>wāḍiḥ</i>	' <i>awḍaḥ</i>
Hollow (middle w or y)	<i>ṭawīl</i>	' <i>aṭwal</i>
Doubled (identical last two consonants)	<i>jadīd</i>	' <i>ajadd</i>
Final-weak (final w or y)	<i>qawī</i> strong	' <i>aqwa</i>

<i>kbīr</i> , ' <i>akbar</i>	big(ger)	<i>kthīr</i> , ' <i>akthar</i>	much, more
<i>ṣghīr</i> , ' <i>aṣghar</i>	small(er)	<i>rkhīṣ</i> , ' <i>arkhaṣ</i>	cheap(er), (more) cheaply
<i>sarīʿ</i> , ' <i>asraʿ</i>	fast(er)	<i>qaṣīr</i> , ' <i>aqṣar</i>	short(er)
<i>wāsiʿ</i> , ' <i>awsaʿ</i>	wide(r), (more) widely		
<i>wāḍiḥ</i> , ' <i>awḍaḥ</i>	clear(er), (more) clearly		
<i>ṭawīl</i> , ' <i>aṭwal</i>	long(er)	<i>jadīd</i> , ' <i>ajadd</i>	new(er)
<i>qalīl</i> , ' <i>aqall</i>	little, less	<i>khafīf</i> , ' <i>akhaff</i>	light(er), (more) lightly
<i>shadīd</i> , ' <i>ashadd</i>	(more) severe(ly), (more) vigorous(ly)		
<i>qawī</i> ' <i>aqwiya</i> ', ' <i>aqwa</i>	strong(er)	<i>ʿālī</i> , ' <i>aʿla</i>	high(er)

(*ṭayyib* forms a comparative '*aṭyab*, but '*aḥsan*, derived from a different root and learned in Lesson 4/1, is more often used for **أفضل** *kwayyis* does not form a comparative.)

Comparative adjectives in this form are invariable for gender and number:

<i>walad</i> ' <i>aqwa</i>	<i>bint</i> ' <i>aṣghar</i>	<i>kutub</i> ' <i>arkhaṣ</i>	<i>nās</i> ' <i>akbar</i>
----------------------------	-----------------------------	------------------------------	---------------------------

For the comparatives of derived adjectives and adverbs (e.g. *nisba*, derivatives beginning with *mu-*), put '*akthar* after the adjective or adverb. The adjective agrees:

<i>kitāb</i> ' <i>asāsī</i> ' <i>akthar</i>	a more basic book
<i>nās</i> <i>muthaqqafīn</i> ' <i>akthar</i>	more cultured/educated people

Comparative adjectives, in whatever form, are always indefinite.

Decreasing comparison of all adjectives and adverbs is made with '*aqall*. The adjective agrees:

<i>nās</i> <i>kuramā</i> ' <i>aqall</i>	less generous people
---	----------------------

أف *hanqis min* as a preposition (i.e. before a noun or pronoun) or *mimma* as a conjunction (i.e. before a clause, see 6/18):

<i>huwa</i> ' <i>aqwa minnī</i> .	He is stronger than I/me.
<i>'ana nisīt</i> ' <i>akthar mimma huwa yaʿraf</i> .	I have forgotten more than he knows.

14. Superlative of adjectives

The superlative (**أكبر**) of adjectives is expressed by using the comparative in the same way as the ordinal numbers, i.e. either:

' <i>akbar bayt</i>	the biggest house	' <i>aṣghar walad</i>	the smallest boy
---------------------	-------------------	-----------------------	------------------

or by making both noun and comparative adjective definite:

al-bayt al- 'akbar

at-talāmīdh mujtahidīn al- 'akthar/al- 'aqall the most/least hardworking students

The latter is the only possibility with derived adjectives.

Note also: *'akbar al- 'oulād* the biggest (one) of the children

A few important adjectives have a feminine superlative on the model *kbīr* → *kubra*, used whenever the adjective has to agree:

m. *'akbar*, f. *kubra* *'aṣghar*, *ṣughra* *'aḥsan*, *ḥusna*

'atwal, *ṭūla* *'aḡla*, *ḡulya*

So: *'aṣghar bint* but: *al-bint aṣ-ṣughra*
ṣughra l-banāt *hiya ṣ-ṣughra fī ṣ-ṣaff*

The superlative of *adverbs* is studied in Lesson 11.

15. Equal comparison

Equal comparison (as ... as) is expressed with *mīthl*:

huwa ghanī mīthlak. *huwa mish shāṭir mīthilha.*

as ... as possible is expressed with the comparative, thus:

bi 'arkhaṣ mā yumkin as cheap(ly) as possible

bi 'asra mā yumkin as fast/soon as possible

Note also: *fī 'aqrab/'asra waqt mumkin* (in the nearest/fastest time possible)
as soon as possible

16. Indefinite pronouns

The indefinite pronouns are best summarised in tables. All are masc. singular.

Examine:

Pronoun as subject of the verb					
	some		any		none
anim- ate	<i>al-wāḥid</i> one		<i>'ayy wāḥid</i> anyone		<i>mā fī shakhṣ</i> ¹ no one
	<i>fī 'aḥad</i> ¹ someone		<i>'ayy shakhṣ</i> anyone		<i>lā 'aḥad</i> ¹ no one
					<i>mā fī 'aḥad</i> ¹ no one
inan.	<i>fī shī</i> ¹ something		<i>'ayy shī</i> anything		<i>mā fī shī</i> ¹ nothing

Pronoun as object of the verb, or governed by a preposition					
	some		any		none
anim- ate	<i>al-wāḥid</i> one		<i>'ayy wāḥid</i> anyone		<i>'ayy wāḥid</i> ² no one
	<i>shakhṣ</i> someone		<i>'ayy shakhṣ</i> anyone		<i>'ayy shakhṣ</i> ² no one
	<i>'aḥad</i> someone				<i>'aḥad</i> ² no one
inan.	<i>shī</i> something		<i>'ayy shī</i> anything		<i>shī</i> ² nothing

Note:

- Two of the words (*shakhṣ* and *shī*) used as pronouns are in fact singular nouns already known to us. *'aḥad* is a variant of *wāḥid*:

'*ayy shakhṣ*/'*ayy wāḥid yiqdar yizawwirhum*. Anyone can show them round.

waṣṣalt '*ayy shakhṣ*/'*ayy wāḥid li l-balad*? Did you take anyone to town?
ta9raf shakhṣ yiqdar yidabbiru? Do you know someone who can fix it?
'akhadhū shī ma9hum. They took something with them.
dabbarū '*ayy shī*? Did they arrange anything?
kān fī shī? Was there something?
lāzim al-wāḥid yijarrib. One must try.

- *Negation*: for the negative subject pronouns, it is the *pronoun* which is negated; for the object pronouns, it is the *verb*:

lā 'aḥad yuqaddim mithl hādha l-'akl. No one (There is no one who) serves food like this.

mish lāzim yishukkū fī 'ayy shī. They must doubt nothing/mustn't doubt anything.

- The structures with *fī*/*mā* *fī* are made past as shown in 6/7 and future as shown in 7/7. NB stress.
- The pronouns marked ¹ are followed by an indefinite relative construction (see 8/13) with an *affirmative* verb. In other words, Arabic says *There is no one who/nothing which does* rather than *No one/nothing (does)*. Note also that, unlike *huwa*, *hiya* and *hum* (8/14), the indefinite pronouns shown above are not omitted when appearing as an antecedent:

fī 'aḥad yuṭlub yihkī ma9ak. Someone (There is someone who) is asking to talk to (with) you.

fī shī yihimmna kthīr fī hādhi l-mas'ala. Something (There is something which) greatly interests us in this matter.

- The pronouns marked ² are preceded by a negative verb. In other words, Arabic says *not ... anything* rather than *nothing*:

mā shufna 'aḥad. We saw no one (didn't see anyone).

mā qarrarū shī. They decided nothing (didn't decide anything).

(mā) fī 9indna ragħba fī shī thānī. We would like something/wouldn't like anything else.

17. Lastly, two shortened replies; *lā 'aḥad* *no one* and *wala shī* *nothing*
mīn illī kunt tiḥkī ma9u? – *lā 'aḥad*. Who were you talking to? . Nobody.
kam kallafak? – *wala shī*. What did it cost you? . Nothing.

18. *jumal mithālīya*

'aḥsan 'imkānīya, hiya 'inna njaddid
 al-maṣna9 kullu.
 ṣaddiqnī, yikallifak 'akthar bi kthīr kadha.

The best possibility is that we
 renovate the whole factory.
 Believe me, it costs you much
 more this way.

'afaḍḍil 'innak itwaṣṣilhum 'int, yā 'akhī.
 lāzim nu'mur kamān ṭoub; tibqa 9indna
 kam ṭouba bas.

I prefer that you take them.
 We need to order more bricks;
 we have only a few bricks
 left.

19. *at-tamārīn*

1. Give the principal parts of the verb:

e.g.: qarrar – qarrar yiqarrir

- | | | |
|------------|------------|----------|
| (a) faḍḍal | (b) waqqaf | (c) ḥabb |
| (d) rabba | (e) ṣaddaq | |

2. Give the unit noun, with alternatives where possible:

e.g.: tamr – tamra, ḥabbat tamr

- | | | |
|-----------|------------|-----------|
| (a) baqar | (b) tuffāḥ | (c) balāṭ |
| (d) mouz | (e) bayḍ | |

3. Give the comparative and superlative, m. sing., of each adjective:

e.g.: kbīr – 'akbar, al-'akbar

- | | | |
|-----------|---------------|------------|
| (a) ṭawīl | (b) kwayyis | (c) ḍarūrī |
| (d) rkhīṣ | (e) muthaqqaf | |

4. Connect as one relative sentence:

e.g.: 'a9raf an-najjār. jaddadu. – 'a9raf an-najjār illī jaddadu.

- (a) huwa mu9allim. dāyiman yishraḥ kwayyis.
 (b) mā qidir yiwaqqif as-sayyāra. kān yisūqha.
 (c) kān yisūq sayyāra. mā qidir yiwaqqifha.
 (d) 9allamtu shī. mish lāzim yinsā 'abadan.
 (e) qarrarū mas'ala. t-himmna kullna.



5. Re-express, putting the superlative adjective after the noun:

e.g.: 'akbar bināya – al-bināya l-kubra

'aḥsan ḥiṣān – al-ḥiṣān al-'aḥsan

- | | | |
|------------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| (a) 'aṭwal kitāb | (b) 'ajmal sayyāra | (c) 'a9la shajara |
| (d) 'akram 'ab | (e) 'akram 'umm | |

ad-dars al-9āshir . Lesson 10

mashrū9 jadīd . A New Project

1. al-ḥiwār

(Peter is discussing a new project with Abdarraḥman.)

	<i>mudhakkira</i>	memorandum
	<i>mashrū9 mashārī9</i>	project
9abdarraḥman:	ṭayyib yā Peter. qarayt mudhakkirtak, u khallīna nshūf mashrū9ak al-jadīd. tfaḍḍal.	Right, Peter. I've read your memo., so (and) let's look at your new project. Go ahead.
	<i>taḥsīn</i>	improvement
	<i>9alāqa</i>	relation(ship)
	<i>munazzama</i>	organisation (body)
	<i>9āmil</i>	working
Peter:	shukran. al-gharaḍ min hādha l-mashrū9 huwa taḥsīn 9alāqātina ma9 ghayr min al-munazzamāt al-9āmila fi l-qitā9 al-khāṣṣ.	Thank you. The purpose of this project is the improvement of our relations with other organisations working in the private sector.
	<i>ṣan9/ṣun9</i>	manufacture, manufacturing
	<i>taswīq</i>	marketing
9abdarraḥman:	fi ṣ-ṣun9 bas, 'aw fi t-taswīq kamān?	In manufacturing only, or in marketing as well?
	<i>wujha</i>	direction, aspect
	<i>tajmī9</i>	collection
	<i>ma9lūmāt</i> (pl.)	information
	<i>dī9āya</i>	advertising
Peter:	fī kull wujha, ya9nī fī tajmī9 al-ma9lūmāt, wa d-dī9āya,	In every aspect, I mean in information gathering, advertising,
	<i>khidma</i>	service
	<i>tawzīf</i>	recruitment
	wa l-khidmāt, wa t-tawzīf u kadha.	services, recruitment and so on.
	<i>shāmil</i>	comprehensive
	<i>bi l-'asas</i>	basically
9abdarraḥman:	mashrū9 shāmil ya9nī. bi l-'asās gharaḍu mafhūm.	You mean a comprehensive project. Basically its purpose is clear (understood).
	<i>rāyihīn n'assis</i>	we shall establish
	<i>mukawwan min</i>	composed of,
		consisting of
	<i>mumaththil</i>	representative

Peter:	rāyihīn n'assis lajna ṣghīra mukawwana min mumaththilīn al-qīṭā9 <i>mandūb</i> <i>ghurfat tijāra</i> <i>tarwīj</i> u mandūb ghurfat at-tijāra, tkūn mas'ūla 9an dirāsāt u tarwīj al-mashrū9.	We shall establish a small committee consisting of representatives of the sector delegate Chamber of Commerce promotion and a delegate from the Chamber of Commerce, which will be responsible for studying and promoting (the study and promotion of) the project.
	<i>tamwīl</i> <i>kayfīya</i> <i>mu9ayyan</i> <i>'ijābī</i>	financing mode, manner certain, definite positive
ʿAbdarrahman:	wa t-tamwīl?	And the financing?
Peter:	bi khuṣūṣ kayfīyat at-tamwīl lāzim inshūf taqrīr al-lajna. 'akthar mish mu9ayyan fi l-waqt al-ḥāḍir. 'inshalla yikūn taqrīrha 'ijābī.	As to the mode of financing, we have to see the committee's report. Nothing more is definite at present (the present time). Hopefully its report will be positive.
	<i>ṣadar yuṣḍur</i> <i>shubāṭ</i> <i>ta9līmāt</i>	be issued, appear February (also:) instructions
ʿAbdarrahman:	mata yuṣḍur?	When does it come out?
Peter:	fī 'awā'il shubāṭ.	In early February
ʿAbdarrahman:	waqt qaṣīr yā 'akhī.	(That's) a short time.
Peter:	ma9lūm. al-lajna lāzim itkūn 9ind-ha ta9līmāt wāḍiḥa jiddan.	Of course. The committee will have to have very clear instructions.

2. 9ibārāt

bi l-'asās basically

ghurfat (at-)tijāra Chamber of Commerce

fi l-waqt al-ḥāḍir at present

3. mufradāt 'idāfiya. al-'ijtimā9āt

<i>9ādī</i>	ordinary	<i>ghayr 9ādī</i>	extraordinary
<i>jadwal 'a9māl</i>	agenda	<i>majāl al-baḥṭh</i>	terms of reference
<i>ra'īs ru'asā'</i>	chairman	<i>maḥḍar ijtimā9</i>	minutes
<i>baḥṭh yibḥṭh</i>	to discuss	<i>musawwada</i>	draft
<i>wathīqa wathā'iq</i>	document	<i>tawqī9</i>	signature
<i>qarār</i>	resolution	<i>tawṣiya</i>	recommendation
<i>'aqallīya</i>	minority	<i>taṣwīt</i>	voting
		<i>ḥaḍar yuḥḍur</i>	to attend

*an-naḥū***4. Participles**

Participles are verbal adjectives, e.g. ~~w~~riting, ~~r~~eadinq Arabic has two kinds of participles:

- active participles, describing or identifying the subject of the verb,
- passive participles, describing or identifying the object (direct or prepositional) of the verb.

Participles are formed regularly. Most have sound f. and pl. forms (but see paragraph 9 below).

5. Participles of Form I

Participles of Form I are made on the following models (the m. sing. is shown):

Verb class	Model verb	Active participle		Passive participle	
Sound (initial ') (middle ')	<i>katab</i> ' <i>akal</i> <i>sa'al</i>	<i>kātib</i> ' <i>ākil</i> <i>sāyil</i>	writing eating asking	<i>maktūb</i> <i>ma'kūl</i> <i>mas'ūl</i>	written eaten (a sksdq responsible
Initial-w	<i>wajad</i>	<i>wājīd</i>	finding	<i>moujūd</i>	(f oundq present
Hollow (-w-) (-y-)	<i>shāf</i> <i>bā9</i>	<i>shāyīf</i> <i>bāyi9</i>	seeing selling	<i>mashūf</i> <i>mabī9</i>	seen sold
Doubled	<i>ḥaṭṭ</i>	<i>ḥāṭiṭ</i>	putting	<i>maḥṭūṭ</i>	put
Final-weak (-w) (-y) (-')	<i>raja</i> <i>ḥaka</i> <i>qara</i>	<i>rājī</i> <i>ḥākī</i> <i>qārī</i>	requesting speaking reading	<i>marjū</i> <i>maḥkī</i> <i>maqrū</i>	requested spoken read

Other examples, from verbs already known:

Class	Verb	Active participle		Passive participle	
Sound	<i>9irif</i>	<i>9ārīf</i>	knowing	<i>ma9rūf</i>	known
	<i>ṭalab</i>	<i>ṭālib</i>	requesting	<i>maṭlūb</i>	requested
	<i>'amar</i>	<i>'āmīr</i>	ordering	<i>ma'mūr</i>	ordered
Initial-w	<i>wiṣil</i>	<i>wāṣil</i>	arriving		
Hollow	<i>rāḥ</i>	<i>rāyīḥ</i>	going		
	<i>khāf</i>	<i>khāyīf</i>	fearing	<i>makhūf</i>	feared
Doubled	<i>ḥass</i>	<i>ḥāsis</i>	sensing	<i>maḥsūs</i>	sensed, tangible
	<i>shakk</i>	<i>shākīk</i>	doubting	<i>mashkūk fī</i>	doubted
Final-wk.*	<i>masha</i>	<i>māshī</i>	walking		
	<i>bada</i>	<i>bādī</i>	beginning	<i>mabdū</i>	begun
	<i>jara</i>	<i>jārī</i>	current (f owingq)		

As adjectives, the participles with a sound final root letter have a sound feminine and plural: *9ārīf*, *9ārīfa*, *9ārīfīn*; *ma9rūf*, *ma9rūfa*, *ma9rūfīn*.

* Final-weak active participles follow the pattern of *fāḍī*, *fāḍīya*, *fāḍīyīn*.

6. Participles of Form II

The participles of all increased forms are made from the principal parts; the active participle from the second principal part and the passive participle from the first. Feminines and plurals are made as for Form I. Form II participles (m. sing.) are built as follows, for all classes:

- Active: replace the *yi-* prefix of the second principal part with *mu-*,
- Passive: prefix *mu-* to the first principal part.

<i>ḥaḍḍar:</i>	<i>muḥaḍḍir</i>	preparing	<i>muḥaḍḍar</i>	prepared
<i>9allam:</i>	<i>mu9allim</i>	teaching	<i>mu9allam</i>	taught
<i>qaddam:</i>	<i>muqaddim</i>	offering,	<i>muqaddam</i>	offered,
		presenting		presented
<i>kawwan:</i>	<i>mukawwin</i>	constituting	<i>mukawwan</i>	constituted
<i>rabba:</i>	<i>murabbī</i>	educating	<i>murabba</i>	educated

7. Negation of participles

Since participles are adjectives, they are negated with *mish* or *ghayr*, not with *mā*:

<i>mish/ghayr moujūd</i>	not present
<i>mish 9ārīf</i>	not knowing
<i>mish/ghayr muḥaḍḍar</i>	unprepared

8. Agreement of participles

An active participle agrees with the noun which it qualifies:

al-munazzamāt al-9āmila fī l-qīṭā9 the organisations working in the sector

A passive participle qualifying a noun which is a direct object agrees with that noun:

<i>at-taqārīr al-muqaddama 'ams</i>	the reports presented yesterday
<i>nās ma9rūfīn</i>	well-known people

but a passive participle qualifying a noun which is a prepositional object is always made masculine singular; the gender and number of the noun are shown by a pronoun suffix attached to the preposition:

<i>ma9lūmāt mashkūk fīha</i>	doubtful information (information doubted about it)
<i>al-buḥūth al-maqūm bīha</i>	the discussions undertaken
<i>al-maṭlūb minhum</i>	those (of whom it is) requested

The final-weak participles have the following patterns for agreement:

m. s.:	active <i>murabbī</i>	passive <i>murabba</i>
an. pl.:	active <i>murabbīyīn</i>	passive <i>murabbayīn</i>
f.s./inan. pl.:	active <i>murábbiya</i>	passive <i>murabba</i>

9. Participles used as nouns

Like other adjectives, many participles serve as nouns, often with a special meaning; most active Form I active participles then have a broken plural:

I <i>kātib</i>	clerk (m.)	<i>kātiba</i>	clerk (f.)
<i>ṭālib</i>	student (m.)	<i>ṭāliba</i>	student (f.)

<i>rākib rukkāb</i>	passenger	<i>9āmil 9ummāl</i>	workman
<i>maktūb makātīb</i>	letter	<i>9āmil 9awāmil</i>	factor
<i>ma9lūmāt</i> (pl.)	information		
II <i>mu9allim</i>	teacher (m.)	<i>mu9allima</i>	teacher (f.)
<i>mudarris</i>	instructor	<i>muwazzaf</i>	employee, clerk
<i>muqarrir</i>	reporter	<i>murabbī</i>	educator

10. Verbal nouns

Verbal nouns denote the activity or result of the verb:

<i>ma9riḡa</i>	knowledge	from: <i>9irif ya9rif</i>	Form I
<i>ta9līm</i>	teaching	from: <i>9allam yi9allim</i>	Form II

Form I verbal nouns are irregular; those of Forms II to X are derived regularly.
Not every theoretically possible verbal noun is in use.

11. Verbal nouns of Form I

Many patterns exist for Form I verbal nouns. Some verbs have alternative patterns:

<i>katab:</i>	<i>kitāba</i>	writing
<i>qara:</i>	<i>qirāya</i>	reading
<i>dakhal:</i>	<i>dukhūl</i>	entry*
<i>kharaj:</i>	<i>khurūj</i>	exit*
* the action, not the place, which would be <i>madkhal</i> or <i>makhraj</i> .		
<i>ṭalab:</i>	<i>ṭalab, maṭlab maṭālib</i>	request
<i>daras:</i>	<i>dirāsa</i>	study
<i>najaḡ:</i>	<i>najāḡ</i>	success
<i>9irif:</i>	<i>ma9riḡa ma9ārif</i>	knowledge
<i>baḡath:</i>	<i>baḡth buḡūth</i>	discussion
<i>daḡa9:</i>	<i>daḡ9 madḡū9āt</i>	payment
<i>riji9:</i>	<i>rujū9</i>	return
<i>nizil:</i>	<i>nuzūl</i>	descent
<i>sa'al:</i>	<i>su'al 'as'ila</i>	question
	<i>mas'ala masāyil</i>	matter
<i>'amar:</i>	<i>'amr 'awāmir</i>	order, command
	<i>'amr 'umūr</i>	matter, affair
<i>'akhadh:</i>	<i>'akhdh</i>	taking, acceptance
<i>'akal:</i>	<i>'akl</i>	food
<i>wiṡil:</i>	<i>wuṡūl</i>	arrival
<i>bā9:</i>	<i>bay9 buyū9</i>	sale
<i>qāl:</i>	<i>qawl 'aqwāl</i>	saying, utterance
<i>kān:</i>	<i>kawn</i>	existence
<i>zād:</i>	<i>ziyāda</i>	increase
<i>qām bi:</i>	<i>qiyām bi</i>	undertaking
<i>khāf:</i>	<i>khouf</i>	fear
<i>nām:</i>	<i>noum</i>	sleep
<i>marr:</i>	<i>murūr</i>	traffic
<i>ḡall:</i>	<i>ḡill ḡulūl</i>	solution

<i>ḥaka:</i>	<i>ḥikāya</i>	narrative
<i>shakk:</i>	<i>shakk shukūk</i>	doubt

12. Verbal nouns of Form II

Form II verbal nouns (shown here in the singular) are made on the following patterns:

Class	Model	Verbal Noun	
Sound	<i>ḥaḍḍar</i>	<i>taḥḍīr</i>	preparation
	<i>'akhkhar</i>	<i>ta 'khīr</i>	delay
Initial-w	<i>wazzaf</i>	<i>tawzīf</i>	recruitment
Hollow	<i>mawwal</i>	<i>tamwīl</i>	financing
	<i>ghayyar</i>	<i>taghyīr</i>	change
Doubled	<i>qarrar</i>	<i>taqrīr</i>	decision, report
Final-weak	<i>rabba</i>	<i>tárbiya</i>	education

Plurals are mostly sound, some broken. Some verbal nouns have alternative plurals with different meanings, e.g.:

<i>taqrīr taqrīrāt</i>	decision	<i>taqrīr taqārīr</i>	report
------------------------	----------	-----------------------	--------

More Form II verbal nouns:

<i>darras:</i>	<i>tadrīs</i>	instruction
<i>kallaf:</i>	<i>taklīf takālīf</i>	cost
<i>9allam:</i>	<i>ta9līm</i>	teaching; <i>ta9līmāt</i> instructions
<i>qadam:</i>	<i>taqdīm</i>	offer
<i>sharraf:</i>	<i>tashrīf</i>	honouring; <i>tashrīfāt</i> protocol
<i>dabbar:</i>	<i>tadbīr</i>	arrangement
	<i>tadbīr tadābīr</i>	measure, move
<i>jarrab:</i>	<i>tajrīb</i>	test
	<i>tajriba tajārib</i>	attempt, experiment
<i>ṣanna9:</i>	<i>taṣnī9</i>	industrialisation
<i>waqqaf:</i>	<i>tawqīf</i>	detention, parking
<i>kawwan:</i>	<i>takwīn</i>	formation
<i>ṣawwar:</i>	<i>taṣwīr</i>	depiction, photography
<i>jaddad:</i>	<i>tajdīd</i>	renewal, renovation

13. Use of verbal nouns

When a verbal noun has a direct object, the two terms are put into construct:

<i>dirāsāt al-lughāt</i>	studying languages/the study of languages/language-study
<i>tajmī9 ma9lūmāt</i>	information-gathering

See 6/18. Often a preposition + verbal noun is used instead of a conjunction + verb. Compare

<i>ḥatta yudrusu l- 'arqām</i>	(so that they study the figures)q
with <i>li dirāsāt al- 'arqām</i>	(for the study of the figures)q

- both best expressed in English as *in* order to study the figures So also:
khilāl taḥqīr al-mizānīya while preparing the budget
 (during the preparation of the budget)
qabl baḥṭha before it is discussed (before its discussion)

14. *rāyih*, *rāh*-

rāyih is the active participle of *rāh yirūh*. It can be used as an auxiliary (see 8/12) to form a future tense. The participle agrees with the subject of the verb:

- rāyih(a) 'aqaddim al-mizānīya.* I_{qm} (m./f.) going to present the budget.
rāyihīn inzawwirhum al-maḥad bukra. We_{pl} show them round the institute tomorrow.

We also use the short invariable form *rāh*- prefixed to the verb:

- rāh 'aqaddimha.* I_{pl} present it.
rāhinzawwirhum. We_{pl} show them round.

Like all participles, *rāyih* (etc.) and *rāh*- are negated with *mish*:

- mish rāh-/mish rāyih 'addabiru.* I_{qm} not going to arrange it.

This future tense is common in statements of intention.

15. Calendar

The months of the international (solar) calendar have two sets of names; one set is used in Asia, the other in Africa:

	Asia	Africa
Jan. Feb.	<i>kānūn (ath-)thānī, shubāṭ</i>	<i>yanāyir, fibrāyir</i>
Mar. Apr.	<i>'adhār, nīsān</i>	<i>māris, 'abrīl</i>
May June	<i>'ayār, ḥazīrān</i>	<i>māyū, yūniyū</i>
July Aug.	<i>tammūz, 'āb</i>	<i>yūliyū, 'aghuṣṭus</i>
Sept. Oct.	<i>'aylūl, tishrīn (al-) 'awwal</i>	<i>sibtambir, 'oktōbir</i>
Nov. Dec.	<i>tishrīn (ath)-thānī, kānūn (al-) 'awwal</i>	<i>novimbir, disimbir</i>

For certain purposes the Muslim (lunar) calendar is in use. It is 354 or 355 days long, and dates from the flight of the Prophet Muhammad from Mecca to Medina in AD 622. The months, for reference, are:

1	<i>muḥarram</i>	2	<i>ṣafar</i>
3	<i>rabī9 al- 'awwal</i>	4	<i>rabī9 ath-thānī</i>
5	<i>jumāda l- 'ūla</i>	6	<i>jumāda l- 'ukhra</i>
7	<i>rajab</i>	8	<i>sha9bān</i>
9	<i>ramaḍān</i>	10	<i>shawwāl</i>
11	<i>dhu l-qa9da</i>	12	<i>dhu l-ḥijja</i>

We use *'awwal* for the first, and cardinal numbers for other dates. *Ḍuqis fī*:

- (fī) *'awwal/ 9ishrīn tammūz* (on) 1st/20th July
 (fī) *khamst9ashr muḥarram* (on) 15th Muharram

The year is expressed as follows:

- (fī) *sanat 'alf u tisi9 mīya u tis9a u sittīn (mīlādī)* (in) (AD) 1999
bayn santayn 'alfayn u 'alfayn u tis9a between 2000 and 2009
 (fī) *sanat 'alf u 'arba9 mīya u saba9t9ashr (hijrī)* (in) (AH) 1417

(AH = Anno Hegiræ, Year of the Flight)

Additional vocabulary for the calendar, including public holidays:

<i>taqwīm taqāwīm</i>	calendar	<i>moulūd an-nabī</i>	Prophet's Birthday
<i>sana hijrīya</i>	Muslim year, AH	<i>sana mīlādīya</i>	international year, AD
<i>rabī9</i>	spring	<i>kharīf</i>	autumn
<i>shīta</i>	winter	<i>9īd 'a9yād</i>	festival, holiday
<i>'ijāza</i>	leave, holiday	<i>(9īd al-)mīlād</i>	Christmas
<i>ra's as-sana</i>	New Year's Day (either calendar)		
<i>faṣl fuṣūl, mousim mawāsīm</i>	season		
<i>al-9īd al-kabīr*/9īd al-'aḍḥa</i>	feast at the end of the pilgrimage		
<i>al-9īd aṣ-ṣaghīr*/9īd al-fīr</i>	feast at the end of fasting		
<i>9īd al-fīṣih/al-9īd al-kabīr*</i>	Easter		
* <i>kabīr, ṣaghīr</i> : the written pronunciation is used.			

16. *jumal mithālīya*

al-ma9had mukawwan min tis9a mudarrisīn u mitayn u sittīn tilmīdh.	The institute consists of nine instructors and 260 pupils.
takālīf ad-di9āya mish maktūba fī musawwadat al-mīzānīya l-'ūla.	Advertising costs are not shown (written) in the first draft of the budget.
ma9rifat al-muḥāsabāt ḍarūrīya li fahm hādha t-taqrīr.	A knowledge of accounts is essential in order to understand this report.
rāyihīn yiqaddimū taqrīrhum fī 'awākhir 'ayyār 'aw 'awā'il ḥazīrān.	They will present their report in late May or early June.

17. *at-tamārīn*

👂 1. Give the masculine singular of both participles of each verb:
e.g.: 9irif – 9ārif ma9rūf

- | | | |
|-----------|------------|------------|
| (a) bā9 | (b) jaddad | (c) ṣaddaq |
| (d) katab | (e) dabbar | |

👂 2. Give the principal parts of the verb from which the participle is derived:
e.g.: mu9allim – 9allam yi9allim

- | | | |
|--------------|--------------|------------|
| (a) shāyīf | (b) muwaqqaf | (c) maṭlūb |
| (d) mukawwan | (e) muḥaddir | |

3. Give the verbal noun:

e.g.: 9allam – ta9līm; fihim – fahm

- | | | |
|-----------|-----------|------------|
| (a) qara | (b) rabba | (c) ḥaddar |
| (d) daras | (e) 9irif | |

4. Give the principal parts of the verb from which the verbal noun is derived:

e.g.: ta9līm – 9allam yi9allim

- | | | |
|------------|------------|----------|
| (a) dirāsa | (b) tadrīs | (c) kawn |
| (d) takwīn | (e) tadbīr | |

5. Make the participle fit the noun:

e.g.: al-lugha l-(maḥkī) – al-lugha l-maḥkīya

taghyīrāt (maqūm bi) – taghyīrāt maqūm bīha

(a) bi sabab al-'arqām al-(mashkūk fī)

(b) musawwadāt (muḥaḍḍar) 'ams

(c) al-'umūr al-(maktūb bi khuṣūṣ)

(d) min an-nās as-(sākin) huna

(e) li s-sikritayra l-(mas'ūl) 9an hādha sh-shughl

6 Give the date (international calendar) in both systems:

e.g.: 12/3/1996 – ithnāshar māris/'ādhār, 'alf u tisi9 mīya u sitta u tis9īn

(a) 1/1/1998

(b) 15/6/2010

(c) 25/10/1880

(d) 11/8/1996

(e) 23/2/1978

ad-dars 'ihd9āshr . Lesson 11

ziyārat maṣna9 . Visit to a Factory

1. *al-ḥikāya wa l-ḥiwār*

(NB: In this dialogue one speaker uses the Levantine form of spoken Arabic, examples of which are shown underlined in the vocabulary.)

tanfīdh

execution, fulfilment

kān yurīd

he wanted

yiqābil

he meets

(min sha'n tanfīdh mahamtu fī ḥaql
at-tadrīb al-fannī Peter kān yurīd yiqābil
kam mumaththil aṣ-ṣinā9a l-khafīfa.

(For the execution of his
assignment in the field of
technical training, Peter
wanted to meet some repre-
sentatives of light industry.

kānū nasharū

they had published

nashar yunshur

to publish

jarīda jarāyid

newspaper

maqāla

(press) article

ḍarūra

necessity

qabl wuṣūlu fī l-balad kānū nasharū
fī l-jarīda maqāla ḥawl ḍarūrat han-nou9
min at-ta9āwun.

Before his arrival in the
country they had published in
the newspaper an article about
the need for this sort of
cooperation.

sā9adu

he helped him

'akhbaru bi

he informed him

lāqa

he found

yināsibhum

it suits them

zabt

accuracy, exactness

zamīlu 9abdarrahmān sā9adu fī hādha
l-gharaḍ. 'akhbaru bi 'innu lāqa khārij
al-balad maṣna9 yināsibhum bi z-zabt.)

His colleague Abdarrahman
helped him in this aim. He told
him that he had found, outside
the town, a factory which
exactly suited them.)

mushrif

supervisor

fāyiz ḥasanayn

Faiz Hassanein (name)

(fī qism al-'intāj li l-maṣna9. yihki l-mushrif
fāyiz ḥasanayn.)

(In the factory's Production
Division. The supervisor, Faiz
Hassanein, is talking.)

'ism 'a'sām

= *qism 'aqsām*

'intāzh

= *'intāj*

'abl

= *qabl*

warsha

workshop, shop floor

fāyiz: 'ahlan fī 'ism al-'intāzh, yā
sayyid Peter. tfaḍḍal. 'abl mā

Welcome to Production
Division, Mr Brown. Before we

	<p>nzūr warshat al-’intāzh, <u>yimkin</u> <u>biddak</u> <i>iyyāha</i> <i>khāṣṣatan</i> <u>hāda</u></p> <p>yimkin fī 9indak ’as’ila biddak tis’alni yyāha, khāṣṣatan ḥawl hāda l-’ism?</p> <p><u>’iza</u> <u>bazharrib</u> <u>’azhāwibak</u></p> <p>’iza fī, bazharrib ’azhāwibak.</p> <p><i>qīt9a qīt9a</i> <i>tintijū</i></p> <p>Peter: ’ayy nou9 min al-qīta9 tintijū?</p> <p><i>ḥadd ḥudūd</i> <u>bnintizh</u> <u>’iṭ9a ’iṭ9a</u> <i>’unbūb ’anābīb</i> <u>blāstikīyi</u> <u>shān</u> <i>muwāṣalāt</i> (pl.) <i>sūq ’aswāq</i> (f.)</p> <p>fāyiz: shāyif, al-maṣna9 jadīd u lissa ṣghīr, li ḥadd al-’ān ibnintizh ’iṭa9 basiṭa bas, zayy ’anābīb u ’iṭa9 iblāstikīyi min shān al-kahraba wa l-muwāṣalāt.</p> <p>Peter: 9āzīm. hādha huwa l-ḥaql illī yihimmna qabl al-kull. fa kull ’intājukum min sha’n as-sūq ad-dākhilīya?</p> <p><i>istibdāl</i> <i>mustawrad</i></p> <p>fāyiz: tamāman. mā bnintizh ’illa min shān istibdāl al-mustawradāt.</p> <p><i>law</i> <i>tawsī9</i> <i>wāḥfaqt 9ala</i></p> <p>Peter: wa ’azunn, yā sayyid fāyiz,</p>	<p>visit the production floor, = <i>yumkin</i> you want her, it, them especially = <i>hādha</i></p> <p>perhaps you have some questions you wish to ask me, especially about this Division? = <i>’idha</i> = <i>’ajarrib</i> = <i>’ajāwibak</i> I answer you</p> <p>If there are, I’ll try to answer you.</p> <p>part, component you produce</p> <p>What kinds of parts do you produce?</p> <p>limit = <i>nintij</i> we produce = <i>qīt9a qīt9a</i> pipe, tube = <i>blāstikīya</i> plastic = <i>sha’n</i> communications market</p> <p>You see, the factory is new and still small; up to now we have produced only simple parts, like pipes and plastic components for electricity and communications.</p> <p>Splendid. This is the field which interests us above all. So all your production is for the internal market? substitution import (goods imported)</p> <p>Totally. We produce only for import substitution.</p> <p>if broadening, expansion you agreed to</p> <p>And I presume, Mr Hassanein,</p>
--	--	--

law kân fî furṣa li tamwîl
tawsî9, fa 'int wāfaqt 9aláy?

btis'al
bi šūra rasmīyi

la'avna
'idāfi
zhiddan
mālīyi
shakhṣīyan
fihim yiḥham

(fāyiz yiḍhak.)

fāyiz:

btis'al as-su'āl bi šūra
rasmīyi? ma9lūm, law la'ayna
tamwîl 'idāfi, fa kunt mabsūt
zhiddan. walākin bi khuṣūs
hāda, lāzim tiḥkī ma9 mudīrna
li l-mālīyi shakhṣīyan. 'ana
l-'intāzh bas, fāhim?

9ala kull ḥāl
ḥatta u law
'a9tūna
mīzānīyi
sū' 'aswā'
dākhilīyi

9ala kull ḥāl, ḥatta u law 'a9tūna
mīzānīyi 'awsa9, fa 'iḥna
faḍḍalna tawsî9 min shān as-sū'
ad-dākhilīyi. 'iza mā biddak
tis'al ghayr su'āl, khallīna
nshūf al-'ān al-warsha ...

if there were a chance of
financing an expansion, you
would agree to it?

= *tis'al*
= *bi šūra rasmīya*
officially
= *laqayna* we found
additional
= *jiddan*
= *mālīya*
personally
to understand

(Faiz laughs.)

Are you asking officially? Of
course, if we were to find
additional financing, I would be
very pleased. But on that, you
must talk to our Finance
Manager personally. I can only
Production, you understand?

in any case
even if
they gave us
= *mīzānīya*
= *sūq 'aswāq*
= *dākhilīya*

In any case, even if they gave
us a wider budget, we would
favour expansion for the
internal market. If you don't
want to ask any other
questions (questioning), let's
look at the shop floor now ...

2. 9ibārāt

li ḥadd al-'ān (to the limit of now) up to now

9ala kull ḥāl in any case

3. mufradāt 'idāfiya. aṣ-ṣinā9a wa l-iqtisād

<i>iqtisād</i>	economy	<i>iqtisādī</i>	economic
<i>ṣaddar yiṣaddir</i>	to export	<i>ṣādirāt</i> (pl.)	exports
<i>ra's māl</i>	capital	<i>ḍarība ḍarāyib</i>	tax
<i>istithmār</i>	investment	<i>mādda mawādd</i>	material (noun)
<i>mādda tijārīya</i>	commodity	<i>si9r 'as9ār</i>	price
<i>mādda 'awwalīya</i>	raw material	<i>thaman 'athmān</i>	cost
<i>ṣāḥib al-9amal</i> , pl. <i>'aṣḥāb al-9amal</i>			employer

<i>niqābat al-9ummāl</i>	trade union
<i>ṣana9 yisna9</i> , verbal noun <i>ṣan9/ṣun9</i>	to manufacture
<i>qitā9 al-khidmāt</i>	services sector
<i>rabih yirbaḥ min</i> , verbal noun <i>ribḥ</i> 'arbāḥ	to (make) profit from
<i>khasir yikhsar</i> , verbal noun <i>khasāra khasāyir</i>	to lose, make a loss

an-naḥū

4. Verbs of Form III

Verbs of Form III follow the pattern of Form II, except that instead of a doubled middle root letter they have long *-ā-* after the initial root letter, and their verbal nouns are different. To begin with, examine their principal parts. Models are:

- All classes except final-weak: *kātab yikātib* to write to, correspond with
- Final-weak: *lāqa yilāqī* to find, encounter

Most verbs of Form III have a direct object for the person affected. Compare two verbs with the same root:

Form I	<i>katab yuktub</i>	to write
Form III	<i>kātab yikātib</i>	to write to, correspond with

but there are some exceptions which add no special meaning.

Sound final radical (sound, initial-*w*, hollow; doubled do not occur):

Root *k t b*, *kātab yikātib* to write to:

Past: *kātabi, kātabt/kātabti, kātab/kātabat; kātabna, kātabtū, kātabū*
I (etc.) wrote to

Pres.: *'akātib, tkātib/tkātibi, yikātib/tkātib; nkātib, tkātibū, yikātibū*
I (etc.) write(s) to

so also:

<i>sā9ad yisā9id</i>	to help	<i>9āmal yi9āmil</i>	to treat
<i>nāsab yināsib</i>	to suit	<i>qābal yiqābil</i>	to meet
<i>sāfar yisāfir</i>	to travel	<i>qātal yiqātil</i>	to fight
<i>ghādar yighādir</i>	to leave	<i>wāfaq yiwāfiq 9ala</i>	to agree on/to
<i>jāwab yijāwib</i>	to reply to	<i>ḥāwal yiḥāwil</i>	to try
<i>ḥāwar yiḥāwir</i>	to dialogue with		

Final-weak: Root *l q y*, *lāqa yilāqī* to find, encounter:

Past: *lāqayt, lāqayt/lāqayti, lāqa/lāqat; lāqayna, lāqaytū, lāqū* I (etc.) found

Pres.: *'alāqī, tlāqī/tlāqī, yilāqī/tlāqī; nlāqī, tlāqū, yilāqū* I (etc.) find(s)

so also: *nāda yinādī* to call, to summon

The final-weak verb rule (8/10) applies.

5. Imperative of Form III

Follow the rules for Form II:

sā9id/sā9idī/sā9idū; lā tsā9id/lā tsā9idī/lā tsā9idū

6. Verbs of Form IV

Verbs of Form IV are made on the following models:

- Sound: *'arsal yursil* to send; *'antaj yintij* to produce
- Initial-*w*: *'awqaf yūqif* to stop
- Hollow: *'aḍāf yuḍif* to add, to annex

- Doubled: *'ahamm yihimm* to concern, be important to
- Final-weak: *'ansha yunshī* to construct, create

The written forms of the present prefixes (*'u-*, *tu-*, *yu-*, *nu-*) are used in some verbs; in others the spoken forms *'a-*, *tī-*, *yī-*, *nī-*. Form IV is the only increased form to have this alternative vowelism, which is confined to the personal prefix. Most Form IV verbs have a direct object for the person affected, if they have a special meaning at all.

Sound: Root *r s l*, *'arsal yursil* to send:

Past: *'arsalt*, *'arsalt/'arsalti*, *'arsal/'arsalat*; *'arsalna*, *'arsaltū*, *'arsalū*
I (etc.) sent

Pres.: *'ursil*, *tursil/tursilī*, *yursil/tursil*; *nursil*, *tursilū*, *yursilū* I (etc.) send(s)

so also:

<i>'akhrāj yukhrīj</i>	to publicise, expel	<i>'antaj yintij</i>	to produce
<i>'az9aj yiz9ij</i>	to disturb	<i>'a9jab yi9jib</i>	to please
<i>'akhbar yukhbir bi</i>	to inform	<i>'anjaz yinjiz</i>	to implement, accomplish

e.g.: *'akhbarna bi 'innu yījī*. He informed us that he was coming.
yi9jibnī kthīr. I like it (I please me) a lot.

Initial-w: Root *w q f*, *'awqaf yūqif* to stop:

Past: *'awqaft*, *'awqafi/'awqafī*, *'awqaf/'awqafat*; *'awqafna*, *'awqafīū*, *'awqafū*

Pres.: *'ūqif*, *tūqif/tūqifī*, *yūqif/tūqif*; *nūqif*, *tūqifū*, *yūqifū*

so also:

<i>'awjab yūjib 9ala</i>	to impose (e.g. a tax) on
<i>'awshak yūshik 'inn</i>	to be on the point of (doing)
<i>'awshak yūshik 9ala</i>	to be close to, almost to

e.g.: *'awshakt 'inn 'aqūl lak ...* I was on the point of telling you ...
'awshakū 9ala l-mughādara. They were close to departure.

Hollow: Root *d y f*, *'adāf yuḏīf* to add, to annex

Past; middle root letter *w* or *y* becomes *-a-* or *-ā-* (hollow verb rule, 6/4):

'adaft, *'adaft/'adaftī*, *'adāf/'adāfat*; *'adafna*, *'adaftū*, *'adāfū*

Present; middle root letter *w* or *y* becomes *-ī-* throughout the tense:

'uḏīf, *tuḏīf/tuḏīfī*, *yuḏīf/tuḏīf*; *nuḏīf*, *tuḏīfū*, *yuḏīfū*

so also:

<i>'afād yufīd</i>	to benefit	<i>'arād yurīd</i>	to want
<i>'adhā9 yudhī9</i>	to broadcast		

With *'arād yurīd* the continuous past is preferred to the past, which is little used:

'urīd 'asā9idak. I want to help you.
kunt 'urīd 'innak itsā9idnī. I wanted you to (that you) help me.

Doubled: Root *h m m*, *'ahamm yihimm* to concern, be important to:

Past; the identical root letters separate before a consonantal personal ending, and come together elsewhere:

'ahmamt, *'ahmamt/'ahmamti*, *'ahamm/'ahmmat*;
'ahmamna, *ahmamtū*, *'ahammū*

Present; identical to Form I *hamm yihimm*:

'ahimm, *thimm/thimmī*, *yihimm/thimm*; *nhimm*, *thimmū*, *yihimmū*

so also: *'aşarr yişirr 9ala* to persist in, insist on

Final-weak: Root *n sh '*, *'ansha yunshī* to construct, create:

Past; similar to Form I; the final-weak verb rule (8/10) applies:

'*anshayt*, '*anshayt*/'*anshayti*, '*ansha*/'*anshat*; '*anshayna*, '*anshaytū*, '*anshū*

Pres.; the final-weak verb rule applies:

'*unshī*, *tunshī*/*tunshī*, *yunshī*/*tunshī*; *nunshī*, *tunshū*, *yunshū*

so also: root *l q y*, '*alqa yulqī*: '*alqa khiṭāb* to deliver a speech

al-wazīr '*alqa khiṭāb ḥawl mashākilna l-iqtiṣādīya*.

Root *9 ṭ w*, '*a9ṭa ya9ṭī* to give to (irregular vowelling, see below)

This last verb is important. It takes two direct objects:

'*a9ṭānī kitābu*. (not ['*a9ṭa lī ...*]) He gave me his book.

It has the syllable *a9ṭ* throughout (Pronunciation, paragraph 6):

Past: '*a9ṭayt*, '*a9ṭayt*/'*a9ṭati*, '*a9ṭa*/'*a9ṭat*; '*a9ṭayna*, '*a9ṭaytū*, '*a9ṭū*

Pres.: '*a9ṭī*, *ta9ṭī*/*ta9ṭī*, *ya9ṭī*/*ta9ṭī*; *na9ṭī*, *ta9ṭū*, *ya9ṭū*

7. Imperative of Form IV

To make the imperative of Form IV, replace the *tu-*, *tī-*, *t-*, *ta-*, *tū-* of the present prefix as follows:

- *tu-*, *tī-*, *t-*, *ta-*: replace with '*a-*
'*akhrij*/'*akhrijī*/'*akhrijū* '*a9ṭī*/'*a9ṭī*/'*a9ṭū*
- *tū-*: replace with '*aw-*
'*awqif*/'*awqifī*/'*awqifū*

The negative imperative is regularly formed:

lā tiz9ij/*lā tiz9ijī*/*lā tiz9ijū* *lā ta9ṭī*/*lā ta9ṭī*/*lā ta9ṭū*
lā tūqif/*lā tūqifī*/*lā tūqifū*

8. Participles of Forms III and IV

Form III and IV participles are formed as follows:

- *Active*, Forms III and IV: replace the *yi-/yu-/ya-* prefix of the second principal part with *mu-*; replace *yū-* in Form IV with *mū-*.
- *Passive*: Form III (rare): prefix *mu-* to the first principal part.
Form IV, all classes except initial-*w*: replace the '*a-* prefix of the first principal part with *mu-*.
Form IV, initial-*w*: replace the first syllable '*aw-* of the first principal part with *mū-*.

		Active	Passive
III <i>kātab</i> :	<i>mukātīb</i>	correspondent	
<i>sā9ad</i> :	<i>musā9id</i>	assistant	
<i>nāsab</i> :	<i>munāsib</i>	suitable	
<i>sāfar</i> :	<i>musāfir</i>	traveller	
<i>qābal</i> :	<i>muqābil</i>	opposite, remuneration	
<i>qātal</i> :	<i>muqātil</i>	fighter	
	f. <i>muqātīla</i>	fighter aircraft	
<i>wāfaq</i> :	<i>muwāfiq 9ala</i>	agreeing on/to	<i>muwāfaq 9ala</i> agreed on/to
IV ' <i>arsal</i> :	<i>mursil</i>	sender	<i>mursal</i> sent
' <i>az9aj</i> :	<i>muz9ij</i>	annoying	
	pl. <i>muz9ijāt</i>	discomforts	
' <i>a9jab</i> :	<i>mu9jib</i>	admirable	<i>mu9jab</i> admirer

'awjab:	mūjib	obligating	mūjab	obligatory
'ahamm:	muhimm	important		
'antaj:	muntij	productive		
'aşarr:	muşirr	persistent, resolute		
'afād:	muḥīd	useful		
'adhā9:	mudhī9	announcer		
'aḏāf:			muḏāf	added
'a9ṭa:	mu9ṭī	donor	mu9ṭa	given,
			pl. mu9ṭayāt	data

9. Verbal nouns of Form III

Models for Form III verbal nouns:

- Sound, initial-w, hollow; *kātab*: *mukātaba* correspondence (rarer, see below) *qātal*: *qitāl* fight; *jāwab*: *jawāb* answer
- Final-weak; *lāqa*: *mulāqā* encounter, pl. sound; adds *-t* before a suffix or when it is the theme of a construct (see below).

Most plurals are sound; a few are broken.

<i>sā9ad</i> :	<i>musā9ada</i>	help	<i>9āmal</i> :	<i>mu9āmala</i>	treatment
<i>qābal</i> :	<i>muqābala</i>	encounter	<i>qātal</i> :	<i>muqātala/qitāl</i>	fight
<i>jāwab</i> :	<i>jawāb</i>	'ajwiba	<i>ḥāwal</i> :	<i>muḥawala</i>	attempt
<i>ḥāwar</i> :	<i>muḥāwara/ḥiwār</i>	dialogue			
<i>lāqa</i> :	<i>mulāqā</i>	encounter	(mulāqātna our encounter)		

10. Verbal nouns of Form IV

Models for Form IV verbal nouns:

- Sound; 'arsal: 'irsāl despatch
- Initial-w; 'awqaf: 'īqāf stoppage
- Doubled; 'aşarr: 'īsrār insistence, persistence
- Hollow; 'aḏāf: 'īḏāfa supplement (NB. final -a)
- Final-weak; 'ansha: 'inshā' creation, composition

Plurals, where they exist, are sound.

'az9aj:	'iz9āj	disturbance	'antaj:	'intāj	production
'akhrāj:	'ikhrāj	expulsion	'awjab:	'ījāb	compulsion
'arād:	'irāda	wish	'adhā9:	'idhā9a	broadcasting
'a9ṭa:	'i9ṭā'	donation	'alqa:	'ilqā'	delivery (speech etc.)

11. Adjectives derived from verbal nouns

Many verbal nouns, especially those of the increased forms, produce *nisba* adjectives:

<i>ta9līmī</i>	instructional	<i>taḥḏīrī</i>	preparatory
<i>tajrībī</i>	experimental	'ījābī	positive
'irādī	intentional	'īḏāfī	additional, supplementary

12. We shall from now on introduce new verbs thus:

- Form I: *shakk* *yishukk* I *fī*, *shakk* *shukūk* to doubt (principal parts, preposition if any, verbal noun if useful);

- Forms II, III and V – X (once the increased form has been studied):
wāfaq III *ʔala* to agree on/to (first principal part, preposition if any);
- Form IV: *'arsal yursil* IV to send; *'aşarr yişirr* IV *ʔala* to insist on, to persist in (as for Forms II, III etc., but with both principal parts).

13. Pluperfect tense

kān followed by another verb, both in the appropriate person of the past tense, makes the pluperfect tense, which can be used to denote an action or state previous to another one expressed in the past tense:

kanū 'adhāʔū qabl mā 'aja. They had broadcast it before he came.

The pluperfect is not very common; the past tense is often preferred.

14. Conditional sentences

A conditional sentence states that something is true only if something else is true. We distinguish between real or possible conditions (if it rains ...q and unreal or impossible conditions (if I had known ...q):

Real conditions begin with *'idha* if Tenses can be as in English:

'akhbirnī, 'idha fī mushkila. Tell me, if there is a problem.

'idha huwa mish moujūd, (rāḥ-) 'aḥkī ma9 musāʔidu. If he isn't there, I'll talk to his assistant.

Or either verb, or both, can be in the past, with present meaning:

'idha mā kān moujūd, ḥakayt ma9 musāʔidu.

'a9fī ḥādha 'idha 'aja. Give him this if he comes.

Unless is simply *if ... not*

'idha mā sāʔadtna ... Unless you/If you don't help us

We also know *'idha* meaning *if* or *whether* in indirect questions:

mā naʔraf 'idha (yikūn) mumkin.

Unreal conditions begin with *law* if with both verbs in one of the past tenses:

law kunt ghanī, sakant/kunt sākin fī bayt 'akbar. If I were rich I would live in a bigger house.

law lā is *if not*(real/unreal); *law lā-* + pronoun suffix *but for ...*

law lā, 'abqa fī l-bayt. If not, I'll stay at home.

law lā, mā laqaynā. If not, we wouldn't find it.

law lāk, mā najahna. But for you we wouldn't succeed.

as if is *ka 'inn*, which follows the indirect speech rule (4/7):

kān yiḥkī ka 'innu ya9rafhum. He spoke as if he knew them.

15. Concessive sentences

A concessive sentence states that something is true despite or irrespective of whether something else is true. Concessions (*although ...*) begin with:

ḥatta u law even if (unreal) *ma9 'inn* even though (real)

wayn mā wherever *mata mā* whenever

mahma kān (etc.)/*mahma huwa/hiya* whatever

mīn mā whoever *kayf mā* however

so: *ḥatta u law qābaltu, mā kān yisāʔidak.* Even if you meet him, he won't help you.

ma9 'innu ghanī yuskun fī bayt iṣghīr. Although he is rich he lives in a small house.

mahma kānat ash-shurūṭ/mahma hiya sh-shurūṭ, 'ana musta9idd.
Whatever the conditions (might be/are), I'm ready.

16. All these conditions and concessions may be followed by *fa* ~~shenq~~
law 9irifī (fa) 'akhhbartak. If I knew (then) I would tell you.
mahma tqūl (fa) 'aṣaddiqak. Whatever you say, I believe you.

17. *īyyā-*

A verb cannot take two pronoun suffixes. When a verb has two direct-object pronouns, we suffix one of them to the base-word *īyyā-*. Examine:

9arraḡūni yyāhum. They introduced me to them.
'a9īna yyāha. Give them to us.
al-'as 'ila llī sa 'alni yyāha the questions which he asked me

When the verb has one direct object and one object with *li*, we use *īyyā-* for the direct object:

lā tqūl lu yyā. Don't tell it to him.

We do not use *īyyā-* for the direct object when the other object has a preposition other than *li*:

'akhadhtu minnu. I took/got it from him.
katabu min sha'nhum. He wrote it for them.

18. Regional variations; Levant, Egypt

Present tense. In Levantine and Egyptian speech, the present tense of all verbs (including *yikūn* with its future meaning) has *b-* before the personal prefix. Initial *hamza* is dropped, and initial *y-* may be dropped, before the *b-* is added. A transition vowel is inserted where necessary:

bashrab, btishrab(ī), bishrab/byishrab *ba9ī, bya9ī, bna9ī*
bashūf, bitshūf, binshūf *bakūn, binkūn, bitkūnū*

But *b-* is omitted after an auxiliary or in an expression of time or purpose:

bnījī but: *khallīna nījī, rāyihīn nījī, mā bni 'dar nījī*
byūṣal al-youm but: *lamma/ḡatta/'abl mā yūṣal al-youm*

bid- In the Levant and Egypt, the syllable *bid-* is used to form a quasi-verb meaning ~~to~~ want. It takes (NB) the *possessive suffixes* to make its present tense, doubling the *d* before a vowel:

biddī, biddak/biddik, biddu/bid-ha; bidna, bidkum, bid-hum
I, you (etc.) want(s)

Its past tense is expressed with *kān biddī, kān biddak* (etc.), the *kān* being invariable. The negative of both tenses is formed with *mā*, not with *mish*:

(mā) biddak itsā9idnī? Don't/Do you want to help me?
kān bid-hum al-fulūs 9ala tūl. They wanted the money immediately.

We use *īyyā-* to accommodate any pronoun direct object:

mā kān bidna yyā. We didn't want it.

19. Adverbs

Many adjectives in the m. sing. form can serve as adverbs: *kwayyis*, *mazbūṭ*. Some other adverbs are formed by adding to the m. sing. of the adjective the ending *-an* (after *-ī*, *-yan*):

<i>jadīdan</i>	recently	<i>qarīban</i>	soon
<i>tamāman</i>	completely	<i>rasmīyan</i>	officially
<i>shadīdan</i>	severely, vigorously	<i>yumī, yumīyan</i>	daily (adj./adverb)
<i>sanawī, sanawīyan</i>	annual(ly)	<i>shakḥīyan</i>	personally

-an is also added to a few prepositions and nouns (after *-a*, *-tan*):

<i>qablan</i>	before(hand)	<i>maʿan</i>	together
<i>ṣabāḥan</i>	in the morning		
(<i>four</i>	boiling)	<i>fouran</i>	immediately
(<i>ʿāda</i>	habit)	<i>ʿādatan</i>	usually
(<i>taqrīb</i>	approximation)	<i>taqrīban</i>	approximately
(<i>mathal</i> 'amthāl	example)	<i>mathalan</i>	for example
(<i>khāṣṣa</i>	particularity)	<i>khāṣṣatan</i>	especially
(<i>shakl</i> 'ashkāl	form)	(<i>mouḍūʿ mawāḍīʿ</i>	subject)
→ <i>shaklan wa mouḍūʿan</i>		in form and substance	

We negate *-an* adverbs with *mish* or *ghayr*:

<i>mish/ghayr rasmīyan</i>	unofficially
----------------------------	--------------

and we make their comparative either with the adjective or with 'akthar:

'ashadd, <i>shadīdan</i>	'akthar	more vigorously
--------------------------	---------	-----------------

20. Some adverbs are made with a preposition + noun. In some examples the noun is definite, in others indefinite:

(<i>suhūla</i>	ease)	<i>bi suhūla</i>	easily
(<i>ẓabt</i>	precision)	<i>bi ẓ-ẓabt</i>	precisely
(<i>surʿa</i>	speed)	<i>bi surʿa</i>	fast
(<i>shidda</i>	vigour, severity)	<i>bi-shidda</i>	vigorously, severely
(<i>tafṣīl tafṣīl</i>	detail)	<i>bi t-tafṣīl</i>	in detail
(<i>ḥaqīqa ḥaqāyiq</i>	truth)	<i>fī l-ḥaqīqa</i>	in truth, indeed
(<i>shakk shukūk</i>	doubt)	<i>bi lā shakk</i>	doubtless, indubitably
		<i>bi l-kād</i>	almost; (+ negative) hardly

We make the comparative with 'akthar after the noun, which is then indefinite:

<i>bi suhūla</i>	'akthar	more easily	<i>bi tafṣīl</i>	'akthar	in more detail
------------------	---------	-------------	------------------	---------	----------------

21. A third device used is *bi ṣūra* (*ṣura ṣuwar* form, image):

<i>bi ṣūra ʿāmma</i>	generally	<i>bi ṣūra naẓarīya</i>	theoretically
<i>bi ṣūra ʿamalīya</i>	in practice	<i>bi ṣūra wāḍiḥa</i>	clearly

Negation: *bi ṣūra mish/ghayr wāḍiḥa* in an unclear manner

Comparison: *bi ṣūra 'awḍaḥ* more clearly

<i>bi ṣūra ʿāmma</i>	'akthar	more generally
----------------------	---------	----------------

22. The superlative adverb is best expressed with ~~more~~ ... than all:

hādha t-tilmīdh yihkī bi ṣura 'awḍaḥ min al-kull. This pupil speaks the most clearly (~~more~~ clearly than all).

23. Finally, note variants of adverbs given above:

min qarīb recently *ʕan qarīb, baʕd ishwayy* soon

24. Participial verb

The active participle is frequently used in place of a tense; it agrees adjectivally with its subject:

'ana rāyih(a) I am going. *shāyif/fāhim?* Do you see/
understand?

hadhoul al- 'ikhwān musāfirīn? Are these chaps travelling?

The participle implies mostly present, but sometimes recently past, time:

'ana sāmiʕ ʕanha. I have heard of her/it/them.

ḥasan, mish shāyifu. Haven't seen Hassan.

When the subject is not stated, it is most commonly understood as first or third person in statements, and second or third person in questions:

musāfir(a) bukra. I am/He is/She is travelling tomorrow.

musāfir(a) bukra? Are you/Is he/Is she travelling tomorrow?

mish bāqiyīn fī l-bayt. We/They aren't staying at home.

mish bāqiyīn fī l-bayt? Aren't you/they staying at home?

25. 'illa

'illa with a negative verb means only

mā 'adfaʕ ʕilla bi dinār. I will pay in dinars only.

26. li

This preposition permits us to make a compound similar to a construct, but with all its elements explicitly defined:

mudīrna li l-mālīya our Finance Manager

al-mudīr al-ʕāmm li l-maʕnaʕ the factory's General Manager

A construct, i.e. *mudīr al-maʕnaʕ al-ʕāmm*, is technically possible but it would break up the GM's title.

li can be put with a 'string' construct:

mushkilat tamwīl at-tadrīb al-fannī li sh-sharika the problem of financing
the company's technical training

– and it removes the ambiguity of some constructs with an adjective:

mudīr al-bank as-sūrī (who or what is Syrian?)

but: *al-mudīr as-sūrī li l-bank/al-mudīr li l-bank as-sūrī*: no ambiguity.

27. jumal mithālīya

mumaththilīn al-ʕummāl kānū yurīdū

yiqābilū 'aṣḥāb al-ʕamal li buḥūth

kānat it-himhum kullhum.

The workers' representatives
wanted to meet the employ-
ers for discussions which
concerned all of them.

'azunn 'inn al-wazīr kān yihkī shakhṣīyan,

u mā kān yinwī yulqī khitāb rasmī

bi khuṣṣ siyāsāt al-ḥukūma l-iqtisādīya.

I presume the minister was
speaking personally, and
did not intend to make an
official speech about the

nasharū fi l-jarāyid taqrīr maktūb fī 'inn
'arqām aṣ-ṣādirāt li rub9 as-sana 'a9la
mimma kānat khilāl nafs al-mudda
fī s-sana l-māḍiya.

Government's economic
policy.

They published in the
newspaper a report which
says (in which is written)
that the export figures for
the quarter are higher than
they were during the same
period last year.

al-mas'ala ḍarūrīya; 'idha mā yiqdarū
yākhudhu t-tadābīr al-munāsiba bi sur9a,
khalīhum yiwāfiqū 9ala l-'aqaḷ 9ala
tadābīr taḥḍīrīya; law lā, fa nikhsar
ḥatta 9ishrīn bi l-mīya min ar-ribḥ.

The matter is urgent; if they
cannot take the appropriate
measures quickly, let them
agree at least on prepar-
atory measures; if not, we
shall lose up to twenty per
cent of profits.

28. at-tamārīn

1. Answer the following questions on the narrative:

e.g.: fī 'ayy ḥaql kānat mahammāt Peter?– kānat fī ḥaql at-tadrīb al-fannī.

(a) mīn illī Peter kān yurīd yiqābilu?

(b) mā huwa shughl fāyiz?

(c) shū kānū yintijū fi l-maṣna9?

(d) al-maṣna9 kān yintij min sha'n as-sūq ad-dākhilīya, willa l-'ajnaḇīya?

(e) mīn illī kān mas'ul 9an as-siyāsa l-mālīya?



2. Give the principal parts and the verbal noun of each verb:

e.g.: sā9ad – sā9ad yisā9id, musā9ada

(a) 'adhā9

(b) jāwab

(c) kharaj

(d) rabba

3. Give the principal parts of the verb of which this is a participle:

e.g.: munāsib – nāsab yināsib

(a) mukawwan

(b) mursil

(c) muwazzaf

(d) mufīd

(e) rākib



4. Re-express with a participial verb:

e.g.: 'int tifhām ar-risāla?– fāhim ar-risāla?

(a) 'ana mā 'asāfir bukra. (b) tshūfū?

(c) mā 9irifna

(d) tījū ma9na?

5. Join the clauses as a conditional sentence:

e.g.: mā ta9raf. lāzim tis'al. – 'idha mā ta9raf, lāzim tis'al.

(a) 'ana 9iriftu. kunt 'aqul lak iyyā.

(b) huwa muwāfiq. khalī yisā9idna.

(c) wiṣilū 'ams. 'ana shuft-hum.

- (d) mish munāsib. 'akhbirnī.
- (e) mā kān munāsib. kunt 'akhbartak.

6. Replace the noun objects with pronouns:

e.g.: 'a9ṭayt ṣadīqi l-fulūs. – 'a9ṭaytu yyāha.

- (a) 'arsalna r-risāla li sh-sharika.
- (b) qūl al-ḥikāya li-'aṣdiqā'ak.
- (c) 9allam al-walad kitābat al-lugha l-9arabīya.
- (d) kunt 'urīd 'as'al al-'ustādh nafs as-su'āl.
- (e) 'uktub al-jawāb min sha'n al-mumaththilīn.

7. Put everything possible into the plural:

e.g.: 'ana simi9t at-taqrīr al-muwāfaq 9aláy.

– simi9na t-taqārīr al-muwāfaq 9alayha.

- (a) mā dhakarat li l-khabar al-jadīd.
- (b) musāfir hassa? 'ashūfak ba9dayn.
- (c) fī tilmīdh yurīd yiqābilak.
- (d) 'ana mish fāhim laysh 'int mā turīd tishrah li yyā.
- (e) hādhi hiya 'akbar mushkila llī lāzim 'aḥillha.

ad-dars 'ithn9āshr . Lesson 12

fi l-9iyāda . At the Surgery

1. *al-ḥikāya wa l-ḥiwār*

tarashshaḥ
rashḥ
khoufan 9ala
taqaddum

(min youmayn Peter kān marīḍ. kān min
al-wāḍiḥ 'innu tarashshaḥ rashḥ shadīd.
fa khoufan 9ala taqaddum mahammtu,

tadhakkar
talfan
'ashār yushīr IV 'ila
layla hilāl

tadhakkar mā qāl lu d-duktur fu'ād u
talfan lu ṭālib musā9adatu. ad-duktur
fu'ād kān khārij al-balad, walākin
sikritayrtu 'ashārat 'ila ṭabība mumtāza,
isimha layla hilāl.)

shū mālak?
ḥarāra

duktur layla: shū mālak, yā sayyid Peter?
9indak ḥarāra?

Peter: mish 9ārif mazbūṭ,
yā duktur.

fahṣ yiṣṣaḥ I, fahṣ
ṭfarjī
lisān 'alsina (m./f.)
'aḥmar, ḥamrā', ḥumr
ḥalq ḥulūq

duktur layla: khallīnī 'afḥaṣak. mumkin
itfarjīnī lisānak? ḥalqak
'aḥmar shadīd.

daraja
darajat ḥarāra
taba9
li ḥusn al-ḥazz
taraddadt

nshūf al-ḥarāra ... 'ayna9am,
darajat al-ḥarāra taba9ak

he caught a cold
a cold
fearing for
progress

(For two days Peter had been
ill. It was clear that he had
caught a severe cold. Fearing
for the progress of his
assignment,

he remembered
he telephoned
to indicate, point out
Leila Hilal (name)

he remembered what Dr Sharif
had said to him, and tele-
phoned him asking for his
help. Dr Sharif was out of
town, but his secretary pointed
out an excellent doctor called
Layla Hilal.)

what's wrong with you?
heat, fever

What's wrong with you, Mr
Brown? Do you have a fever?
I don't know exactly, Doctor.

to examine (medically)
you show to
tongue
red
throat

Let me examine you. Can you
show me your tongue? Your
throat's very red indeed.

degree
temperature
belonging to
fortunately
you hesitated

Wed! look at the temperature
... yes, your temperature's 39,

	tis9a u thalāthīn, mish qalīl. li ḥusn al-ḥazz mā taraddadt 'inn itshūfnī. <i>barnāmaj barāmij malān</i>	quite a lot. Fortunately you didn't hesitate in seeing me.
Peter:	kayf 'a9mal, yā duktur? 9indī barnāmaj malān ... <i>titbassam lā budda min majbūr dār yidīr l bāl-</i> <i>tirtāḥ kāmil mā fish 9ilāj</i>	programme full What (How) should I do, Doctor? I have a full programme... she smiles there's no escaping forced to take care, pay attention you rest complete, perfect = <i>mā fī</i> treatment, cure
duktur layla:	(titbassam) 9ārifa, yā sayyid Peter, walākin lā budda min 'innak majbūr itdīr bālak. lāzim tirtāḥ 'usbū9 kāmil. law lā, mā fish 9ilāj. <i>tadhkara tadhākir (ṭibbīya) dawā' 'ādwiya ṣaydalīya qurṣ 'aqrāṣ 9adam tanāwul sāyil sawāyil khaṭīr</i> 'aktub lak tadhkara, khudh ad-dawā' min aṣ-ṣaydalīya, khudh qurṣ wāḥid thalātha marrāt bi l-youm, u lā tinsa tishrab may kthīr. 9adam tanāwul as-sawāyil khaṭīr jiddan. <i>taḥasant taḥassun malmūs talfin</i> 'idha mā taḥasant taḥassun malmūs ba9d youmayn, talfin lī u 'ashūfak kamān marra.	(smiles) I know, Mr Brown, but there's no escaping it, you have to take care. You must rest for a whole week. If not, there's no cure. (here:) prescription medicine pharmacy tablet lack intake (food, drink) fluid, liquid dangerous I'll write you a prescription; get the medicine from the pharmacy; take one tablet three times a day, and don't forget to drink a lot of water. Lack of fluid intake is very dangerous. you improved, got better improvement tangible telephone If you haven't made a tangible improvement after two days, telephone me and I'll see you again.

	<i>salāmtak</i>	(here:) Get well.
Peter:	'ashkurik qalbīyan, yā duktur. 'ana kthīr mamnūn.	My sincere thanks, Doctor. I'm very grateful.
duktur layla:	9afwan yā sayyid Peter. salāmtak.	Glad to help, Mr Brown. Get well.
Peter:	'alla yisallimik, yā duktur.	Goodbye, Doctor.

2. 9ibārāt

khoufan 9ala fearing for. *khāf yikhāf* I *9ala*, *khouf* to fear for. Note also *khoufan min* for fear of, fearing
shū māli/mālak/mālik/mālu/mālha/mālha/mālhum/mālhum? What's wrong with me (etc.)?

mish qalīl (not a little) quite a lot

li ḥusn al-ḥazz (for good of fortune) by good fortune, fortunately. The opposite is
li sū' al-ḥazz (for ill of fortune) unfortunately.

lā budda min (no escape from) There's no escaping ... This expression is
followed by a noun, or by a clause beginning with 'inn. Note also: *lā budda* It
can be helped.

dūr bālak/dūr bālīk/dūr bālhum 9ala Take care about

salāmtak/salāmtik/salāmtu/salāmit-ha/salāmitikum/salāmit-hum (your etc.)

safety) Get well. The response (as for all greetings with the root *s l m*) is 'alla
yisallimak/yisallimik/yisallimu/yisallimha/yisallimikum/yisallimhum.

3. mufradāt 'idāfiya. al-jism wa ṣ-ṣiḥḥa – Body and health

jism 'ajsām	body	waja9 'oujā9	pain
ra's ru'ūs	head	'īd 'ayād (f.)	hand, arm
zahr zuhūr, 9ahr 9uhūr	back	baṭn buṭūn	stomach
ṣadr ṣudūr	chest	qalb qulūb	heart
sinn 'asnān	tooth	9ayn 9uyūn (f.)	eye
9iyāda	clinic, surgery	9ālaj III	to treat (medically)
dam	blood	wazn 'ouzān	weight
ṭibb	medicine (medical science)	ṭibbī	medical
ṣaḥīḥ ṣiḥāḥ (also:)	healthy (person)	ḍa9īf ḍu9afā'	weak
miriḍ yimraḍ I	to be/fall ill	maraḍ 'amrāḍ	sickness
fahṣ ṭibbī	medical examination	mumarriḍ(a)	orderly, nurse
jarrāḥ	surgeon	jirāḥī	surgical
9amalīya	operation	majrūḥ majārīḥ	injured
'ibra 'ibar	needle, injection	ḍarab yuḍrub I 'ibra	to inject

an-naḥū

4. Verbs of Form V

For Form V verbs we can use the following models:

- All classes except final-weak: *taqaddam yitqaddam* to advance, progress
- Final-weak: *tawalla yitwalla* to be put in charge

This increased form has three important characteristics:

- a prefix (*ta-* in the past tense and *t-* in the present),
- a doubled middle root letter
- (NB) the vowel *a* after the middle root letter in both tenses.

Written Arabic has the prefix *ta-* before both tenses, but in spoken Arabic it is usual to drop the *a* of this prefix in the present tense. In some expressions the *a* of the prefix is dropped in both tenses.

Most Form V verbs do not have a direct object; they often give the passive* or reflexive* meaning of Form II verbs.

* In a passive expression the subject does not *perform* the action, but *undergoes* it:

‡The kitten is *being washed*.qIn a reflexive expression, the action comes back to the subject: ‡The kitten is *washing itself*.q

Examine:

<i>ʔallam yiʔallim</i> II	to teach
<i>taʔallam yitʔallam</i> V	(to be taught) to learn

Typical Form V tenses:

All classes except final-weak:

Root *q d m*, *taqaddam yitqaddam* to advance, progress:

Past: *taqaddamt, taqaddamt/taqaddamti, taqaddam/taqaddamat;*

taqaddamna, taqaddamtū, taqaddamū I (etc.) advanced, progressed

Pres.: *'atqaddam, titqaddam/titqaddamī, yitqaddam/titqaddam;*

nitqaddam, titqaddamū, yitqaddamū I (etc.) advance(s), progress(es)

so also:

<i>takallam yitkallam</i>	to speak
<i>tabassam yitbassam</i>	to smile
<i>tasharraf yitsharraf</i>	to be honoured
<i>tasallam yitsallam</i>	to receive
<i>tadhakkar yitdhakkar</i>	to remember
<i>tadakhkhal yitdakhkhal</i>	to intervene
<i>tarashshah yitrashshah</i>	to catch a cold
<i>tahassan yithassan</i>	to improve, get better
<i>taʔarraḥ yitʔarraḥ bi</i>	to get acquainted with
<i>taʔallaq yitʔallaq bi</i>	to depend on, pertain to
<i>tamakkan yitmakkan min</i>	to be capable of, to possess
<i>ta'akhkhar yit'akhkhar</i>	to be delayed
<i>ta'assaf yit'assaf</i>	to be sorry
<i>takhaṣṣaṣ yitkhaṣṣaṣ fī</i>	to specialise in
<i>taraddad yitraddad*</i>	to hesitate

* *taraddad 'inn* when followed by a dependent verb:

taraddad 'inn yudkhul. He hesitated to enter.

In initial-*w* and hollow verbs the weak root letter stabilises:

<i>tawaqqaf yitwaqqaf ʔala</i>	to depend on
<i>tawassaʔ yitwassaʔ</i>	to expand
<i>tawaqqaʔ yitwaqqaʔ</i>	to expect, await
<i>taṭawwar yitṭawwar**</i>	to evolve

** present-tense prefix *t-* assimilates to *ṭ* of the root.

Final-weak: Root *w l y*, *tawalla yitwalla* to be (put) in charge:

Past: like Form II, but prefixed *ta-*:

tawallayt, tawallayt/tawallayti, tawalla/tawallat;

tawallayna, tawallaytū, tawallū I (etc.) was/were (put) in charge

Pres.: final root letter becomes *a* and the final-weak verb rule (8/10) applies:

'atwalla, titwalla/titwallī, yitwalla/titwalla; nitwalla, titwallū, yitwalllū

I (etc.) am/is/are (put) in charge

5. Verbs of Form VI

For Form VI we can use the following models:

- All classes except final-weak: *takātab yitkātab* to write to each other
- Final-weak: *talāqa yitlāqa* to come together, meet

Form VI is exactly like Form V, except for having long *ā* after the initial root letter instead of a doubled middle root letter. Form VI verbs often have a reciprocal meaning (= each other); some of them correspond to Form III verbs:

kātab yikātib III to write to, correspond with

takātab yitkātab VI to write to each other, correspond

Examples of Form VI verbs:

All classes except final-weak:

Root *k t b*, *takātab yitkātab* to write to each other, correspond:

Past: *takātabt, takātabt/takātabti, takātab/takātabat;*

takātabna, takātabtū, takātabū

Pres.: *'atkātab, tkātab/tkātabī, yitkātab/titkātab; nitkātab, titkātabū, yitkātabū*

so also:

tabādal yitbādal to exchange with each other

taṣāhar yitṣāhar to demonstrate (politically)

tadākhāl yitdākhāl to interfere

taṣāwan yitṣāwan to cooperate

tanāwab yitnāwab to alternate

tanāwal yitnāwal to reach for; to take (food, drink)

Final-weak: Root *l q y*, *talāqa yitlāqa* to come together, meet:

Past: *talāqayt, talāqayt/talāqayti, talāqa/talāqat; talāqayna, talāqaytū, talāqū*

Pres.: *'atlāqa, titlāqa/titlāqī, yitlāqa/titlāqa; nitlāqa, titlāqū, yitlāqū*

so also: *taṣāfa yitṣāfa* to recover (in health)

6. Imperatives of Forms V and VI

For the imperatives of Forms V and VI, follow the rules for Form II:

Affirmative: V *tkallam/tkallamī/tkallamū*

VI *tṣāwan/tṣāwanī/tṣāwanū*

Negative: V *lā titraddad/lā titraddadī/lā titraddadū*

VI *lā titdākhāl/lā titdākhālī/lā titdākhālū*

7. Participles of Forms V and VI

For Form V and VI participles:

- **Active:** Replace the *yit-* prefixes of the second principal part with *muta-*, and (NB) change the *a* of the last syllable to *i* (for all classes except final-weak) or to *ī* (for final-weak verbs).

• <i>Passive</i> (rarer): Prefix <i>mu-</i> to the first principal part.			
V <i>muta9allim</i>	educated; apprentice	<i>mutaqaddim</i>	foremost, advanced
<i>muta9alliq bi</i>	relevant/pertinent to	<i>mutakallim</i>	speaker
<i>mutawaqqif 9ala</i>	conditional/dependent on	<i>mutawaqqa9</i>	expected
<i>muta'akhhir</i>	delayed, late	<i>muta'assif</i>	sorry
<i>mutakhaṣṣiṣ</i>	specialising, specialist	<i>mutawallī</i>	in charge
VI <i>mutaṣāhir</i>	demonstrator	<i>mutabādal</i>	mutual, reciprocal
<i>mutanāwib</i>	alternating	<i>mutanāwal</i>	available

8. Verbal nouns of Forms V and VI

To make the verbal nouns of Forms V and VI, replace the last *a* of the first principal part:

- in all classes except final-weak: with *-u-*.
- in final-weak verbs (rare): with *-ī*.

Examples (with some *nisba* derivatives):

V <i>taqaddum</i>	progress	<i>taqaddumī</i>	progressive
<i>ta9arruf</i>	acquaintance	<i>tadakhkhul</i>	intervention
<i>tawassu9</i>	expansion	<i>tawassu9ī</i>	expansionist
<i>taraddud</i>	hesitation	<i>takhaṣṣuṣ</i>	specialisation
<i>taṭawwur</i>	evolution	<i>taṭawwurī</i>	evolutionary
VI <i>tabādul</i>	exchange	<i>taṣāhur</i>	demonstration
<i>ta9āwun</i>	cooperation	<i>ta9āwunī</i>	cooperative
<i>tadākhul</i>	interference	<i>tanāwul</i>	intake (food/drink)

9. *mā* = what

mā is ~~what~~ when introducing indirect questions and in the relative meaning ~~that~~ which. In the indirect question we can instead use *shū*, except after a preposition, when *mā* is obligatory:

mish 9ārīf mā/shū ṣār. but: *'ashār 'ila mā ṣār 'ams.*
tadhakkar mā qult lu (yyá) d-duktur. *tadhakkar mā 'ashart 'ilu 'ams.*

Note also *mimma* and *9amma* (for [*min mā*, *9an mā*]), and the expression *mā yalī* ~~what~~ follows ~~the~~ following

'ashār 'ila mā yalī. He pointed out the following.
mimma yalī, min al-wāḍiḥ 'inn ... From what follows, it is clear that ...

~~as~~ follows *qis kama yalī.*

10. Absolute object

We often use as object of a verb a verbal noun having the same root as that verb.

We call this structure the *absolute object*:

sa'alatnī su 'āl. She asked me a question.
taḥassant taḥassun malmūs. You made (improved) a tangible improvement.
jaddadū tajdīd mumtāz. They have renovated it excellently.

The verbal noun may be of a different form from that of the verb:

tarashshaḥ (V) *rashḥ* (I) *shadīd.* He caught a severe cold.

11. Special adjectives

Certain adjectives denoting common colours and some physical afflictions are based on the comparative-adjective pattern (see 9/13) in the masculine singular. They also have special forms for the feminine singular/inanimate plural, and the animate plural. Models are:

Root	Model			
	masc.	f. s./inan. pl.	an. pl.	
Sound (3 consonants)	'aḥmar	ḥamrā'	ḥumr	red
Hollow (middle w) (middle y)	'aswad	sawdā'	sūd	black
	'abyaḍ	bayḍā'	bīḍ	white
Doubled (last letters)	'ajashsh	jashshā'	jushsh	hoarse
Final-wk. (-w or -y)	'a9ma	'a9myā'	9umī	blind

so also:

'azraq, zarqā', zurq	blue	'akhḍar, khaḍrā', khuḍr	green
'aṣfar, ṣafrā', ṣufr	yellow	'a9raj, 9arjā', 9urj	lame
'aṭrash, ṭarshā', ṭursh	deaf		

A few colours are *nisba* adjectives:

bunnī/binnī	brown	ramādī	grey
-------------	-------	--------	------

We make comparative and superlative of all these adjectives with 'akthar, as with derived and *nisba* adjectives.

12. Quadriliteral verbs

A few verbs, some of them common, have quadriliteral roots, i.e. four root letters. We shall mark such verbs with Q.

Form IQ, examples:

tarjam yitarjim	to translate	talfan yitalfin	to telephone
barhan yibarhin 9ala	to prove	zalzal yizalzil	to shake
talfaz yitalfiz	to televise	farja yifarjī*	to show to

* *farja* takes two direct objects: *farjū yya*. They showed it to him.

Form IQ tenses, imperatives and participles are similar to Form II triliteral. Thus, for *tarjam yitarjim* IQ:

Past: *tarjamt, tarjamt/tarjamti, tarjam/tarjamat; tarjamna, tarjamtū, tarjamū*

Pres.: *'atarjim, ttarjim/ttarjimī, yitarjim/ttarjim; ntarjim, ttarjimū, yitarjimū*

Imperatives: *tarjim/ī/ū* translate, *la ttarjim/ī/ū* don't translate

Participles: active *mutarjim* translator, passive *mutarjam* translated

Most Form IQ verbal nouns have one of the following patterns:

tarjama tarājim	translation	burhān 9ala	proof of
talfaza	television	zilzāl	shock, earthquake

Form IIQ, the only common increased form, resembles Form V triliteral throughout:

tazalzal yitazalzal	to quake	} NB: <i>ta-</i> in both tenses
tafalsaf yitafalsaf	to philosophise	

Imperative *tazalzal/ī/ū*, *lā tatazalzal/ī/ū*; active participle *mutazalzil* (no passive); verbal noun *tazalzul* quaking.

We shall show Form IQ verbs in the vocabulary in the same manner as Form I verbs (but without the second principal part, since this is regular in Form IQ); and Form IIQ verbs in the same manner as Form II verbs; see 11/12.

13. Circumstantial verbs

In 6/10 we studied the use of *u* in *circumstantial* expressions. Arabic has two other circumstantial structures expressing simultaneous actions. The first of these is with the active participle, agreeing with the subject of the main verb:

talfan lu ṭālib musāʿadatu. He telephoned asking for his help.
ʿajū rākibīn (al-)khayl. They came on horseback (riding horses).

In some expressions, the written form of the singular participle, carrying the suffix *-an* (f. *-atan*) is used in spoken Arabic:

ʿadāf qāyilan ʿinn ... He went on to say (He added, saying) ...
ʿadāfat qāyilatan ... She went on to say ...

The second verbal structure puts the accompanying verb into the present tense, irrespective of the tense of the main verb:

talfan lu yuṭlub musāʿadatu. *ʿajū yirkabu l-khayl/yirkabū khayl.*

14. Age

A person's age is indicated with the noun *ʿumr* *ʿaʿmār* age *ʿifeq*
ʿumru kam? How old is he? *ʿumrī thalāthīn.* I'm thirty.

Note also:

ʿumrak/ʿumrik ʿaṭwal. I bow to your greater experience.

and the compound adjectives, not used when the age is stated:

kbīr as-sinn/kbīra s-sinn/kbār as-sinn old
ṣghīr as-sinn/ṣghīra s-sinn/ṣghār as-sinn young

15. *ḥusn, sūʿ; ʿadam, ʿadīm*

The nouns *ḥusn* good and *sūʿ* ill form a number of constructs with special meaning:

<i>ḥusn al-ḥazz</i>	good luck	<i>sūʿ al-ḥazz</i>	bad luck
<i>ḥusn al-ḥāl</i>	good conditions	<i>sūʿ al-ḥāl</i>	poor conditions
<i>ḥusn al-qasḍ</i>	good will	<i>sūʿ al-qasḍ</i>	ill will
<i>sūʿ al-muʿāmalā</i>	ill-treatment	<i>(li) sūʿ al-ʿidāra</i>	(by) mismanagement
<i>li ḥusn al-ḥazz</i>	fortunately	<i>li sūʿ al-ḥazz</i>	unfortunately

The noun *ʿadam* lack can be used in construct with any definite verbal noun to make a negative concept, thus:

ʿadam at-tafāhum misunderstanding
ʿadam at-taʿāwun non-cooperation
waqqafu/ʿawqafu sh-shughl li ʿadam at-tamwīl. They stopped the work for lack of financing.

With a non-verbal noun, we interpose the verbal noun *wujūd* existence

ʿadam wujūd al-mawādd al-ʿawwalīya lack of raw materials

The corresponding compound adjective is formed with *ʿadīm* lacking

9adīm at-ta9āwun

uncooperative

16. *taba9*

The invariable word *taba9* is used in one of the following ways:

- as the theme of a definite construct qualifying a preceding noun:
al-milaffāt taba9 al-9iyāda the files belonging to the clinic
- with a possessive suffix: ~~mineq~~ yoursq (etc.):
li mīn al-kutub? – (hiya) taba9ī Whose are the books? . (They~~q~~) mine.
- with a possessive suffix: ~~myq~~ 'your' (etc.) after a construct or other compound:
darajat al-ḥarāra taba9u } his temperature
darajat ḥarartu }
al-mudīr al-9āmm taba9hum } their general manager
al-mudīr al-9āmm lahum }

17. Regional variations: Negative *-sh/-shī*

In the Levant, Egypt and Sudan, a verb negated by *mā* and not already carrying an object-pronoun suffix is often given the suffix *-sh*:

mā kunnash 9ārīfīn 'innak marīd. We didn~~q~~ know you were ill.

mā kānsh moujūd. He wasn~~q~~ there.

mā fī can also take *-sh*; it becomes *mā fīsh* (NB stress) or even simply *fīsh*:

mit'assif, (mā) fīsh 'imkānīyi. Sorry, there~~s~~ no possibility..

In North-west Africa, *mā* before the verb or quasi-verb (even one carrying a pronoun suffix), with the suffix *-sh* or *-shī* after it, is the standard negative formula in speech:

mā 9indaksh/9indakshī fulūs? Have you no money?

18. *jumal mithālīya*

kayf ṣiḥḥat 9alī? – mimma simi9tu,
yithassan ishwayy. 9imilū lu 9amalīya
'awwal 'ams, u 9indu waja9 'aqall, u
yizhar 'innu yākul u yinām
zayy al-9āda.

How~~s~~ Alī? . From what I
heard, he is improving
gradually. They operated
on him the day before
yesterday, and he has less
pain. It seems he is eating
and sleeping normally.

al-mutaṣāhirīn taqaddamū ḥatta
madkhal as-sūq, maḥall mā
waqqafat-hum ash-shurṭa.

The demonstrators advanced
as far as the market
entrance, where the police
stopped them.

qarrarat titkhaṣṣiṣ bi l-'amrād
ad-dākhilīya khoufan min 9adam
wujūd 'imkānīyāt at-tawṣīf fī ḥaql
aṭ-ṭibb al-9āmm.

She decided to specialise in
internal diseases, fearing a
lack of employment
possibilities in the field of
general medicine.

taraddadna taraddud ṭawīl qabl
mā talfanna lak. fa nkhāf taṭawwurat

We hesitated a long time
before telephoning you. We

'akhṭar 'idha mā tadakhkhalt
bi ṣūra 'ījābīya.

are afraid of more
dangerous developments if
you do not intervene in a
positive manner.

law tamakkanna min jawāb 'ījābī,
fa kān mumtāz; li sū' al-ḥazz
al-ḥaqīqa ghayr shī.

If we were capable of a
positive answer, that would
be excellent. Unfortunately
the reality is otherwise.

min al-mutawaqqa9 'inn al-lajna
twāfiq 9ala tamwīl al-'iḍāfa
llī ṭalabūha l-muwazzafīn
al-mutakhaṣṣīn. lā budda
'inn ash-sharika majbūra 'inn tidfa9
al-'iḍāfa l-kāmila l-maṭlūba.

It is expected that the com-
mittee will agree on financ-
ing the increase which the
specialised workers have
requested. There is no get-
ting away from it; the com-
pany is obliged to (that it)q
pay the whole increase
requested.

19. at-tamārīn

1. Give the principal parts of the verbs from which these words are derived:

e.g.: mutazāhirīn – tazāhar yitzāhar

- | | | |
|--------------|-----------------|------------|
| (a) ḥikāya | (b) takhaṣṣuṣāt | (c) 'ījābī |
| (d) tadākhul | (e) madkhal | |



2. Give the verbal noun of each verb:

e.g.: 'aḍāf – 'iḍāfa

- | | | |
|--------------|--------------|-------------|
| (a) 'akhkhar | (b) tawassa9 | (c) tanāwal |
| (d) wiṣil | (e) wazzaf | |

3. Give the affirmative and negative imperative, all forms:

e.g.: rāḥ – rūḥ, rūḥī, rūḥū'; lā trūḥ, lā trūḥī, lā trūḥū

- | | | |
|--------------|-----------|----------|
| (a) taqaddam | (b) 'a9ṭa | (c) 'aja |
| (d) ta9āwan | (e) 'akal | |



4. Complete the sentence with the right form of 'aḥmar:

e.g.: lisānu – lisānu 'aḥmar/ḥamrā'

- | | | |
|--------------|----------------|--------------|
| (a) 9aynu | (b) 9aynáy | (c) al-kitāb |
| (d) al-kutub | (e) as-sayyāra | |

5. Put into the present tense:

e.g.: tarjamu. – yitarjimu.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------|
| (a) talfanna lak al-youm. | (b) farjānī kitāb jadīd. |
| (c) talfazū kull al-'akhbār. | (d) taḥassan bi sur9a. |
| (e) mā tamakkanū min 'injāzu. | |

6. Collect together words of the same root:

e.g.: su'al, sa'alū, mas'ul, sāyil

mu9allima, 'imkāniya, ma9lūm, ma9rifa, yitmakkan, ma9lūmāt, n9arrifu,
ta9allamat, yumkin, ta9līmī, ta9rīf, yi9allim, ma9rūfa, 9ulūm.

(a) mumkin ...

(b) 9ilm ...

(c) 9irif ...

7. Complete the sentence with the right pronoun:

e.g.: ... hiya shurūt ad-dukhūl? – mā hiya shurūt ad-dukhūl?

(a) ... illī kunt titkallam ma9u?

(b) ... mālak, yā 'akhūī?

(c) yitwaqqaf 9an ... turīd.

(d) nsīt kull ... qāl lana.

(e) mish 9ārif ... illī 9imilu.

ad-dars thalatt9ashr . Lesson 13
ziyārat al-qāriya . A Visit to the Village

1. *al-ḥikāya wa l-ḥiwār*

iqṭarāḥ
sawa
qāriya qura
intāḥaz al-furṣa
ittāṣal bi
mukhtār makḥātīr

(ba9d mā ta9āfa Peter, iqtārah zamīlu
ʿabdarrahmān ʾinnhum yizūrū sawa
qāriyitu, u Peter intāḥaz al-furṣa. fa
ʿabdarrahmān ittāṣal bi l-mukhtār
fī ḥādha sh-shaʾn.)

ʾashraf

(9ind al-mukhtār ʾabū ʾashraf fī l-qāriya)

sharaf
kaththar II
khayr khuyūr
inqāl

ʾabū ʾashraf: ʾahlan wa saḥlan, sayyid
Peter. ʾilī sharaf ikbīr. kayf
ḥālak?

Peter: ʾilna sh-sharaf, siyādat al-
mukhtār. ʾana kthīr mabsūṭ,
al-ḥamdulilla. fa kayf
ḥaḍirtak? ʾinshalla bi ṣiḥḥa?

ʾabū ʾashraf: wallahi, sayyid Peter, mabsūṭ
jiddan, yikaththir khayrak.
walākin inqāl ʾinnak miriḍ?

Peter: kunt ta9bān ishwayy, walākinnī
kthīr ʾaḥsan hassa, shukran.

mā ʾajmalha!
manẓara manāẓir
nasama

ʾabū ʾashraf: al-ḥamdulilla. shū raʾyak 9an
qariyitna, yā Peter?

Peter: mā ʾajmalha! al-manẓara
9azīma min huna. kam nasama
fī yuskunū fī l-qāriya?

he suggested
together
village
he seized the opportunity
he contacted
mayor (of a village)

(After Peter recovered, his
colleague Abdarrahman
suggested that they visit his
village together. Peter seized
the opportunity. So
Abdarrahman contacted the
mayor on this matter.)

Ashraf (name)

(with Abu Ashraf, the mayor, in
the village)

honour
to increase (something)
good (noun)
it was said

Welcome, Mr Brown. It's a
great honour for me. How are
you?

The honour's mine, Mr Mayor.
I'm very well, thank you. And
how are you? In good health, I
hope?

Very well indeed, Mr Brown.
God bless you. But it was said
that you have been ill?

I was a little tired, but I'm a lot
better now, thank you.

how beautiful it is!

view

person (in statistics)

Thank Heavens. What do you
think of our village, Peter?

How beautiful it is! The view is
superb from here. How many
people are there living in the
village?

	<i>9adad 'a9dād</i>	number
	<i>sākin sukkān</i>	inhabitant
	<i>izdād</i>	it increased
'abū 'ashraf:	9adad as-sukkān izdād bi kthīr khilāl as-sanawāt al-māḍiya. qabl kam sana mā kān fī 'akthar min mitayn,	The population has greatly increased during the past years. Some years ago, there were no more than two hundred,
	<i>iḥtallū</i>	they occupied
	<i>'isrā 'īlī</i>	Israeli
	<i>ḍiffa ḍifāf</i>	bank, shore, coast
	<i>gharb</i>	west
	<i>intāqalū</i>	they moved
	<i>minṭaqa manāṭiq</i>	region, area
	walākin lamma kānū ḥtallu l-'isrā'īlīyīn aḍ-ḍiffa l-gharbīya, intāqalū kthīr min an-nās li hal-manāṭiq. wa 'aktharīyat 'oulādhum lissa sākinīn huna.	But when the Israelis had occupied the West Bank, many people moved out to these areas. And most of their children still live here.
	<i>ibtidā'</i>	beginning
	<i>i9tāmadū 9ala</i>	they relied on
	<i>hālhum</i>	themselves
	<i>9āsh yi9īsh I, ma9īsha</i>	to live (be alive)
	<i>kayf mā kān</i>	somehow or other
	<i>yishtāghilū</i>	they work
	fi l-ibtidā' i9tāmadū 9ala hālhum, kānū yi9īshū kayf mā kān, walākin hassa kthīr min ar-rijāl yirūḥū yishtāghilū youmīyan fi l-balad,	In the beginning they relied on themselves, living somehow or other, but now many of the men go to work daily in town,
	<i>zara9 yizra9 I, zar9</i>	to farm, plant, cultivate
	<i>'arḍ 'arāḍī (f.)</i>	land
	<i>yihtimmū fī</i>	they look after
	<i>ṭīfl 'aṭfāl</i>	child
	<i>shābb shabāb</i>	young man
	<i>tazawwaj V min</i>	to get married to
	u niswānhum yizallū huna, yizra9ū 'arḍhum, yihtimmū fī 'aṭfālhum. kthīr min ash-shabāb wa l-banāt tazawwajū min 'oulādna.	while their women stay here farming their land, looking after their children. Many of the young men and girls have married our children.
	<i>yishtārikū</i>	they participate
	<i>ḥayā ḥayawāt</i>	life
	<i>'ahl 'ahālī</i>	people
	<i>'aḥad (m.), 'iḥda (f.)</i>	one (of)
	<i>iftataḥna</i>	we inaugurated

	<i>masīhī</i>	Christian
Peter:	ya9nī yishtárikū fī ḥayāt al-qáriya tamāman?	So they participate fully in the life of the village?
'abū 'ashraf:	ṭab9an. 'ahilna, mīya bi l-mīya. u 'iḥdāhum mudīrat al-madrasa taba9na. qabl kam sana ftataḥna kanīsa ṣghīra, u kthīr min an-nās masīhīyīn.	Of course. They are our people, a hundred per cent. One of them is the headmistress of our school. Some years ago we inaugurated a small church, as many of the people are Christian.
	<i>ṭaqs</i>	weather
	<i>maṭar 'amṭār</i>	rain
	<i>rayy</i>	irrigation
	<i>9aqqad II</i>	to complicate
	<i>samad 'asmida</i>	fertiliser
	<i>nittákhidh</i>	we take
	<i>'ijrā'</i>	measure
Peter:	9āzīm. fa kayf kānat az-zirā9a has-sana, yā 'abū 'ashraf?	Excellent. And how was the farming this year, Abu Ashraf?
'abū 'ashraf:	mish baṭṭāl. fī l-ibtidā' kunt 'akhāf 9ala ṭ-ṭaqs, ya9nī kān al-maṭar baṣīṭ, wa r-rayy mu9aqqad. wa zdād ishwayy thaman al-ḥubūb wa s-samad. kunna majbūrīn nittákhidh 'ijrā'āt khāṣṣa.	Not bad. In the beginning I was afraid for the weather, that is to say, the rain was poor and the irrigation was complicated. And the price of seeds and fertiliser went up somewhat. We were forced to take special measures.
	<i>intáhat</i>	it ended
	<i>murḍī, mūrḍiya, murḍīyīn</i>	satisfactory
	walākin nushkuralla ntáhat as-sana bi l-kull bi ṣūra mūrḍiya.	But, thank Heavens, the year ended satisfactorily on the whole.
Peter:	al-ḥamdulilla. <i>baladīya</i>	Thank Heavens. municipality; town/village hall
	<i>'a9táqid</i>	I believe
	<i>shaykh shuyūkh</i>	old man, elder
	<i>yintáḍīrū, yintázirū</i>	they wait for
	<i>ijtáma9ū</i>	they assembled, they congregated
	<i>'ikrām</i>	deference
'abū 'ashraf:	yā Peter, tfaḍḍal ma9ī li l-baladīya. 'a9táqid 'inn shuyūkh al-qáriya yintáḍīrūk, ijtáma9ū 'ikrāman 'ilak ...	Peter, come with me to the village hall. I believe the elders are waiting for you; they are gathered in your honour ...

2. 9ibārāt

intāhaz al-furṣa. He seized the opportunity. See this verb below.

'ilna sh-sharaf. The honour is mine (ʔursq). The plural is used, as with *sharraftūna/tsharrafnā*.

yikaththir khayrak (ʔGod) increase your welfareq God bless you.

mā 'ajmalu/'ajmalha/'ajmalhum How beautiful he/she/it is/they are! This type of expression is studied below.

9adad as-sukkān (ʔthe number of inhabitantsq the population

kayf mā kān (ʔas it wasq somehow; any way one (etc.) can/could

basīt busaṭā' (ʔsimpleq in poor supply (water, fuel etc.)

'ikrāman li in honour of. Adverbial form of *'ikrām*, verbal noun of *'akram*

yukrim IV ʔto treat with deferenceq

3. mufradāt 'idāfiya. al-jughrāfiya wa ṭ-ṭaqs – Geography and weather

<i>9ālam 9awālim</i> ;	<i>dunya</i> (no pl.)	world	<i>qārra</i>	continent
<i>'iqlīm 'aqālīm</i>	region		<i>muḥīt</i>	ocean
<i>baḥr 'abḥār</i>	sea		<i>buḥayra</i>	lake
<i>jabal jibāl</i>	mountain		<i>sahil</i>	easy, (pl. <i>suhūl</i>) plain (noun)
<i>wād widyān</i>	valley		<i>nahr 'anhur</i>	river
<i>ṣaḥra ṣaḥāra/ṣaḥrāwāt</i>	desert		<i>wāḥa</i>	oasis
<i>madīna mudun</i>	city		<i>'ahl al-mudun</i>	townspeople
<i>'ahl al-qura</i>	country people		<i>fallāḥ</i>	peasant, farmer
<i>khalīj khulūj</i>	bay, gulf		<i>mīna mawānī</i>	port
<i>jazīra juzur</i>	island		<i>shibih jazīra</i>	peninsula
<i>saḥāb</i> (collective)	clouds		<i>saḥāba suḥub</i>	cloud
<i>shams shumūs</i> (f.)	sun		<i>qamar 'aqmār</i>	moon
<i>sama samāwāt</i> (m./f.)	sky		<i>shimāl</i>	north
<i>janūb</i>	south		<i>sharq</i>	east
<i>shimāl sharqī/gharbī</i>	NE/NW		<i>janūb sharqī/gharbī</i>	SE/SW
<i>hawa 'āhwiya</i>	air		<i>ḥārr</i>	hot
<i>rīḥ riyāḥ</i> (f.)	wind		<i>raml ramāl</i>	sand
<i>9āṣifa 9awāṣif</i>	storm		<i>9āṣifa ramlīya</i>	sandstorm
<i>shita 'āshtiya</i> ;	<i>thalj thulūj</i>	snow	<i>saqaṭ yusquṭ I</i>	to fall
<i>maṭar yumṭur I</i>	to rain		<i>thalaj yuthluj I</i>	to snow
<i>yumṭur</i> ;	<i>as-sama tumṭur</i> ;	<i>yusquṭ al-maṭar</i>		itʔ raining
<i>yuthluj</i> ;	<i>as-sama tuthluj</i> ;	<i>yusquṭ ath-thalj</i>		itʔ snowing
<i>'āsiya</i>	Asia		<i>'āsiyawī</i>	Asian
<i>'afrīqiya</i>	Africa		<i>'afrīqī</i>	African
<i>al-khalīj al-9arabī</i>	Arabian Gulf		<i>an-nīl</i>	Nile
<i>al-furāt</i>	Euphrates		<i>ad-dijla</i>	Tigris
<i>al-baḥr al-'aḥmar</i>	Red Sea			
<i>al-muḥīt al-'aṭlasī/al-hādī/al-hindī</i>				Atlantic/Pacific/Indian Ocean
<i>ash-sharq al-'adna/al-'awsaṭ/al-'aqṣa</i>				Near/Middle/Far East
<i>al-jazīra/shibih al-jazīra l-9arabīya</i>				Arabian Peninsula
<i>al-baḥr al-'abyaḍ al-mutawassīṭ</i>				Mediterranean Sea

an-naḥū**4. Verbs of Form VII**

For verbs of Form VII we can use the following models:

- Sound: *insáḥab yinsáḥib* to withdraw, be withdrawn
- Hollow (rare): *inzār yinzār* to be visited
- Doubled: *inḍamm yinḍamm* to join, be annexed to
- Final-weak: *inláqa yinláqī* to be encountered

Initial-w verbs do not occur in Form VII.

Note also:

- the *i*-beginning the first principal part is a weak vowel,
- the first syllable of a Form VII verb is never stressed, despite the general rule.

We mark the stress wherever it is irregular.

Form VII often expresses the passive voice (see 12/4) of Form I:

I *saḥab yishab* to pull, withdraw (something)

VII *insáḥab yinsáḥib* to be withdrawn, withdraw (oneself), retreat (of an army)

Form VII verbs cannot take a direct object. Typical tenses:

Sound: Root *s ḥ b*, *insáḥab yinsáḥib* to withdraw, be withdrawn:

Past: *insaḥabt, insaḥabt/insaḥabti, insáḥab/insáḥabat;*

insaḥabna, insaḥabtū, insáḥabū

Pres.: *'ansáḥib, tinsáḥib/tinsáḥibī, yinsáḥib/tinsáḥib;*

ninsáḥib, tinsáḥibū, yinsáḥibū

so also:

<i>inkátab yinkátib</i>	to be written	<i>infáṣal yinfáṣil</i>	to be separated
<i>infájar yinfájar</i>	to explode	<i>inkásar yinkásir</i>	to be broken
<i>inqásam yinqásim</i>	to be divided	<i>inqálab yinqálib</i>	to be overthrown
<i>in9áqad yin9áqid</i>	to assemble, be convened		
<i>inbásaṭ yinbásiṭ*</i>	to be pleased, enjoy oneself		

* In the past tense of this verb, the *t*-beginning any personal ending assimilates to the final root letter and becomes *ṭ*:

inbassaṭṭ/inbassaṭṭi/inbassaṭṭū

I was/you were pleased

but *inbásaṭat* (no assimilation)

she was pleased

Hollow: the middle root letter becomes *a* or *ā*; the hollow verb rule (6/4) applies.

Root *z w r*, *inzār yinzār* to be visited:

Past: *inzart, inzart/inzarti, inzār/inzārat; inzarna, inzartū, inzārū*

Pres.: *'anzār, tinzār/tinzārī, yinzār/tinzār; ninzār, tinzārū, yinzārū*

so also: *inqāl yinqāl* to be said

Doubled: *a* after the initial root letter in both tenses; see also the rule given below:

Root *ḍ m m*, *inḍamm yinḍamm* to join, be annexed to:

Past: *inḍamamt, inḍamamt/inḍamamti, inḍamm/inḍammat;*

inḍamamna, inḍamamtū, inḍammū

Pres.: *'anḍamm, tinḍamm/tinḍammī, yinḍamm/tinḍamm;*

ninḍamm, tinḍammū, yinḍammū

so also:

<i>in9add yin9add</i>	to be counted	<i>inḥall yinḥall</i>	to be solved
-----------------------	---------------	-----------------------	--------------

Doubled verb rule: In all increased forms of doubled verbs except II and V, the identical root letters separate before a consonantal personal ending and fall together elsewhere.

Final-weak: Root *l q y*, *inlāqa yinlāqī* to be encountered:

Past: *inlaqayt, inlaqayt/inlaqayti, inlāqa/inlāqat; inlaqayna, inlaqaytū, inlāqū*

Pres.: the final root letter becomes *ī* and the final-weak verb rule (8/10) applies:

'anlāqī, tinlāqī/tinlāqī, yinlāqī/tinlāqī; ninlāqī, tinlāqū, yinlāqū

5. Some Form VII verbs can be used to express **±able, -able**

ar-raml mā yin9add.

Sand is uncountable.

tis9a yinqásim bi thalātha.

Nine is divisible by (±n) three.

6. Verbs of Form VIII

For Form VIII we can use the following models:

- Sound: *iqtārah yiqtāriḥ* to propose, suggest
- Initial-w: *ittāṣal yittāṣil bi/fī* to contact
- Hollow: *imtāz yimtāz* to be distinguished
- Doubled: *iḥtall yiḥtall* to occupy
- Final-weak: *ishtāra yishtarī* (NB stress is regular in the present) to buy

Form VIII is derived like Form VII, but with *t* after the initial root letter instead of *n* before it. Further:

- the *i*-beginning the first principal part is a weak vowel, as with Form VII,
- the first syllable of a Form VIII verb is stressed only in the present tense of final-weak verbs with final root letter *w* or *y*. See under the final-weak verbs below.

Some Form VIII verbs give a figurative meaning to the root. Compare:

fataḥ yiftaḥ I

to open

iftātaḥ yiftātiḥ VIII

to inaugurate

But many add no special meaning.

Sound; Root *q r ḥ*, *iqtārah yiqtāriḥ* to propose, suggest:

Past: *iqtaraḥt, iqtaraḥt/iqtaraḥti, iqtārah/iqtāraḥat;*

iqtaraḥna, iqtaraḥtū, iqtārahū

Pres.: *'aqtāriḥ, tiqtāriḥ/tiqtāriḥī, yiqtāriḥ/tiqtāriḥ; niqtāriḥ, tiqtāriḥū, yiqtāriḥū*

so also:

ijtāma9 yijtāmi9

to assemble, congregate

iftākar yiftākir

to think

iktāshaf yiktāshif

to discover

i9tāqad yi9tāqid

to believe

i9tābar yi9tābir

to consider

iḥtāram yiḥtārim

to respect

intākhab yintākhib

to (s)elect

intaḥar yintāḥir, intāzar yintāzir

to wait for

intāqal yintāqil

to move away

ijtāhad yijtāhid

to exert oneself

ishtāghal yishtāghil

to work

ishtārak yishtārik fī

to participate in

i9tāmad yi9tāmid 9ala

to rely on

i'tāmar yi'tāmir

to deliberate

iftātaḥ yiftātiḥ

to inaugurate

iḥtāmāl yiḥtāmil

to tolerate, be probable

intāhaz yintāhiz

to seize ((al-)fursa an opportunity/the opportunity)

and many others.

'*akhadh yākhudh* I has an irregular Form VIII:

ittākhadh yittākhidh to take

Initial-w: initial *w* regularly assimilates to the *t* of Form VIII, giving principal parts beginning *itt-*, *yitt-*:

Root *w ṣ l*, *ittāṣal yittāṣil bi/fi* to contact:

Past: *ittaṣalt, ittaṣalt/ittaṣalti, ittāṣal/ittāṣalat; ittaṣalna, ittaṣaltū, ittāṣalū*

Pres.: *'attāṣil, tittāṣil/tittāṣilī, yittāṣil/tittāṣil; nittāṣil, tittāṣilū, yittāṣilū*

so also:

ittāhad yittāhid to be united *ittāfaq yittāfiq 9ala* to agree on

Hollow: the weak middle root letter appears as *a* or *ā*, and the hollow verb rule (6/4) applies.

Root *m y z*, *imtāz yimtāz* to be distinguished

Past: *imtazt, imtazt/imtazti, imtāz/imtāzat; imtazna, imtaztū, imtāzū*

Pres.: *'amtāz, timtāz/timtāzī, yimtāz/timtāz; nimtāz, timtāzū, yimtāzū*

so also:

ihtāj yihtāj 'ila to need *irtāh yirtāh* to rest

Doubled: The doubled verb rule shown in paragraph 4 above applies.

Root *ḥ l l*, *ihtall yihtall* to occupy:

Past: *ihtalalt, ihtalalt/ihtalalti, ihtall/ihtallat; ihtalalna, ihtalaltū, ihtallū*

Pres.: *'ahtall, tihtall/tihtallī, yihtall/tihtall; nihtall, tihtallū, yihtallū*

so also:

imtadd yimtadd to be extended

ihtamm yihtamm bi/fi to be concerned by; to look after

Final-weak: Verbs with final root letter *w* or *y* are stressed in the present tense on the *prefix*. In all other circumstances the stress is on the root, as in the other classes.

Root *sh r y*, *ishtāra yishtarī* to buy:

Past: *ishtarayt, ishtarayt/ishtarayti, ishtāra/ishtārat;*

ishtarayna, ishtaraytū, ishtārū

Pres.: *'āshtarī, tīshtarī/tīshtarī, yīshtarī/tīshtarī; nīshtarī, tīshtarū, yīshtarū*

so also: root *n h w*, *intāha yintahī* to end

but: root *b d '*, *ibtāda yibtādī* to begin, stressed on the root throughout.

7. The *t* of Form VIII is modified after certain initial root letters:

- after initial-root letter *f, ḍ, ṣ, z* or *ḏ* it becomes *f*:

iḏḏārab yidḏārib to clash *iṣṣāna9 yiṣṣāni9* to manufacture

- after initial-root letter *d, dh* or *z* it becomes *d*:

izdād yizdād to be increased

Note also *izdāwaj yizdāwaj* to be doubleq irregular, with stable middle *w*.

8. Imperatives of Forms VII and VIII

Make imperatives for Forms VII and VIII as for Form II:

VII *insāhib/insāhibī/insāhibū* *lā tinsāhib/lā tinsāhibī/lā tinsāhibū*

VIII *ibtādī/ibtādī/ibtādū* *lā tibādī/lā tibādī/lā tibādū*

9. Participles of Forms VII and VIII

Form VII and VIII participles are derived as usual. Form VII has no passive; its active participle usually has passive meaning:

- *Active*: replace the *yi-* prefix of the second principal part with *mu-*,
- *Passive* (VIII only): replace initial *i-* of the first principal part with *mu-*.

In all the participles, we keep the stress of the principal part, unless a stressed ending (e.g. a sound plural ending) is added:

VII	<i>munfāsīl</i>	separate(d)	<i>munfājir</i>	explosive
	<i>munḥall</i>	(being) solved		
VIII	<i>mu9tāqad</i>	believed	<i>muḥtāram</i>	respected
	<i>mushtārik</i>	participant	<i>mushtārak</i>	joint, common
	<i>mujtāhid</i>	industrious	<i>mu9tāmad</i>	reliable; accredited
	<i>mu'tāmar</i>	conference	<i>muḥtāmal</i>	bearable; probable
	<i>muntākhib</i>	elector	<i>muntākhab</i>	elected
	<i>muttāhid</i>	united	<i>muḥtāj*</i>	needy
	<i>mumtāz*</i>	distinguished, excellent	<i>mumtadd*</i>	extended
	<i>muḥtall*</i>	occupying; occupied	<i>mubtādī</i>	beginner
	<i>muḍṭārib</i>	agitated	<i>muṣṭāna9</i>	fabricated
	<i>muzdāwij</i>	double(d)		

* In the hollow and doubled classes the Form VIII active and passive participles are the same.

10. Verbal nouns of Forms VII and VIII

The patterns for the verbal nouns of Forms VII and VIII are similar except that the only common Form VII verbal nouns are the sound and doubled ones. Models are given below. The stress is regular; plurals, if any, are sound:

Class	Form VII		Form VIII	
Sound	<i>insihāb</i>	withdrawal	<i>iqtirāḥ</i>	proposal
Initial-w	–		<i>ittiṣāl</i>	contact
Hollow	–		<i>imtiyāz</i>	distinction
Doubled	<i>inḍimām</i>	annexation	<i>iḥtilāl</i>	occupation
Final-weak	–		<i>ishtirā'</i>	purchase

Examples, some with *nisba* adjectives derived from them:

VII	<i>infīṣāl</i>	separation	<i>infīṣālī</i>	separatist
	<i>infijār</i>	explosion	<i>in9iqād</i>	convening
VIII	<i>ijtimā9</i>	meeting	<i>ijtimā9ī</i>	social
	<i>i9tiqād</i>	belief	<i>i9tibār</i>	consideration
	<i>intiḍār, intizār</i>	wait, expectation	<i>iḥtirām</i>	respect
	<i>ishtirāk</i>	participation	<i>ishtirākī</i>	socialist
	<i>intiqāl</i>	transfer	<i>i9timād</i>	confidence; accreditation
	<i>iḥtimāl</i>	tolerance; probability	<i>ijtihād</i>	zeal
	<i>intikhāb</i>	election	<i>intikhābī</i>	electoral

<i>iftitāḥ</i>	inauguration	<i>iftitāḥī</i>	inaugural
<i>ittikhādh</i>	taking	<i>i'timār</i>	deliberation
<i>ittiḥād</i>	unity, union	<i>ittiḥādī</i>	federal
<i>ihimām</i>	concern, attention	<i>imtidād</i>	extension
<i>iḥtiyāj</i>	need	<i>intihā'</i>	end
<i>ibtidā'</i>	beginning	<i>ibtidā'ī</i>	initial, primary
<i>iḍṭirāb</i>	commotion, riot	<i>izdiyād</i>	increase
<i>iṣṭinā9</i>	manufacture	<i>iṣṭinā9ī</i>	artificial

Note also:

<i>i9timād 9ala</i>	dependence on/confidence in
<i>'awraq al-i9timād</i>	(diplomatic) credentials
<i>'akhadh bi 9ayn al-i9tibār</i>	to take into consideration
<i>ibtidā' an min, i9tibāran min</i>	starting from, with effect from

11. Abstract nouns

An important type of abstract noun (i.e. a noun denoting an idea) is derived by adding *-ya* (plural, if any, sound) to a *nisba* adjective:

<i>ishtirākīya</i>	socialism	<i>ta9āwunīya</i>	cooperativism
<i>ittiḥādīya</i>	federalism	<i>infiṣālīya</i>	separatism
<i>tawassu9īya</i>	expansionsim	<i>ra'smālīya</i>	capitalism
<i>dīmuqrātīya</i>	democracy	<i>diktātūrīya</i>	dictatorship

and note *ḥurrīya* ~~freedom~~ (from *ḥurr* 'ahrār ~~free~~).

12. Exclamations

We can form an exclamation with *mā* ~~what~~ followed by the comparative form of a simple adjective (i.e. not a participle and not *nisba*), with a possessive suffix:

<i>mā 'ajmalu/'ajmalha!</i>	How beautiful it is!
<i>mā 'akramak/ik/kum</i>	How kind you are.

13. *kayf mā kān* (etc.)

Note these invariable expressions:

<i>kayf mā kān</i>	somehow or other, any way one (etc.) can/could
<i>wayn mā kān</i>	somewhere or other
<i>mata mā kān</i>	at some/any time
<i>mīn mā kān</i>	anyone at all
<i>mahma kān</i>	anything at all

Those with pronouns are found mostly as direct or prepositional objects:

<i>is'al mīn mā kān.</i>	<i>huwa mabsūt bi mahma kān</i>
--------------------------	---------------------------------

14. Reflexive *ḥāl-*

ḥāl, invariable but with a possessive suffix, can be used like *nafs* 'anfus (see 8/16) to express the reflexive pronoun ~~±self/-selves~~:

<i>ṣaḥab ḥālu u riji9 li l-qāriya.</i>	He took (dragged) himself off and returned to the village.
<i>ṣārū yishukkū fī 'anfus-hum/hālhum.</i>	They began to doubt themselves.
<i>ni9tāmid 9ala 'anfusna/hālna.</i>	We rely on ourselves.
<i>(kānat i)kthīr shāyifa ḥālha.</i>	She is/was very conceited.

In this last idiom we use only a participial verb, not a tense.

15. Passive voice

It is incorrect to express the *agent* (by whom) of a passive expression in Arabic. However, many Arab journalists use *min qibal* on the part of for byq imitating European style. Use this idiom yourself very sparingly, if at all:

al-mustashfa nfatah min qibal al-wazir.
al-fatra mumaddada min qibal ash-sharika.

16. shibih

This noun, meaning resemblance, forms compound adjectives or nouns meaning semi-q, quasi-q etc.

har-risālāt ash-shibih rasmīya these semi-official letters
'ijrā'āt shibih hukūmīya quasi-governmental measures

With a noun, *shibih* forms a construct:

shibih al-jazīra l-'arabīya the Arabian peninsula
shibih al-qārra l-hindīya the Indian subcontinent

17. Diminutives

Diminutive nouns are derivatives denoting something smaller than the original. Most Arabic diminutives are made on one of three models:

<i>kitāb</i> → <i>kutayyib</i>	booklet	<i>baḥr</i> → <i>buḥayra</i>	lake
{ <i>bāb</i> → <i>buwayb</i>	small door	{ <i>kalb</i> → <i>kulayb</i>	puppy

18. jumal mithālīya

'aṯtāqid 'inn 'aḥsan shī 'inna nintāḡir
 ḡatta yittāṡil bīna baḡd al-ijtimāḡ.

I think the best thing for us is to
 wait for him to contact us
 after the meeting.

'akhāf 'inn yikūn ḡadam at-tafāhum bayn
 al-mushtarikayn fī hādha l-mu'tāmar.

I fear there will be mutual mis-
 understanding between both
 participants at this conference.

khlāl al-mu'tāmar aṡ-ṡuḡufī tabaḡu
 l-wazir 'akhbarna bi qtirāḡ al-ḡukūma
 l-jadīd bi khuṡuṡ mushkilitna r-ra'īsīya,
 u hiya l-insihāb min al-'arāḡi l-muḡtalla.

During his press conference the
 minister informed us of the
 Government's new proposal
 concerning our main problem,
 namely the withdrawal from
 the occupied territories.

hādha t-tafṡīl muhim, walākin min
 al-muḡtāmal 'innhum mā yākhudhū
 bi ḡayn al-iḡtibār. lāzim 'iḡna nudhkuru
 marra thāniya ḡatta mā yinsū.

This detail is important, but it is
 likely that they will not take it
 into consideration. We must
 mention it again ourselves so
 that they don't forget it.

'akhbarnī bu ṡūra shibih rasmīya bi 'inn
 yikūn al-intiḡār ṡawīl li ḡadam
 al-muwāḡaḡa bayn al-mumaththilayn
 ar-ra'īsīyīn.

He informed me semi-officially
 that the wait will be a long one
 because of disagreement
 between the two chief
 representatives.

19. *at-tamārīn*

🔊 1. Give the principal parts and the verbal noun of each verb:

e.g.: insáḥab – insáḥab yinsáḥib, insiḥāb

- | | | |
|------------|------------|---------------|
| (a) sā9ad | (b) kān | (c) ittákhadh |
| (d) 'ansha | (e) wazzaf | |

2. Put into the present tense:

e.g.: intakhabú l-youm. – yintákhibu l-youm.

- (a) ṭab9an ishtarakna fi l-mu'támar.
 (b) inqāl 'innu marīḍ.
 (c) ash-shurṭa ḥtallat al-bināya.
 (d) iktashaft shī jadīd?
 (e) tawassa9at 'imkānīyat at-ta9āwun baynna u baynhum.

3. Use a tense instead of the participle:

e.g.: shāyifu 'ams? – shuftu 'ams?

- (a) wāšilīn fi l-layl, 'aftákir.
 (b) mish 9ārifīn laysh.
 (c) huwa kthīr muḥtāj 'ila musā9adatna.
 (d) mīn sākin huna?
 (e) fāhimnī yā 'akhū?

4. Give the active participle of the verb:

e.g.: taqaddam – mutaqaddim

- | | | |
|-------------|-------------|-----------|
| (a) infāṣal | (b) 'arsal | (c) masha |
| (d) iḥtāj | (e) ittáḥad | |

5. Make one conditional sentence from the two sentences:

e.g.: kunna 9ārifīn. 'akhbarnāk min qabl.

– law kunna 9ārifīn, 'akhbarnāk min qabl.

- (a) huwa mish moujūd. 'attāšil bi zamīlu.
 (b) mā ndīr bālna. yikūn fī nfijār shadīd.
 (c) kān yidīr bālu. má kān fī mithl hādha l-infijār.
 (d) kānat al-'as9ār 'aqall. qidirna níshtarī 'akthar.

6. Make feminine everything possible:

e.g.: huwa tilmīdh mumtāz yishtághil kwayyis.

– hiya tilmīdha mumtāza tishtághil kwayyis.

- (a) 'abú rajul laṭīf wa kbīr as-sinn.
 (b) aṭ-ṭabīb kān yiḥāwil yisā9id al-marīḍ.
 (c) ta9raf al-mu9allimīn al-judud?
 (d) ittāṣal finī 'ams.
 (e) laysh mā tiḥtárimu ḥtirām 'akthar?

7. Fill the blank with the appropriate verbal noun, of the form indicated, from the list:

ta9āwun, kitāba, muḥāwala, tanzīm, fahm, ishtirāk, intikhāb

e.g.: (VIII) az-zumalā' fī hādhi (III) ḍarūrī.

– ishtirāk az-zumalā' fī hādhi l-muḥāwala ḍarūrī.

(a) 9adam (VI) bayn az-zamīlayn huwa l-mushkila r-ra'īsīya.

(b) huwa yifhamnī (I) kāmīl.

(c) mish qādir 'aqra (I) 9ala hal-warqa.

(d) ba9d (VIII) al-ishtirākīyīn inbāsaṭu kthīr.

(e) 'ana mas'ūl 9an (II) hādha l-qism li sh-sharika.

6. Collect together words of the same root:

e.g.: tafāhum, muwazzaf, tawzīf, fahm

– tafāhum, fahm; muwazzaf, tawzīf

mutakallimīn, mafātīḥ, 'abwāb, buwayb, infāṭaḥat, kalima, ifitāḥ, mumtadd,

yin9add, bawwāb, 9adad, yiftaḥ

(a) bāb ...

(b) fataḥ ...

(c) 9idda ...

(d) madd ...

(e) takallum ...

ad-dars 'arba9t9ashr . Lesson 14

fī s-sūq . In the Market

1. al-ḥikāya wa l-ḥiwār

yistaḥd min

li 'annu

ḥaraka

yistaghrib min

biḍā9a baḍāyi9

nawwa9 II

he benefits from

because

movement

he is astonished at

merchandise

to assort, to vary

(li ḥadd al-'ān Peter mā qidir yistaḥd min ziyārat as-sūq li 'annu kān 9indu shughl ikthīr. dāyiman inbāsaḥ ikthīr min al-ḥaraka wa l-ḥayā wa l-'aṣwāt, fī s-sūq. kān dāyiman yistaghrib min al-baḍāyi9 al-munawwa9a l-muqaddama hunāk.)

(Up to now Peter had not been able to have the benefit of a visit to the market because he had had a lot of work. He always greatly enjoyed the movement, the life and the noises in the market. He was always astonished at the varied goods offered there.)

qammāsh

ḥusayn

(fī s-sūq; 9ind al-qammāsh ḥusayn)

draper, cloth merchant

Hussein (name)

(in the market; at Hussein the cloth merchant)

fattash II 9an

ḥusayn: 'ahlan yā sidī. tfaḍḍal. tfattish 9an shī mu9ayyan?

fustān fasātīn

ṣayfī

loun 'alwān

qmāsh 'aqmisha

qābil li l-ghasīl

wāṭi'

to look for

Welcome, sir. Are you looking for something in particular?

(woman's) dress

summer (adjective)

colour

cloth

washable

low

Peter: na9am, 'aḥibb 'ashūf shī min sha'n fustān ṣayfī 'ila zoujti.

Yes, I would like to see something for a summer dress for my wife.

ḥusayn: tfaḍḍal huna. hay kull al-'alwān, qmāsh qawī u khafīf li ṣ-ṣayf, u qābil li l-ghasīl tamāman. 'a9ṭik iyyā 9ala 'awṭa' 'as9ār.

Come this way. Here we have all the colours, strong and light cloth for the summer, and completely washable. I'll give it to you at the lowest prices.

Peter: hādha ṭayyib. kam yikallif?

This is good. How much does it cost?

ḥusayn: 'a9ṭik iyyā li kam mā turīd.

I'll give it to you for however much you want.

'ākhir kalima

(the last word)

your final price

fāṣal III

to bargain

	<i>jins 'ajnās</i>	sort, kind, quality
	<i>thābit</i>	firm, stable
	<i>ghālī, ghāliya, ghāliyyīn</i>	expensive
	<i>nista9mil</i>	we use
	<i>khāt yikhīt I, khayt</i>	to sew
Peter:	la', qūl lī 'ākhīr kalima, u mā 'urīd 'afāṣil ma9ak.	No, tell me your final price, I don't want to bargain with you.
ḥusayn:	wallāhi, tis9a danānīr bi l-mitr. jinsu mumtāz, mustawrad min al-yābān, wa l-'alwān thābita mīya fi l-mīya.	Well, nine dinars a metre. It's of excellent quality, imported from Japan, colours 100 per cent fast.
Peter:	ghālī shwayy, walākin yi9jibnī kthīr. li fustān ṣayfī, kam lāzim nista9mil? zoujti tkhītu nafs-ha.	It's a bit expensive, but I like it a lot. For a summer dress, how much must we use? My wife will sew it herself.
	<i>santimītr</i>	centimetre
	<i>9arḍ 9urūd</i>	width
	<i>kaffa II</i>	to suffice
	<i>qaṣṣ yiquṣṣ I</i>	to cut
ḥusayn:	mīya u khamst9ashr santimītr bi l-9arḍ, yikaffī mitrayn u nuṣṣ. 'a9ṭīk iyyā li thnayn u 9ishrīn dīnār, muwāfiq?	115 cm wide, two and a half metres will be enough. I'll give it to you for twenty-two dinars, agreed?
Peter:	kthīr kwayyis. quṣṣ lī mitrayn u nuṣṣ.	Very good. Cut me two and a half metres.
ḥusayn:	tikram	Certainly
	<i>ikhṭār VIII</i>	to choose, select
	<i>mabrūk!</i>	Congratulations!
	<i>bārak III fī</i>	to bless
	<i>'amān</i>	safety, safekeeping
	hay al-iqmāsh. ikhtart ikwayyis, yā sīdī. mabrūk!	Here's the cloth. You chose well, sir. Congratulations!
Peter:	'alla yibārik fik. tfaḍḍal.	Thank you.
ḥusayn:	u hay al-fakka. mamnūn jiddan. fī 'amān 'illā.	And here's the change. Thank you very much. Goodbye.
Peter:	fī 'amān al-karīm.	Goodbye.

2. 9ibārāt

'ākhīr kalima (the last word) your best/last price

tis9a danānīr bi l-mitr nine dinars a metre

mīya u khamst9ashr santimītr bi l-9arḍ 115 cm wide (in width)

mabrūk (blessed) Congratulations! A greeting; the response is: 'alla yibārik

fīk/fīki/fīkum (God bless you) Thank you.

fī 'amān 'illā (in the safety of God) Goodbye. A greeting; the response is:

fī 'amān al-karīm (in the safety of the Generous One) Goodbye.

3. *mufradāt 'iḏāfiya. al-mushtarayāt wa l-malābis – Shopping, clothes*

<i>shakl 'ashkāl</i>	(also:) pattern	<i>ṭūl 'aṭwāl</i>	length, height
<i>wazan yūzin I</i>	to weigh	<i>qās yiqās I</i>	to measure
<i>zabūn zabāyin</i>	customer	<i>... bi kam?</i>	how much is ...?
<i>zawwad II</i>	to supply	<i>kammīya</i>	quantity
<i>tawaffar V</i>	to be plentiful	<i>nāqīṣ nuqqaṣ</i>	in short supply
<i>khaffaf II</i>	to reduce	<i>badhla</i>	suit
<i>grām</i>	gram	<i>kīlou</i>	kilogram
<i>baṭaloun</i>	trousers	<i>labas yilbis I</i>	to wear
<i>qamīṣ qumṣān</i>	shirt	<i>jakayt</i>	jacket, coat
<i>kundura kanādir</i>	shoe	<i>kalsa</i>	sock
<i>blūza</i>	blouse	<i>gravāt</i>	necktie
<i>tannūra tanānīr</i>	skirt	<i>burnayṭa barānīt</i>	hat
<i>malābis taḥṭānīya</i>	underclothes	<i>ghassal II</i>	to wash
<i>ghasīl</i>	washing, laundry	<i>kawa yikwī I, kawī</i>	to iron
<i>shatawī</i>	winter (adjective)	<i>naḏḏaf II 9ala n-nāshif</i>	to dry-clean

an-naḥū

4. Verbs of Form IX

Form IX is a rare and unimportant increased form. It is included here so that the list of forms is complete. You may prefer, at least provisionally, to omit this paragraph, or to use it solely for reference.

Form IX has only verbs denoting colours or physical defects. It has only sound and hollow classes, both with stable root letters throughout. Form IX behaves somewhat like a Form VIII doubled verb, but without the *-t-* after the first root letter.

Model root *ḥ m r*, *iḥmarr yihmarr* to go red, to blush:

Past: *iḥmarart, iḥmarart/iḥmararti, iḥmarr/iḥmarrat;*

iḥmararna, iḥmarartū, iḥmarrū I (etc.) went red, blushed

The initial *i-* of the first principal part (hence also of the past tense) is a weak vowel.

Pres.: *'aḥmarr, tiḥmarr/yihmarrī, yihmarr/tiḥmarr;*

niḥmarr, tiḥmarrū, yihmarrū I go red, blush (etc.)

so also:

<i>isfarr yisfarr</i>	to go yellow	<i>izraqq yizraqq</i>	to go blue
<i>ikhḏarr yikhḏarr</i>	to go green	<i>iswadd yiswadd</i>	to go black
<i>ibyaḏḏ yibyaḏḏ</i>	to blanch, go white	<i>i9wajj yi9wajj</i>	to become bent

Imperatives: *iḥmarr* (etc.), *lā tiḥmarr* (etc.)

Active participle: *muḥmarr*

Verbal noun: *iḥmirār*

Form IX cannot have a direct object and has no passive participle.

5. Verbs of Form X

Form X has many useful verbs, made on the following models:

- Sound: *ista9mal yista9mil* to use
- Initial-w: *istawrad yistawrad* to import
- Hollow: *istarāḥ yistarāḥ* to rest

- Doubled: *istahaqq yistahiqq* to deserve
- Final-weak: *istathna yistathnī* to except

Some students find that Form X is most easily formed by reference to the structure of Form IV (11/6-8, 10). Take the pattern of the appropriate verb class in Form IV and change it as follows to give Form X:

- Principal parts:
IV 'a-, yu-/yi- → X *ista-*, *yista-* respectively
IV 'aw-, yū- → X *istaw-*, *yistaw-* respectively
- Imperative (see paragraph 6 below):
IV 'a-, 'aw- → X *ista-*, *istaw-* respectively
IV *lā tu-*, *lā ti-*, *lā t-*, *lā ta* → X *lā tista-*
IV *lā tū-* → X *lā tistaw-*
- Participles (see paragraph 7 below):
IV *mu-*, *mū-* → X *musta-*, *mustaw-* respectively
- Verbal noun (see paragraph 8 below):
IV 'i-, 'ī- → X *isti-*, *istī-* respectively

One essential difference, however, between Forms IV and X is that while the first principal part of IV begins with *hamza*, that of Form X begins with weak *i-*.

Form X has two main additional meanings:

- causative, or seeking to achieve the result implied in the root:
ista9mal yista9mil to use (to put something to work)
ista'dhan yista'dhin to ask permission
- ascribing a quality to a thing or person:
istahsan yistahsin to consider (a person/thing) good

Many have a person or thing as direct object.

Sound: Root *9 m l*, *ista9mal yista9mil* to use:

Past: *ista9malt*, *ista9malt/ista9malti*, *ista9mal/ista9malat*;
ista9malna, *ista9maltū*, *ista9malū*

Pres.: *'asta9mil*, *tista9mil/tista9milī*, *yista9mil/tista9mil*;
nista9mil, *tista9milū*, *yista9milū*

so also:

<i>ikstakhdam yistakhdim</i>	to employ
<i>istaghraq yistaghriq</i>	to last
<i>istahḍar yistahḍir</i>	to summon
<i>istaqbal yistaqbil</i>	to receive
<i>istankar yistankir</i>	to reject
<i>istathmar yistathmir</i>	to invest
<i>istahsan yistahsin</i>	to consider good
<i>ista9lam yista9lim 9an</i>	to enquire of
<i>istaghrah yistaghrib min</i>	to be astonished at
<i>istaghfar yistaghfir min</i>	to apologise for
<i>istakbar yistakbir</i>	to consider great; to be arrogant
<i>istafham yistafhim 9an</i>	to enquire about
<i>istabdāl yistabdil</i>	to exchange, substitute
<i>ista'dhan yista'dhin</i>	to ask permission
<i>ista'naf yista'nif</i>	to resume

ista'jar yista'jir to rent (as tenant)

and many others.

Initial-w: Root *w r d*, *istawrad yistawrid* to import:

Past: *istawradt, istawradt/istawradti, istawrad/istawradat;*
istawradna, istawradtū, istawradū

Pres.: *'astawrid, tistawrid/tistawridī, yistawrid/tistawrid;*
nistawrid, tistawridū, yistawridū

so also:

istawṣaf yistawṣif to consult (a doctor)

istawṭan yistawṭin to settle (in a place)

Hollow: The hollow verb rule (6/4) applies.

Root *r w ḥ*, *istarāḥ yistarīḥ* to rest:

Past: *istarāḥt, istarāḥt/istarāḥti, istarāḥ/istarāḥat; istarāḥna, istarāḥtū, istarāḥū*

Pres.: *'astarīḥ, tistarīḥ/tistarīḥī, yistarīḥ/tistarīḥ; nistarīḥ, tistarīḥū, yistarīḥū*

so also:

istafād yistafīd min to benefit from *istashār yistashīr* to consult

istajāb yistajāb to grant a request

The last cited root (*j w b*) has a variant with stable middle root letter:

istajwab yistajwib to interrogate

Doubled: The doubled verb rule (13/4) applies.

Root *ḥ q q*, *istaḥqaq yistaḥiqq* to deserve:

Past: *istaḥqaqt, istaḥqaqt/istaḥqaqti, istaḥqaq/istaḥqaqtat;*
istaḥqaqna, istaḥqaqtū, istaḥqaqū

Pres.: *'astahiqq, tistahiqq/tistahiqqī, yistahiqq/tistahiqq;*
nistahiqq, tistahiqqū, yistahiqqū

so also:

istaqall yistaqill to be independent; to consider small

ista9add yista9idd to be ready

istamarr yistamirr fī/9ala to continue with

istamarr yistajwibnī He continued to interrogate me.

Final-weak: Root *th n y*, *istathna yistathnī* to except:

Past: *istathnayt, istathnayt/istathnayti, istathna/istathnat;*
istathnayna, istathnaytū, istathnū

Pres.: *'astathnī, tistathnī/tistathnī, yistathnī/tistathnī;*
nistathnī, tistathnū, yistathnū

so also: *istaghna yistaghni 9an* to do without

One important Form X final-weak verb is anomalous, with doubled middle root letter and final *-a* in the present tense:

istanna yistanna to wait for

6. Imperative of Form X

Derive Form X imperatives as for Forms VII and VIII, or by comparison with Form IV (para. 5 above):

ista9mil/ista9milī/ista9milū *lā tistarīḥ/lā tistarīḥī/lā tistarīḥū*

7. Participles of Form X

Derive Form X participles as for Forms VII and VIII:

- Active: replace the initial *yi-* of the second principal part with *mu-*,
 - Passive: replace the initial *i-* of the first principal part with *mu-*,
- or derive by comparison with Form IV (para. 5 above).

<i>musta9mil</i>	user	<i>musta9mal</i>	used
<i>mustakhdim</i>	employer	<i>mustakhdam</i>	employed
<i>mustahsan</i>	approved	<i>mustankar</i>	objectionable
<i>mustaqbil</i>	(radio, TV) receiver	<i>mustaqbal</i>	future (adj./noun)
<i>mustathmir</i>	beneficiary	<i>musta'jir</i>	tenant
<i>mustawrid</i>	importer	<i>mustawrad</i>	imported
<i>mustawṣaf</i>	clinic	<i>mustawṭin</i>	native
<i>mustarīḥ</i>	restful	<i>mustarāḥ</i>	lavatory
<i>mustashār</i>	counsellor	<i>mustajīb 'ila</i>	responsive to
<i>mustahiqq</i>	deserving	<i>mustaqill</i>	independent
<i>musta9idd 'ila</i>	ready for	<i>mustamirr</i>	continuous
<i>mustathna</i>	excepted		

8. Verbal nouns of Form X

Models for verbal nouns (plurals are sound):

- Sound: *isti9māl* use, utilisation
- Initial-w: *istīrād* import(ation)
- Hollow: *istirāḥa* rest
- Doubled: *istihqāq* merit
- Final-weak: *istithnā'* exception

– or derive by comparison with Form IV (para. 5 above).

You will also notice that the sound, doubled and final-weak verbal noun patterns are similar to those of Forms VII and VIII.

Other examples:

<i>istikhdām</i>	employment	<i>istiqbāl</i>	reception
<i>istithmār</i>	investment	<i>istibdāl</i>	substitution
<i>istighrāb</i>	astonishment	<i>istinkār</i>	rejection
<i>isti'jār</i>	tenancy	<i>isti'nāf</i>	resumption
<i>istijwāb</i>	interrogation	<i>istiqlāl</i>	independence
<i>istimrār</i>	continuation	<i>isti9dād</i>	readiness

9. *li 'ann-*

When *li 'ann-* because is followed by a pronoun, that pronoun is suffixed to it.

When no pronoun follows it, it becomes *li 'annu*:

'astahiqq al-'idāfa li 'annī shtaghalt daraja 'ūla I deserve the increase
because I have worked well (first class).
ruht wara ṭ-ṭabīb li 'annu 'ummī kānat marīḍa. I went for (after) the doctor
because my mother was ill.

10. -able (etc.)

The sound adjective *qābil li*, followed by a definite verbal noun, expresses the


meaning of English *±able*, *-ible*(etc.). It is negated with *ghayr*:

<i>qābil li t-tajdīd</i>	renewable	<i>qābila li l-ghasīl</i>	washable
<i>ghayr qābil li l-ihtimām</i>	unremarkable		
<i>qābil li t-tamdīd</i>	extensible (<i>maddad</i> II to extend)		

11. *jumal mithālīya*

'aja li l-maktab lābis badhla ṣayfīya, bi haṭ-ṭaqṣ!	He came to the office wearing a summer suit, in this weather!
illī yi9āmil an-nās bi haṣ-ṣūra mā yistaḥiqq iḥtirām al-ghayr.	Whoever treats people in this manner does not deserve the respect of others.
al-isti9māl al-mazbūṭ li l-lugha d-dārija l-muthaqqafa huwa 'ishārat shakḥ yifham 'usus al-lugha l-9arabīya.	The correct use of the educated spoken language is the mark of a person who understands the essentials of Arabic.
mish lāzim nistaghni 9an ta9āwanu fi l-mustaqbal; hay ghalaṭna fi l-ibtidā'.	We shouldn't forgo his cooper- ation in the future; that was our mistake in the beginning.
duwal al-9ālam al-mustaqilla wa t-taqaddumīya kullha tistankir mithl hādha l-'ijrā'.	All the independent and progress- ive nations of the world will reject such a measure.

12. *at-tamārīn*


 1. Give the active and passive participles, m. sing., of each verb:

e.g.: istaqbal – mustaqbil, mustaqbal

- | | | |
|------------|--------------|-----------|
| (a) fihim | (b) istawrad | (c) iḥtāj |
| (d) 'arsal | (e) istarāḥ | |

2. Give the verbal noun of each verb in Ex. 1:

e.g.: istaqbal – istiqbāl

 3. Give the first person singular, and the third person plural, of the past tense of each verb:

e.g.: istashār – istashart, istashārū

- | | | |
|--------------|--------------|----------|
| (a) istaghna | (b) inḥall | (c) nisī |
| (d) istajwab | (e) istaḥaqq | |

4. Rephrase each sentence, beginning it with *mish lāzim*:

e.g.: 'ana staghnayt 9an musā9adatu. – mish lāzim 'astaghni 9an musā9adatu.

- istashārū mutakhaṣṣiṣ fī hal-mouḍū9.
- ista9malat 'ibāra mish kwayyisa,
- huwa dāyiman musta9idd yit9āwan.
- istannaytnī khārij al-bayt.
- jaddadu 9ala ṭūl.

5. Put into the present tense:

e.g.: ista9malnā. – nista9milu.

(a) inqāl 'innu marīḍ.

(b) inḥallat al-mushkila.

(c) istabdalt shī fi l-mākīna?

(d) nisū u mā dafa9u l-ḥisāb.

6. Collect together words of the same root:

e.g.: jawāb, qabl, yijāwibū, istiqbāl, muqbila

– jawāb, yijāwibū; qabl, istiqbāl, muqbila

yi9malū, istithnā'īya, 9ulūm, isti9māl, 9ilmī, thānawīya, ma9lūm, mu9āmala,

nista9lim, ithnayn

(a) thintayn ...

(b) ta9līm ...

(c) 9imil ...

ad-dars khamst9ashr . Lesson 15

al-'akhbār . The News

1. al-'akhbār

NB: This text introduces the written language read on television and the radio.
Written forms are underlined in the vocabulary.

<i>nashra</i>	bulletin, publication
<i>rādiyo</i>	radio
'awjaz yūjiz IV	to summarise
<i>mūjaz</i>	summary
<i>naba' 'anbā'</i>	information, (pl.) news
<i>yawm</i>	= <i>yum</i>
<i>thānī 9ashar</i>	twelfth
(khalīna nisma9 qit9a qaṣīra min nashrat al-'akhbār 9ala r-rādiyo.)	(Let us hear a short piece of the news bulletin on the radio.)
sayyidātī wa sādatī, 'ilaykum al-'ān	Ladies and gentlemen, we bring
mūjaz al-'anbā' li hādha l-yawm	you now a news summary for
ath-thānī 9ashar min tishrīn al-'awwal.	today, the twelfth of October.
<i>salām</i>	peace
'a9lan yi9lin IV	to announce
<i>9aqad ya9qid I, 9aqd</i>	to tie;
	to hold (a conference etc.)
	= <i>9aqadu</i>
<i>9aqadahu</i>	capital (city)
<i>9āṣima 9awāṣim</i>	Concerning the peace conference
bi khuṣūṣ al-mu'tamar li s-salām	in the Middle East, the Foreign
fi sh-sharq al-'awsaṭ 'a9lan wazīr	Minister announced yesterday at
al-khārijīya 'ams fī mu'tamar ṣuḥufi	a press conference which he held
9aqadahu bi l-9āṣima,	in the capital,
	= <i>'inn</i>
<i>'anna</i>	to negotiate
<i>fāwaḍ III</i>	= <i>bayn</i>
<i>bayna</i>	side
<i>jānib jawānib</i>	= <i>mā</i> (negative)
<i>lā</i>	= <i>yit9allaq</i>
<i>yata9allaq</i>	that the resumption of negotia-
'a9lan 'anna sti'nāf al-mufāwaḍāt	tions between both sides
bayna l-jānibayn lā yata9allaq bi	depends not only on the two
l-mushtarikayn faḡaṭ,	participants,
	but, but rather
<i>bal</i>	= <i>mawqif min</i>
<i>mawqif min</i>	attitude towards
	Israel
<i>'isrā'īl</i>	but also on the attitude of the
bal yata9allaq 'ayḡan bi mawqif	western countries towards the
ad-duwal al-gharbīya min siyāsāt	

'isrā'īl.

hādha, wa
9abbar II 9an
'amal bi 'āmal bi
'aḥabb yiḥibb IV
sa tata9āwan
hādhihi

hādha, wa 9abbar al-wazīr 9an
 al-'amal bi 'anna jamī9 ad-duwal
 al-muḥibba li s-salām sa tata9āwan
 fī hādhihi l-mas'ala.

'ukkid
maṣdar maṣādir
sa tabda'

fa 'ukkid min maṣdar qābil li l-i9timād
 'anna l-mufāwaḍāt sa tabda' marra
 'ukhra fī 'awākhir al-'usbū9 'inshalla.

mā zāl lā yazāl
muḥāwalātiha
min 'ajl
allātī
lā yumkin
'an
tubālagh
'ahammīya
'ahammīyatuha

kullihi

wa mā zālat al-ḥukūma muḥāwalātiha
 min 'ajl isti'nāf hādhihi l-mufāwaḍāt
 allātī lā yumkin 'an tubālagh
 'ahammīyatuha li salām al-9ālam
 kullihi.

'afād yufīd IV bi
warad yūrid I
ḥadath yaḥduth I
khilāla l-yawmayn al-māḍiyayn

tufīd al-'anbā' al-wārīda min 'afīṭqiya
 l-janūbīya 'anna l-iḍṭirābāt allātī
 ḥadathat khilāla l-yawmayn
 al-māḍiyayn

qad

sabbab II

policy of Israel.

furthermore
 to express
 hope (noun) for
 = *ḥabb yiḥibb I*
 = *rāḥit9āwan*
 = *hādhi*

Furthermore, the minister
 expressed the hope that all
 peace-loving nations would
 cooperate in this matter.

it was confirmed
 source
 = *rāḥitbda*

It was confirmed from a reliable
 source that the negotiations will
 hopefully restart towards the end
 of the week.

not to stop, to continue
 = *muḥāwalāt-ha*
 for (the sake of)
 = *illī*
 = *mā yumkin*
 = *'inn*
 it is exaggerated
 importance
 = *'ahammīyit-ha*
 their importance
 = *kullu*

The government is continuing its
 attempts to get these negotiations
 resumed, whose importance for
 the peace of the whole world
 cannot be overstated.

(here:) to inform
 to come in, arrive
 to happen, take place
 = *khilal al-youmayn*
al-māḍiyīn

It is reported from South Africa
 that the riots which took place
 over the last two days

(not translated
 – see paragraph 11 below)
 to cause

<u>ḵhasā'ir</u>	= <i>ḵhasāyir</i> (here:) damage
<i>balagh yiblagh I</i>	to amount to
<u>tablagh</u>	= <i>tiblagh</i>
qad sabbabat ḵhasā'ir tablagh 'akthar	caused damage amounting to
min malyūn doulār.	over a million dollars.
<i>fī khilāl</i>	in the course of
<i>ḥāditha ḥawādith</i>	event
<u>qutil</u>	he was killed
<u>9indama</u>	= <i>lamma</i>
'aṭlaq yitlaq IV <i>an-nār</i>	to open fire
<i>ḥashd ḥushūd</i>	crowd
wa fī khilāl ḥādhihi l-ḥawādith qutil	In the course of these events,
ithn9ashr shakḥṣ 9indama 'aṭlaq	twelve people were killed when
an-nār al-būlīs 9ala l-ḥashd.	the police opened fire on the crowd.

2. 9ibārāt musta9mala fi l-'idhā9a

'ilaykum al-'ān (We bring) to you now. An ellipsis used in broadcasting.
ḥādha, wa ... Furthermore ... *ḥādha* refers to the previous passage.
dawla/duwal muḥibba li s-salām peace-loving nation(s) (states)
maṣdar qābil/maṣādir qābila li l-i9timād reliable source(s)
tuḥīd al-'anbā' bi (the news benefits (us) with) It is reported ...

3. mufradāt 'idāfīya. as-siyāsa wa l-9alāqāt ad-duwalīya

– Politics and international relations

(hay'at) al-'umam al-muttāḥida	United Nations (Organisation)
al-wilāyāt al-muttāḥida (l-'amrīkīya/li 'amayrka)	United States (of America)
al-ittihād al-'urubbī	European Union
as-sūq al-'urubbīya l-mushtāraka	Common Market
jāmi9at ad-duwal al-9arabīya	League of Arab States
al-bank ad-duwalī	World Bank
ṣandūq an-naqd ad-duwalī	International Monetary Fund
al-ittihād as-suḥfīyātī/as-suḥfīyayti (s-sābiq)	(the former) Soviet Union
aṣ-ṣīn ash-sha9bī	People's Republic of China
al-9ālam ath-thālith	third world
dawla nāmīya	developing country
dawla ṣinā9īya	industrialised country
dawla kubra	superpower
maṣlaḥa maṣālīḥ	(legal/political) interest
rūsīya	Russia
sulṭa	authority
ḥukm dhātī	autonomy
hay'a	corps, body, group
mandūb	(also:) commissioner
9uḍw 'a9dā'	member

<i>ḥizb</i> 'azḥāb	(political) party
<i>muḡāraḡa</i>	opposition
<i>majlis majālis</i>	council
<i>malik mulūk</i>	king
<i>mamlaka mamālik</i>	kingdom
'amīr 'umarā'	prince, emir
'imāra	principality, emirate
<i>dustūr dasātīr</i>	constitution
<i>jumhūrīya</i>	republic
<i>jumhūrī</i>	republican
<i>ra'īs (al-jumhūrīya)</i>	President (of the Republic)
<i>ra'īs al-wuzarā'</i>	Prime Minister
<i>majlis al-wuzarā'</i>	cabinet (of ministers)
<i>nāyib nuwwāb</i>	deputy, member of lower house of Parliament
<i>shaykh shuyūkh</i>	(also:) senator
'amīn ḡāmm	secretary-general
<i>majlis an-nuwwāb/ash-shuyūkh</i>	lower/upper house of Parliament
<i>nāḡiq(a) bi lisān</i>	spokesman/-woman
<i>qaḡṭīya qaḡāya</i>	cause, case
<i>ittifāq</i>	(spoken) agreement
<i>ittifāqīya</i>	(written) agreement, treaty
<i>thawra</i>	revolution
<i>inqilāb</i>	coup d'état
<i>ḡarb ḡurūb</i> (f.)	war
'irḡāb	terrorism
<i>shuyūḡī</i>	communist
<i>ṡahyūnī</i>	Zionist
<i>tamyīz ḡuṡṡurī</i>	racial discrimination
<i>ḡuṡṡurīya</i>	racism, racialism

an-naḡū

4. Broadcasting

Broadcast news is read in written Arabic. We study in paragraphs 5 to 12 below those elements of written usage which will help you to follow the news.

5. Passive

See 12/4. Written Arabic has passive tenses as well as active tenses. For the news, we need to be able to recognise only the third persons singular and plural (animate and inanimate). The passive tenses differ from the active tenses only in their vowels. In general, the passive pattern is *u-i* for the past tense and *u-a* for the present tense, with variations for weak (initial-*w*, hollow, final-weak) and for doubled root letters. Examples (meaning ~~he~~/it was/is ...q m. sing.):

I	<i>fuhim yuḡham</i>	understood	'ukhidh yu'khadh	taken
	<i>wujid yūjad</i>	found	<i>sīq yusāq</i>	driven
	<i>mudd yumadd</i>	extended	<i>rūmiya yurma</i>	thrown
II	<i>ḡullim yuḡallam</i>	taught	<i>sūmmiya yusamma</i>	named

III	<i>kūtib yukātab</i>	written to	<i>wūfiq yuwāfaq</i>	agree
	<i>ḥūwil yuḥāwal</i>	attempted	<i>nūdiya yunāda</i>	summoned
IV	<i>'ursil yursal</i>	sent	<i>'urīd yurād</i>	wanted
	<i>'unshi' yunsha'</i>	constructed		
V	<i>tudhukkir yutadhakkar</i>	remembered	<i>turuddid yutaraddad*</i>	hesitated
VI	<i>tubūdil yutabādal</i>	exchanged	<i>tunūwil yutanāwal</i>	consumed
VIII	<i>u9tūbir yu9tābar</i>	considered	<i>uttūkhidh yuttākhadh</i>	taken
	<i>uḥtīj yuḥtāj*</i>	needed	<i>uḥtull yuḥtall</i>	occupied
	<i>ushtūriya yushtāra</i>	bought		
	(NB: Present-tense stress also irregular in this verb)			
X	<i>ustukhdim yustakhdam</i>	employed	<i>ustufīd yustafād*</i>	benefited
	<i>ustuqill yustaqall</i>	considered small	<i>ustūthniya yustathna</i>	excepted

* For verbs which take no direct object, the meaning is impersonal: *turuddid* ~~there was~~ hesitation *yuḥtāj 'ila* ~~there is~~ need of *q* The impersonal passive always stands in the masc. sing. form.

6. Two common and easy impersonal expressions with passive meaning can be constructed using an active verb plus a definite verbal noun.

tamm/tammāt I in the past tense, ~~it~~ was completed plus a definite verbal noun (which may be one in construct) gives a completed passive meaning in past time:

tamm baḥṭh al-mouḏū9. The matter was/has been discussed.

tammāt dirāsāt al-mouḏū9. The matter was/has been studied.

jara yijrī I (*jara yajrī* in written pronunciation) ~~to~~ flow *q* in the past or present tense, plus a definite verbal noun (which may be one in construct) gives a passive meaning relating to an ongoing action or situation, past or present as appropriate:

tijrī/tajrī muṣāwaḏāt aṭ-ṭalab. The demand is being negotiated.

jarat dirāsāt al-mawḏū9/al-mouḏū9 mudda ṭawīla. The matter was (being) studied at length.

The verbal noun can also be from a verb with no direct object:

tamm al-wuṣūl 'ila l-ittifāq 9ala l-'as9ār. Agreement was reached on prices.

Do not interpret the opening verb too literally in this construction.

7. Written verb prefixes and endings, active voice.

In the written active voice the present-tense personal prefixes of all forms, I to X, and the prefix of Forms V, VI and IIQ in both tenses, all have a vowel (i.e. they form a syllable). This vowel is *u* for the present-tense prefixes of Forms II, III, IV and IQ; and *a* everywhere else, thus:

Personal prefixes, } present tense	{ Forms II, III, IV, IQ: 'u-, tu-, yu-, nu- Forms I, V-X, IIQ: 'a-, ta-, ya-, na-
Prefix of Forms V, VI and IIQ (both tenses):	ta-

In addition, verb forms with a sound final root letter often have a further short vowel. This vowel is usually dropped in pronunciation when the verb carries no object-pronoun suffix; but when there is such a suffix, the vowel is retained. The vowel is always *-a-* or *-u-*:

katab he wrote but: *katabahu* he wrote it

nursil we send but: *nursiluha* we send it
Do not let the presence of this vowel (or the unfamiliar form of the pronoun suffix) confuse you.

8. Diphthongs

The pronunciation of the written language has *aw* for spoken *ou*: *yawm* (for *youm*).

9. Written sentence structure

In written Arabic the verb often precedes its subject; this structure is called a *verbal sentence*. In such a sentence, when the subject is a noun, the verb is always in the singular, even if the subject is plural:

'*a9lan al-wazīr/al-wuzarā*' '*anna* ... *dakhalat al-mu9allimāt aṣ-ṣaff*.

When the subject precedes the verb, the sentence is known as a *nominal sentence*, and the verb agrees normally with its subject. A nominal sentence may begin with the conjunction '*inna*', which adds no meaning. If the subject is a pronoun, it is suffixed to '*inna*':

al wazīr ('*inna l-wazīr*') '*a9lan* '*anna* ... ('*innahum*) *qālu l-yawm* ...
al-ḥikāya ('*inna l-ḥikāya*) *ṭawīla*.

10. Negative

In written Arabic, the negative of the present tense is formed with *lā*. *mā* is used only for the past tense:

lā yata9allaq bi d-duwal an-nāmiya faqat.

mā ta9allaq bi waḍ9 ad-duwal an-nāmiya.

But note the use of *lā* with the past tense to express a negative wish (in both written and spoken Arabic):

lā samaḥ '*alla* God/Heaven forbid.

11. *qad*

The verbal particle *qad* may be used to reinforce a past tense in written Arabic. It adds no other meaning:

al-idṭirābāt (qad) '*antajat khasā'ir tablagh* ...

12. Written future

Written Arabic does not use *rāyiḥ/rāḥ*. The written future has the particle *sawfa* or *sa* before the present tense:

sawfa/sa tastaghriq az-ziyāra yawmayn. The visit will last two days.

—

13. *mā zāl*

Note the Form I hollow verb *zāl yazāl* **to cease** following the pattern of *nām yinām* but with *-a-* in the present prefixes:

Past: *zilt, zilt/zilti, zāl/zālat; zilna, ziltū, zālū*

Pres.: '*azāl, tazāl/tazālī, yazāl/tazāl; nazāl, tazālū, yazālū*

Its main use is in the negative, as an auxiliary meaning **to continue**. The written negative particle is always used, even in unscripted speech:

lā yazālū muḥāwalāt-hum li sti 'nāf al-mu'támar. (They are continuing their efforts for the resumption of the conference.)
 They are still trying to get the conference resumed.
lā yazāl yuṭlub musā9adatak. He is still asking for your help.
mā zilna nistaftīd min ta9āwanu. We continued to benefit from his cooperation.
mā zālū yuskunū fī bayrūt. They are/were still living in Beirut.

14. Verb forms

The ten forms of the trilateral verb merit recapitulation. Here are the models again (first principal part, sound class only), with comments:

Form, model	Meaning, use	Frequency
I <i>katab</i>	basic; with or without direct object	very high
II <i>ḥaḍḍar</i>	causative or intensive of I; with direct object	high
III <i>kātab</i>	= I but with person direct object	high
IV <i>'arsal</i>	causative of I, with direct object	high
V <i>taqaddam</i>	passive or reflexive of I, II; mostly with no direct object	very high
VI <i>takātab</i>	reciprocal of I, II or III; mostly with no direct object	high
VII <i>insāḥab</i>	passive of I; no direct object	middle
VIII <i>iqṭaraḥ</i>	no additional meaning; direct object	very high
IX <i>iḥmarr</i>	colours, physical defects; no direct object	very low
X <i>ista9mal</i>	seeking or causing action or state of I; ascribing a quality to something/someone; with or without direct object	very high

15. *jumal mithālīya*

waṣal (= wiṣil) al-yawm ṣabāḥan fī
 dimashq min al-qāhira wazīr al-khārijīya
 l-miṣrī, 9ala ziyāra rasmīya tastaghriq
 yawmayn. wa 'ukhbirna min maṣdar
 ḥukūmī bi 'anna gharaḍ ḥādhihi z-ziyāra
 yata9allaq bi qaḍīyat al-lāji'in
 (= al-lājīyīn) fī l-minṭaqa.

This morning, the Egyptian
 Foreign Minister arrived in
 Damascus from Cairo on an
 official visit lasting two days.
 It has been learned from a
 government source that the
 purpose of this visit has to do
 with the question of refugees
 in the region.

tuhimmuna (= t-himmna) mas'alat al-'irhāb
 al-9ālamī htimāman kabīran, wa taḥtāj
 'ila ta9āwun jamī9 ad-duwal al-muḥibba
 li s-salām.

The question of world terrorism
 concerns us greatly, and
 needs the cooperation of all
 peace-loving countries.

lā yūjad ḥall dā'im (= ḥill dāyim) li
 l-mashākil fī sh-sharq al-'awsaṭ 'illa bi

No lasting solution of the
 problems in the Middle East

hall qaḍīyat al-filastīnīyīn.	will be found without a solution to the case of the Palestinians.
'inn al-9alāqāt bayna d-duwal an-nāmiya wa d-duwal aṣ-šinā'īya hiya l-mushkila l-markazīya llātī 'amāmana (= 'amāmna).	Relations between the developing countries and the industrialised countries are the central problem facing (before) us.
kayfa (= kayf) yumkin 'an nufāwiḍ mithla (= mithl) hādhihi l-ittifāqīya wa mā zilna nabḥath siyāsātana (= siyāsitna) d-dākhilīya?	How is it possible for us to negotiate this sort of convention while we are still discussing our internal policy?

16. *at-tamārīn*

1. Give the active voice, in spoken Arabic, of each passive verb:

e.g.: 'ursil – 'arsal

- (a) yusta9mal (b) ustu9milat (c) yūjad
(d) uḥtīj 'ila (e) yustaghna 9an



2. Re-express in spoken form:

e.g.: 'inna l-wazīr 9abbar 9an fikratihi fi l-mu'tamar.

– al-wazīr 9abbar 9an fikritu fi l-mu'tamar.

- (a) qāl as-sufarā' 'inna l-mushkila mu9aqqada.
(b) kutibat risāla tuhimmuna jamī9ana.
(c) mā hiya l-mas'ala llātī dhakaraha?
(d) sa 'aktub al-jawāb al-'ān.

3. For each of these verbal derivatives, give the principal parts and the form (I-X) of the original verb:

e.g.: isti9māl – ista9mal yista9mil X

- (a) qawlna (b) muntakhibīn (c) 'inshā'u
(d) tárbiyitu (e) tafāhum

4. Complete the sentence with the right preposition:

e.g.: kull shī yitwaqqaf ...hum. – kull shī yitwaqqaf 9alayhum.

- (a) mā najahū, 'aftākīr, ... 9adam at-taḥḍīr.
(b) mā fī 9indu 'ayy i9timād ... nafsu.
(c) at-tafāhum ...ī u ...ak ḍarūrī.
(d) shū tiftākīr ... hādha?

Part II

Written Arabic

العالم العربي



الدرس السادس عشر
ad-dars as-sādis 9ashar . Lesson 16
القراءة والكتابة
al-qirā'a wa l-kitāba . Reading and Writing

1. Certain important principles first:

- Arabic writing runs from right to left ←←.
- Many letters ('joined letters') are joined to the letter following them in the same word. Most such letters have different forms for different positions in the word. A few letters ('disjoined letters') are never joined to the left, i.e. to a following letter. They have only one form.
- Short vowels are normally not written. There is a means of marking them, but it is rarely used.

2. We use the following terms to refer to the different forms of a joined letter:

- 'initial' form, i.e. either beginning a word, or after a letter not joined to its left,
- 'medial' form, i.e. joined on both sides,
- 'final' form, i.e. ending the word and joined to the preceding letter,
- 'isolated' form, i.e. standing alone; for all but a few letters this is identical to the final form.

3.

	<i>a, 'a</i>
	<i>u, 'u</i>
	<i>i, 'i</i>

This letter, called *'alif*, is disjoined, i.e. it is not joined to the following letter. It rests on the line of writing. When isolated or initial it is written downwards, thus: | . Write a whole line, starting at the right of the page:

↓
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Beginning a word, *'alif* indicates any weak short vowel, or *hamza* plus a short vowel.

4.



ˆ	<i>'ā</i>
---	-----------

hamza plus long vowel *ā* beginning a word is expressed with the combination called '*ʾalif madda*'. '*ʾalif madda*' is disjoined, like '*ʾalif*'. Write a line:

$\overline{A} \cap B$ $A \cap \overline{B}$ $\overline{A} \cap \overline{B}$ $A \cap B$ $\overline{A} \cap C$ $A \cap \overline{C}$ $\overline{A} \cap D$ $A \cap \overline{D}$

5.

ب ب *b*

The consonant *b* is expressed with the letter *bā'*, which is a joined letter (i.e. joined to the following letter in the same word). It has a short initial/medial form  and a full isolated/final form . *bā'* rests on the line of writing. Write: ←

[illegible]

We can now write the words *'ab* and *'āb*:

'ab اب اب اب اب اب اب 'āb آب آب آب آب آب آب

6. Medial *'alif* almost always expresses \bar{a} . Final *'alif* also in theory expresses \bar{a} , but in practice final \bar{a} is almost always pronounced short: *a* (see Pronunciation, paragraph 2).

Whereas initial or isolated *'alif* is written downwards, medial or final *'alif* is struck upwards from its junction with the preceding letter. Now write:

bāb باب باب باب باب

7. Always *write* your words; do not trace or draw them. Avoid retouching a badly written word at this stage; rewrite it rather.

8.

ت	ت	<i>t</i>
ث	ث	<i>th</i>

The joined letters *tā'* and *thā'* (sounds *t* and *th*) are written in a manner identical to *bā'* except for their dots. *bā'*, *tā'* and *thā'* are 'toothed' letters; the initial/medial form **ب** without its dot(s) is a 'tooth'. The forms given above are as in print. In handwriting, two dots are often written like a hyphen (-) and three like a circumflex accent (^). Write:

ت ت ت ت ت ت ت ر ر ر ر ر ر ر t
ث ث ث ث ث ث ث ز ز ز ز ز ز ز th

We can now write *thābit* (long *ā* written, short *i* not written):

thābit thābit thābit thābit thābit

9.

n	ن	ن
---	---	---

The sound *n* is written with the joined letter *nūn*. Initial/medial *nūn* ن is a toothed letter, normally resting on the line of writing; isolated/final *nūn* ن is deeper than *bā* etc., and when joined it swoops below the line of writing and up again. In rapid handwriting, the dot of isolated/final ن often becomes a small hook:

print ن handwriting ن

Write both isolated/final forms:

ن ن ن ن ن ن ن ن ن ن n

We can now write a few other words. Wherever the written pronunciation or the choice of word differs from the spoken, we show the latter in angular quotation marks < >. Read and write:

انا	انا	'ana	انت	انت	'anta, 'anti <'int, 'inti>
بنت	بنت	bint	ابن	ابن	ibn <'ibn>
اثاث	اثاث	'athāth	اثبت	اثبت	'athbat he proved
اثبتنا	اثبتنا	'athbatna	نثبت	نثبت	nuthbit we prove

The initial 'alif' written in some of these words is not itself a short vowel; it provides a 'seat' for the unwritten short vowel. Words beginning with a vowel of any kind, or with *hamza*, must begin with 'alif' in writing. Initial *hamza* can be added (we learn it below), but it is usually left unwritten.

10.

ي	y, ī, ay
ي	y, ī, ay
اي	'ī, 'ay

The joined letter called *yā* ' represents:

- beginning the word (short form, ي): the consonant *y*,
- in the middle of the word (short form, ي): the consonant *y*, the long vowel *ī* or the diphthong *ay*,
- at the end of the word (full form, ي): *ī* or *ay*,
- after 'alif' ا at the beginning of a word: 'ī or 'ay.

ي ي ي ي ي ي ي ي ي ي ي ي

nī ني *bī* بي *tī* تي *nī* ني

ايين	'ayna <wayn>	بي	bī <bīya>
بيت	bayt	بيتي	baytī
يا	yā	ابني	ibnī
بنایات	bināyāt	یثبت	yuthbit he proves

l l l

୨ ୩ ୪ ୫ ୬ ୭ ୮ ୯ ୧୦ ୧୧ ୧୨ ୧୩ ୧୪ ୧୫ ୧୬ ୧୭ ୧୮ ୧୯ ୨୦ ୨୧ ୨୨ ୨୩ ୨୪ ୨୫ ୨୬ ୨୭ ୨୮ ୨୯ ୩୦ ୩୧ ୩୨ ୩୩ ୩୪ ୩୫ ୩୬ ୩୭ ୩୮ ୩୯ ୪୦ ୪୧ ୪୨ ୪୩ ୪୪ ୪୫ ୪୬ ୪୭ ୪୮ ୪୯ ୫୦ ୫୧ ୫୨ ୫୩ ୫୪ ୫୫ ୫୬ ୫୭ ୫୮ ୫୯ ୬୦ ୬୧ ୬୨ ୬୩ ୬୪ ୬୫ ୬୬ ୬୭ ୬୮ ୬୯ ୭୦ ୭୧ ୭୨ ୭୩ ୭୪ ୭୫ ୭୬ ୭୭ ୭୮ ୭୯ ୮୦ ୮୧ ୮୨ ୮୩ ୮୪ ୮୫ ୮୬ ୮୭ ୮୮ ୮୯ ୯୦ ୯୧ ୯୨ ୯୩ ୯୪ ୯୫ ୯୬ ୯୭ ୯୮ ୯୯ ୧୦୦

البنت	<i>al-bint</i>	البيت	<i>al-bayt</i>
ثالث	<i>thālīth</i>	ثلث	<i>thulth</i>
لي	<i>lī</i>	بال	<i>bāl</i>
اليابان	<i>al-yābān</i>	لبنان	<i>lubnān</i>

الثالث الثالث *ath-thālith* النيل النيل *an-nīl*

13. The combination *lām*-*'alif* is written in special ways both in print and in handwriting. When writing by hand, detach the *'alif* and strike it downwards, either vertically to the foot of the *lām* or diagonally towards its angle. Examine the forms:

must now be added (paragraph 15 above). Initial 'alif' of the second word, or its article, is retained. Read and write:

بَأْنَابِبْ	bi-'anābīb	بَالِبِتْ	bi l-bayt
بَالِثَاتْ	bi l-'athāth	بَابِنِي	bi bnī
بَأْتَاثِنَا	bi-'athāthina <'athāthna>		
بَابِتِي	bi baytī	بَالِإِبِلْ	bi l-'ibīl
		بَالِبِتْ الثَّلَاثِ	bi l-bayt ath-thālith

Similarly, 'alif madda keeps its madda after the article and after an attached one-letter word. Read and write:

الْآن al-'ān

18. After *li*, exceptionally, the article (but not the word) loses its 'alif. This is the only such exception. Read and write:

لِي	lī	لِأْنَابِبْ	li 'anābīb
لِلْبَيْتِ	li l-bayt	لِأْتَاثِنَا	li 'athāthina
لِلْأْتَاثِ	li l-'athāth	لِابْنِي	li bnī
لِلْإِبِلِ	li l-'ibīl	لِبَيْتِي	li baytī
		لِلْبَيْتِ الثَّلَاثِ	li l-bayt ath-thālith

19. Two successive identical consonants with an intervening vowel are both written. But doubled consonants (i.e. two successive identical consonants with *no* intervening vowel) are written single. Read and write:

أَنَّ	'anna <'inn>	أَنِّي	'annī <innī>
لَأَنَّ	li 'anna <li 'ann>	لَأَنِّي	li 'annī
بَأَنَّ	bi 'anna <bi 'inn>	بُنْ	bunn coffee
بُنِّي	bunnī	تَلْ تَلَالْ	tall tilāl hill

Three important exceptions:

- initial *lām* is retained after the article:

اللبن al-laban milk (written), yoghurt (spoken)

- two letters *yā'* for *yī, yay, īyī, īyay*:

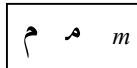
لِبْنَانِيْنِ lubnānīyīn/-īyayn

لِبْيِيْنِ lībīyīn/-īyayn




يَابْنِيْنِ yābānīyīn/-īyayn

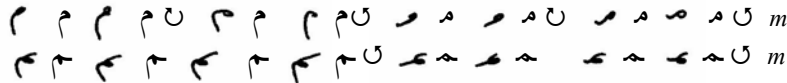
- no more than two identical consecutive letters are written, even if logic demands more: اللبن li l-laban.

20.

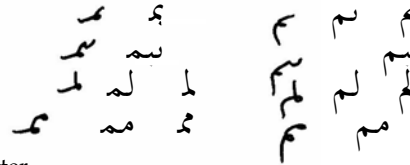


The sound *m* is expressed with the joined letter *mīm*. The bead of this letter rests on the line of writing; the tail of the full form extends straight down.

The initial and isolated forms of *mīm* are written either anticlockwise  or clockwise ; the medial and final forms are best written anticlockwise . Write:



In other words, when joined to the preceding letter, *mīm* is best approached from the top. This gives special combinations in handwriting, and sometimes in better print. Examine:

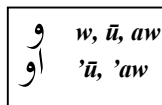
tooth + *m*middle tooth* + *m**lm**mm*

* i.e. a tooth preceded by any joined letter.

Read and write:

مال	مال	<i>māl</i> property	من	من	<i>man</i> < <i>mīn</i> >, <i>mīn</i>
ممن	ممن	<i>mimman</i> < <i>min mīn</i> >	ما	ما	<i>mā</i>
ممثل	ممثل	<i>mumaththal/mumaththil</i>	بما	بما	<i>bī mā</i>
تمثال	تمثال	<i>timthāl</i>	لما	لما	<i>lamma, lī mā</i>
ثمن	ثمن	<i>thaman</i>	انتم	انتم	<i>'antum</i> < <i>'intū</i> >
ثامن	ثامن	<i>thāmin</i>	تم	تم	<i>tamm</i>
تمام	تمام	<i>tamām</i>	لمن	لمن	<i>lī man</i> < <i>lī mīn</i> >
امامنا	امامنا	<i>'amāmana</i> < <i>'amāmna</i> >			
تأميم	تأميم	<i>ta 'mīm</i> nationalisation			

21.



The disjoined letter *wāw* represents:

- beginning the word: the consonant *w*,

- in the middle or at the end of the word: the consonant *w*, the long vowel *ū* or the diphthong *aw* <ou>,
- after 'alif at the beginning of a word: **ا** ¹ 'ū or 'aw <ou>.

wāw has only one form. Its ring lies on the line of writing, and its tail curves below. Write:

و و و و و و و و و و

Read and write:












مول	mawwal	مول	wa	و	wa
والبنت	wa l-bint	والبنت	wa 'ana	وأنا	wa 'ana
بيوت	buyūt	بيوت	'aw	او	'aw
لو	law	لو	'unbūb	انبوب	'unbūb
لون	lawn <loun>	لون	mūm wax	موم	mūm wax
اول	'awwal	اول	yawmayn <youmayn>	يومين	yawmayn <youmayn>
ثانوي	thānawī	ثانوي	mamnūnīn	ممنونين	mamnūnīn

22.







o	a	r	f	p	h
---	---	---	---	---	---

The sound *h* is written with the joined letter *hā'*. In print this letter has one initial form, two medial and two final forms, one of which is also the isolated form.

They are used as follows:

- initial form: . This form is also used instead of the isolated form to head a list in e.g. an index or directory.
- medial form:  or . The form  is the commoner of the two in print; in handwriting only  is used.
- final form ; isolated form . The form  is very commonly written as . All forms lie on the line of writing, with the exception of the lower parts of  and .

Write:

Read and write:

هو	هو	huwa	هنا	هنا	huna
هم	هم	hum	هي	هي	hiya
هما	هما	mahma	مهم	مهم	muhimm
هام	هام	hāmm important	اهم	اهم	'ahamm
يهم	يهم	yuhimm <yihimm IV>	به	به	bihi <bī>
بنته	بنته	bintuhu < Bintu>	له	له	lahu <lu>
ابنه	ابنه	ibnuhu <'ibnu>	لهم	لهم	lahum
بينه	بينه	baynahu <baynu>	بها	بها	biha
بينهم	بينهم	baynahum <baynhum>	لها	لها	laha
اليهم	اليهم	'ilayhim <'ilayhum>	اليها	اليها	'ilayha
اليه	اليه	'ilayhi <iláy>	اهتمام	اهتمام	ihtimām

23. Note the special spelling of *allāh* <'alla/'allāh>: الله *allāh*.

24. A variant of final *hā'*, joined or isolated, also expresses the feminine and inanimate plural word-ending *-a*. In this usage the letter is written with the dots of *tā'*, and the resulting hybrid letter *ة* or *ة* is called *tā' marbūṭa* *bound tā' +* In handwriting the two dots are usually omitted for the sound *a*, and restored when the ending is *t* in construct. Read and write:

تامة	تامة	tāmma complete	ثلاثة	ثلاثة	thalātha
ثابتة	ثابتة	thābīta	الثالثة	الثالثة	ath-thālitha
آلة	آلة	'āla machine	آلة الأب	آلة الأب	'ālat al-'ab

مهمة	مهمة	muhimma, mahamma
مهمة الابن	مهمة الابن	mahammat al-ibn
مهمة ابني الهامة	مهمة ابني الهامة	mahammat ibni l-hāmma

tā' marbūṭa occurs only finally. Before a possessive suffix or a dual ending we write the *t* of such words with *ت* *tā'*. The *a* before the *t* is kept in written pronunciation. Read and write:

آلتنا	آلتنا	'ālatuna <'ālitna>	آلتي	آلتي	'ālatī
مهمته	مهمته	mahammatuhu <mahammtu>	مهمتين	مهمتين	mahammatayn <mahammtayn>

Like *-īyāt* (paragraph 16 above), *-īya* and *-iya* have one *yā'*:

مالية	مالية	mālīya	ثانوية ثانوية	ثانوية ثانوية	thānawīya
-------	-------	--------	---------------	---------------	-----------

ثانية ثانیه *thāniya*النامية النامية *an-nāmiya*

25.

التمارين *at-tamārīn*

1. Read aloud:

e.g.: ابني *ibnī*

(c) مهم

(b) ثانوية

(e) لأني

(a) بيت

(d) الآثار

2. Join the letters to make a word or expression. Read it aloud:

e.g.: لبنان → ل ب ن ان *lubnān*

(c) ممثلي

(b) التلال

(e) باللبن

(a) اهت مام

(d) آلاتي

3. Write:

e.g.: البيت *al-bayt*

(a) bintī

(b) al-mālīya

(c) li l-bayt

(d) mahammātī

(e) an-nīl

4. Write *hamza* wherever it is possible:

e.g.: لاني ← لاني

(c) بالليل

(b) آلات

(e) للابن

(a) ابن

(d) اثبتت

5. Write *hamza* wherever it is essential:

e.g.: لاني ← لاني

(c) اثبتنا

(b) بان

(e) امامي

(a) ان

(d) الثالث

6. Prefix ل and ب in turn to each word:

e.g.: اللبن ← باللبن، للبن

(c) اللبناني

(b) التمثال

(e) اول

(a) ابني

(d) اللون

7. Write in the plural:

e.g.: بنت ← بنات

(c) الأم

(b) البيت

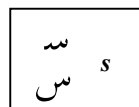
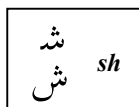
(e) انبوب





(a) ممنون

























(d) المهمة

الدرس السابع عشر
ad-dars as-sābi9 9ashar . Lesson 17
القراءة والكتابة
al-qirā'a wa l-kitāba . Reading and Writing

1.



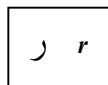
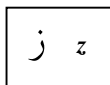
The joined letters *sīn* and *shīn* express the sounds *s* and *sh* respectively. The two letters are written identically except for the dots. The letter rests essentially on the line, the extra curve of the full form swooping below and up again, like *nūn*. The two points are usually 'ironed out' in handwriting into a long shallow curve: initial form  medial form  final form  isolated form 
The points may be restored for extra clarity. Write each form:

                        *s* *sh*










Read and write:

سنة <i>sana</i>	سنوات <i>sanawāt</i>
السنة <i>as-sana</i>	تسلم <i>tasallam</i>
اسم <i>ism</i> < 'ism >	باسمي <i>bismī</i>
اساس <i>'asās</i>	اسس <i>'usus</i>
شمال <i>shimāl</i>	الشام <i>ash-shām</i>
شاب <i>shābb</i>	الشاب <i>ash-shābb</i>
السنة الشمسية <i>as-sana sh-shamsīya</i>	





2.



The sounds *r* and *z* are expressed with the disjoined letters *rā'* and *zayy* respectively. The letters extend below the line. Write:

         *r*

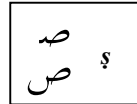
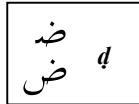
In handwriting, a middle tooth, i.e. one joined to a preceding letter, may assume a special form when followed by *rā'*/*zayy*, as it does before *mīm* (16/20). Compare handwritten and printed forms:

teeth + r/z		نسر
l + tooth + r/z		لنسر
m + tooth + r/z		منسر
s + tooth + r/z		سنسر

Read and write:

مرور	مرور	murūr	سرور	surūr	pleasure
مرة	مرة	marra	مسرور	masrūr	pleased
مستمر	مستمر	mustamirr	امشارة	'ishāra	
استمرار	استمرار	istimrār	نار	nār	
ليرة	ليرة	līra	امتار	'amtār	
رمل	رمل	raml	مرسل	mursil/mursal	
رسالة	رسالة	risāla	اشترى	ishtarayt	
التربية	التربية	at-tárbiya	زار	zār	
زيارة	زيارة	ziyāra	لازم	lāzim	
زميل	زميل	zamīl	وزير	wazīr	
تمييز	تمييز	tamyīz	زمن	zaman	«zamān»

3.



ş and *đ* are written respectively with the joined letters *şad* and *đād*, identical but for the dot over the loop. The short form has a tooth-like element after the loop; it is always present and should not be omitted. Write:

s ص ص ص ص ص ص ص ص
 d ض ض ض ض ض ض ض ض

The quasi-tooth behaves like a middle tooth as described in paragraph 2 above, when followed by *rā'zayy* or *mīm*. Read and write:

صارت صارت	şarat	صرنا صرنا	şirna
صوت صوت	şawt	وصول وصول	wuşûl
ضرب ضرب	darab	انضم انضم	inḍamm
مريض مريض	marîḍ	مریضة مریضة	marîḍa
		مصمم مصمم	muşammim determined

4. *hamza*

See 16/14. The writing of *hamza* is somewhat complex. It can be written in four ways:

- above or below 'alif:
- above *wāw*:
- above *yā'* without its dots:
- alone:

ا
ؤ
ئ
ء

Within this framework, *hamza* is written in its logical place in the word. Details are given below.

Initial *hamza*. We studied the writing of *hamza* as initial sound in 16/14.

5. Medial *hamza*

hamza as neither initial nor final sound is written:

ئـ -ī-
ئي
يئـ -ī'-/-ay'-

ؤو
ئو* -ū-

أ -a'-/-a-
ؤ -u'-/-u-
ئ -i'-/-i-

* The form ئو is less common.

Read and write:

سأل	sa'al	اسأل	'as'al
مأمور	ma'mūr	شأن	sha'n
رأي	ra'ī	رأيها	ra'ī ha
سؤال	su'āl	مؤتمر	mu'tamar
استلة	'as'ila	زائر	zā'ir <zāyir>
شؤون	shu'ūn	ضرائب	ḍarā'ib <ḍarāyib>
هيئة	hay'a	مات	mā'it <māyit> dying
هيئات	hay'āt	نائمة	nā'ima <nāyima>
استثنائي	istithnā'ī	ثنائي	thunā'ī double
مؤسس	mu'assis	مؤسس	mu'assis founder, mu'assas founded
رئاسة	ri'āsa	رئاسة	ri'āsa/riyāsa chairmanship, presidency

Remember that *hamza* never appears with *madda* (16/14). The glottal stop is already present in *madda*: الآن al-'ān.

6. Final *hamza*

hamza ending the word is written:

ء $-ā'$ و $-ā'/-aw'$ ي $-ī'/-ay'$	ؤ consonant + <i>hamza</i>	أ $-a'$ أُ $-u'$ إ $-i'$
---	-------------------------------	--------------------------------

Read and write:

نبأ أنباء نبأ أنباء	naba' 'anbā'	مساء مساء	masā' «masa»
تنبؤ تنبؤ	tanabbu' forecast	شيء شيء	shay' «shī»
		ضوء ضوء ضوء	ḍaw' «aḍwā» light

7. Initial *hamza* may be omitted in writing. Medial and final *hamza* are always written.

8.

The sounds *j*, *h* and *kh* are expressed respectively with the joined letters *jīm*, *hā'* and *khā'*, which are identical but for the dot. The short form and the head of the full form rest on the line; the full form has a 'reverse' downward swoop. Write:

ج ج ج ج ج ج ج ج ج ج *j*
ح ح ح ح ح ح ح ح ح ح *h*
خ خ خ خ خ خ خ خ خ خ *kh*

In handwriting, and in better print, medial/final *jīm* etc. are joined to the preceding letter from the left-hand corner, i.e. from the beginning of the outline. In typescript, and sometimes in print, they are joined at or near the right-hand corner. Compare (*jīm* only):

tooth/teeth + j	نجد	بج	نجد	بج	نجد	بج
lj, mj	لج	لج	مج	مج	مج	مج
sj, jj	سج	سج	جج	جج	جج	جج

Read and write:

نتيجة نتائج	نتیجہ نتائج	natīja natā'ij	result
جملة جمل	جملہ جمل	jumla jumal	sentence
جزء اجزاء	جزء اجزاء	juz 'ajzā'	part

مجنون مجانين	majnūn majānīn mad	انتج	'antaj
جميل	jamīl	لجنة	lajna
مجبور	majbūr	زوج	zawj <zouj>
حج	hajj pilgrimage	انجز	'anjaz
زوجة	zawja <zouja>	اجوبة	'ajwiba
الجواب	al-jawāb	اجني	'ajnabī
جواز	jawāz	لاجئ	lāji <lājī>
مستأجر	musta'jir	اجراءات	'ijrā'āt
اجراء	'ijrā'	حول	ḥawla <ḥawl>
احتياج	iḥtiyāj	حرارة	ḥarāra
محبوب	maḥbūb	صباح	ṣabāḥ
بحث	baḥṭh	محترم	muḥtāram
صحيح	ṣaḥīḥ	محتمل	muḥtāmāl
صحة	ṣiḥḥa	استراحة	istirāḥa
الرياح	ar-rīḥ	الأخت	al-'ukht
الأخ	al-'akh	خارج	khārij
خرج	kharaj	يخبز	yukḥbir
اخضر	'akhḍar	تخصص	takhaṣṣuṣ
خاصة	khāṣṣa	انتخاب	intikhāb
الخليج	al-khalīj		

9.

ذ dh

د d

The disjoined letters *dāl* and *dhāl*, identical but for the dot, express the sounds *d* and *dh* respectively. These letters rest on the line. Write:

د د د د د د د د د د د dh ذ ذ ذ ذ ذ ذ ذ ذ ذ ذ ذ

Do not confuse *dāl/dhāl* and *rā'/zayy*. *rā'/zayy* is struck downwards, and is joined to the preceding letter at its head. *dāl/dhāl* strikes down and left, and is joined to the preceding letter at its middle or corner. Further, the special handwritten joining of *rā'/zayy* after a middle tooth (paragraph 2 above) does not apply to *dāl/dhāl*. Compare (*rā'* and *dāl* only):

شروط	shurūṭ	شرط	sharṭ
اطول	'aṭwal	طرنّا	ṭirna
متوسط	mutawassiṭ	واطيّ	wāṭi'
أوطأ	'awṭa'	مطلوب	maṭlūb
تخطيط	takhṭīṭ	خطوط	khuṭūṭ
ظهر	zāhar, ḡuhr/zuhr	ظل	ḡall/zall
نظري	naḡarī/nazarī	تنظيم	tanzīm
تظاهر	taḡāhar/tazāhar	ظن	ẓann
		لسوء الحظ	li sū' al-ḡazz
		لحسن الحظ	li ḡusn al-ḡazz

See the chapter on Pronunciation, paragraph 5. The choice of ḡ or ẓ varies between speakers and between styles. Many favour ḡ in written pronunciation.

11. In the root *ḡ b ṭ*, the letter ض *dād* is pronounced, anomalously, like ظ ḡ/ẓ in both spoken and written Arabic. Note:

مضبوط	mazbūṭ	بالضبط	bi ḡ-ḡabṭ/bi ẓ-ẓabṭ
ضابط ضباط	ḡābiṭ/zābiṭ ḡubbāṭ/zubbāṭ	officer	

12.

التمارين

1. Read aloud:

e.g.: لا ينتظر *lā yantāḡir*
الشرطة (c)

(b) وصول
(e) تداخل

(a) الزميل
(d) الانتخابات

2. Write as one word. Read it aloud:

e.g.: مسرورين → مسرورين *masrūrīn*
متظاهرين (c)

(b) ملابس
(e) ألنظري

(a) الازمة
(d) خرجنا

3. Write *ḡamza* wherever it is essential:

e.g.: لاني ← لاني
مسوول (c)

(b) اجزا
(e) اللاجي

(a) بالابن
(d) بالطائرة

4. Write:

e.g.: marīḍa مريضة

(a) tamwīl

(b) marratayn

(c) bi l-'amrāḍ

(d) an-natīja l-'ijābīya

(e) al-mustawradāt muhimma.

5. Write the verbal noun of each verb. Read your answer aloud:

e.g.: tamwīl ← تمويل

طلب (c)

اتخذ (b)


استأجر (e)














سأل (a)

احترم (d)

الدرس الثامن عشر
ad-dars ath-thāmin 9ashar . Lesson 18
القراءة والكتابة
al-qirā'a wa l-kitāba . Reading and Writing

ع	ع	ع	ع	9
غ	غ	غ	غ	gh

The sounds *ḡ* and *gh* are written with the joined letters *ḡayn* and *ghayn*. Each has four forms: one initial, one medial, one joined-final and one isolated. The short form, and the head of the full form, rest on the line; the full form has a ‘reverse’ swoop downwards. In the medial and joined-final forms, the bead is formed clockwise , and the letter is joined from below. Write:

You will note that the head of these letters is 'open' when no joined letter precedes, and 'closed' after a joined letter. Read and write:

عن	عن	9an	اعطيت	اعطيت	'a9īayt
عرض	عرض	9arḍ	اذاعة	اذاعة	'idhā9a
عشرة	عشرة	9ashara <9ashra>	عام	عام	9āmm
تعاون	تعاون	ta9āwun	نعم	نعم	na9am
رابعة	رابعة	rābi9a	ربع ساعة	ربع ساعة	rub9 sā9a
بعد	بعد	ba9d	صعب	صعب	ṣa9b
طبيعي	طبيعي	ṭabī9ī	اجتماع	اجتماع	ijtimā9
اسبوع	اسبوع	'usbū9	اسبوعين	اسبوعين	'usbū9ayn
اسابيع	اسابيع	'asābī9	اجتماعات	اجتماعات	ijtimā9āt
معلمين	معلمين	mu9allimīn	غربي	غربي	gharbī
غرض	غرض	gharaḍ	اغراض	اغراض	'aghrāḍ
اشتغل	اشتغل	ishtāghal	مشغول	مشغول	mashghūl

غير *ghayr* الغير *al-ghayr*
 صغير *ṣaghīr* صغیر *ṣaghīr*
 مبلغ *mablagh* مبالغ *mabāligh* amount

2.

ى -a (-ā)

Final *ā* (almost always pronounced short, see Pronunciation, paragraph 2, and Lesson 16/6) has an alternative spelling; it is written with an undotted *yā* in some words. This letter is called '*alif maqṣūra* "abbreviated '*alif*". It expresses -a in the following types of word:

- final root letter of a final-weak verb: رمى *rama* أعطى *'aḡṭa*
- feminine superlative adjective: الأعلى *al-'aḡla* الصغرى *aṣ-ṣughra*
 الأولى *al-'ūla* الأخرى *al-'ukhra*
- a few broken plurals: مرضى *marḍa*
- a few anomalous nouns, which we examine in Lesson 24 (see the word *mustashfa* hospital below);
- a few other words: على *9ala* إلى *'ila*
 حتى *ḥatta* إحدى *'iḥda*

In the three commonest monosyllables regularly pronounced with final long *ā*, the vowel is spelt with '*alif*:

لا *lā* ما *mā* يا *yā*

3. '*alif maqṣūra* can occur only finally. When an ending is added, '*alif maqṣūra* is replaced by the phonetically appropriate letter (or an unwritten short vowel). Read and write:

مشت *mashat* انتهت *intāhat*
 اشترت *ishtarayt* احداً *'iḥdāna* one (f.) of us
 After ي *yā*, '*alif maqṣūra* must be replaced by '*alif*:

العليا *al-'ulya*

Outside language books, isolated *yā* often appears without its dots: ى. In this book we shall maintain ي for *yā*, and show ى only for '*alif maqṣūra*.

4.

ق q
 ق

ف f
 ف

The sounds *f* and *q* are written with the joined letters *fā'* and *qāf* respectively. Final/isolated *qāf* swoops like *nūn*; final/isolated *fā'* is shallow like *bā'*, resting on the line. All forms are dotted on the ring. Write each form:

f f f f f f f f f f f f
q q q q q q q q q q q q

Read and write:

فعل	فعل	fi9l action	فاضين فاضين	fāḍīn < fāḍīyīn>
اضافية اضافية	اضافية اضافية	'iḍāfiya	نفس نفس	naḥs
ضيف ضيف	ضيف ضيف	ḍayf	الضفة الضفة	aḍ-ḍiffa
افتتح افتتح	افتتح افتتح	iftataḥ	افاد افاد	'aḥād
في في	في في	fī	مفتش مفتش	mufattish inspector
فيه فيه	فيه فيه	fīhi < fī>	لطيف لطيف	laṭīf
مشرف مشرف	مشرف مشرف	mushrif	موظف موظف	muwazzaf
فهو فهو	فهو فهو	fa huwa	يبقى يبقى	yabqa < yibqa>
افريقيا افريقيا	افريقيا افريقيا	'afrīqiya	قلنا قلنا	qulna
قالت قالت	قالت قالت	qālat	استقبال استقبال	istiqbāl
اقامة اقامة	اقامة اقامة	'iqāma	الحق الحق	al-ḥaqq right (noun)
اقترحت اقترحت	اقترحت اقترحت	iqtarahṭ	فقط فقط	faqṭ
العراق العراق	العراق العراق	al-9irāq	قوي قوي	qawīy < qawī>
اقوى اقوى	اقوى اقوى	'aqwa	بقي بقي	bāqiya < biqi>
موقف من موقف من	موقف من موقف من	mawqif < mouqif> min	المستشفى المستشفى	al-mustashfa
فمن المفهوم فمن المفهوم	فمن المفهوم فمن المفهوم	fa min al-maḥḥūm	دقيقة دقائق	daqīqa daqā'iq < daqāyīq>
من المتوقع من المتوقع	من المتوقع من المتوقع	min al-mutawaqqag	صحيفة صحف	ṣaḥīfa ṣuḥuf newspaper

5.

ك	ك	ك	k
---	---	---	---

The sound *k* is written with the joined letter *kāf*. This letter always rests on the line, and is tall like *lām*. Its handwritten shape is different from its printed shape.

In handwriting, the letter is upright, and the 'headstroke' of the short form is written last. Examine:

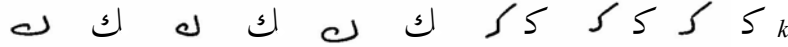
initial/medial *k*

final/isolated *k*

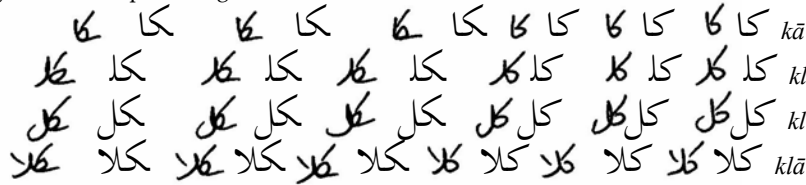


The final form ك is often replaced by ك. ك is not used in handwriting.

In fast handwriting, the flourish of the final/isolated form ك is often written as an extension of the curve of the base, similarly to the dot of *nūn*. Write:



There are special handwritten forms for *kāf*-*'alif*, *kāf*-*lām* and *kāf*-*lām*-*'alif*. The loop is written clockwise ٧, being approached from below if the combination is joined to the preceding letter. Write:



Read and write:

كيف	كيف	<i>kayfa</i> < <i>kayf</i> >	اكلنا	اكلنا	<i>'akalna</i>
كل	كل	<i>kull</i>	ضحك	ضحك	<i>ḍaḥik</i> < <i>ḍaḥak</i> >
كلا	كلا	<i>kila</i> both	كتابة	كتابة	<i>kitāba</i>
دكان	دكان	<i>dukkān</i>	امكانية	امكانية	<i>'imkānīya</i>
كبيرة	كبيرة	<i>kabīra</i>	الكبرى	الكبرى	<i>al-kubra</i>
ممکن	ممکن	<i>mumkin</i>	كنت	كنت	<i>kunt</i>
كانت	كانت	<i>kānat</i>	الشك	الشك	<i>ash-shakk</i>
بكم	بكم	<i>bi kam</i>	للكل	للكل	<i>li l-kull</i>
كلمة	كلمة	<i>kalima</i>	هناك	هناك	<i>hunāka</i> < <i>hunāk</i> >
اوشك على	اوشك على		اوشك على	اوشك على	<i>'awshak 9ala</i>
الله يبارك فيكم	الله يبارك فيكم		الله يبارك فيكم	الله يبارك فيكم	<i>allāh yubārīk fīkum</i>
المشكوك فيه	المشكوك فيه		المشكوك فيه	المشكوك فيه	<i>al-mashkūk fīhi</i> < <i>fī</i> >

6. Arabic transcription

There are no Arabic letters allocated in standard fashion to the sounds *g* or *v* occurring in foreign words. The letters ج *jīm*, غ *ghayn* and ك *kāf* are

variously used in words of foreign origin with *g*, and the form **ف ث** is often used for *v*: **فيزا** *vīza* **غرام\جرام** *grām*

In transcribing into Arabic, some texts show **ا** 'alif for both long and short *a*, **و** *wāw* for both long and short *o* or *u*, and **ي** *yā* for both long and short *e* or *i*. This is especially the case with proper names, but the usage varies. Examine:

هامبورج *hamburg* **بروكسل** *bruksil* Brussels
لندن *landan* London **واشنطن** *wāshinṭun* Washington

Foreign proper names beginning with two consonants are often given a transition vowel marked with **ا** 'alif: **استكهولم** *istok-holm* Stockholm

You may also encounter, in foreign words, the Ottoman and Persian letters **پ** *p* and **چ** *ch*, the latter sometimes also used to transliterate the sound *g*.

Remember that in Egypt **ج** is pronounced *g* even when read from text.

7. The alphabet

We have now learned the whole alphabet. Here are the letters (isolated form), with names, in their alphabetical order:

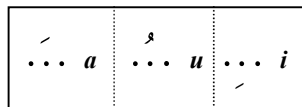
ا 'alif
ب ت ث *bā' tā' thā'*
ج ح خ *jīm ḥā' khā'*
د ذ ر ز *dāl dhāl rā' zay*
س ش *sīn shīn*
ص ض ط ظ *ṣād ḍād ṭā' ḍā' /zā'*
ع غ ف ق *ʿayn ḡayn fā' qāf*
ك ل م ن *kāf lām mīm nūn*
ه و ي *hā' wāw yā'*

In dictionaries, *hamza* is placed with 'alif, *wāw* or *yā* as appropriate; *tā'* *marbuṭa* with *hā'*, and 'alif *maqṣūra* with *yā'*. See 16/22 for **ه** as the isolated form of *hā'* in an alphabetical list, and paragraph 3 above for the alternative forms of isolated *yā'*.

8. Pointing

There exist also various orthographic signs, only rarely used, indicating short vowels, doubled consonants etc. Most people read more easily without them. A word or text carrying these signs is said to be 'pointed'. Pointing can be full or partial, as needed.

9. Short vowels



These marks are written above (for *a* and *u*) or below (for *i*) the letter or *hamza* preceding them. Thus:

كَمْ *kam* هُمْ *hum* لِ *li*
أَجْمَلُ *'ajmal* أَسُسُ *'usus* إِذَا *'idha*

These signs are called *fatḥa* (*a*), *ḍamma* (*u*) and *kasra* (*i*).

10. Long vowels and diphthongs

The three short-vowel signs shown above may also be used to show the corresponding long vowel (*ā*, *ū*, *ī*) when written immediately before *'alif*, *wāw* or *yā*; *fatḥa* written immediately before *wāw* or *yā* can be used to show the diphthong *aw* and *ay* respectively:

- fatḥa*-medial *'alif*, *ā*: كَانَتْ *kānat* رِسَالَاتٍ *risālāt*
- fatḥa*-*'alif maqṣūra*, *a*: رَمَى *rama* عَلَى *ʿala*
- ḍamma*-*wāw*, *ū*: سُوقٌ *sūq* أُولَى *'ūla*
- kasra*-*yā*, *ī*: كَيْسٌ *kīs* مَعِيَ *maʿī*
- fatḥa*-*wāw*, *aw*: نَوْمٌ *nawm* مَوْجُودٌ *mawjūd*
- fatḥa*-*yā*, *ay*: اللَّيْلَةُ *al-layla*

These can be used in partial pointing to avoid ambiguity:

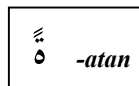
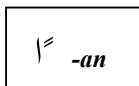
- kasra-fatḥa*: active/passive participles; m. dual/sound plural:

مُرْسِلٌ *mursil* مَرْسَلٌ *mursal*
الْمَأْمُورِينَ *al-ma'mūrīn* الْمَأْمُورَيْنِ *al-ma'mūrayn*

- ḍamma* and/or *fatḥa*: passive verbs:

كُتِبَتْ *kutibat* يُوجَدُ *yūjad*

11.



The noun-, adjective- and adverb-ending *-an* is written with a doubled *fatḥa* called *fatḥa tanwīn* (*tanwīn* is translated as *annation* in English). When added to a m. ending, *fatḥa tanwīn* is followed by *'alif*; when added to the ending *-a* it is put over

the *tā' marbuṭa*. Read and write:

جَدًّا	jiddan	أَوَّلًا	'awwalan
رَسْمِيًّا	rasmīyan	مِثْلًا	mathalan
خَاصَّةً	khāṣṣatan	عَادَةً	9ādatan
شَدِيدًا	shadīdan	غَدًا	ghadan <bukra>
شَكْلًا وَمَوْضِعًا مُتَقَلِّدًا وَمَوْضِعًا	shaklan wa mawḍū9an		
كُتِبَ طَالِبًا	katab ṭāliban <ṭālib>		
سَأَلَ سُؤَالَ صَعْبًا. سَأَلَ سُؤَالَ صَعْبًا.	sa'al su'ālan ṣa9ban		
	<su'āl ṣa9b>.		

fatha tanwīn is used in partial pointing only for clarity. We shall meet it later over *'alif maqṣūra*, and other examples of *tanwīn*, with the other short vowels.

12. Small 'alif

In a few words medial *-ā-* is unwritten; we can point it with a small *'alif*-like sign above the preceding consonant:

هَذَا	hādhā	ذَلِكَ	dhālika <hadhāk>
وَلَكِنْ	walākin		

Small *'alif* is shown only in full pointing.

13. *sukūn*, *hamzat al-waṣl*, *waṣla*, *hamzat al-qat9*

A small ring $\cdot\cdot\cdot$, called *sukūn*, above a letter indicates that the letter has no following vowel. This sign is also used to point a diphthong:

يَوْمَيْنِ	yawmayn	قَلْب	qalb	اِسْمِي	ismī
------------	---------	-------	------	---------	------

In the grammar of written Arabic, an initial weak vowel is said to have *hamzat al-waṣl* (the *hamza* of connection). This term can be misleading, for no glottal stop is pronounced. When the weak initial vowel is dropped after a preceding vowel in the same phrase, you may sometimes see the weak vowel pointed with *waṣla*, a sign resembling the loop of *ṣād*, written over the *'alif*, thus:

فِي الْحَقِيقَةِ	fī l-ḥaqīqa	بِاسْمِي	bī smī
------------------	-------------	----------	--------

Both *sukūn* and *waṣla* are found only in full pointing.

hamza indicating a glottal stop is called *hamzat al-qat9* (the *hamza* of severance). This is the one which we have been studying. Outside this present paragraph, the term *hamza* in this book always means *hamzat al-qat9*.

14. *shadda*

A doubled consonant (including that of an assimilated article) may be pointed with the sign . . . called *shadda*, above the letter:

الرَّمل *ar-raml* تقدّم *taqaddum* معَلِّم *mu9allim*

shadda is sometimes used in partial pointing for clarity. Examine:

ذَكَرَ *dhakar* ذَكَّرَ *dhakkar*
عَلِمَ *9ilm* عَلَّمَ *9allam*

15. Short vowels with *shadda*

When combined with *shadda*, *kasra* is pointed either above the letter but below the *shadda*, or below the letter. The other two short vowels lie above the *shadda*:

تَقَدُّمٌ *taqaddum* مُعَلِّمٌ *mu9allam* مُعَلِّمٌ *mu9allim*

16. Of the non-alphabetical letters and signs, the following are mandatory, both in handwriting and in print:

- final and medial *hamza*,
- *madda*,
- the dots on *lā' marbūṭa* in the theme of a construct.

The following are often omitted:

- initial *hamza* (print and handwriting),
- *fathā tanwīn* after '*alif* and after *lā' marbūṭa* (print and handwriting),
- the dots on *lā' marbūṭa* other than in the theme of a construct (in handwriting).

The following can be useful in partial pointing:

- initial *hamza* (especially Form IV),
- *fathā*, *ḍamma* and *kasra* (participles, passive, dual),
- *shadda* (Forms II and V).

All other non-alphabetical letters and signs are found only in full pointing and not in everyday print or handwriting.

17.

التمارين



1. Read aloud:

e.g.: هو تعافى تمامًا. *huwa ta9āfa tamāman.*

- | | | |
|-----------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| (a) غرفة فاضية | (b) البنت الصغرى | (c) بعيد عن القرية |
| (d) اذا كان هنا | (e) شكروني قلبياً. | |

2. Add the missing last letter, which is 'alif, 'alif maqṣūra or fā' marbūta. Read the word or expression:

- e.g.: al-kubra الكبر ← الكبري
 (a) بالمستشف...
 (b) الأساتذ...
 (c) هذ... هو الصديق
 (d) مش...
 (e) اجوب... ايجابيه...

3. Put the verb into the *huwa* form. Read aloud both the original verb form and your answer:

- e.g.: ishtarayt, ishtāra اشترى ← اشتريت
 (a) استثنينا
 (b) استغنيت
 (c) اعطيت
 (d) ربّيت
 (e) مشينا

4. Write the adverb which is derived from the word given. Read both the word given and your adverb:

- e.g.: shadīd, shadīdan شديد ← شديداً
 (a) جديد
 (b) عادة
 (c) مثل
 (d) خاصة
 (e) رسمي

5. Write:

e.g.: at-ta9āwun ǧarūrī. التعاون ضروري.

- (a) al-lughā l-9arabīya ṣa9ba.
 (b) fī hādha l-balad
 (c) kunna masrūrīn jiddan, shukran.
 (d) dafa9at 'aqall mimma dafa9na l-yawm.
 (e) al-'anbā' al-wārida min baghdād

6. Point partially, with initial *hamza*, with *shadda*, and with *fatḥa tanwīn*. Then read aloud:

- e.g.: 'aghrāḍ hāmma jiddan أغراض هامة جداً
 (a) اسم الصديق
 (b) تتكلم سريعاً.
 (c) اكبر مني
 (d) التدخل اشد مما كان قبلاً.
 (e) هو موظف في الجمرك.

الدرس التاسع عشر
ad-dars at-tāsi9 9ashar . Lesson 19
التأمين at-ta'mīn . Insurance

جمل مثالية

1.

- (a) تأمين *ta'mīn* insurance
مؤمن *mu'ammin* insurer
مؤمن عليه *mu'amman 9alayhi* «9aláy» insured
في حقل التأمين الاعتماد المتبادل بين المؤمن والمؤمن عليه ضروري.

fī ḥaql at-ta'mīn al-i9timād al-mutabādal In the insurance field, mutual
bayna l-mu'ammin wa l-mu'amman confidence between the insurer
9alayhi ḍarūrī. and the insured is essential.

- (b) مدير الهندسة *mudīr al-handasa* Chief Engineer
تقوية *táqwiya* reinforcement
امن *'amn* safety, security
صهريج صهاريج *ṣahrīj ṣahārīj* tank (container)
تخزين *takhzīn* storage
قسط اقساط *qisṭ 'aqsāṭ* premium, instalment
مدير الهندسة على علم بالاقترحات الجديدة لتقوية الأمن في صهاريج
التخزين من اجل تخفيف قسطنا السنوي.

mudīr al-handasa 9ala 9ilm bi l-iqtirāḥāt The Chief Engineer knows about
al-jadīda li táqwiya al-'amn fī ṣahārīj the new proposals to increase
at-takhzīn min 'ajl takhfīf qisṭina s-sanawī. (reinforced) the safety of the
storage tanks with a view to
reducing our annual premium.

- (c) شركته *sharikatihi* «sharikatu»
فشل *fashal* failure
مفاوضات *mufāwāḍātina* «mufāwāḍātina»
تعويض *ta9wīḍ* compensation
موقت، مؤقت *muwaqqat, mu'aqqat* provisional,
temporary
بوليصة بواليص *būlīṣa bawālīṣ* (insurance) policy
بواليصته *būlīṣatihi* «būlīṣatu»
وضع شركته صعب بعد فشل مفاوضاتنا في غرفة التجارة من اجل
التعويض الموقت تحت شروط بوليصته الشاملة.

waḍ9 sharikatihi ṣab9 ba9da fashal His company's situation is difficult
mufāwāḍātina fī ghurfat at-tijāra min 'ajl after the failure of our negotiations
at-ta9wīḍ al-muwaqqat taḥt shurūṭ būlīṣatihi in the Chamber of Commerce for

sh-shāmila.

provisional compensation under the terms of his comprehensive policy.

- (d) مقبول *maqbul* acceptable
 ملحق *mulḥaq* (also:) annex(ed)
 به *bihi* *ḥi*
 جدول جداول *jadwal jadāwil* (also:) table (of data)
 رسم رسوم *rasm rusūm* drawing
 إن التقرير حول الخسارة مقبول ولكن في الوثيقة الملحقة به كثير من الجداول والرسوم المعقدة.

'inna t-taqrīr ḥawla l-khasāra maqbūl
 walākin fi l-wathīqa l-mulḥaqa bihi kathīr
 min al-jadāwil wa r-rusūm al-muḥaqqada. The damage report is acceptable,
 but in the document attached to it
 there are many complicated
 tables and drawings.

- (e) حسب *ḥasaba* according to
 مؤرخ *mu'arrakh* dated
 حريق حرائق *ḥarīqa ḥarā'iq* fire
 نوبة نوب *nawba nuwab* shift, turn
 حسب الرسالتين المؤرختين أمس المسؤول عن الحريق هو مشرف نوبة الليل.

ḥasaba r-risālatayn al-mu'arrakhatayn
 'ams al-mas'ūl 9an al-ḥarīqa huwa mushrif
 nawbat al-layl. According to the two letters dated
 yesterday, the person responsible
 for the fire is the night shift
 supervisor.

2. مفردات إضافية — التأمين
 عقد عقود *9aqd 9uqūd* contract ضمان *ḍamān* guarantee
 سمسار سماسير *simsār samāsīr* broker سرقة *sariqa* theft
 وقاية *wiqāya* protection انتهاء *intihā'* expiry
 طرف ثالث *ṭaraf thālith* third party طلب *ṭalab* claim
 مخاطرة *mukhāṭara* risk
 المساهمة (في الأرباح) *al-musāhama (fi l-'arbāḥ)* participation (in profits)
 كارثة كوارث (طبيعية) *kāritha kawārith (ṭabī'īya)* (natural) disaster
 الضمان الاجتماعي *aḍ-ḍamān al-ijtimā'ī* social security

النحو

3. In studying written Arabic, we shall note only those points which are useful and which are different from spoken Arabic. Everything learned in Part I is valid

for written Arabic, unless indicated otherwise. Conversely, any written form or structure may be included in everyday speech; the degree of 'elevation' bestowed by its use will vary with choice and context.

4. Full pronunciation and short pronunciation

In written Arabic the nouns, adjectives, verbs and numbers have a greater battery of inflexions or endings than in spoken Arabic. Many of these inflexions are not written with letters of the alphabet, but are visible only when the text is pointed. In very formal scripted speech, the inflexions are all pronounced. We can call this 'full' pronunciation.

But at the end of a phrase in formal speech, and in all positions in normal use, the inflexions are pronounced only when a suffix is added to the word; otherwise they are dropped. We can call this 'short' pronunciation. You should use short pronunciation, which is simpler and commoner. It also gives us forms much more like the spoken language which we have studied in Part I.

Short pronunciation rule: In short pronunciation, grammatical inflexions not written with an alphabetical letter are, with very few exceptions, pronounced only when followed by a suffix.

We study first nouns and adjectives.

5. Case

In written Arabic, nouns and adjectives are declined, i.e. they have cases, three in number:

- Nominative ('nom.') for the subject of the verb or implied verb,
- Accusative ('acc.') for the direct object or complement of a verb; also for the subject in certain contexts;
- Genitive ('gen.') for all elements of a construct except the first; or after a preposition.

6. Definite nouns

When a definite noun has the possessive suffix *-ī* *myq* or has no suffix, the noun has a form identical to its spoken form, if we allow for the fact that in written pronunciation *tā' marbūṭa* is pronounced *-at* before a suffix (see 16/24):

العقد الوثيقة	<i>al-9aqd</i> <i>al-wathīqa</i>	عقدي وثيقتي	<i>9aqdī</i> <i>wathīqatī</i>
------------------	-------------------------------------	----------------	----------------------------------

But when a possessive suffix other than *ي* *-ī* is added, we first add a case-ending: *-u* for the nom., *-a* for the acc., *-i* for the gen. The rules for stress still hold. The endings are shown **bold** in these examples:

	العقد هنا.	<i>al-9aqd huna.</i>
but:	عقدنا هنا.	<i>9aqduna huna.</i>
	يعرف عقدي.	<i>ya9rif ⟨ya9raf⟩ 9aqdī.</i>
but:	يعرف عقدكم.	<i>ya9rif 9aqdakum.</i>
	في البوليصة	<i>fī l-būlīṣa</i>
but:	في بوليصتنا	<i>fī būlīṣatina</i>

The same rules apply with a broken plural:

	الوثائق هنا.	<i>al-wathā'iq huna.</i>
but:	وثائقنا هنا.	<i>wathā'iquna huna.</i>
	يعرف وثائقكم.	<i>ya9rif wathā'iqakum.</i>
	من وثائقكم	<i>min wathā'iqikum</i>
	الأساتذة	<i>al- 'asātidha</i>
	اساتذتي	<i>'asātidhatī</i>
but:	من اساتذتها	<i>min 'asātidhatiha ⟨'asātidhat-ha⟩</i>

Full pronunciation has these endings all the time except at the end of a phrase; in short pronunciation we pronounce them, irrespective of the position of the word, only when they are 'trapped' between the noun and the suffix.

Definite adjectives follow the noun pattern in full pronunciation; but since adjectives never take suffixes, their short pronunciation is the same as in spoken Arabic.

7. Indefinite nouns and adjectives

Indefinite words occur only without a possessive suffix, since this suffix would make them definite. But we need to know one ending which is sounded even in short pronunciation. It is the indefinite accusative ending *-an* (*-tan* after final *-a*, *-yan* after final *ي* *-ī*). It is pointed with *fathā tanwīn* (18/11, 16). Pronounce it in the following situations, which constitute an exception to the short pronunciation rule:

- in the singular participle of a circumstantial expression (12/13):

كتب طالبًا مساعدتنا.	<i>katab ṭāliban musā9adatana.</i>
كتبت طالبةً مساعدتنا.	<i>katabat ṭālibatan musā9adatana.</i>

- in adverbial forms:

جداً	<i>jiddan</i>	عادةً	<i>9ādatan</i>	كثيراً	<i>kathīran</i>
------	---------------	-------	----------------	--------	-----------------

- in the absolute object:

سأل سؤالاً فتياً. *sa'al su 'ālan fannīyan.*
يعرف معرفة تامة. *ya9rif ma9rifatan tāmmatan.*

- whenever else it is written with 'alif:

أخذ كتاباً كتباً. *'akhadh kitāban/kutuban.*

From the examples you can see that these rules apply equally to singular and to broken plural nouns and adjectives.

(For the record only, there exist also the indefinite nominative ending *-un*, pointed *ḍamma tanwīn* " or " ; and the indefinite genitive *-in*, pointed *kasra tanwīn* . In short pronunciation, these are heard only in a few set phrases which we can learn as vocabulary.)

8. Sound feminine plural nouns and adjectives

Definite nouns carrying the sound feminine plural ending ات *-āt* are subject to the same rules as the singular and broken plural nouns and adjectives covered by paragraph 6 above, with the exception that the ending for both the accusative and genitive is *-i*; *[-a]* does not occur:

رسالات *ar-risālāt* رسالاتي *risālātī*
but: رسالاتنا هنا. *risālātuna huna.*
كتبت رسالاتها. *katabat risālātīha.*
حسب رسالاتها *ḥasaba risālātīha*

In written Arabic, animate f. pl. nouns must have a f. pl. adjective, which is always sound:

المعلمات (ال)مصريات *(al-)mu9allimāt (al-)miṣrīyāt (miṣrīyīn)*

(For the record, indefinite endings *-un* [nom.], *-in* [acc./gen.] also occur with sound feminine plurals, but are never heard in short pronunciation; we can ignore them.)

9. Dual and sound masculine plural nouns and adjectives

Dual (m. and f.) and sound masculine plural nouns and adjectives have endings which are the same for definite and indefinite forms:

- nominative ان *-ān* (dual; ة becomes ت as usual) and ون *-ūn* (m. pl.):

المعلمان (ال)حاضران *(al-)mu9allimān (al-)ḥāḍirān*
المعلمتان (ال)حاضرتان *(al-)mu9allimatān (al-)ḥāḍiratān*
المعلمون (ال)حاضرون *(al-)mu9allimūn (al-)ḥāḍirūn*

- accusative and genitive *ayn* (dual) and *īn* (m. pl), as in spoken

Arabic:

للمأمورين *li l-ma'mūrīn* من الكتابين *min al-kitābayn*
 مهمّة المعلمتين *muhammat al-mu'allimatayn*

(For the record, the full forms are *-āni/-ayni* and *-ūna/īna*.)

The final *ن -n* is dropped before a possessive suffix and when the word is the theme of a construct:

مكتبتها *maktabāha* في مكتبها *fī maktabayha*
 مسؤولو قسمي *mas'ūlū qismī* من ممثليكم *min mumaththilikum*

The long vowel rule (2/10) holds as usual before an article, and the original stress is maintained:

ممثلو الشركة *mumaththilū sh-sharika*
 مع ممثلي الشركة *ma'a mumaththilī sh-sharika*

Note however:

- the dual diphthong *-ay* (like all diphthongs) is never shortened:

مديري الشركة *mudiray ash-sharika*

- *-ūn + -ī* becomes *-īya*: معلمي *mu'allimīya* my teachers

10. Agreement of adjectives

Note paragraph 8 above for animate f. pl. adjectives. The inanimate plural rule (1/5) applies throughout written Arabic also. But the dual noun rule (4/12) does not apply; an adjective qualifying a dual noun must also be dual in written Arabic:

صحفيان لبنانيان *ṣuḥūfīyān lubnānīyān* <lubnānīyīn>
 في رسالتين رسميتين *fī risālatayn rasmīyatayn* <rasmīyīn>

11. A few nouns and adjectives (e.g. types *muḥāmī*, *fāḍī*, *mustashfa*) decline differently. We study them later.

12. *tā' marbūṭa*

Where a noun ending in *ṭ tā' marbūṭa* is followed by an adjective carrying the article, some speakers use full pronunciation even when the rest of the sentence is spoken with short pronunciation. This exception to the short pronunciation rule is not obligatory:

السنة الماضية *as-sanatu l-māḍiya* or *as-sana l-māḍiya*
 في السنة المقبلة *fī s-sanati l-muqbila* or *fī s-sana l-muqbila*

This practice usually covers only the noun, not the adjective.

13. Possessive suffixes

The possessive suffixes *ي* -ī, *ها* -ha, *نا* -na, *كم* -kum and *هم* -hum are the same as in the spoken language. The other written possessive suffixes are:

ك -ka <-ak> *ك* -ki <-ik> *ه* -hu <-u>

and the third-person dual, not found in spoken Arabic: *هما* -huma of them both (m./f.).

(There are other persons, the 2nd and 3rd persons animate f. pl., used for an exclusively female group; and the 2nd person dual. But these occur so rarely, even in writing, that they need not concern us here. If you need them, they can be found in 26/13.)

14. We have seen that certain noun endings are modified before certain suffixes. There is one more change to note: after *ي* -ī/-ay or the case-ending -i, the suffixes -hu, -huma, -hum become -hi, -hima, -him:

عند مهندسيه 9inda muhandisīhi/muhandisayhi
 في مكتبه امكتبهما fī maktabihi/maktabihima
 جواب على رسالتهم الأخيرتين jawāb 9ala risālatayhim al-'akhīratayn
 a reply to their last two letters

15. Prepositions

Written prepositions are the same as those of the spoken form, except that they mostly add -a (unwritten, can be pointed), e.g.:

بعد ba9da قبل qabla

but not: من min عن 9an

Further, *داخل* dākhil(a) and *خارج* khārij(a) are often pronounced short when they have no suffix, even in formal reading.

Learn also: *لدى* lada in the presence of *عبر* 9abra through, beyond and the spelling of *جنب* jamba.

All prepositions except *إلا* 'illa except (see below) govern the genitive case.

داخل خارج مصنعنا dākhil(a)/khārij(a) maṣna9ina
 بعد قبل المؤتمر ba9da/qabla l-mu'tāmar
 حسب اضد عقده ḥasaba/ḍidda 9aqdihi
 خلال امند اسبوعين khilāla/mundhu 'usbū9ayn
 عند بين المهندسين 9inda/bayna l-muhandisīn

The noun governed by *إلا* 'illa goes into the case dictated by the noun's own function in the sentence when the sentence is negative:

ما حضر إلا المهندسون. *mā ḥaḍar 'illa l-muhandisūn. (nom.)*

Only the engineers (None but the engineers) attended.

but into the *accusative*, irrespective of its own grammatical function, when the sentence is affirmative:

كلّهم حاضرون إلا المهندسين. *kulluhum ḥāḍirūn 'illa l-muhandisīn.*

(acc.) All of them are present except the engineers.

16. Pronoun suffixes on prepositions

The pronoun suffixes used after prepositions are identical to the possessive suffixes, with some modifications:

- A short vowel at the end of a preposition is dropped when *-ī* is suffixed; for other suffixes the vowel is retained:

معى	<i>ma9ī</i>	بى	<i>bī <bīnī></i>
معك	<i>ma9aka</i>	بكم	<i>bikum</i>

- من* *min* and *عن* *9an* before *ي* *ī* become *منى* *minnī* and *عنى* *9annī*, as in spoken Arabic (but: *منه* *minhu <minnu>*, *عنك* *9anka, 9anki <9annak, 9annik>*).

- لدى* *lada* follows the pattern of *على* *9ala*:

على	<i>9alayya</i>	لدى	<i>ladayya</i>
علينا	<i>9alayna</i>	لديها	<i>ladayha</i>

- After *-ī/-ay* and the preposition *ب* *bi*, the suffixes *-hu, -huma, -hum* become *-hi, -hima, -him*:

فيه	<i>fīhi <fī></i>	فيهما	<i>fīhima</i>
به	<i>bihi <bī></i>	بهم	<i>bihim</i>
عليه	<i>9alayhi <9aláy></i>	عليهم	<i>9alayhim</i>
لديه	<i>ladayhi</i>	لديهم	<i>ladayhim</i>

17

التمارين

NB.: From this point forwards, all noun and adjective expressions in the exercises should be read as *nominative case* unless the grammar or spelling requires otherwise.



1. Read aloud:

e.g.: ما هو طلب المؤمن عليه؟ *mā huwa ṭalab al-mu'amman 9alayhi?*

(a) مأمور من مأموري القسم المالية (b) شركتان كبيرتان

- (c) الشركة مسؤولة عن دفع القسط. (d) متخصص في التأمين
(e) في مدرسة ابتدائية

2. Write:

e.g.: fī ḥālat al-kāriṭha ṭ-ṭabī9īya في حالة الكارثة الطبيعية

- (a) ma9a mufattisháy l-jumruk ar-ra'īsīyayn
(b) ma9a mufattishí l-jumruk ar-ra'īsīyīn
(c) intihā' al-9aqd
(d) fi s-sanati l-muqbila
(e) fi l-būlīṣatayn ash-shāmilatayn

3. Add the possessive suffix indicated. Read your answer aloud:

e.g.: taqīruhu huna. تقرير (هو) هنا. ← تقريره هنا.

fī taqīrihi في تقرير (هو) . ← في تقريره

- (a) وثيقة (انا)
(b) زملاء (انا)
(c) تخفيف قسط (هو)
(d) شروط مقبولة (هي)
(e) حسب بوليصة (هو)

4. Add the pronoun suffix indicated. Read your answer aloud:

e.g.: 9alayhim على (هم) ← عليهم

- (a) عند (هم)
(b) خلال (هي)
(c) مع (انا)
(d) بين (هما)

5. Write in the plural:

e.g.: المفتش الرئيسي ← المفتشون الرئيسيون

- (a) الوكيل المسؤول
(b) اجتماع هام
(c) ممثل مصري
(d) البوليصة المعقدة
(e) وكالة اجنبية

6. Write in the singular:

e.g.: زملاء جدد ← زميل جديد

- (a) المخاطرة الأجنبية
(b) الممثلون
(c) زميلات جديدات
(d) الوثائق الملحقة
(e) العقود المؤرخة امس

الدرس العشرون
ad-dars al- 9ishrūn . Lesson 20
النقل والمواصلات an-naql wa-l-muwāṣalāt
Transport and Communications

1.

جمل مثالية

- (a) شحن *shaḥn* load
بواسطة *bi-wāṣītat* by means of
نظرًا لـ *naẓaran li* in view of
حجم حجوم *ḥajm ḥujūm* volume, bulk
لحجمه الكبير. *senr sil al-shaḥn bi-wāṣītat al-ṭarīq naẓran li ḥajmihi l-kabīr.*

We shall send the load by road in view of its great volume.

- (b) تصل *taṣil* <tūṣil>
سفينة سفن *saḥīna sufūn* ship
اللاذقية *al-lādhīqīya* Latakia
يستغرق *yastaghriq* <yistaghriq>
تفتيش *taftīsh* inspection
على الأقل *ʿala l-ʿaḡall* at least
حصول على *ḥuṣūl ʿala* access to

تصل السفينة اليوم إلى اللاذقية وسيستغرق تفتيش الجمرک يومين على الأقل والحصول على البضائع قبل يوم الخميس غير ممكن.

taṣil as-saḥīna l-yawm ʿila l-lādhīqīya wa sa tastaghriq taftīsh al-jumruk yawmayn ʿala l-ʿaḡall wa l-ḥuṣūl ʿala l-baḡāʾi9 qabla yawm al-khamīs ghayr mumkin.
The ship will reach Latakia today, and customs inspection will take at least two days. Access to the goods is impossible before Thursday.

- (c) ناقلة *nāqila* freighter, tanker
ضخم ضخام *ḡakhm ḡikhām* huge
ناقلة ضخمة *nāqila ḡakhma* supertanker
نقل *naql* transport
بترویل *bitroul* oil (petroleum)
أحدث *ʾaḡdatha IV* to bring about
مستودع *mustawda9* container

كما غير إنشاء الناقلات الضخمة نقل البترول قد أحدث أيضًا استعمال المستودعات تغييرًا كاملاً في قطاع نقل البضائع.

kama ghayyar ʾinshāʾ an-nāqilāt Just as the creation of supertankers

aḍ-ḍakhma naql al-bitroul qad 'aḥdath
'ayḍan isti9māl al-mustawda9āt
taghyīran kāmīlan fī qitā9 naql
al-baḍā'i9. has changed the transport of oil, so
the use of containers has wrought a
complete change in the goods
transport sector.

(d) رابطة روابط *rābiṭa rawābiṭ* link
قمر صناعي *qamar šinā9ī* satellite
سلك أسلاك *silk 'aslāk* wire
لاسلكي *lāsilki* wireless, radio (adj.)
منذ إنشاء رابطة بواسطة قمر صناعي زادت مواصلاتنا اللاسلكية زيادةً
ملموسةً.

mundh 'inshā' rābiṭa bi wāsiṭat qamar
šinā9ī zādat muwāṣalātuna l-lāsilkiya
ziyādatan malmūsatan. Since the creation of a satellite link,
our radio communications have
increased appreciably.

(e) سكة سلك حديدية *sikka* (pl. *sikak*) *ḥadīdīya* railway
حدود *ḥudūd* (pl.) frontier
تكلّفنا *tukallīfuna* «*tkallīfna*»
عدم وجود سكة حديدية بين المنطقة الصناعية والحدود هو مشكلة
كبيرة علينا تكلّفنا كثيرًا.

9adam wujūd sikka ḥadīdīya bayna
l-minṭaqa ṣ-šinā9īya wa l-ḥudūd huwa
mushkila kabīra 9alayna tukallīfuna
kathīran. The absence of a railway between
the industrial area and the frontier
is a great problem to us, costing us
much.

2. مفردات إضافية – النقل والمواصلات
قطار قطر *qitār qutur* train مربوط *marbūṭ* linked
باخرة بواخر *bākhira bawākhir* ship جوي *jawwī* air (adj.)
شبكة شباك *shabaka shibāk* network بري *barrī* land (adj.)
طنّ أطنان *ṭunn 'atnān* ton(ne) بحري *baḥrī* sea (adj.)
خطّ جوي *khaṭṭ jawwī* airline وجّه *wajjaha* II to send
متر مكعب *mitr muka99ab* cubic metre على متن *9ala matn* on board
بوليصّة شحن *būlīṣat shaḥn* bill of lading, air waybill

النحو

3. Subject pronouns

The pronouns أنا *'ana*, هو *huwa*, هي *hiya* and هم *hum* are the same in
writing as in spoken Arabic. The other pronouns are:

1st person pl.: نحن *naḥnu* <'iḥna>
2nd persons: أنت *'anta* <'int>, أنتي *'anti* <'inti> أنتم *'antum* <'intū>

and one which is found only in writing:

3rd person dual (both of them): هما *huma* (m. and f., animate/inanimate)

The 2nd and 3rd person pl. forms given above are in fact m. pl.; throughout written Arabic, these forms apply to groups of male persons or mixed company. There exist other pronouns (2nd person m./f. dual, 2nd and 3rd persons f. pl.) too rare, even in writing, to concern us. These are explained in 26/13 for reference.

4. Principal parts of verbs

Principal parts are usually quoted in full pronunciation. For verbs with a sound final root letter, these parts have *-a* and *-u* respectively after that letter, thus:

Sound	كتب يكتب	<i>kataba yaktubu</i>	⟨katab yuktub⟩
Hamzated (i.e. one root letter is ء <i>hamza</i> *)	أخذ يأخذ	<i>'akhadha ya'khudhu</i>	⟨'akhadh yākhudh⟩
	سأل يسأل	<i>sa'ala yas'alu</i>	⟨sa'al yis'al⟩
	قرأ يقرأ	<i>qara'a yaqra'u</i>	⟨qara yiqra⟩
Initial- <i>w</i>	وصل يصل	<i>wašala yašilu</i>	⟨wiṣil yūṣal⟩
Hollow	قال يقول	<i>qāla yaqūlu</i>	⟨qāl yiqūl⟩
	باع يبيع	<i>bā9a yabī9u</i>	⟨bā9 yibī9⟩
	نام ينام	<i>nāma yanāmu</i>	⟨nām yinām⟩
Doubled	ظلّ يظلّ	<i>ḡalla yaḡallu</i>	⟨ḡall yīḡall⟩
Quadriliteral	ترجم يترجم	<i>tarjama yutarjimu</i>	⟨tarjam yitarjim⟩

(This is Form I/IQ; the rule applies equally to Forms II – X and IIQ.)

* In written Arabic, sound verbs with one root letter *hamza* (initial, medial or final) form their own class; see paragraph 5 below.

The root vowels of the written Form I verb are sometimes different from the vowel used in spoken Arabic:

وصل يصل *wašala yašilu* ⟨wiṣil yūṣal⟩
 عرف يعرف *9arafa ya9rifu* ⟨9irif ya9raf⟩

Good dictionaries (see paragraph 12 below) show these vowels.

In short pronunciation (i.e. when the verb is used in a sentence), the final *-a* and *-u* are retained only when a pronoun suffix is added; otherwise these final vowels are dropped. They are printed ^{superscript} in the tenses shown below.

In introducing new verbs of Form IV we shall no longer include the second principal part, since its prefix is regular (*yu-*) in written Arabic.

5. Tenses of verbs with a sound final radical

Typical tenses of such verbs:

Past:

Root ك ت ب , ي ك ت ب *kataba yaktubu* I <*katab yuktub*>:

كُتِبَ	<i>katabt^u</i>	كُتِبْنَا	<i>katabna</i>
كُتِبْتَ	<i>katabt^a</i>	كُتِبْتُمْ	<i>katabtum</i>
كُتِبْتُ	<i>katabti</i>		
كُتِبَ	<i>katab^a</i>	كُتِبُوا	<i>katabū</i>
كُتِبْتُمْ	<i>katabat</i>		

3rd person dual: m. كُتِبَا *katabā*, f. كُتِبَتَا *katabatā*, final 'alif pronounced long.

Present:

Root ك ت ب , ي ك ت ب *kataba yaktubu* I <*katab yuktub*>:

أَكْتُبُ	<i>'aktub^u</i>	نَكْتُبُ	<i>naktub^u</i>
تَكْتُبُ	<i>taktub^u</i>	تَكْتُبُونَ	<i>taktubūna</i>
تَكْتُبِينَ	<i>taktubīna</i>		
يَكْتُبُ	<i>yaktub^u</i>	يَكْتُبُونَ	<i>yaktubūna</i>
تَكْتُبْتُمْ	<i>taktub^u</i>		

3rd person dual: m. يَكْتُبَانِ *yaktubāni*, f. تَكْتُبَانِ *taktubāni*

Root أ ر س ل , ي ر س ل *'arsala yursilu* IV <*'arsal yursil*>:

أَرْسَلُ	<i>'ursil^u</i>	نَرْسَلُ	<i>nursil^u</i>
تَرْسَلُ	<i>tursil^u</i>	تَرْسَلُونَ	<i>tursilūna</i>
تَرْسَلِينَ	<i>tursilīna</i>		
يَرْسَلُ	<i>yursil^u</i>	يَرْسَلُونَ	<i>yursilūna</i>
تَرْسَلْتُمْ	<i>tursil^u</i>		

3rd person dual: m. يَرْسَلَانِ *yursilāni*, f. تَرْسَلَانِ *tursilāni*

Several things to bear in mind:

- See 15/7 for the choice of vowel (*a* or *u*) in the present prefix, and in the prefix of Forms V, VI and IIQ.
- In the present tense, the final *-i* of the هي form and of the dual forms, and the final *-a* of the endings *-īna* and *-ūna*, are retained, exceptionally, even in short pronunciation.
- The final *-u* or *-a* elsewhere are in short pronunciation kept only before a suffix.

- The final 'alif of وا (past tense, هم form) is silent.
- Hamzated verbs:
 - verbs with final-radical *hamza*, final-weak in spoken Arabic, follow the sound pattern in written Arabic:
قرأت *qara 't*^u (etc.), not <*qarayt*> (etc.) in the past.
 - أخذ يأخذ 'akhadha ya 'khudhu I and أكل يأكل 'akala ya 'kulu I are regular in written Arabic (not [*yākhudh*, *yākul*] etc.).
 - [hamza- 'alif-hamza] is always written آ 'alif-madda; this means that we write أخذ 'ākhudh, أكل 'ākul.
- Initial-w and doubled verbs do not fully conform; see below.

6. Initial-w verbs

The written initial-w verbs follow the sound pattern, except that in Form I the initial root letter و *w* is dropped in the present tense:

Root وصل يصل, وصل *waṣala yaṣilu* I <*wiṣil yūṣal*>:

أصل	'aṣil ^u	نصل	naṣil ^u
تصل	taṣil ^u	تصلون	taṣilūna
تصلين	taṣilīna		
يصل	yaṣil ^u	يصلون	yaṣilūna
تصل	taṣil ^u		

3rd person dual: m. يصلان *yaṣilāni*, f. تصلان *taṣilāni*

So also: وجد يجد *wajada yajidu* I to find
ورث يرث *waratha yarithu* I to inherit
وقف يقف *waqafa yaqifu* I to stop

Written Arabic also has a few rare verbs with initial root letter ي *yā*.

7. Doubled verbs

In written Arabic, the doubled verb rule (13/4) applies also to the past tense of Form I:

Root دلّ يدلّ, دلّ *dalla yadullu* I <*dall yidill*>:

دللت	dalalt ^u	دللنا	dalalna
دللت	dalalt ^a	دللتم	dalatum
دللت	dalalti		
دلّ	dall ^a	دلّوا	dallū
دلّت	dallat		

3rd person dual: m. دلّا *dallā*, f. دلّتا *dallatā*

(The *-ay-* of the spoken form is taken from the final-weak verbs.)

8. Increased forms

For the increased forms of all these verbs, use as base the models already known to you, bearing in mind the comments made above concerning the short final vowel before a suffix, and the vowel of the present prefix and of the prefix of Forms V, VI and IIQ.

9. Participles and verbal nouns

Form the participles and verbal nouns of these verbs on the models known to you, except that:

- root letter *hamza* does not 'soften' into *-y-* as it sometimes does in spoken Arabic:

سائل *sā'il* not *⟨sāyil⟩* (active participle Form I)

قراءة *qirā'a* not *⟨qirāya⟩* (verbal noun Form I)

- the active participle of Form I of hollow verbs also has *hamza* in the middle, not *-y-*: قائل *qā'il* not *⟨qāyil⟩*
- the active participle of Form I of doubled verbs follows the model حاطّ *ḥāṭṭ*:

Root شكّ → شاكّ *shākk* (not *⟨shākik⟩*).

In addition, remember that the participles and verbal nouns have a case-ending before a suffix (Lesson 19).

10. Imperative

The written imperative is rarely met outside literature and advertisement; it mostly resembles the spoken form. Examples:

- تفضلّ تفضّل تفضّلوا *tafaḍḍal/tafaḍḍalī/tafaḍḍalū* V (NB silent final 'alif in the plural)
- انظر انظري انظروا *unẓur/unẓurī/unẓurū* see ...q (in text references), from نظر ينظر *naẓara yanẓuru* I; see paragraph 11 below.
- قف *qif* Stopq (seen on traffic signs). This is the m. sing. imperative of وقف يقف *waqafa yaqifu* I. See paragraph 6 above, and also 5/9.

In written Arabic, only Form IV has *hamza* beginning its imperative; the imperatives of Forms I (NB), VII, VIII, IX and X have a weak vowel.

Compare أرسل *'arsil* IV send

with افتح *iftah* I open انظر *unẓur* I see (quoted above)

11. Use of certain verbs

Certain spoken-Arabic verbs are not used in writing, and vice versa. A few important differences:

- The written form of <qidir yiqdar> I is little used as a written auxiliary; we use instead a Form X hollow verb which we learn later.
- For <rāḥ yirūḥ> write ذهب يذهب dhahaba yadhhabu I.
- Do not write <shāf yishūf>; write نظر ينظر naḍara yanḍuru I for ~~to~~ seeq and إلى ينظر إلى naḍara yanḍuru I 'ila for ~~to~~ look atq We shall learn later a second, more common verb for ~~to~~ seeq

12. Use of the dictionary

Arabic dictionaries are of two kinds:

- The most recent dictionaries list entries alphabetically by words in both parts, as in European-language dictionaries. These later dictionaries present no special difficulty. A good word-based dictionary is the *Arabic Dictionary* (Arabic-English, English-Arabic) of N. Awde and K. Smith, pub. Bennett and Bloom.
- Traditional dictionaries, in the part translating from Arabic, list all words based on trilateral and quadrilateral roots alphabetically *by the root* and not by the word. Thus معلّم mu9allim, تعليم ta9līm and استعلم ista9lama are all listed under علم , before علن and its derivatives. Words not based on such roots are listed alphabetically among them. Remember that 'alif is not a root letter; weak root letters are always either و or ي. Root-letter hamza is listed under 'alif, wāw or yā', depending on its vowel. The most prestigious root-based Arabic-English dictionary is Hans Wehr's *Dictionary of Modern Written Arabic*, pub. Otto Harrassowitz, also Spoken Language Services Inc.

13.

التمارين



1. Read aloud:

e.g.: يصل بعد يومين. yaṣil ba9da yawmayn.

(b) المواصلات اللاسلكية
(d) على متن طائرة اليوم

(a) تسلّمت رسالتكم.

(c) قد قرأنا التقرير.

(e) أرسلناه بالبريد الجوي.

2. Write:

e.g.: qara'na shurūṭ ad-daf9 al-maktūba fī 9aḡḡihim.

قرأنا شروط اللدفع المكتوبة في عقدهم.

(a) wajjahū lī risāla ṭawīla maktūb fīha jadwal 'as9ārihim.

(b) al-ḡukūma taqūm bi tamdīd shabakat aṭ-ṭuruq ath-thānawīya.

(c) 'irsāl al-baḡā'i9 bi l-ḡajm yukallifuna 'aḡall mimma yukallif bi l-wazn.

(d) takūn būlīṣat ash-shaḡn 9ala matn bāḡhirat 'KOBI MARU' min Yokohāma.

(e) al-wizāra tanshur jadāwil aṣ-ṣādirāt 9āḡḡatan fī l-jarīḡatayn ar-rasmīyatayn.

3. Put into the plural:

e.g.: دخل ← دخلوا

(c) آخذ

(b) زار

(e) دلّ

(a) أنظر

(d) تقول

4. Put into the present tense:

e.g.: تكلمنا ← نتكلم

(c) حطّطتم

(b) ارسلوا

(e) صرنا

(a) بعنا

(d) (انا) استجوبت

5. Put into the past tense:

e.g.: يدخلون ← دخلوا

(c) يوجب على

(b) آخذ

(e) نستبدل

(a) يصلون

(d) نشك في

6. Give the principal parts, participles (m. sing.) and verbal noun:

e.g.: دبّر ← دبّر يدبّر، مدبّر مدبّر، تدبیر

(c) كان

(b) ارسل

(e) سأل

(a) ابتداء

(d) استورد

7. Give the root under which each word is found in a dictionary based on roots:

e.g.: قالوا ← قول

(c) مددتم

(f) استيراد

(j) اتخذنا

(b) انظر

(e) يخاف

(h) ازدياد

(a) استفاد

(d) يرث

(g) المسؤول

(k) اتفقنا

الدرس الحادي والعشرون
ad-dars al-ḥādī wa l-ʿiṣhrūn . Lesson 21
ادارة شؤون الموظفين 'idārat shu'ūn al-muwaḏḏafīn
Personnel Management

1. جمل مثالية
- (a) مؤكد من *muta'akkid min* convinced of, sure of
ظرف ظروف *ḍarf ḍurūf* condition, circumstance
سالم *sālīm* sound (adjective)
أيّد *'ayyada II* to support
تأييد *ta'yīd* support
تأييداً لـ *ta'yīdan li* in support of
- اننا متأكدون من ان قسم شؤون الموظفين يقوم بخدمة مهمة جداً وهي
 انشاء ظروف سالمة تأييداً للإنتاج.
- 'innana muta'akkidūn min 'anna We are convinced that Personnel
 qism shu'ūn al-muwaḏḏafīn yaqūm bi Department performs an important
 khidma muhimma jiddan u hiya 'inshā' service, i.e. the creation of sound
 ḍurūf sālīma ta'yīdan li l-'intāj. conditions in support of production.
- (b) صغير صغار *ṣaghūr ṣighār* (also) junior
 ستقوم الشركة بتوظيف عدد اضافي من العمال والموظفين الصغار
 خلال الشهرين المقبلين.
- sa taqūm ash-sharika bi tawḏīf ʿadad The company will recruit an
 'idāfī min al-ʿummāl wa l-muwaḏḏafīn additional number of workmen and
 aṣ-ṣighār khilāl ash-shahrayn junior staff during the next two
 al-muqbilayn. months.
- (c) أضرب *'aḍraba IV* to strike (from work)
إضراب *'iḍrāb* strike
سبب أسباب *sabab 'asbāb* cause
خلاف *khilāf* dispute
كبار *kibār* (in def. construct) senior, leading
مجلس إدارة *majlis 'idāra* board of directors
- الإضراب في قسم الإنتاج صار سبباً لخلاف شديد بين كبار ممثلي
 النقابة ومجلس الإدارة للشركة.
- al-'iḍrāb fī qism al-'intāj ṣār sababan li The strike in Production Department
 khilāf shadīd bayna kibār mumaththilī became the cause of a serious
 n-niqāba wa majlis al-'idāra dispute between the leading union
 li sh-sharika. representatives and the company's
board of directors.

(d)	قانون قوانين	<i>qānūn qawānīn</i>	law
	طبّق	<i>ṭabbaqa</i> II	to apply
	تطبيق	<i>taṭbīq</i>	application
	إجراءات	<i>'ijrā'āt</i>	(pl., also:) procedure
	تسوية	<i>tāswiya</i>	settlement (of problem etc.)
	شكوه شكوات	<i>shakwa shakawāt</i>	complaint
	سجّل	<i>sajjala</i> II	to register
	تسجيل	<i>tasjīl</i>	registration
	حسب قانون العمل عند العمّال حقّ تطبيق الإجراءات الموافق عليها لتسوية الشكوات بعد تسجيل شكوتهم.		

ḥasaba qānūn al-ʿamal 9inda l-9ummāl According to the Labour Law,
ḥaqq taṭbīq al-'ijrā'āt al-muwāfaq workers have the right to apply (of
9alayha li tāswiyat ash-shakawāt ba9da application of the agreed procedure
tasjīl shakwatihim. for settling complaints after
registration of their complaint.

(e)	رقيّ	<i>raqqa</i> II	to promote
	ترقية	<i>tārqiya</i>	promotion
	مرتفع	<i>murtáfi9</i>	high
	استقال	<i>istaqāla</i> * X	to resign
	استقالة	<i>istiqāla</i>	resignation

* from root قيل.

عدم وجود امكانيات الترقية في الأقسام الفنيّة هو سبب العدد المرتفع
للاستقالات عند كبار الموظفين في السنة الماضية.

9adam wujūd 'imkānīyāt at-tārqiya fi The lack of promotion possibilities in
l-'aqsām al-fannīya huwa sabab the technical departments is the
al-9adad al-murtáfi9 li l-istiqālāt 9inda cause of the high number of resig-
kibār al-muwaḏḏafīn fi s-sana l-māḏiya. nations among senior staff last year.

2. مفردات إضافية – إدارة شؤون الموظفين

وظيفة وظائف	<i>waḏīfa waḏā'if</i>	job	مؤهّل	<i>mu'ahhal</i>	qualified
مهنة مهنة	<i>mihna mihan</i>	profession	درجة	<i>daraja</i>	grade
راتب رواتب	<i>rātib rawātib</i>	salary	اجر اجور	<i>'ajr 'ujūr</i>	wages
عزل يعزل	<i>9azala ya9zilu</i> I	to dismiss	عزل	<i>9azl</i>	dismissal
شغل اضافي	<i>shughl 'iḏāfi</i>				overtime work
جدول رواتب	<i>jadwal rawātib</i>				pay scale
مؤهّلات	<i>mu'ahhilāt</i>				qualifications
بدل ابدال	<i>badal 'abdāl</i>				allowance

3. Object Pronouns

The object-pronoun suffixes added to verbs are identical to the pronoun suffixes added to prepositions, except for *لِي* *-lī* ~~meq~~. The verb gets full pronunciation before a suffix. Further, two endings of the past tense and the imperative are modified before a suffix:

- *-ū* (2nd person, m. pl. past) adds *و* *-ū*:
ساعدتموها *sā9adtumūna* *وَجَّهْتُمُوهَا* *wajjahtumūha*
- *-ū* (3rd person m. pl. past, and imperative) drops its silent 'alif:
انظروها *unḡurūha* *عزلوه* *9azalūhu*

4. Complements

Most verbs denoting 'being' or 'becoming' have a complement (see 2/6; it is also known as a *predicate*). The complement is either a noun or an adjective. Important verbs taking a complement include:

كان يكون	<i>kāna yakūnu</i> I to be
صار يصير	<i>sāra yaṣīru</i> I to become
ظلّ يظلّ	<i>ḡalla yaḡallu</i> I to remain
دام يدوم	<i>dāma yadūmu</i> I to persist, still to be
ما زال لا يزال	<i>mā zāla lā yazālu</i> I still to be
ما عاد لا يعود	<i>mā 9āda lā ya9ūdu</i> I to be no longer

The noun or adjective complement stands in the *accusative* case, and is normally indefinite (see 19/7):

كان مريضاً.	<i>kān marīḡan.</i> He was ill.
صرنا مرشّحين.	<i>ṣirna murashshaḡīn.</i> We became candidates.
صار وضع العمال واضحاً نتيجةً لتطبيق القانون الجديد.	<i>ṣār waḡ9 al-9ummāl wāḡḡhan naṡjatan li taṡbīq al-qānūn al-jadīd.</i> The workers'situation became clear as a result of the application of the new law.

Complements also occur in definite form, but these are rarer:

كان هو المدير/مديرنا.	<i>kān huwa l-mudīr/mudīrana.</i>
He was the director/our director.	

Complement rule: The complement of a verb stands in the accusative case.

For our requirements (short pronunciation, no pointing), this rule matters to us only when the complement has a m. indefinite acc. sing. ending (*-an*), a dual ending (*-ayn*), a sound m. pl. ending (*-īn*), or a possessive suffix (19/6).

The complement rule applies only after a verb; in a verbless sentence of the type

انا مبسوط 'ana mabsūt (1/6) the complement stands in the nominative.

Compare:

العامل غائب. *al-9āmil ghā'ib*. The workman is absent.

العامل كان غائبًا. *al-9āmil kān ghā'iban*. The workman was absent.

In 19/9 we learned that the dual and sound pl. endings *-ayn/-īn* drop their final *ن -n* from the theme of a construct:

صاروا موظفي الشركة. *ṣārā muwaḥḥafay ash-sharika*.

صاروا موظفي الشركة. *ṣārū muwaḥḥafī sh-sharika*.

The theme of a construct cannot have a *tanwīn* ending:

صار مديرًا. *ṣār mudīran*.

but:

صار مدير بنك. *ṣār mudīr bank*.

صارت سكرتيرة. *ṣārat sikritayra*.

but:

صارت سكرتيرة وزير. *ṣārat sikritayrat wazīr*.

5. Negatives

Verbs are negated with لا *lā* in the present tense and ما *mā* in the past:

ما دفعنا البدل. *mā dafa9na l-badal*.

لا ندفع البدل. *lā nadfa9 al-badal*.

We shall learn later a more common and stylish negative for verbs with past meaning.

The negative *⟨mish⟩* is not used in written Arabic. For the negative of **to be** in present time, the hollow verb ليس *laysa* I **not to be** is used. This verb is past tense in form but present in meaning. It is always pronounced with full final vowels:

لست *lastu* لسنا *lasna*

لست *lasta* لستم *lastum*

لست *lasti*

ليس *laysa* ليسوا *laysū*

ليست *laysat* I, you, he (etc.) am/is/are not

3rd person dual: m. ليسا *laysā*, f. ليستا *laysat*

This verb takes a complement, which goes into the accusative case:

ليس مريضًا. *laysa marīḍan*. He is not ill.

ليسوا غائبين. *laysū ghā'ibīn*. They are not absent.

The other use of *⟨mish⟩*, i.e. to negate adjectives and adverbs, is covered by غير *ghayr*; the negated word is put into the *genitive*:

زملأونا غير حاضرين. *zumalā'una ghayr ḥāḍirīn*.

وصلت لنا رسالة غير رسمية. *waṣalat lana risāla ghayr rasmīya.*

6. Interrogatives

The commonest interrogatives are:

Pronouns:	من <i>man</i> <mīn>	ماذا <i>mādhā</i> /mā <shū>
	لن <i>li man</i> <li mīn>	كم <i>kam</i>
Adjectives:	كم <i>kam</i>	أي <i>'ayy</i>
	من <i>man</i> <mīn>	
Adverbs:	كيف <i>kayfa</i> <kayf>	أين <i>'ayna</i> <wayn>
	متى <i>mata</i>	لماذا <i>li mādhā</i> /li mā <laysh>

Use them as you do their spoken equivalents (see 5/15), but note:

- after *kam* the noun stands in the *indefinite accusative* singular:
 كم مرشحًا حاضرون؟ *kam murashshaḥan ḥāḍirūn?*
kam is not used in written-language statements (see 2/9).
- *'ayy* has also non-interrogative-meaning, *anyq*
 أي واحد منهم *'ayy wāḥid minhum* any (one) of them
'ayy has an optional f. sing. form *أَيَّة* *'ayya*, not consistently used.
 Do not confuse *'ayy* which/anyq with *أي* *'ay* meaning *±e.q*
 أمس، أي يوم الأحد *'ams, 'ay yawm al-'aḥad* yesterday,
 i.e. Sunday

7. Sentence structure: statements

Arabic sentences expressing a statement can be either 'nominal' or 'verbal'.

8. Nominal sentences

See 15/9. A nominal sentence is one which follows the English pattern, with subject before verb:

رسالتكم وصلت أمس. *risālatukum waṣalat 'ams.*
 هي وصلت أمس. *hiya waṣalat 'ams.*

Sentences in which the verb is implied count as nominal sentences:

المرشحون هنا. *al-murashshaḥūn huna.*

A nominal statement may also be introduced by a conjunction. Some of these, based on the conjunctions *أَنَّ* *'anna* or *إِنَّ* *'inna*, behave in a special manner.

The most important such conjunctions are:

أَنَّ *'anna* that إِنَّ *'inna* (see below)
 لِأَنَّ *li 'anna* because (و)لَكِنَّ *(wa)lākinna* but

كَأَنَّ *ka 'anna* as if, as though

Note:

- إِنَّ *'inna* adds no meaning to the sentence; it merely announces that a nominal statement follows.
- With أَنَّ *'anna* and كَأَنَّ *ka 'anna* the indirect speech rule (4/7) applies.

The subject of the clause introduced by one of these conjunctions is always in the *accusative* case; if a pronoun, it is suffixed:

إِنَّ المندوبين وصلوا أمس. *'inna l-mandūbīn waṣalū 'ams.*
 إِنَّهُمْ وصلوا أمس. *'innahum waṣalū 'ams.*

Nominal sentence rule: In a sentence beginning with *'inna* or *'anna* or one of their derivatives, the subject stands in the accusative case.

Any complement follows its own rule, i.e. it remains nominative if the sentence has no verb, but becomes accusative if it follows a verb of being or becoming (paragraph 4 above):

ولكن المهندسين حاضرون. *walākinna l-muhandisīn ḥāḍirūn.*
 ولكنهم حاضرون. *walākinnahum ḥāḍirūn.*
 لأن المندوبين غائبون. *li 'anna l-mandūbīn ghā'ibūn.*
 لأن المندوبين كانوا غائبين. *li 'anna l-mandūbīn kānū ghā'ibīn.*

9. The conjunctions إِنَّ *'inna* and أَنَّ *'anna* and their derivatives have alternative forms when نـ *-nā* and ني *-nī* are suffixed:

انني	'innanī/'annanī	or	اني	'innī/'annī
اننا	'innana/'annana	or	انا	'inna/'anna

10. Verbal sentences

In a verbal sentence making a statement the verb comes earlier than the subject. The verb is always a stated (i.e. not implied) verb. In such sentences, when the subject is a noun, the verb is always singular, even if the subject is dual or plural (see 15/9). Since noun subjects are always 3rd person, this rule affects only verbs in the 3rd persons:

وصل المرشّحون أمس. *waṣal al-murashshahūn 'ams.*
 أعلن المدراء أن ... *'aḡlan al-mudarā' 'anna ...*

When the subject is an implied pronoun, the verb has its usual ending, including dual or plural if appropriate:

استقلنا استقالا استقالوا أمس. *istaqalna/istaqālā/istaqālū 'ams.*

An inanimate plural verb counts as singular:

وصلت الرسائل أمس. *waṣalat ar-risālāt 'ams.*

When the verb consists of more than one element (e.g. in the continuous past or the pluperfect tenses), only the first element precedes the subject in a verbal sentence. The other elements follow the subject and have full agreement with it:

كان العمال يضربون\أضربوا. *kān al-9ummāl yuḍribūna/'aḍrabū.*

The workmen were striking/had struck.

Similarly, when a subject has two verbs, only one can precede the subject. The other must follow the subject, with full agreement:

دخل العمال وبدأوا العمل. *dakhal al-9ummāl wa bada'u l-9amal.*

Verbal sentence rule: When the verb has a noun subject and precedes it, the verb stands in the singular even when the subject is dual or plural.

11. Future

The written equivalent of «*rāyih/rāḥ*» is the particle سوف *sawfa* or س *sa* immediately preceding the present tense (see 15/12):

سوف نقوم\سنقوم بتطبيق جدول الرواتب الجديد قريباً.
sawfa/sa naqūm bi taṭbīq jadwal ar-rawātib al-jadīd qarīban.

We can form a negative future with لا سوف *sawfa lā*:

سوف لا يضربون. *sawfa lā yuḍribūna.*

But this is not very common. We shall study later a commoner negative future.

12. قال يقول *qāla yaqūlu*

The verb قال يقول *qāla yaqūlu* is unique in that its conjunction for indirect speech is إن *'inna*, not أن *'anna* as for other verbs of speech:

أعلنوا أنهم موافقون. *'a9lanū 'annahum muwāfiqūn.*

but: قالوا إنهم موافقون. *qālū 'innahum muwāfiqūn.*

13. Sentence structure: questions

In written Arabic, questions are introduced by an interrogative word. Questions inviting an answer other than *yes* or *no* are introduced by the appropriate interrogative word, usually a pronoun or adverb such as in paragraph 6 above.

Questions inviting the answer *yes* or *no* must be introduced by one of the following interrogative particles:

هل *hal* (for affirmative questions only)

أ *'a* (for affirmative or negative questions)

دفعت الأجور. *dafa9t al-'ujūr.*

هل دفعت الأجور؟ *hal dafa9t al-'ujūr?*

أما دفعته؟ *'a mā dafa9taha?*

أ *'a*, being a one-letter word, is written as one with the following word. Its initial *hamza* is almost always written, for clarity.

We introduce indirect questions either by one of the interrogatives listed in Paragraph 6 above, or (for *yes/no* questions) by هل *hal* or إذا *mā 'idha*:

لا نعرف هل ما إذا تصل قريبًا. *lā na9rif hal/mā 'idha taṣil qarīban.*

The indirect speech rule (4/7) applies.

14. 'iyyā-

The written equivalent of the particle *iyyā-* (see 11/17) is إِيَّا... *'iyyā-* (NB: It has initial *hamza*, not a weak vowel). It is used in written Arabic when there are two direct-object pronouns:

سألونا إِيَّاه بعد المؤتمر. *sa'alūna 'iyyāhu ba9da l-mu'tamar.*

They asked us (about) it after the conference.

but not otherwise; the rule given in 11/17 does not apply. Compare written and spoken forms:

شرحه لنا. *sharaḥahu lana. <sharaḥ lana yyā.>*

This particle is far less common in written than in spoken Arabic.

15.

التمارين

1. Read aloud:

e.g.: هل كتبت الوزارة جوابًا إيجابيًا؟

hal katabat al-wizāra jawāban 'ijābīyan?

- (a) ان حل المشكلة يظهر لنا غير ممكن.
- (b) دمنا متأكدين من ضرورة التدخل.
- (c) هل تريد الإدارة استئناف المفاضات؟
- (d) أننا مسرورون جدًا باقتراحكم حول مقابل الشغل الإضافي.
- (e) أما تسلمت التقرير؟ اننا ارسلناه قبل اسبوعين.

2. Write:

e.g.: li mādhā lā tuwāfiq an-niqāba 9ala qtirāhina bi khuṣūṣ at-ta9wīd?

لماذا لا توافق النقابة على اقتراحنا بخصوص التعويض؟

- (a) mā ra'yuka ḥawl jadwal al-'abdāl al-jāriya?
- (b) hal naḥartum jadwal ar-rawātib li s-sanati l-muqbila?
- (c) 'inna sh-sharika lā turīd taṭbīq hādhihi l-'arqām al-jadīda.

- (d) sa yastaghriq al-'iḍrāb waqtan qaṣīran faqaṭ li 9adam ta'yīd an-niqābatayn.
 (e) 'innana na9tābir ṭalab al-9ummāl ghayr maqbūl.

3 Repeat the sentences of Ex. 2 in spoken Arabic:

- e.g.: li mādhā lā tuwāfiq an-niqāba 9ala qtirāḥina bi khuṣūṣ at-ta9wīd?
 – ḍaysh an-niqāba mā twāfiq 9ala qtirāḥna bi khuṣūṣ at-ta9wīd?

4. Make negative:

- e.g.: هو حاضر. ← ليس حاضراً.
 (a) استقبلته. (b) يستقبله. (c) يتمكن منه. (d) زميله مريض. (e) يهمننا كثيراً.

5. Make a question based on the underlined word or expression:

- e.g.: زاروا المصنع امس. ← متى زاروا المصنع؟
 (a) قمتم بإرسال الجواب. (b) نظرنا التظاهر.
 (c) هو غائب لأنه مريض. (d) باععه لزميله.
 (d) كانوا مأمورين في قسم المالية.

6. Recast the sentence, beginning with the verb:

- e.g.: المدراء اجتمعوا امس. ← اجتمع المدراء امس.
 (a) الممثلون ذهبوا الى المؤتمر.
 (b) المفتشون قرأوا الوثيقة بالتفصيل.
 (c) ممثلو الشركة قالوا ان الاتفاقية مقبولة.
 (d) الوزير يفهم تماماً ان الوضع معقد.
 (e) المتظاهرون خرجوا من المصنع ودخلوا الشارع الرئيسي.

7. Repeat the sentences of Ex. 6, beginning each one with ان :

- e.g.: المدراء اجتمعوا امس. ← ان المدراء اجتمعوا امس.

الدرس الثاني والعشرون
ad-dars ath-thānī wa l-ʿishrūn . Lesson 22
البتروال al-bitroul . Petroleum

جمل مثالية

1.

- (a) استكشف *istakshafa* X to explore
استكشاف *istikshāf* exploration
حفر يحفر حفر *ḥafara yaḥfiru* I, *ḥafr* to drill
بئر آبار *bi'r 'ābār* (f.) well
بعد أبعاد *bu9d 'ab9ād* distance
كيلومتر، كم *kīlūmitr* kilometre, km
ساحل سواحل *sāḥil sawāḥil* shore, coast
تم استكشاف هذا الحقل قبل عشرين سنة وحفرنا أول بئر تجريبية على بعد ثمانية كيلومترات من الساحل بعد سنتين.

tamm istikshāf hādhā l-ḥaql qabla 9ishrīn sana wa ḥafarna 'awwal bi'r
tajrībīya 9ala bu9d thamāniya kīlūmitrāt
min as-sāḥil ba9da sanatayn. This field was explored twenty years ago, and we drilled the first test well at a distance of eight km from the coast two years later (after two years).

- (b) نفط *naft* oil
نفط خام *naft khām* crude oil
ضغط *ḍagḥṭ* pressure
ضخ يضخ *ḍakhkha yaḍukkhū* I to pump
طلمبة *ṭulumba* pump
يمر النفط الخام تحت ضغط طبيعي الى محطة الإنتاج بواسطة انابيب ثابتة فمن المحطة نضخه بطلمبات حتى الناقلة.

yamurr an-naft taḥt ḍagḥṭ ṭabīʿī 'ila
maḥaṭṭat al-'intāj bi wāsiṭat 'anābīb
thābita fa min al-maḥaṭṭa naḍukhkhuhu
bi ṭulumbāt ḥatta n-nāqila. The crude oil travels (passes) to the production station under natural pressure through fixed pipes, and (so) from the station we pump it (with pumps) to the tanker.

- (c) جهاز اجهزة *jihāz 'ajhiza* installation, plant, rig
كرّر *karrara* II to refine
تكرير *takrīr* refining
جزأ *jazza'a* II to separate
زيت زيوت *zayt zuyūt* oil
زيت خام *zayt khām* crude oil
كسر كسور *kasr kusūr* fraction

زفت	<i>zift</i>	bitumen, tar
شحّم	<i>shaḥḥama</i> II	to lubricate
تشحيم	<i>tashḥīm</i>	lubrication
ديزل	<i>dīzil</i>	diesel
بترين	<i>binzīn</i>	petrol, gasolene
كيروسين	<i>kirusīn</i>	kerosene, paraffin
غاز	<i>ghāz</i>	gas

في جهاز التكرير يجرّئون الزيت الخام الى كسوره الثقيلة كالزفت والموم والزيوت التشحيم وإلى كسوره الخفيفة كالديزل والبترين والكيروسين والغاز.

fī jihāz at-takrīr yujazzi 'ūna z-zayt al-khām In the refinery they separate the
'ila kusūrihi th-thaqīla ka z-zift wa l-mūm crude into its heavy fractions such
wa zuyūt at-tashḥīm, wa 'ila kusūrihi as bitumen, wax and lubricating
l-khafīfa ka d-dīzil wa l-binzīn wa oils, and light fractions such as
l-kirusīn wa l-ghāz. diesel, gasolene, kerosene and
gas.

(d) منتج *mantūj* product
بتروكيميايات *bitrukīmiyā'īyāt* petrochemicals

في نفس الوقت تنفصل المنتجات الكيميائية للاستعمال في الصناعة.
فمع مرور الزمن صار انتاج البتروكيميايات اهم بكثير مما كان سابقاً
لاقتصاد صناعة النفط.

fī nafs al-waqt tanfaṣil al-matūjāt At the same time, the chemical
al-kīmīyā'īya li l-istiṣmāl fi ṣ-ṣinā'a. fa products for use in industry are
ma'a murūr az-zaman ṣār 'intāj separated. With the passage of
al-bitrukīmiyā'īyāt 'ahamm bi kathīr time, the production of petrochem-
mimma kān sābiqan li qtiṣād ṣinā'at icals has become much more
an-naft. important than previously for the
economy of the oil industry.

2. مفردات اضافية – البترول

جهاز حفر	<i>jihāz ḥafr</i>	drilling rig	حَقَّار	<i>ḥaḥḥār</i>	driller
طين	<i>ṭīn</i>	mud	زلزالي	<i>zilzālī</i>	seismic
برميل براميل	<i>barmīl barāmīl</i>	barrel	قوة	<i>qūwa</i>	power, strength
احتياطي	<i>iḥtiyātī</i>	reserve	قطر	<i>qaṭṭara</i> II	to distil
سوق	<i>sawwaqa</i> II	to market	استهلك	<i>istahlaka</i> X	to consume

النحو

3. Demonstratives

In the written demonstrative adjectives and pronouns, only the dual forms vary

for case (two forms for three cases):

	Singular		Plural
this/these	m. هذا <i>hādha</i>	f. هذه <i>hādhihi</i>	m./f. هؤلاء <i>hā'ulā'i</i>
that/those	m. ذلك <i>dhālika</i>	f. تلك <i>tilka</i>	m./f. أولئك <i>'ulā'ika</i>

Dual			
these two/ both these	nom.	m. هذان <i>hādhāni</i>	f. هاتان <i>hātāni</i>
	acc./gen.	m. هذين <i>hādhayni</i>	f. هاتين <i>hātayni</i>
those two/ both those	nom.	m. ذانك <i>dhānika</i>	f. تانك <i>tānika</i>
	acc./gen.	m. ذينك <i>dhaynika</i>	f. تينك <i>taynika</i>

The written demonstrative is used exactly in the same way as its spoken counterpart. The unwritten long *ā* can be pointed with small 'alif:

ذلك *dhālika* هؤلاء *hā'ulā'i*
'ulā'ika has an alternative spelling: أولئك.

4. Subjunctive

The *subjunctive* tense (in full terminology, the subjunctive mood of the present tense) is used for certain common structures. To form the subjunctive, take the present tense and:

- change the full-form ending *-u* to *-a* (pronounced in short pronunciation only before a suffix):

اكتب *'aktub^a*, تكتب *taktub^a*, يكتب *yaktub^a* (etc.)

- drop the final syllables نَ *-na* (2nd person f. sing.m, 2nd/3rd persons pl.) and نِ *-ni* (dual):

تكتب *taktubī*; تكتبوا *taktubū*, يكتبوا *yaktubū*;
تكتبنا *yaktubā*, تكتبنا *taktubā*

These rules are valid for all verbs, Forms I-X, IQ and IIQ, with a sound final root letter. Note especially the silent 'alif of وَا *-ū* which is not written before a suffix.

Negative future. The particle لن *lan* will notqis followed by a subjunctive verb.

This is commonly used as a negative of سوف *sawfa*. Examine:

سوف يبدأون الإنتاج. *sawfa yabda 'ūna l-'intāj.* } They will (not)
but: لن يبدأوا الإنتاج. *lan yabda 'u l-'intāj.* } start production.

Clauses of purpose. Clauses expressing purpose are mostly introduced by the one of the conjunctions (many of them synonyms, as you see):

أَنْ 'an so that, to لئلا li 'allā (= li 'an lā) so that... not

لِ li, لأن li 'an, كي kay, لكي li kay, حتى ḥatta so that

Do not confuse أَنْ 'an with أَنَّ 'anna (21/8). أَنْ does not take a pronoun suffix.

The verb expressing the purpose stands in the subjunctive in written Arabic:

ارسلنا التقرير لكي ينظروا النتائج. 'arsalna t-taqrīr li kay yanqūru

n-natā'ij. We sent the report for them to (so that they should) see the results.

أوقفنا الطلمبات لئلا يزيد الضغط. 'awfaqna t-ṭulumbāt li 'allā yazīd

aḍ-ḍaḡḡt. We stopped the pumps so that the pressure would not increase.

Indirect command and request. See 7/15. The conjunctions أَنْ 'an ḥatq and أَلَا 'allā ḥat ... notq (NB stress) introduce indirect command and request, expressed in written Arabic with the subjunctive:

طلبنا منهم أن لا يبدأوا الحفر. ṭalabna minhum 'an/'allā yabda'u

l-ḥafr. We asked them (not) to start (ḥat they should (not) start) the drilling.

The clause following any of these purpose or indirect-command conjunctions has verbal-sentence structure (21/10):

استعملنا طلمبات إضافية لكي يستأنف الحفارون الإنتاج.

ista9malna ṭulumbāt 'iḍāfiya li kay yasta'nif al-ḥaḡḡārūn al-'intāj.

We used extra pumps so that the drillers might resume production.

5. Auxiliary verbs

Many written verbs when used as auxiliaries are followed by أَنْ 'an plus the dependent verb in the subjunctive. Important auxiliaries of this type include:

- some used personally (i.e. with a 1st-, 2nd- or 3rd-person subject):

استطاع يستطيع	istaṭā9a yastaṭī9u X	⟨qidir yiqdar I⟩
(كان) يريد	(kān) yurīd IV	⟨(kān) yurīd IV⟩
حاول يحاول	ḥāwala yuḥāwilu III	⟨jarraḥ II, ḥāwal III⟩
فضل يفضل	faḍḍala yufaḍḍilu II	⟨faḍḍal II⟩
سمح يسمح لـ	samaḥa yasmaḥu I li	⟨samaḥ yismaḥ I li⟩

- some used impersonally (see below), the three commonest being:

(كان) يجب	(kān) yajib	⟨(kān) lāzim⟩
(كان) يجوز	(kān) yajūz	⟨(kān) mumkin⟩
(كان) يمكن	(kān) yumkin	⟨(kān) yumkin⟩

The clause following أَنْ 'an has verbal-sentence structure.

حاولوا أن يستبدلوا الطلمبة. ḥāwalū 'an yastabdilu t-ṭulumba.

لا نستطيع أن نزيد الإنتاج. lā nastaṭī9 'an nazīd al-'intāj.

ما سمحوا له أن يوقفها. mā samaḥū lahu 'an yūqifaha.

For كان يريد *kān yurīd*, the continuous past is preferred to the past:

كانا نريد ان نساعدكم. *kunna nurīd 'an nusā'idakum.*

يجب *yajīb*, يجوز *yajūz* and يمكن *yumkin* are always third person m. sing.

They have two uses; either in an impersonal structure:

يجب ان ترسله. *yajīb/yajūz/yumkin 'an tursilahu.*

You must/may/might send it. (It is obligatory/permitted/likely that ...)

or the person affected can be expressed as the object, thus:

يجب على *yajīb ʿala* يجوز لـ *yajūz li*

يمكن *yumkin* + direct object

يجب علينا ان نؤيده. *yajīb ʿalayna/yajūz lana/yumkinuna*

'an nu'ayyidahu. We must/may/might support him.

كان يجب (علينا) ان نستقبله. *kān yajīb (ʿalayna) 'an nastaqbilahu.*

We had to/were obliged to receive him.

6. In each case, an alternative structure is often used to replace the conjunction + verb with a verbal noun for the desired/preferred/obliged/permitted/likely etc. action. This verbal noun is always definite.

Examine and compare (V = conjunction + verb; N = verbal noun):

V: ما استطاعوا ان يتصلوا به. *mā staṭāʿū 'an yattāṣilū bihi.*

They could not (that they) contact him.

N: ما استطاعوا الاتصال به. *mā staṭāʿu l-ittiṣāl bihi.*

They could not contact (were not capable of contact with) him.

V: كان يجب ان نتخذ اجراءات ضرورية. *kān yajīb 'an nittākhidh 'ijrā'āt ḍarūrīya.* We had to (it was obligatory that we) take urgent measures.

N: كان يجب علينا اتخاذ اجراءات ضرورية. *kān yajīb ʿalayna ttikhādh*

'ijrā'āt ḍarūrīya. It was necessary for us to take urgent measures (The taking of urgent measures was ...).

7. When the auxiliary verb itself is situated in a verbal sentence, it also follows the verbal sentence rule shown in 21/10; this is important when the auxiliary is used in a compound tense:

كان المهندسون يريدون ان يبدأوا الحفر.

kān al-muhandisūn yūrīdūna 'an yabda'u l-ḥafr.

8. Comparison of adjectives

See 9/13, 14. All the rules for using the model 'akbar (etc.) for the comparative of

simple adjectives are valid also for written Arabic.

The feminine superlatives ending in *-a* are written with *'alif maqṣūra*, except for العليا (see 18/2, 3):

آسيا الصغرى *'āsiya ṣ-ṣughra* Asia Minor

The comparative of derived adjectives is different from the spoken construction. In written Arabic we use the comparative أكثر *'akthar* or اشدّ *'ashadd*; not following the adjective, but *preceding the corresponding noun* (verbal noun if the adjective is a participle), in the indefinite accusative, thus:

هذا أكثر ضرورةً. *hādha 'akthar ḍarūran* (greater in necessity) *ḍarūrī 'akthar*.

هو أكثر اجتهداً. *huwa 'akthar ijtihādan* (more) *mujtāhid 'akthar*.

Here *tanwīn* is an adverbial form, and is therefore pronounced.

9. Comparison of adverbs

For adverbs compounded with a noun, we form the comparative by putting أكثر *'akthar* after the noun, which must be indefinite:

بسهولة، بسهولة أكثر *bi suhūla, bi suhūla 'akthar*
easily (with ease), more easily (with more ease)
بالضبط، بالضبط أكثر *bi ḍ-ḍabṭ*, bi ḍabṭ 'akthar*
precisely, more precisely (with precision/more precision)

*see 17/11

For common adverbs ending *-an*, the comparative is the same as that of the adjective from which it is derived: كثيراً أكثر *kathīran/'akthar*, قليلاً أقلّ *qalīlan/'aqall*, شديداً اشدّ *shadīdan/'ashadd*. With less common adverbs of this type it is often better to use the device shown above:

سريعاً، بسرعة أكثر *sarīʿan, bi surʿa 'akthar* fast, faster
(with more speed)

or بصورة *bi ṣūra* with the appropriate comparative adjective:

بصورة أسرع *bi ṣūra 'asraʿ* faster (in a faster manner)

For the superlative, we must rephrase: *with more ... than all*

حللنا هذه المشكلة بسهولة أكثر من الكل.
ḥalalna hādhihi l-mushkila bi suhūla 'akthar min al-kull.

10. قد *qad*

In Lesson 15 we learned the use of قد *qad* with the past tense. لقد *laqad* is a synonym of قد *qad* in this usage:

(ل) قد تمت المفاوضات امس. (la) qad tammat al-muṣāwāḍāt 'ams.
 قد qad (not laqad) with the present tense means perhaps
 قد يحل المشكلة بتأييدكم. qad yaḥull al-mushkila bi ta 'yīdikum.

11.

التمارين

NB.: During this lesson we have progressively shown less pointing with *shadda* and *fatha tanwīn*. From this paragraph onwards, this pointing will be further reduced.



1. Read aloud:

e.g.: تنتج الشركة منتجات بترولية مختلفة. tuntij ash-sharika mantūjāt bitroulīya mukhtálifa.

- ظننا انه من الضروري ان يستمر البحث.
- اهتممت بدراسة الوثيقة اهتماما كاملاً.
- يقوم قسم الهندسة بدراسة الأرقام.
- هل تستطيع الشركة تحديد تنظيم اقسامها؟
- يخبرنا ممثلي شركة التسويق بأنها لن توظف اي ممثل اضافي خلال الصيف.

2. Write:

e.g.: lā yastaḥī9 al-muhandisūn 'an yabda'u l-9amalīyāt az-zilzālīya qabla ntiḥā' al-'amṭār.

لا يستطيع المهندسون ان يبدأوا العمليات الزلزالية قبل انتهاء الأمطار.

(a) yajūz li sh-sharika sti9māl jihāz ḥafr thālith fī ḥālat iktishāf iḥtiyāḥiyāt

'iḍāfiya fī l-qīṭā9 al-janūbī.

(b) 'inna t-taswīq lā tajrī bi suhūla taḥt tilka ḍ-ḍurūf al-fannīya.

(c) yumkin 'an yastaghriq al-ḥafr at-tajrībī waqtan ṭawīlan.

(d) laqad ḥāwalat al-buldān al-muntija li n-naḥṭ takhṭīf 'intājiha.

(e) yajūz lana 'an nastahlik 'akthar mimma stahlaknāhu fī s-sanati l-māḍiya.

3. Recast the sentence, beginning with the expression given in parentheses:

e.g.: (يجوز) يصل اليوم. ← يجوز ان يصل اليوم.

- (يجوز) يكتبون الجواب هذا الأسبوع.
- (لا يستطيع) يقول لي المبلغ.
- (تريد) الوكالة تقوم باستبدال ممثلها بالكويت.
- (نفضل) لا نتعاون في هذا الأمر.
- (يمكننا) هل نتكلم مع السلطات بخصوص الموضوع؟

4. Make plural:

e.g.: كان رئيس القسم يدرس الموضوع وقتنا طويلا.
← كان رؤساء الأقسام يدرسون المواضيع وقتنا طويلا.

- (a) انني مشغول جدا صباحا.
- (b) لا يمكنك ان تجد مشكلة في مثل هذه المسألة.
- (c) ما كان مستعدا ان يدفع المبلغ.
- (d) لا يزال الحفر التجريبي غير منتج.
- (e) ان الجانبين يحاولان ان يتعاونوا.

5. Recast the sentence, using a conjunction + verb:

e.g.: يجب عليه تغيير سياسته. ← يجب عليه ان يغير سياسته.

- (a) يطلبون منا تعاوننا.
- (b) لماذا لا يريد الاستفادة من هذه الفرصة؟
- (c) تفضل الشركة تطبيق اجراءات اخرى.
- (d) ماذا فهمت من قوله؟
- (e) يجب عليك تعبير عن رأيك.

6. Put the correct form of هذا (etc.) and ذلك (etc.) with each noun or noun expression:

e.g.: سيارة ← هذه السيارة، تلك السيارة

- (a) سيارتان
- (b) اشخاص
- (c) مدير البنك
- (d) مدرس
- (e) وقت

الدرس الثالث والعشرون
ad-dars ath-thālith wa l-9ishrūn . Lesson 23
من الصحف min aṣ-ṣuḥuf
From the Newspapers

NB.: In the reading passage of this lesson we meet a typeface used in the press.

1. للقراءة

(a) منظمة الصحة العالمية munaḍḍamat aṣ-ṣiḥḥa l-9ālamīya
World Health Organisation, WHO

قادمًا من qādīman min arriving from
الإمارات (العربية) المتحدة al-'imārāt (al-9arabīya) al-muttāḥida
United Arab Emirates

شقيق شقائق shaqīq shaqā'iq sister-(state etc.)

وصل الى بيروت مساء امس المدير الإقليمي لمنظمة الصحة
العالمية لشرق البحر الأبيض المتوسط قادمًا من دولة الإمارات
المتحدة الشقيقة. وغرض الزيارة يتعلق بالجولة التي يقوم بها
المدير في المنطقة لتفتيش مشاريع المنظمة.

waṣal 'ila bayrūt masā' 'ams al-mudīr al-'iqlīmī li munaḍḍamat aṣ-ṣiḥḥa l-9ālamīya li sharq al-baḥr -'abyaḍ al-mutawassiṭ qādīman min dawlat al-'imārāt al-muttāḥida sh-shaqīqa. wa gharaḍ az-ziyāra yata9allaq bi l-jawla llātī yaqūm biha l-mudīr fi l-minṭaqa li taftīsh mashārī9 al-munaḍḍama.

The Regional Director, Eastern Mediterranean, of the World Health Organisation arrived yesterday morning in Beirut from the (sister state of the) United (Arab) Emirates. The purpose of the visit has to do with the inspection tour of the organisation's projects which the director is making in the region.

(b) توجه الى tawajjaha V 'ila to make/head for
متوجهًا الى mutawajjihan 'ila (heading) for
طرابلس trāblus Tripoli
وفد وفود wafd wufūd delegation, mission
وزاري wizārī ministerial
الذي allādhī <illī>
منظمة الدول المصدرة للنفط munaḍḍamat ad-duwal al-muṣaddira li
(اوبيك) n-naftī ('oubek) Organisation of Petroleum Exporting Countries (OPEC)
نفي ينفي nafa yanfī I to deny, to repudiate
نفي nafy denial, repudiation

ادّعى	iddā9a VIII	to allege, to claim
ادّعاء	iddi9ā'	allegation, claim

غادر العاصمة امس متوجّهاً الى طرابلس تحت رئاسة وزير شؤون البترول وفد البحرين الى اجتماعات المؤتمر الوزاري الذي ستعقده منظمة الدول المصدرة للنفط (اوبيك) في العاصمة الليبية غداً. وقال الوزير الى ممثلي الصحافة الوطنية والدولية قبل المغادرة انه ينفي نفياً شديداً الادعاء ان قضية تخفيف الإنتاج تكون اهم موضوع البحوث.

ghādar al-9āšima 'ams mutawajjihan 'ila trāblus taht riyāsat wazīr shu'ūn al-bitroul waḥd al-baḥrayn 'ila jtimā9āt al-mu'tāmar al-wizāri llādhi sa ta9qiduhu munaḍḍamat ad-duwal al-muṣaddira li n-naft ('oubek) fi l-9āšima l-lībiya ghadan. wa qāl al-wazīr 'ila mumaththilī ṣ-ṣaḥāfa l-waṭanīya wa d-duwalīya qabla l-mughādara 'innahu yanfī nafyan shadīdan al-iddi9ā' 'anna qaḍīyat takhḥīf al-'intāj takūn 'ahamm mawḍū9 al-buḥūth.

Led by (Under the leadership of) the Minister of Petroleum Affairs, the Bahrain delegation left the capital yesterday for Tripoli for the meetings of the ministerial conference to be held by the Organisation of Petroleum Exporting Countries (OPEC) in the Libyan capital tomorrow. Before departure, the minister told representatives of the national and international press that he strongly denied the allegation that the question of reducing production will be the main topic of discussion (the discussions).

(c)	ابو ظبي	'abū ḍabī	Abu Dhabi
	سعادة	sa9āda	= سيادة siyāda
	المقررة عقده	al-muqarrara 9aqduhu	which it has been decided to hold (the holding of which has been decided)
	مقرّ مقارّ	maqarr maqārr	headquarters
	امانة	'amāna	secretariat
	قاد يقود	qāda yaqūdu I	to lead, to head
	نيابة عن	niyābatan 9an	deputising for

غادر ابو ظبي صباح امس سعادة وزير المواصلات والنقل على رأس وفد دولة الإمارات للاجتماعات السنوية لمجلس الاقتصادي العربي المقررة عقدها بمقر الأمانة العامة لجامعة الدول العربية بعد غداً. ويقود الوفد وزير المواصلات والنقل نيابة عن سعادة وزير الاقتصاد والتجارة.

ghādar 'abū ḍabī ṣabāḥ 'ams sa9ādat His Excellency the Minister of

wazīr al-muwāṣalāt wa n-naql 9ala ra's
wafd dawlat al-'imārāt li l-ijtimā'9āt
as-sanawīya li l-majlis al-iqtisādī l-9arabī
l-muqarrara 9aqduha bi maqarr al-'amāna
l-9amma li jāmi'at ad-duwal al-9arabīya
ba9da ghadan. wa yaqūd al-wafd wazīr
al-muwāṣala wa n-naql niyābatan 9an
sa9ādat wazīr al-iqtisād wa t-tijāra.

Communications and Transport left
Abu Dhabi yesterday morning
heading the Emirates delegation to
the annual meeting of the Arab
Economic Council which it has
been decided to hold at the head-
quarters of the General Secretariat
of the League of Arab States the
day after tomorrow. In leading the
deputation the Minister is
deputising for H. E. the Minister of
Economy and Trade.

(d)	جری یجری	<i>jara yajrī</i> I	⟨jara yijrī⟩
	امریکی	<i>'amrīkī</i>	⟨'amayrkī⟩
	بدل	<i>baddala</i> II	to exchange
	تبدیل	<i>tabdīl</i>	exchange
	طور	<i>ṭawwara</i> II	to develop
	تطوير	<i>taṭwīr</i>	development
	مورد موارد	<i>mawrid mawārid</i>	resource
	طاقة	<i>ṭāqa</i>	energy
	اتم	<i>'atamma</i> IV	to conclude/complete

تجري بين الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية واليابان منذ شهر بحوث
من أجل عقد اتفاقية لتبادل المعلومات الفنية المتعلقة بتطوير
موارد جديدة للطاقة ومن المحتمل ان تتم الحكومتان مفاوضة
الموضوع في وقت قريب.

tajrī bayna l-wilāyāt al-muttāhida
l-'amrīkīya wa l-yābān mundhu shahr
buḥūth min 'ajl 9aqd ittifāqīya li tabdīl
al-ma'9lūmāt al-fannīya l-muta'9alliqa
bi taṭwīr mawārid jadīda li ṭ-ṭāqa wa min
al-muḥtāmāl 'an tutimm al-ḥukūmatān
mufāwaḍat al-mawḍū'9 fī waqt qarīb.

Talks have been going on
(flowing) for a month between the
United States of America and
Japan with a view to concluding an
agreement for the exchange of
technical information concerning
the development of new energy
resources. It is likely that both
governments will conclude negotia-
tion on (ʔf) the matter soon.

النحو

2. Relative pronoun

The written equivalent of ⟨illī⟩ is الذي *allādhī*, which agrees in gender and
number with its antecedent, but varies for case only in the dual:

	Masculine	Feminine
Sing., all cases	الَّذِي <i>alládhī</i>	الَّتِي <i>allátī</i>
Dual, nom.	الَّذَانِ <i>alladhāni</i>	الَّتَانِ <i>allatāni</i>
acc./gen.	الَّذَيْنِ <i>alladhayni</i>	الَّتَيْنِ <i>allatayni</i>
Pl., all cases	الَّذِينَ <i>alladhīna</i>	الَّلَوَاتِي <i>allawātī</i>

The double لَ *lām* written in the dual and in the feminine plural is pronounced like the لَ *lām-shadda* elsewhere.

الَّذِي *alládhī* (etc.) is used exactly as is *‘illī* in spoken Arabic:

هذه هي الوثيقة التي قرأت عنوانه فيها.

hādhīhi hiya l-wathīqa llátī qara’t 9unwānahu fīha.

هذا تقرير لا يستطيع ان اعتمد عليه.

hādhā taqrīr lā ‘astaqī9 ‘an

‘a9tāmid 9alayhi.

من الذي مسؤول عن هذا؟ *man alládhī mas’ul 9an hādhā?*

ما هي الأرقام التي تشك فيها؟ *mā hiya l-‘arqām allátī tashukk fīha?*

When the antecedent is the whole preceding clause, we provide an all-purpose antecedent, الأمر *al-‘amr*:

مرض المدير الأمر الذي عقد مفاوضاتنا.

mariḍ al-mudīr, al-‘amr alládhī 9aqqad mufāwaḍātina.

3. Final-weak verbs

Look again at Lesson 8 to identify these verbs. Whereas in spoken Arabic this sub-class includes also verbs with final root letter *hamza*, in written Arabic it does not (see 20/5). The final root letter of all written final-weak verbs is و *wāw* or ي *yā’*.

4. The two tenses of final-weak verbs have, in the first and second persons sing. and pl., the usual endings (i. e. those of the sound verbs, as in spoken Arabic). Short pronunciation operates with these endings as usual. The only likely difficulty is the pronunciation and spelling of the final root letter.

5. Form I of final-weak verbs

In 8/7, we have instructions concerning the form of the final root letter in the past tense. For the written final-weak verbs, read those instructions as follows:

Past:

- for ⟨ay⟩ (1st and 2nd persons sing. and pl.):
in final-*wāw* و verbs: َو -aw-; in final-*yā* ي verbs: َيَ -ay-
- for ⟨-a⟩ (3rd person m. sing.): اَ -a
- before personal endings ت -at and و -ū, the root letter disappears as in spoken Arabic (final-weak verb rule, 8/10). It disappears also before the feminine dual ending تا -atā.

(For verbs of the type نسي *násiya* [⟨nisī⟩, 8/9], read the three indents mentioned as يَ -ī, يَ -iya and – [‘root letter disappears’] respectively.)

For the present tense, substitute the form of the final root letter given in 8/8 as follows:

Present:

- final-*wāw* و verbs: َو -ū
- final-*yā* ي verbs: َيَ -ī
- final-*yā* ي verbs like ينسى *násiya yansa* I: اَ -a

These are dropped before the personal endings ين -īna, ون -ūna.

6. The written language pronounces *ay* and *aw* for *ī* and *ū* respectively in many positions; but *ī* and *ū* are used and accepted by almost all educated speakers even if not always strictly correct.

7. Important final-weak verbs in Form I, in both tenses (full written pronunciation, for the record):

Final root letter و *wāw*:

	رجا يـرجو	<i>raja yarjū</i> to request
	دعا يدعو	<i>da9a yad9ū</i> to summon
	عفا يعفو ل	<i>9afa ya9fū li</i> to excuse
Past:	عفوت 9afawt ^u	عفونا 9afawna
	عفوت 9afawt ^a	عفوتتم 9afawtum
	عفوت 9afawti	
	عفا 9afa	عفوا 9afaw
	عفت 9afat	
3rd person dual: m. عفوا 9afawā, f. عفتا 9afatā		
Present:	اعفو 'a9fū	نعفو na9fū
	تعفو ta9fū	تعفون ta9fūna
	تعفين ta9fīna	
	يعفو ya9fū	يعفون ya9fūna

تعفو *ta9fū*

3rd person dual: m. يعفوان *ya9fuwāni*, f. تعفوان *ta9fuwāni*

Final root letter ي *yā'*:

رمى يرمي	<i>rama yarmī</i> to throw
جرى يجري	<i>jara yajrī</i> to flow
نفي ينفي	<i>nafa yanfī</i> to deny, repudiate
حكى يحكي	<i>ḥaka yaḥkī</i> to narrate*
مشى يمشي	<i>masha yamshī</i> to walk

* NB meaning. The written verb to speak is تكلم *takallama* V.

Past:	مشيت <i>mashayt^u</i>	مشينا <i>mashayna</i>
	مشيت <i>mashayt^a</i>	مشيتم <i>mashaytum</i>
	مشيت <i>mashayti</i>	
	مشى <i>masha</i>	مشوا <i>mashaw</i>
	مشت <i>mashat</i>	

3rd person dual: m. مشيا *mashayā*, f. مشتا *mashatā*

Present:	امشي <i>'amshī</i>	تمشي <i>namshī</i>
	تمشي <i>tamshī</i>	تمشون <i>tamshūna</i>
	تمشين <i>tamshīna</i>	
	يمشي <i>yamshī</i>	يمشون <i>yamshūna</i>
	تمشي <i>tamshī</i>	

3rd person dual: m. يمشيان *yamshiyāni*, f. تمشيان *tamshiyāni*

Final root letter نسي *násiya*, pattern نسي *násiya*:

نسي ينسى	<i>násiya yansa</i> to forget
بقي يبقى	<i>báqiya yabqa**</i> to remain
رضي يرضى ب	<i>rāḍiya yarḍa bi</i> to approve of, be satisfied with
لقي يلقي	<i>lāqiya yalqa</i> to meet

** This verb can have an accusative complement: باقي فقيرا *báqiya faqīran*.

Past:	نسي <i>nasī^u</i>	نسي <i>nasīna</i>
	نسي <i>nasī^a</i>	نسيتم <i>nasītum</i>
	نسي <i>nasīti</i>	
	نسي <i>násiya</i>	نسوا <i>nasū</i>
	نسي <i>násiyat</i>	

3rd person dual: m. نسيا *násiyā*, f. نسيئا *násiyatā*

Present:	انسى <i>'ansa</i>	ننسى <i>nansa</i>
	تنسى <i>tansa</i>	تنسون <i>tansawna</i>

تَنسَيْنَ *tansayna*

يَنسَى *yansa* يَنسَوْنَ *yansawna*

تَنسَى *tansa*

3rd person dual: m. يَنسَيَانِ *yansayāni*, f. تَنسَيَانِ *tansayāni*

Final root letter ي , with *-a* in both principal parts:

سَعَى *sa9a* سَعَى إِلَى *yas9a 'ila* to strive for

Past: سَعَيْتَ *sa9ayt* سَعَيْنَا *sa9ayna*

سَعَيْتَ *sa9ayt* سَعَيْتُمْ *sa9aytum*

سَعَيْتَ *sa9ayti*

سَعَى *sa9a* سَعَوْا *sa9aw*

سَعَتْ *sa9at*

3rd person dual: m. سَعَيَا *sa9ayā*, f. سَعَتَا *sa9atā*

Present: اَسْعَى *'as9a* نَسْعَى *nas9a*

تَسْعَى *tas9a* تَسْعَوْنَ *tas9awna*

تَسْعَيْنَ *tas9ayna*

يَسْعَى *yas9a* يَسْعَوْنَ *yas9awna*

تَسْعَى *tas9a*

3rd person dual: m. يَسْعَيَانِ *yas9ayāni*, f. تَسْعَيَانِ *tas9ayāni*

8. Certain spelling rules apply, for final *-a* in Form I:

- When final root letter و *wāw* changes to *a*, it is always spelt with ا *'alif*.
See رَجَا *raja* etc. in paragraph 7 above.
- When final root letter ي *yā* changes to *a*, it is spelt with ي *'alif maqṣūra* when no suffix follows, but with ا *'alif* before a suffix (since *'alif maqṣūra* occurs only finally):

نَفَى *nafa* he denied but: نَفَاهُ *naḡāhu* he denied it

9. Increased forms

The principal parts of the increased forms have only the endings -ا *-a* or -ي *-ī*, the vocalised final root letter following the final-weak verb rule (8/10):

II رَبَّى يَرْبِي *rabba yurabbī*

III نَادَى يَنَادِي *nāda yunādī*

IV أَعْطَى يُعْطِي *'a9ṭa yu9ṭī*

V تَلَقَّى يَتَلَقَّى *talaqqa yatalaqqā* to acquire, to receive

VI تَعَاثَى يَتَعَاثَى *ta9āṣa yata9āṣa*

VII انْقَضَى يَنْقَضِي *inqāḡa yanqāḡī* to be finished

VIII اشْتَرَى يَشْتَرِي *ishtāra yashtārī* (NB stress in present)

	ادّعى يدّعي	<i>iddá9a yaddá9ī</i> to allege
X	استثنى يستثنى	<i>istathna yastathnī</i>

The special stress of Forms VII and VIII, studied in Lesson 13, applies in written Arabic too, except that the written present tense of VIII also has the irregular stress.

The ى 'alif *maqṣūra* of all increased forms, irrespective of the original final root letter, changes to ا 'alif when a suffix is added.

10. Participles of final-weak verbs, Form I

The masculine active participle of final-weak Form I is anomalous:

Root رمى يرمى رمى *rama yarmī* I:

m. sing. indefinite:	رامٍ	<i>rāmīn</i>
m. sing. definite:	الرامي	<i>ar-rāmī</i>
m. pl.:	(ال)رامون\ين	<i>(ar-)rāmūn/in</i>
f. sing.:	(ال)رامية	<i>(ar-)rāmīya</i>
f. pl.:	(ال)راميات	<i>(ar-)rāmīyāt</i>

These are the nom. forms (with also the gen. of the masc. pl.). The other forms, including the dual, are too rare to concern us.

It is to this group that participles like the following belong:

فاضٍ (الفاضي)	<i>fāḍīn (al-fāḍī)</i>
ماضٍ (الماضي)	<i>māḍīn (al-māḍī)</i>
ماشٍ (الماشي)	<i>māshīn (al-māshī)</i>
جارٍ (الجارّي)	<i>jārīn (al-jārī)</i>

The Form I passive participle has the patterns *marjūw* for final-*wāw* verbs and *mansīy* for final-*ya'* verbs. Otherwise it is regular:

Root رجو:	مرجوّ	<i>marjūw</i> requested
Root نسي:	منسيّ	<i>mansīy</i> forgotten
Root نفى:	منفيّ	<i>manfīy</i> denied, repudiated

It is common to ignore the ending of the indefinite form in pronunciation and to pronounce the definite form ending throughout.

11. Participles of final-weak verbs: increased forms

In Forms II-X, the active participle has the same endings as in Form I:

Root أرضى ,رضي IV to satisfy:

m. sing. indef.:	مرضٍ	<i>murḍīn</i>
m. sing. def.:	المرضي	<i>al-murḍī</i>
f. sing.:	(ال)مرضيّة	<i>(al-)mūrḍīya</i>

In the passive participle, the indefinite m. sing. has *fatha tanwīn*:

Root استثنى, ثنى X:

m. sing. indef.:

مستثنى mustathnan

m. sing. def.:

المستثنى al-mustathna

Root ربى, ربو II:

m. pl.:

مرّبون murabbūn/īn

f. sing.:

مرّبة murabbā

f. pl.:

مرّبات murabbāt

The comment made at the end of paragraph 10 above applies here.

12. Verbal nouns of final-weak verbs

The spoken Arabic models for the verbal nouns are all valid for written Arabic, except Forms V and VI, whose verbal noun has the same endings as the masculine singular active participle:

تلقى يتلقى talaqqa yatalaqqā V to acquire:

تلق (التلقى) talaqqin (at-talaqqī) acquisition

تلاقى يتلاقى talāqa yatalāqa VI to encounter:

تلاق (التلاقي) talāqin (at-talāqī) encounter

The comment made at the end of paragraph 10 above applies here.

13. Subjunctive of final-weak verbs

Derive the subjunctive of final-weak verbs also from the present tense. Take the present-tense endings and:

- change final ي *-ī* to *-ī/-iya* and و *-ū/-uwa* (*-iya* and *-uwa* only in short pronunciation before a suffix, and not always then):

لا يستطيع ان ينفيه. lā yastaṭī9 'an yānfīyahu*/yanfīhi.

⟨mā yiqdar yinfī.⟩ He cannot deny it.

لا يستطيع ان يرجوه. lā yastaṭī9 'an yārjuwahu*.

⟨mā yiqdar yirjū.⟩ He cannot request it.

*Where appropriate, the stress moves back.

- change ي *-ī*, ا *-ā* and ون *-ūna/-awna* respectively to ي *-ī*, ا *-ā* and و *-ū/aw* (spelt و before a suffix):

يمكن ان ينسوا. yumkin 'an yansaw/yansū.

⟨yumkin yinsū⟩ They may forget.

- leave other endings unchanged:

لن ننساه. lan nansāhu. We shall not forget it.

14. Use of the dictionary

When using a root-based dictionary, remember that the final root letter of a final-weak root must be و *wāw* or ي *yā'*; it will not be listed as 'alif. Some final-weak verbs have alternative roots or principal parts in Form I, with either و *-ū* or ي *-ī*.

15. Pronoun suffixes

See paragraphs 8 and 9 above. The final-weak verb-endings ي *-ī* and -iya are not 'alif *maqṣūra*, so the *yā'* is retained before a suffix:

لَقِينَا *lāqiyana* يَرْمِيهِ *yarmīhi**

* -*hu* becomes -*hi* also after verb-endings -*i*, -*ī* or -*ay* (19/14, 16).

16

التمارين

1. Read aloud:

e.g.: نرجو منكم القيام بدراسة الوثائق قبل بحثنا.
narjū minkum al-qiyām bi dirāsat al-wathā'iq qabla buḥūthina.

- ان دراستنا لا تزال تجري قدما وسننشر النتائج في الشهر المقبل.
- تلقي اللجنة اعضاء الحكومة بعد البحوث الجارية.
- لا يبقى الا عدد صغير من التفاصيل يجب ان نشرحها.
- يسعى مدراء البنك الى ان ينشروا تقريرهم قبل رأس السنة.
- علينا ان نستغني عن تعاون هذا المأمور.

2. Write:

e.g.: kama sharah al-mushrif, al-mawḍū9 laysa basīṭan.

كما شرح المشرف الموضوع ليس بسيطا.

- tas9a l-ḥukūma 'ila tanḡīm al-mu'tamar fī 'aqrab waqt mumkin.
- tajri l-mufāwaḍāt allātī qāmat biha l-ḥukūmatān jāryan ghayr murḍin.
- man allādhī da9a l-mandūbīn li l-ijtimā9 al-istithnā'ī?
- mā hiya l-ma9lūmāt allātī ṭalabat-ha l-'amāna minna?
- nasi 'a9ḍā' al-wafd 'ahamm shay' fī barnāmajihim.

3. Put into the present tense:

e.g.: رضي مندوبو الشركة باقتراحنا فورا.
← يرضى مندوبو الشركة باقتراحنا فورا.

- نادت الحكومة مسؤولين عرفوا ماذا حدث.
- اشتروا مهما احتاجوا اليه.
- ما تمكنا من برهان على قوله.

- (d) ما زال هذا ادعاءً شديداً ضد احزاب المعارضة.
 (e) نفوا كل ما ادعينا.

4. Join the two sentences as a relative expression:

- e.g.: سيشير الرئيس الى الوضع في السوق. هذا مهم جداً.
 ← سيشير الرئيس الى الوضع في السوق (الأمر) الذي مهم جداً.
 (a) لماذا لا ينشرون التقرير؟ حضره المتخصص.
 (b) ادعاه. هل تصدق؟
 (c) دعا المدير المشرف. كان المشرف ينتظر خارج المكتب.
 (d) لا يمكن الاعتماد عليه. يقول مثل هذا.
 (e) ما صار للبناية؟ كان يسكن فيها.

5. Give the root under which each word is found in a root-based dictionary:

- e.g.: ادعاء ← دعو
 (a) جارٍ
 (b) الساعون
 (c) مرضٍ
 (d) الباقية
 (e) يتلقون

الدرس الرابع والعشرون

ad-dars ar-rābi9 wa l-9ishrūn . Lesson 24

المراسلة al-murāsala . Correspondence

NB.: In the reading passage of this lesson we read the style of writing known as *ruq9a*. This is a common educated style of handwriting which you need to be able to read. The text is shown in a printed form of *ruq9a*, with some handwriting. Note especially these final/isolated *ruq9a* forms:

ش ش م ض ض ح ق و و ن ن ن

1. للقراءة

(a)	حديث حداث	<i>ḥadīth ḥidāth</i>	modern
	حدّ يحدّ	<i>hadda yaḥuddu</i>	I to limit
	محدود	<i>maḥdūd</i>	limited
	١٩		19
	تحية	<i>taḥīya</i>	greeting
	تحية طيبة وبعد	<i>taḥīya ṭayyiba wa ba9du</i>	Dear ...
			(see para. 2 below)
	موفق	<i>muwaffaq</i>	successful

السيد بيتر براون
شركة المواصلات الحديثة المحدودة في عمان

عمان في ١٩ شباط

تحية طيبة وبعد
اشكركم قلبيا على الزيارة التي قمتم بها خلال الأسبوع
الماضي وأعتبر أنه ستكون هناك فرصة للتعاون التدريجي
الموفق بيننا وبين شركتكم.

as-sayyid Peter Brown, sharikat
al-muwāṣalāt al-ḥadītha l-maḥdūda
fī 9ammān. 9ammān fī tis9at9ashr shubāṭ.
taḥīya ṭayyiba wa ba9du.
'ashkurukum qalbīyan 9ala z-ziyāra llātī
qumtum biha khilāla l-'usbū9 al-māḍī wa
'a9tābir 'annahu sa takūn furṣa li t-ta9āwun
at-tadrībī l-muwaffaq baynana wa bayna
sharikatikum.

Mr Peter Brown, Modern Com-
munications Ltd., Amman.
Amman, 19 February.
Dear Mr Brown,
My sincere (cordial) thanks for the
visit which you made last week. I
consider that there will be opportu-
nity for successful training cooper-
ation between your company
and ourselves.

شكّل	shakkala II	to form, to constitute
حاليًا	ḥālīyan	at present
درّب	darraba II	to train
مدرّب	mudarrib	trainer, instructor
قطع ينظر عن	qaṭa9a yaqṭa9u I an-naḍar 9an	to overlook, to neglect, to lose sight of
قصد	qaṣd	purpose
أساسي	'asāsī	(also:) essential

انني اعتقد ان مثل هذا التعاون يشكل فرصة ممتازة لتقوية الاتصال بين القطاع الخاص والقطاع التعليمي وهذا هو ما نحتاج اليه صناعتنا احتياجا كبيرا الآن وصناعتنا تمر حاليا بأوقات صعبة ومن الجانب الآخر من الممكن ان مدرسينا يقطعون النظر عن قصتنا الأساسي وهو تأييد صناعتنا.

'innanī 'a9tāqid 'anna mithla hādha t-ta9āwun yushakkil furṣa mumtāza li tāqwiyyat al-ittiṣāl bayna l-qitā9 al-khāṣṣ wa l-qitā9 at-ta9līmī wa hādha huwa mā taḥtāj 'ilayhi ṣinā9atuna ḥtiyājan kabīran al-'ān wa ṣinā9atuna tamurr ḥālīyan bi 'awqāt ṣa9ba wa min al-jānib al-'ākhar min al-mumkin 'anna mudarribīna yaqṭa9ūna n-naḍar 9an qaṣdīna l-'asāsī wa huwa ta'yīd ṣinā9atina.	I believe that such cooperation is (constitutes) an excellent opportunity to strengthen the contact between the private and the educational sectors. This is what our industry greatly needs at the moment. Our industry is passing through difficult times at present. On the other hand it is possible that our instructors lose sight of our essential purpose which is support for (for) our industry.
--	--

إشارة	'ishāra	(also:) reference
بالإشارة الى	bi l-'ishāra 'ila	with reference to
تالٍ (التالي)	tālin (at-tālī)	(the) following
دراسي	dirāsī	academic
٣٤، ٢٨، ٢٥		34, 28, 25
مجموع	majmū9	total
٨٧، ٨٩٪		87, 89%

وبالإشارة الى الأرقام التي بالتموني عندها هي التالية:
أولاً: عدد المتخرجين في السنة الدراسية الماضية

٣٤	أ: بالكسرية
٢٨	ب: بالتبريد والتكليف
٢٥	ج: بالمكانية
٨٧ أي ٨٩٪	المجموع

wa bi l-'ishāra 'ila l-'arqām allātī
 sa'altumūnī 9anha hiya t-tāliya:
 'awwalan: 9adad al-mutakharrijīn fī
 s-sana d-dirāsīya l-mādiya:
 'alif: bi l-kahraba 'arba9a u thalāthīn.
 bā': bi t-tabrīd wa t-takyīf thamāniya u
 9ishrīn.
 jīm: bi l-mikānīk khamisa u 9ishrīn.
 al-majmū9: sab9a u thamānīn, 'ay
 tis9a u thamānīn bi l-mīya.

With reference to the figures about
 which you asked me, these (they) are the following:

1. Number of graduates last academic year:
- (a) in electricity: 34
- (b) in refrigeration and airconditioning: 28
- (c) in mechanics: 25
- Total: 87, i.e. 89%.

خَطَّطَ

khaṭṭa II

to plan

٨٩ ، ٢٢ ، ٣١ ، ٣٦

36, 31, 22, 89

ثانياً: عدد المرشحين المخطط للسنة الدراسية المقبلة:

٣٦

أ: بالكهرباء

٣١

ب: بالتبريد والتكييف

٢٢

ج: بالميكانيك

٨٩

المجموع

thāniyan: 9adad al-murashshaḥīn
 al-mukhaṭṭaṭ li s-sana d-dirāsīya l-muqbila:
 'alif: bi l-kahraba sitta u thalāthīn.
 bā': bi t-tabrīd wa t-takyīf wāḥid u
 thalāthīn.
 jīm: bi l-mikānīk ithnayn u 9ishrīn.
 al-majmū9: tis9a u thamānīn.

1. Number of candidates planned for next academic year:

- (a) in electricity: 36
- (b) in refrigeration and airconditioning: 31
- (c) in mechanics: 22
- Total: 89

قبول

qabūl

acceptance

فاق يفوق

fāqa yafūqu I

to excel

وتفضلوا بقبول فائق الاحترام

wa tafaddalū bi qabūl fā'iq al-iḥtirām

(see para. 2 below)

اخلاص

'akhlaṣa IV

to be sincere

مخلص

mukhlis

sincere

وتفضلوا بقبول فائق الاحترام

المخلص

أحمد

احمد هاشم

مدير المدرسة الثانوية الفنية

يا سيد بيتي: يملكه انه تحتاج الى معلومات او ارقام
 أكثر تفصيلاً وفي هذه الحالة ارجوا انك تتورد له
 تتصل بي وفي الانتظار اظل مخلصاً
 احمد

wa tafaḍḍalū bi qabūl fā'iḳ al-iḥtirām.
 al-mukhliṣ, 'aḥmad hāshim,
 mudīr al-madrasa th-thānawīya l-fannīya.
 yā sayyid Peter, yumkin 'an taḥtāj 'ila
 ma'ālūmāt 'aw 'arqām 'akthar tafṣīlan wa
 fī hādhihi l-ḥāla 'arjū 'allā tataraddad 'an
 tattāṣil bī wa fī l-intiḍār 'aḍall mukhliṣan
 'aḥmad.

Best wishes,
 Yours sincerely, Ahmad Hashim,
 Director, Technical Secondary
 School.
 Mr Brown: Perhaps you need more
 detailed information or figures; in
 that case please (± request) do not
 hesitate to contact me. In the
 meantime, I remain
 Yours sincerely, Ahmad.

(b) منشور *manshūr* memorandum, circular
 اداري *'idārī* administrative
 ٤٦ 46
 ٢٠١٢/١٣ 13/2/20...
 كذا وكذا *kadha u kadha* such-and-such
 وكذا وكذا *wa/u kadha u kadha* and so on

منشور اداري رقم ٤٦
 من: مدير شؤون الموظفين
 التاريخ: ٢٠١٣/٢-٢٠
 الى: جميع العمال
 الموضوع: دفع الشغل الإضافي

manshūr 'idārī raqm sitta u 'arba9īn.
 min: mudīr shu'ūn al-muwaḍḍafīn.
 'ila: jamī9 al-9ummāl.
 at-tārīkh: thalatt9ashr shubāt 'alfayn
 u kadha u kadha.
 al-mawḍū9: daf9 ash-shughl al-'iḍāfī.

Administrative Circular No. 46.
 From: Personnel Manager.
 To: All Operatives (±workmen).
 Date: 13/2/20...
 Subject: Payment of Overtime.

دائرة دوائر *dā'ira dawā'ir* directorate
 اعلان *'i9lān* announcement, notice
 عام اعوام *9ām 'a9wām* year
 ٢٠- 20...
 محاسبات *muḥāsabāt* accounts
 رفض يرفض رفض *rafāḍa yarfiḍu I, rafḍ* to reject
 حمل يحمل حمل *ḥamala yaḥmilu I, ḥaml* to carry, to bear
 وقع *waqqa9a II* to sign

مذكور	<i>madhkūr</i>	(afore)mentioned
لوحة	<i>lawḥa</i>	board (for notices etc.)

تسبب دائرة شؤون الموظفين إلى الإعلان رقم ٢٢ من ١ كانون الثاني من عام ٢٠٠٠ وتذكر جميع العمال بأن قسم الحسابات يقوم بدفع اجر السفل الإضافي على اساس شهادة المشرف او المدير المناسب فقط وسيرفض اي طلب دفع لا يحمل توقيع المسؤول المذكور.

فواله

فؤاد عبدالرحمن
مدير شؤون الموظفين
نسخة الى: جميع الدوائر
لوحات الإعلان

tushīr dā'irat shu'ūn al-muwaḍḍafīn
'ila l-'aḡlān raqm ithnayn u 9ishrīn min
'awwal kānūn ath-thānī min 9ām 'alfayn
u kadha u kadha wa tudhakkir jamī9
al-9ummāl bi 'anna qism al-muḥāsabāt
yaqūm bi daf9 'ajr ash-shughl al-'iḍāfī
9ala 'asās shahādat al-mushrif 'aw
al-mudīr al-munāsib faqaṭ wa sa yarfiḍ
'ayy ṭalab daf9 lā yaḥmil tawqī9 al-mas'ūl
al-madhkūr.
fu'ād 9abdarrahmān, mudīr shu'ūn
al-muwaḍḍafīn.
nuskha 'ila: jamī9 ad-dawā'ir, lawḥāt
al-'iḡlān.

Personnel Directorate refers to
Notice No. 22 of 1 January 20...
and reminds all operatives that
Accounts Department will pay
overtime wages only on the basis of
the attestation (certificated) of the
appropriate supervisor or manager.
It will reject any claim for payment
not bearing the signature of the
aforementioned authority
(responsible person).
Fuad Abdarrahman, Personnel
Manager. Copy: all directorates;
notice boards

النحو

2. Correspondence

Formal letters commonly begin the text with with تحية طيبة وبعد *tahīya tayyiba wa ba9du* which is not directly translatable. The message of the letter then starts immediately; the addressee is not usually greeted by name or appointment.

In the text, we often use the 2nd person plural. Formal closures include:

وتفضلوا بقبول فائق الاحترام *wa tafaddalū bi qabūl fā'iq al-iḥtirām*

(Please accept outstanding respect) Yours faithfully/Best wishes

ارجو ان تتقبلوا وافر الشكر *'arjū 'an tataqabbalū wāfir ash-shukr*

(I ask you to accept abundant thanks) Please accept my warmest thanks.

(تقبّل *taqabbala* V to accept; وفر يفر *wafara yafiru* I to abound)

A briefer, but still polite, closure is simply:

المخلصة\المخلص *al-mukliṣ(a)* (the sincere)
Yours sincerely

3. Office memoranda usually have neither salutation nor closure; like their European counterpart, they may open with, e.g.:

من: <i>min:</i>	الى: <i>'ila:</i>
التاريخ: <i>at-tārīkh:</i>	الإشارة: <i>al-'ishāra:</i>
الموضوع: <i>al-mawḍūʿ:</i>	

4. Informal letters may have a personal salutation such as

أخي العزيز\أختي الكريمة *'akhi l-ʕazīz/'ukhtī l-karīma* Dear ... (m./f.)
(عزيز أعزّاء *ʕazīz 'aʕizzā'* dear)

or, with more respect but still cordial:

استاذي المحترم <i>'ustādhi l-muḥtáram</i>	} Dear
زميلي المحترم <i>zamīli l-muḥtáram</i>	
زميلتي المحترمة <i>zamīlati l-muḥtárama</i>	

each of which is followed by تحية طيبة وبعد .

Informal letters also close with المخلصة\المخلص, possibly preceded by

تحية للجميع <i>tahīya li l-jamīʿ</i>	Greetings to all
ويسلمك\يسلمكم قلبياً <i>wa yusallimuka/ki/kum qalbīyan</i>	
وتسلمك\تسلمكم قلبياً <i>wa tusallimuka/ki/kum qalbīyan</i>	
	With cordial greetings from ...

5. Numbers

The written numerals are:

١	٢	٣	٤	٥	٦	٧	٨	٩	٠
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0

Numerals 2 and 3 have alternative handwritten forms:

٢ 2 ٣ or ٣ 3

The numerals are assembled from left to right, as in European numbers:

١٤٥٣ 1453 ٢٠٨٠٦٩٧ 208,697

Moroccans, Algerians and Tunisians use the European numerals, which are now increasingly used throughout the Arab world.

6. The numbers as words are more complicated in written than in spoken Arabic. Many Arabs have difficulty with the written forms, and prefer to use the spoken forms even when reading aloud from a text. You are strongly advised to use the spoken form for pronouncing the numbers, and the numerals for writing them. From the written language we do need, however, to know the form of the noun used after the number. We study this below.

7. Numbers 2 to 10

See 4/11. Everything said there about the form and position of the noun is valid in writing, except that a noun following a number 3-10 is in the *genitive* plural, irrespective of its function in the sentence. This fact is, however, visible and audible only in the sound m. pl.:

وصل ٤ مهندسين. *waṣal 'arba9a muhandisīn.*
مع ٤ مهندسين *ma9a 'arba9a muhandisīn*

Further, the rules for the written dual (19/9, 10) apply.

8. Numbers 11 to 19, and multiples of ten from 20 to 90

See 5/12. Everything said there about the form and position of the noun is valid in writing, except that a noun following a number 11-99 is in the *accusative* singular, irrespective of its function in the sentence. This fact is, however, visible and audible only with *fatha tanwīn*:

وصل ١١ طالبًا. *waṣal 'iḥd9ashr ṭāliban.*
خلال ١٥ سنة *khilāla khamst9ashr sanatan*
٩٠ دولارًا *tis9īn doulāran*

9. When reading, you may encounter numbers written as words. Be prepared for the following phenomena:

- so-called 'polarity' or reverse agreement, i.e. the number has an apparently feminine form (with final *ṭā' marbūṭa*) before a masculine noun, and an apparently masculine form (no *ṭā' marbūṭa*) before a feminine noun:

اربعة طلاب، اربع طالبات

- multiples of ten from 20 to 90: these follow the pattern of a sound m. pl. (عشرون مهندسا، مع عشرين مهندسين *-ūn/-īn* ونان)
- a dual number loses its final *-n* before a noun, as in construct:

مع الفني شخص

- the spelling of *mīya/mīt*: مئة, less commonly مائة.

10. Ordinal numbers

The ordinal numbers 1st to 10th are as in spoken Arabic, except that 2nd ثانٍ *thānīn/ath-thānī* follows the pattern of ماشٍ etc. (23/10).

Written Arabic has ordinal numbers above ~~10th~~ The pronunciation given below is an acceptable educated spoken variant for these words. Ordinals 11th to 19th agree in gender with the noun

11th m.	الحادي عشر	<i>al-ḥādī 9ashar</i>
f.	الحادية عشرة	<i>al-ḥādīya 9ashara</i>
12th m.	الثاني عشر	<i>ath-thānī 9ashar</i>
f.	الثانية عشرة	<i>ath-thāniya 9ashara</i>
13th m.	الثالث عشر	<i>ath-thālith 9ashar</i>
f.	الثالثة عشرة	<i>ath-thālitha 9ashara</i>

(etc.). From 20th upwards, the tens, hundreds, thousands and millions have a form identical with the cardinal number.

20th m./f.	العشرون	<i>al-9ishrūn/-īn</i>
21st m.	الحادي والعشرون	<i>al-ḥādī wa l-9ishrūn/-īn</i>
f.	الحادية والعشرون	<i>al-ḥādīya wa l-9ishrūn/-īn</i>
100th	المائة	<i>al-mīya</i>
101st	المئة والواحد(ة)	<i>al-mīya wa l-wāḥid(a)</i>
1000th	الألف	<i>al-'alf</i>

The press sometimes uses alternative forms for 100th and 1000th:

المئوي *al-mīyawī(ya)* الألفي *al-'alfī(ya)*

The ordinal numbers can be represented thus in abbreviated form:

الدرس *ad-dars ar-rābi9*

11. 'abjad

أبجد *'abjad* means alphabet Every letter of the Arabic alphabet has a numerical value; this is equivalent to our use of Roman numerals to number a series. The numerical values do not follow the alphabetical order. We need to know only the first ten:

1098 765 4321

أبجد هوّز حطي

for which the mnemonic is the three words *'abjad hawwaz ḥuṭī*. The last two words have no meaning other than their use here. Examine:

* أ I, i, a) ب II, ii, b) ج III, iii, c) د IV, iv, d)

* with *hamza* to distinguish it from figure ١.

12. Time

In written Arabic we use the ordinal number for all hours except ~~one o'clock~~

الساعة الواحدة *as-sā9a l-wāhida*

but: الساعة الثانية *as-sā9a th-thāniya*

~~half-past~~is والنصف *wa n-niṣf*, and all fractions have the article. For the rest the forms correspond to those of the spoken language:

الساعة الخامسة والنصف *as-sā9a l-khāmisa wa n-niṣf* 5.30

في الساعة السادسة والرابع *fī s-sā9a s-sādisa wa r-rub9* at 6.15

قبل الساعة الحادية عشرة إلا الثلث *qabla s-sā9a l-ḥādiya 9ashra 'illa th-thulth* before 10.40

بعد الساعة الثانية عشرة وخمس دقائق *ba9da s-sā9a th-thāniya 9ashra wa khams(a) daqā'iq* after 12.05

13. Calendar

Here is the spelling of the days of the week:

(يوم) الجمعة، السبت، الأحد، الاثنين، الثلاثاء*، الأربعاء*، الخميس

* formal pronunciation *ath-thalāthā', al-'arba9ā'*. Little used.

14. Decades

Decades are expressed so:

التسعينات\التسعينيات *at-tis9īnāt/at-tis9īnīyāt* the 90s

15. Vocative

In addition to the vocative particle يا *yā* known to you, written Arabic has أَيْهَا (m.) 'ayyuha and أَيُّهَا 'ayyatuha (f.), which are used before a noun with the article:

أَيْهَا المستمعون\المشاهدون الأعزاء *'ayyuha l-mustami9ūn/*

l-mushāhidūn al-'a9izzā' Dear listeners/viewers

(the standard formula used by radio or television announcers, most of whom pronounce the middle word as in spoken Arabic):

⟨'ayyuha l-mustami9īn/l-mushāhidīn al-'a9izzā'⟩

16. Anomalous nouns and adjectives

Certain nouns and adjectives have irregular case-endings. We need to know only those features which are written with letters of the alphabet, and are hence sounded in short pronunciation.

17. The first group is those nouns and adjectives having no ^ا form (indefinite accusative). They are:

- all nouns and adjectives, m. or f., sing. or pl., having the ending* ^{اء} -ā':
سفرء *sufarā'* حمراء *ḥamrā'*
- all nouns and adjectives on the pattern 'akbar:
أسود *'aswad* أكثر *'akthar*
- broken plurals on the patterns *makātib* or *mafātīḥ*:
أوامر *'awāmir* مدارس *madāris*
أسابيع *'asābī9* تلاميذ *talāmīdh*
نرسل لكم كتباً من أجل المكتب. *nursil lakum kutuban min 'ajl al-maktab.*
but: نرسل لكم وثائق من أجل المكتب. *nursil lakum wathā'iq min 'ajl al-maktab.*

The grammatical term for these words is 'diptote'. There are other diptote forms, but they are too rare to concern us.

*NB: ending, not final root letter. Where either ^ا 'alif or ^ء hamza is a root letter, the word is regular. Note also that the indefinite accusative of such a word is written with *fathā tanwīn* only, not *'alif-fathā-tanwīn*:

ابتداءً *ibtidā'an* اجراءً *'ijrā'an*

18. The second group is the 'ab group. When used as the theme of a construct, or when carrying a possessive suffix other than ^ي -ī, the nouns ^{أب} 'ab father and ^{أخ} 'akh brother form their singular cases with written vowels which are always pronounced:

nom. ^{أبو} 'abū/'akhū; acc. ^{أبا} 'abā/'akhā; gen. ^{أبي} 'abī/'akhī
كتب لنا أبو أخو هذا طالب. *katab lana 'abū/'akhū hādha ṭ-ṭālib.*
هل تعرف أبا أخا الطالب؟ *hal ta9rif 'aba/'akha ṭ-ṭālib?*
مع أبي أخى هذا الطالب *ma9a 'abī/'akhī hādha ṭ-ṭālib*
مع أبيه أخيه *ma9a 'abīhi/'akhīhi*

When not in construct or when suffixed with ^ي -ī, or when carrying no possessive suffix, these nouns have regular case-endings:

كتب الأب. *katab al-'ab.*
هل تعرف الأخ؟ *hal ta9rif al-'akh?*

19. ذو *dhū* etc.

The noun ذو *dhū* means possessor of or characterised by. It has a masculine and a feminine form. The m. s. has case-endings like those of ^{أب} 'ab:

	Singular	Dual	Plural
m. nom.	ذو <i>dhū</i>	ذوا <i>dhawā</i>	ذوو <i>dhawū</i>
acc.	ذا <i>dha</i>	} ذوي <i>dhaway</i>	ذوي <i>dhawī</i>
gen.	ذي <i>dhī</i>		
f. nom.	} ذات <i>dhāt</i>	ذواتا <i>dhawātā</i>	ذوات <i>dhawāt</i>
acc./gen.		ذواتي <i>dhawātay</i>	

This noun is used exclusively in (definite or indefinite) construct. The whole construct works as a compound adjective, the ذو *dhū* (etc.) agreeing in all respects with the qualified noun:

رجل ذو مال *rajul dhū māl* a man of property
 مسألة ذات أهمية *mas'ala dhāt 'ahammīya* a matter of importance
 مع اشخاص ذوي ثقافة *ma9a 'ashkhās dhawī thaqāfa* with cultured people
 طلمبة ذات قوة كبيرة *ṭulumba dhāt qūwa kabīra* a powerful pump

Note how the definite form is made. It is always only the *attribute* of the construct which can carry the article:

في البيت ذي الملحق *fī l-bayt dhi l-mulḥaq* in the house with the annex
 (For the record, in full pronunciation ذات *dhāt* has the usual endings -u, -a and -i for the nom., acc. and gen. respectively, and ذوات *dhawāt* has the usual sound endings -u [nom.] and -i [acc./gen.]. They are very rarely heard.)

Note also:

- the noun ذوات ذات *dhāt dhawāt* ~~essence~~ ~~identity~~
- the use of this noun as a synonym for نفس *nafs* in the meanings ~~the same~~ and ~~self~~

ذات\نفس الشيء *dhāt/nafs ash-shay'*
 لذاتي\النفسي *li dhātī/li nafsī*
 الاعتماد على الذات\النفس *al-i9timād 9ala dh-dhāt/n-nafs*

20. -in and -an

Certain final-weak participles (23/10, 11) are more often used as nouns than as adjectives. Important examples are:

قاضٍ (القاضي) *qāḍīn (al-qāḍī)* judge, pl. قضاة *quḍā*
 محامٍ (المحامي) *muḥāmin (al-muḥāmī)* lawyer,
 محامون\محامين pl. *muḥāmūn/muḥāmīn*
 مستشفى (المستشفى) *mustashfan (al-mustashfa)* hospital,
 مستشفيات pl. *mustashfayāt*

A few other anomalous nouns follow a similar pattern:

يد ايادٍ (الأيادي)	yad 'ayādīn (al-'ayādī) < 'īd 'ayād
ارض أراضٍ (الأراضي)	'arḍ 'arādīn (al-'arādī) < 'arḍ 'arād
ميناء موانٍ (المواني)	mīnā' mawānīn (al-mawānī) < mīna mawānī
مقهى (المقهى)	maqhan (al-maqha) coffee-house,
مقاهٍ (المقاهي) pl.	maqāhīn (al-maqāhī)

Words with the pattern -an/-a have no case-endings in the singular.

Remember that the theme of a construct also has definite form:

قاضٍ المحكمة العليا qāḍī l-maḥkama l-9ulya the High Court judge

21.

التمارين

1. Read aloud:

e.g.: ١٨ مدينة thamant9ashr madīna

- | | |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| (a) ٢٥ طالبا | (b) ٢٠٠ دينار |
| (c) من اجل ٤ مشاريع هامة | (d) ١٠ ريالات |
| (e) ٦ سنوات | (f) لمدة ٦ اسابيع |
| (g) ٣٦٥ يوما | (h) بين ١٠٠٠ و ٢٠٠٠ دينار |
| (j) ٩٤٪ من السكان | (k) بعد ٤٨ ساعة |

2. Rewrite with the ordinal number in full:

e.g.: الطالب الـ ٤ ← الطالب الرابع

- | | | |
|--------------------|------------------|-------------------|
| (a) المرة الـ ٢ | (b) الدرس الـ ٦ | (c) الطلمبة الـ ٥ |
| (d) المناسبة الـ ١ | (e) اليوم الـ ٢٨ | |

3. Put the correct form of ذو (etc.):

e.g.: قضية ... اهمية ← قضية ذات اهمية

- | |
|-----------------------------------|
| (a) شركة ... رأس مال كبير |
| (b) في حقل ... احتياطي عظيم |
| (c) في وكالة ... اكثر من ٢٠ ممثلا |
| (d) مع اشخاص ... ثقافة |
| (e) بطلمبة ... قوة كبيرة جدا |

4. Here is the handwritten draft of the office memorandum which we studied in paragraph 1(b) above. Read it aloud, then check your answer against the typescript and transcription:

تسير دائرة مشواره الموظف إلى الإعلانه رقم ٢٢ منه ١ طانوه
 الثاني منه عام ٢٠٠٠ وتذكره جميع العمال بأنه قسم المحاسبات
 يقوم بدفع اجر الشغل الإضافي على اساس شهادة المشرف
 او المدير المناسب فقط وميرفصه اي طلب دفع لا يحل
 توقيع المسؤول المذكور.

فصل
 نسخة إلى: جميع الدوائر
 لوحات الإعلانه

5. Look again at the dialogue of Lesson 11. Write a brief letter to the General Manager of the Jordanian Plastics (البلاستيك) Company, thanking him for receiving you on the 19th of February. Say that you had a long discussion with the Production Supervisor, and that the visit to the shop floor was very useful. Ask the GM to express your thanks to the staff whom you met. You believe that the possibilities for cooperation are very good, and you will be in touch again shortly. Tell the GM that he should not hesitate to call you again if he thinks that there is any help which you can give him. Read your letter aloud.

الدرس الخامس والعشرون
ad-dars al-khāmis wa l-9ishrūn . Lesson 25
تحويل التكنولوجيا tahwīl at-tiknulujiya
The Transfer of Technology

للقراءة

1.

حوّل	ḥawwala II	to transfer
تحويل	tahwīl	transfer
تكنولوجيا	tiknulujiya	technology
بحث يبحث في\على	baḥatha yabḥathu I/fi/9ala	to examine
خبير خبراء	khabīr khubarā'	expert
اخيراً	'akhīran	recently
أسّس	'assasa I	to establish/set up
تأسيس	ta'sīs	establishment, setting-up
فولاذ	fūlādh	steel

تجري الآن دراسة امكانية تحويل التكنولوجيا من عدة بلدان صناعية الى البلدان المنتجة للنفط في الشرق الأوسط. وبحث اخيراً عدد من الخبراء في امكانية تأسيس مصانع ذات استهلاك كميات كبيرة من الطاقة كمصانع الفولاذ والأسمدة.

tajri l-'ān dirāsāt 'imkāniyat tahwīl
at-tiknulujiya min 9iddat buldān šinā9iya
'ila l-buldān al-muntija li n-naft fi sh-sharq
al-'awsaṭ. wa baḥath 'akhīran 9adad min
al-khubarā' fi 'imkāniyat ta'sīs maṣāni9
dhāt istiḥlāk kammīyāt kabīra min aṭ-ṭāqa
ka maṣāni9 al-fūlādh wa l-'asmida.

The possibility is now being
studied of the transfer of technology
from some industrialised countries
to the oil-producing countries of
(the) the Middle East. Recently a
number of experts examined the
possibility of setting up factories
with high energy consumption, such
as steel and fertiliser factories.

عُلم	9ulim	it was learned
قلّ يقلّ عن	qalla yaqillu I 9an	to be less than
شارك في	shāraka III fī	to participate in
مشاركة	mushāraka	participation

عُلم من تلك الدراسات الاقتصادية ان تكاليف اللازمة لنقل الغاز والبتروال للبلدان الصناعية لا تقل عن تكاليف تحويل الصناعة الى موارد الطاقة. فتنوي الحكومات العربية ان تصرّ في المفاوضات على مشاركة هامة في تأسيس مثل هذه المصانع تحت شروط مقبولة لها.

9ulim min tilka d-dirāsāt al-iqtiṣādiya
'anna t-takālīf al-lāzima li naql al-ghāz

It was learned from these economic
studies that the cost necessary for

wa l-bitroul li l-buldān aṣ-ṣināʾiyya lā taqill
ʾan takālīf taḥwīl aṣ-ṣināʾa ʾila mawārid
aṭ-ṭāqa. fa tanwi l-ḥukūmāt al-ʿarabīya
ʾan tuṣirr fi l-mufaʾwāqāt ʾala mushāraka
hāmma fī taʾsīs mithl hādhihi l-maṣānīʾ
taḥt shurūṭ maqbūla laha.

transporting the gas and petroleum
to the industrialised countries is not
less than the cost of transferring the
industry to the sources of the
energy. The Arab governments
intend to insist, in the negotiations,
on a significant (important)
participation in the setting-up of
such factories under conditions
acceptable to them.

خبزة	<i>khibra</i>	expertise
وجهة نظر	<i>wujhat naḍar</i>	point of view
ضمن يضمن ضمان	<i>ḍamina yaḍmanu</i> I, <i>ḍamān</i>	to guarantee
مضمون	<i>maḍmūn</i>	guaranteed
معقول	<i>maʿqūl</i>	reasonable
لا شك في	<i>lā shakka fī</i>	there is no doubt
حلّ يحلّ محلّ	<i>ḥalla yaḥullu</i> I <i>maḥall</i>	to take the place (of)

كفى يكفي كفاية *kafa yakfī* I, *kiḥāya* to suffice
ان البلدان المنتجة للنفط لا تحتاج الى رأس مال الدول الغربية بل الى
خبرتها. ومن وجهة نظر البلدان الصناعية يشكل الحصول على
مصادر مضمونة من الطاقة شرطا معقولا لتقديم المساعدة اللازمة
للبلدان العربية ولا شك في ان دول الشرق الأوسط تبحث عن اسس
اقتصادية تحل محل الغاز والبتروال في السنوات المقبلة. لا تكفي لهذا
الغرض الاستثمارات العربية في الغرب.

ʾinna l-buldān al-muntija li n-naft lā taḥtāj
ʾila raʾs māl ad-duwal al-gharbīya bal ʾila
khibratiha. wa min wujhat naḍar al-buldān
aṣ-ṣināʾiyya yushakkil al-ḥuṣūl ʾala maṣādir
maḍmūna min aṭ-ṭāqa shartan maʿqūlan li
taqdīm al-musāʾada l-fannīya al-lāzima li
l-buldān al-ʿarabīya, wa lā shakka fī ʾanna
duwal ash-sharq al-ʾawsaṭ tabḥath ʾan
ʾusus iqtisādīya taḥull maḥall al-ghāz wa
l-bitroul fi s-sanawāt al-muqbila. lā takfī
li hādha l-gharaḍ al-istithmārāt
al-ʿarabīya fi l-gharb.

The oil-producing countries do not
need western countries' capital, but
rather their expertise. From the
industrialised countries' point of
view, access to guaranteed sources
of energy is a reasonable condition
for offering the necessary technical
assistance to the Arab countries,
and doubtless the Middle Eastern
countries are looking for economic
bases to replace gas and petroleum
in future years. Arab investments
in the west will not suffice for this
purpose.

ترى	<i>tara</i>	they see
خطوة	<i>khuṭwa</i>	step

واجب	wājib	necessary
تجاه	tujāha	opposite, facing, towards
حدة	ḥidda	sharpness
توتر	tawattara V	to be tense
توتر	tawattur	tension
تخفيف حدة التوتر	takhfif ḥiddat at-tawattur	reduction of tension

في نفس الوقت يفهم رؤساء الحكومات ان لا بد من اخذ اجراءات
تحضيرية من اجل تغيير اقتصاد بلادهم. وترى الحكومات في هذه
الإجراءات خطوة واجبة تجاه تخفيف حدة التوتر في المنطقة بصورة
عامة.

fi nafs al-waqt yafham ru'asā' al-ḥukūmāt 'anna lā budda min 'akhdh 'ijrā'āt taḥdīrīya min 'ajl taghyīr iqtisād bilādihim. wa tara l-ḥukūmāt fi hādhihi l-'ijrā'āt khuṭwa wājiba tujāha takhfif ḥiddat at-tawattur fi l-minṭaqa bi šūra 9amma.	At the same time, the heads of government understand that it is indispensable to take preparatory measures for changing the economy of their countries (country). The governments see in these measures a necessary step towards the reduction of tension in the region in general.
---	---

النحو

2. Auxiliaries with the present tense

Some verbs, when used as auxiliaries, are followed by the present tense without a conjunction, similarly to the pattern of spoken Arabic. Common examples are found among the complemented verbs (21/4), some with a modified meaning:

ما زال لا يزال	mā zāla lā yazālu I to continue (to do)
دام يدوم	dāma yadūmu I still (to do)
عاد يعود	9ada ya9ūdu I to (do) again
ظلّ يظلّ	ḡalla yaḡallu I to remain (doing)
صار يصير	šāra yašīru I to begin (doing)
استمرّ	istamarra X to continue (doing)
كاد يكاد (كدت)	kāda yakādu (kidt) I almost (to do)
بدأ يبدأ	bada'a yabda'u I to begin (doing)

and other verbs:

ما زلنا نذكره بأن...	mā zilna nudhakkiruhu bi 'anna ...
عدنا نشير الى...	9udna nushīr 'ila ..

We continued to remind him that ...

We referred again to ...
 ظللنا ننتظر. *ḡalalna nantaḡīr.* We continued to wait.
 استمررنا نحاول ان... *istamrarna nuḡāwīl 'an ...*
 We continued to try to ...

This usage is identical to one of the circumstantial verb constructions.

The verb أعاد *'a9āda* IV followed by the verbal noun is an alternative to عاد *9ada ya9ūdu* I with the present tense:

عدنا نقرأ تقرير اللجنة. *9udna naqra' taqrīr al-lajna.*
 أعدنا قراءة تقرير اللجنة. *'a9adna qirā'at taqrīr al-lajna.*
 We re-read (repeated the reading of) the committee's report.

3. *ṡā fī*

One written equivalent of *ṡā fī* is لا *lā* with the accusative *-a* of the noun. This is used for general or abstract statements, many of which are set expressions:

لا شك من ان... *lā shakka min 'anna ...*
 لا بد من... *lā budda min ...*
 لا شيء اهم من ذلك. *lā shay'a 'ahamm min dhālika.*
 لا حياة على القمر. *lā ḡayāta 9ala l-qamar.*

The accusative *-a* is always pronounced in this expression.

For concrete statements, a better expression is ليس هناك *laysa (etc.) hunāka*, which requires the nominative as the subject of ليس *laysa (etc.)*:

ليس هناك مهندسون في القسم. *laysa hunāka muhandisūn fī l-qism.*

4. Time conjunctions

Here are the main written conjunctions used to introduce clauses of time:

لما <i>lamma</i>	عندما <i>9indama</i> <i>ṡamma</i>
قبل ان <i>qabla 'an</i> <i>ṡabl mā</i>	بعد ان <i>ba9da 'an</i> <i>ṡa9d mā</i>
حتى <i>hatta</i>	طالما <i>ṡālamā</i> as long as

بعد ان *ba9da 'an* and لما *lamma* are followed by the past tense:

بعد ان لما وصل *ba9da 'an/lamma waṡal* after/when he arrives/arrived

5. Doubly weak verbs

A doubly weak verb root has two weak root letters.

When the doubly weak verb has middle root letter و *wāw* or ي *yā'* and final root letter ي *yā'*, the middle root letter stabilises:

نوى ينوي *nawa yanwī* I *nawa yinwī*

حيّ يحيى *ḥayya yaḥya* I to live (be alive)

In all other cases, each root letter of the verb follows its own typical pattern. The simplest way to learn the verbs is from tables.

Look again at 23/6. The comment concerning the pronunciation of the weak final root letter (*ī/ū* for *ay/aw*) applies also to these verbs.

Common doubly weak verbs are given below, Form I first:

Root ولي يلي , ولي *wāliya yalī* I to be next. Commonest uses:

(في) ما يلي *(fī) mā yalī* (in) what follows

كما يلي *kama yalī* as follows (see 12/9)

Root حيّ يحيى , حيّ يحيى *ḥayya yaḥya* I to live (be alive):

Past:	حييت <i>ḥayīt^u</i>	حيينا <i>ḥayīna</i>
	حييت <i>ḥayīt^a</i>	حييتم <i>ḥayītum</i>
	حييت <i>ḥayīti</i>	
	حيّ يحيى <i>ḥayy^a</i>	حيوا <i>ḥayū</i>
	حيث <i>ḥayyat</i>	

3rd person dual: m. حيّا *ḥayyā*, f. حيثّا *ḥayyatā*

Present:	احيا <i>'aḥya*</i>	نحيا <i>naḥya*</i>
	تحيا <i>taḥya*</i>	تحيون <i>taḥyawna</i>
	تحيين <i>taḥyayna</i>	
	يحيى <i>yaḥya*</i>	يحيون <i>yaḥyawna</i>
	تحيا <i>taḥya*</i>	

3rd person dual: m. يحيان *yaḥyāni*, f. تحيان *taḥyāni*

*final root letter written as 'alif, since 'alif *maqṣūra* cannot follow *yā* '.

6. hamza in doubly weak verbs

Verbs with *hamza* and a weak final root letter, or with one weak root letter and final *hamza*, are classed as doubly weak. Each root letter again follows its own rules. Important examples are:

Root جاء يجيء , جيء *jā'a yajī'u* I 'aja yījī':

Past:	جئت <i>ji't^u</i>	جئنا <i>ji'na</i>
	جئت <i>ji't^a</i>	جئتم <i>ji'tum</i>
	جئت <i>ji'ti</i>	
	جاء <i>jā'^a</i>	جاؤوا <i>jā'ū</i>
	جاءت <i>jā'at</i>	

3rd person dual: m. جاءا *jā'ā*, f. جاءتا *jā'atā*

Present:	اجيء	'ajī ^u	نجيء	najī ^u
	تجيء	tajī ^u	تجيؤن	tajī'ūna
	تجيئين	tajī'īna		
	يجيء	yajī ^u	يجيؤن	yajī'ūna
	يجيء	tajī ^u		

3rd person dual: m. تجيئان yajī'āni, f. تجيئان tajī'āni

جاء يجيء ب *jā'a yajī'u* I *bi* is the written equivalent (and the origin) of *jāb yijīb* I. In this context, note also تقدم ب *taqaddama* V *bi* to advance (e.g. a proposal).

Root رأى يرى , رأي *ra'a yara* I to see:

Past:	رأيت	ra'ayt ^u	رأينا	ra'ayna
	رأيت	ra'ayt ^a	رأيتم	ra'aytum
	رأيت	ra'ayti		
	رأى	ra'a	رأوا	ra'aw
	رأت	ra'at		

3rd person dual: m. رأيا ra'ayā, f. رأتا ra'atā

Present: irregular; middle root letter *hamza* dropped entirely:

ارى	'ara	نرى	nara
ترى	tara	تروى	tarawna
ترين	tarayna		
يرى	yara	يرون	yarawna
ترى	tara		

3rd person dual: m. تريان yarayāni, f. تريان tarayāni

This verb replaces *shāf yishūf* I in the meaning **to see**

The comments made in 23/6, 14 are valid also here.

7. Increased forms

Important increased forms of doubly weak verbs are:

II	ولّى يولّى	walla yuwallī to appoint
III	ساوى يساوى	sāwa yusāwī to be/make equal
	والى يوالى	wāla yuwalī to be constant
IV	أرى يري	'ara yurī to show
Root letter <i>hamza</i> is dropped in both tenses in Form IV of this root.		
V	تولّى يتولّى	tawalla yatawalla to be appointed
X	استولى يستولى	istawla yastawlī to take possession of

In roots with final root letter **و** *wā* or **ي** *yā'*, this root-letter follows the final-weak verb rule (8/10) in the increased forms.

8. Participles

To make the participles of a doubly weak verb, apply the rules dictated by each root letter, but treating also final root letter *hamza* as a weak letter in Form I:

Root **نوي** *nawā yanwī* I:

active m. **ناور (الناوي)** *nāwin (an-nāwī)*

f. **ناوية** *nāwiya*

passive m. **منوي** *manwīy*

Root **جاء يجيء** *jā'a yaḡī'u* I:

active m. **جاء (الجائي)** *jā'in (al-jā'ī)*

f. **جائية** *jā'iya*

Root **ساوى** *sāwa* III:

active m. **مساو (المساوي)** *musāwin (al-musāwī)*

f. **مساوية** *musāwiya*

passive m. **مساوى (المساوى)** *musāwan (al-musāwa)*

f. **مساواة** *musāwā*

9. Verbal nouns and subjunctive

For these derivatives, throughout Forms I to X, the doubly weak verb follows the rules dictated by its final root letter:

Verbal nouns:

I Root **نوي** (irregular) **نية** *nīya* intention

II **سوي** **تسوية** *táswiya* settlement

III **سوي** **مساواة** *musāwā** equality

ولي **موالاة** *muwālā* constancy

V **ولي** **تول (التولي)** *tawallin (at-tawallī)* assumption of office

*identical to the f. passive participle (see paragraph 8 above).

Subjunctive: see 22/4 and 23/13 (sound/final-weak verbs).

10.

التمارين

1. Read aloud:

e.g.: **ان الحكومة لا ترى امكانية لتمويل هذه المشاريع.**

'inna l-ḥukūma lā tara 'imkāniya li tamwīl hādhihi l-mashārī9.

(a) ما زلنا ندرس المشروع.

- (b) رئيس الوفد لا ينوي ان يساعدنا.
 (c) استمررنا نساعدده لأن اقتراحه كان مفيدا.

2. Write:

e.g.: mādhā tanwī l-lajna t-tanfīdhīya 'an ta9mal min 'ajl ta'yīd iqtirāḥina?

ماذا تنوي اللجنة التنفيذية من اجل تأييد اقتراحنا؟

(a) 'innana na9tābir hādhā l-iqtirāḥ 'ashadd ta9qīdan.

(b) 'inna ḥall mushkilat at-tānmiya tuhimmi jamī9 ad-duwal al-muḥibba li
 s-salām ihtimāman 'asāsīyan.

(c) tabda' al-ḥukūma tadrus mushkilat ziyādat al-mustawradāt.

(d) lā budda min 'i9ādat kitābat at-taqrīr.

(e) kayfa yumkin al-ḥukūma l-9amal fī hādhihi ḏ-ḏurūf?

3. Repeat the sentences of Ex. 2 in spoken Arabic:

e.g.: mādhā tanwī l-lajna t-tanfīdhīya 'an ta9mal min 'ajl ta'yīd iqtirāḥina?

– «shū tinwī l-lajna t-tanfīdhīya ti9mal min 'ajl ta'yīd iqtirāḥina?»

4. Rewrite the sentence, adding the auxiliary verb indicated:

e.g.: يصرون على تطبيق شروط مقبولة. (ما زالوا)
 ← ما زالوا يصرون على تطبيق شروط مقبولة.

- (a) ايدوا اقتراحنا. (بدأوا)
 (b) يضيفون ارقام جديدة الى التقرير. (يحاولون)
 (c) مولوا المشروع بمساعدة البنك. (يريدون)
 (d) يحفرون بئرا في ظروف صعبة جدا. (يبدأون)
 (e) يؤيد القطاع الخاص الحكومة في سياستها الاقتصادية. (يجب)

5. Give the root under which each of the following words is found in a root-based dictionary:

e.g.: يرون ← رأي

(c) يلي

(b) مكتشف

(e) جاء

(a) منظره

(d) يحيا

الدرس السادس والعشرون
ad-dars as-sādis wa l-9ishrūn . Lesson 26
الأمم المتحدة al-'umam al-muttāhida
The United Nations

1.

للقراءة

قرن قرون	qarn qurūn	century
أسست	'ussisat	it was established/founded
على أثر	9ala 'athar	following
راجع	rāja9a III	to review, revise
مراجعة	murāja9a	review, revision
دور ادوار	dawr 'adwār	rôle
لعب يلعب لعب	la9iba yal9abu I, lu9b	to play
حفظ السلام	hiḡ9 as-salām	peace-keeping

اكثر من نصف قرن بعد ان أسست هيئة الأمم المتحدة على اثر الحرب العالمية الثانية يجب ان تقوم المنظمة بمراجعة الدور الذي تلعبه في ما يتعلق بمهام مثل عمليات حفظ السلام وتسوية الخلافات بين الدول الأعضاء.

'akthar min niṣf qarn ba9da 'an 'ussisat	More than half a century after the
hay'at al-'umam al-muttāhida 9ala 'athar	United Nations Organisation was
al-ḡarb al-9ālamīya th-thāniya yajib 'an	founded following the Second
taqūm al-munaḡḡama bi murāja9at ad-dawr	World War, it needs to review the
alladhī tal9abuhu fī mā yata9allaq bi	rôle which it plays in areas (in what
mahāmm mithla 9amalīyāt hiḡ9 as-salām	is) related to tasks such as peace-
wa tāsfiyat al-khilāfāt bayna d-duwal	keeping operations and settling
al-'a9ḡā'.	disputes between member states.

عُبر عن	9ubbir 9an	was expressed
انتقد على	intāqada VIII 9ala	to criticise
انتقاد على	intiqād 9ala	criticism of
فاعلية	fā9ilīya	effectiveness, efficiency
يشار الى	yushār 'ila	it is pointed out
لم تنجح	lam tanjaḡ	= ما نجحت
بحث بحوث عن	baḡth buḡūth 9an	search for
عدل	9adl	justice
مكافحة	mukāfaḡa (in construct)	fight against

وبالفعل عُبر عن انتقاد على عدم فاعلية المنظمة ويشار الى انها لم تنجح في عدد من محاولاتها مثالا البحث عن السلام والعدل في الشرق الأوسط وحروب اقليمية مختلفة ومكافحة الإرهاب وغيرها.

wa bi l-fi9l 9ubbir 9an intiqād 9ala 9adam And indeed criticism has been expressed of the organisations effectiveness. It was pointed out that it has not succeeded in a number of its attempts such as the search for peace and justice in the Middle East, various regional wars, the fight against terrorism, and others.

نوعًا ما	naw9an mā	somewhat
مثال امثلة	mithāl 'amthila	example
صرّح ب	ṣarraḥa II bi	to declare
نادٍ (النادي) اندية	nāḍin (an-nāḍī) 'āndīya	club, circle
سيطر على	sayṭara IQ 9ala	to dominate
مجلس الأمن	majlis al-'amn	Security Council
ضمّ يضمّ	ḍamma yaḍummu I	to comprise, include
تركز	tarakkaza V	to be concentrated
غير ان	ghayr 'anna	whereas, however
فعلي	fi9lī	real, actual, factual
دائم العضوية	dā'im al-9uḍwīya	with permanent membership

ان نجاح الأمم المتحدة في عدة حقول قد خفف نوعا ما هذه الانتقادات ولكن هذه النتائج الناجحة تشكل في رأي عدد كبير من الحكومات امثلة استثنائية. صرح ناطق بلسان الدول النامية بأن الأمم المتحدة ما زالت ناديا خاصا يسيطر عليه مجلس الأمن الذي يضم ١٥ عضوا غير ان القوة الفعلية فيه تتركز في ايادي الدول الخمس الكبرى الدائمة العضوية.

'inna najāḥ al-'umam al-muttāḥida fi 9iddat huqūl qad khaffaf naw9an mā hādhihi l-intiqādāt walākinna hādhihi n-natā'ij an-nājiya tushakkil fi ra'ī 9adad kabīr min al-ḥukūmāt 'amthila stithnā'īya. ṣarraḥ nātiq bi lisān ad-duwal an-nāmiya bi 'anna l-'umam al-muttāḥida mā zālat nādiyan khāṣṣan yusayṭir 9alayhi majlis al-'amn allādhī yaḍumm khamst9ashr 9uḍwan ghayr 'anna l-quwa l-fi9līya fihi

The success of the UN in some fields has somewhat softened these criticisms, but in the opinion of many governments these successful results are exceptional cases (examples). A spokesman for the developing countries declared that the UN is still a private club dominated by the Security Council which comprises fifteen members,

tatarakkaz fī 'ayādi d-duwal al-khams
al-kubra d-dā'ima l-9uḍwīya.

while the actual power (اليد) is
concentrated in the hands of the
five big states with permanent
membership.

إعادة التنظيم *'i9ādat at-tanḡīm* reorganisation

نظام انظمة *niḡām 'anḡima* order, system

بحث بحوث على *baḥth buḥūth 9ala* examination of

لم يظهر *lam yaḡhar* = ما ظهر

ذكر كثير من الأعضاء انه يجب إعادة تنظيم ادارة المنظمة الدولية على
ضوء الوضع الجديد. ويعبرون عن الرأي ان النظام الاقتصادي الجديد
الذي كان البحث عليه في السبعينيات لم يظهر قابلا للإنجاز في ذلك
الوقت،

dhakar kathīr min al-'a9ḡā' 'annahu yajib
'i9ādat tanḡīm 'idārat al-munaḡḡama
d-duwalīya 9ala ḡaw' al-waḡ9 al-jadīd.
wa yu9abbirūna 9an ar-ra'ī 'anna n-niḡām
al-iḡtīṣādi l-jadīd allādhī kān al-baḥth
9alayhi fī s-sab9īnīyāt lam yaḡhar qābilan
li l-'injāz fī dhālika l-waqt,

Several of the members have men-
tioned that a reorganisation of the
international body's administration
is needed in the light of the new
situation. They express the view
that the new economic order,
examined in the 70s, did not
seem capable of implementation at
that time,

حقق *ḡaqqāqa* II to realise

تحقيق *taḡqīq* realisation

حيث ان *ḡaythu 'anna* given that

توازن *tawāzana* VI to be balanced

توازن *tawāzun* equilibrium, balance

استقر *istaqarra* X to be stable, settled

استقرار *istiqrār* stability, steadiness

ولكن الوضع الجديد قد يمكن من تحقيقه حيث ان عدم التوازن بين
الشمال (يعني الدول الصناعية) والجنوب (اي الدول النامية) هو اهم
سبب لعدم الاستقرار الدولي.

walakinna l-waḡ9 al-jadīd qad yumakkin
min taḡqīqīhi, ḡaythu 'anna 9adam at-
tawāzun bayna sh-shimāl (ya9ni d-duwal
aṣ-ṣīnā9īya) wa l-janūb ('ay ad-duwal
n-nāmīya) huwa 'ahamm sabab li 9adam
al-istiqrār ad-duwalī.

but the new situation might make its
realisation possible, given that the
imbalance between the north (that
is, the industrialised countries) and
the south (i.e. the developing
countries) is the most important
cause of international instability.

تشكيل *tashkīl* formation, constitution

إعادة التشكيل *'i9ādat at-tashkīl* reform, reconstitution

ما اخذ	=	<i>lam ya'khudh</i>	لم يأخذ
to face		<i>wājaha</i> III	واجه
to be/go bankrupt		<i>'aflasa</i> IV	افلس
bankruptcy		<i>'iflās</i>	افلاس
debt		<i>dayn duyūn</i>	دين ديون
to pursue (a policy etc.)		<i>intāhaja</i> VIII	انتهج

ولهذا الشأن يطلبون إعادة تشكيل دور المنظمة ومراجعة علاقاتها الداخلية. مع الأسف لم يأخذ هذا المطلب بعين الاعتبار وضع المنظمة المالي ومن المعروف ان الأمم المتحدة تواجه الإفلاس بديون عظيمة. ان الأمم المتحدة يعتمد على تأييد الولايات المتحدة بينما تنتهج الولايات المتحدة نفسها سياسة مستقلة.

wa li hādha ash-sha'n yaṭlubūna 'i9ādat tashkīl dawr al-munaḏḏama wa murāja9at 9alāqātiha d-dākhilīya. ma9a l-'asaf lam ya'khudh hādha l-maṭlab bi 9ayn al-i9tibār wa9 al-munaḏḏama l-mālī wa min al-ma9rūf 'anna l-'umam al-muttāhida tuwājah al-'iflās bi duyūn 9aḏīma. 'inna al-'umam al-muttāhida ta9tāmid 9ala ta'yīd al-wilāyāt al-muttāhida baynamā tantāhij al-wilāyāt al-muttāhida nafsuha siyāsatan mustaqilla.

To this end, they are asking for a reconstitution of the organisation's rôle and a review of its internal relationships. Unfortunately this request has not taken into account the organisation's financial situation. It is well known that the UN is facing bankruptcy, with enormous debts. The UN depends on the support of the United States, whereas the United States herself pursues an independent policy.

النحو

2. *lam*; jussive tense

Examine the expressions in the text:

لم تنجح	<i>lam tanjah</i>	it did not succeed
لم يظهر	<i>lam yaḏhar</i>	it did not seem
لم يأخذ	<i>lam ya'khudh</i>	it did not take

لم *lam* is a negative particle, not used in spoken Arabic, which is followed by a tense called the 'jussive'. لم تنجح *lam tanjah* is synonymous with ما نجحت, but in written Arabic the structure with *lam* + jussive is mostly preferred to *mā* + past tense.

3. The jussive is easily formed, as follows:

Sound, hamzated and initial-w verbs. For these verbs the jussive is identical to the subjunctive without its fully-pronounced endings; another way of expressing

the formula for these verbs is that the jussive has the endings of the spoken Arabic present, plus the dual ending $\text{ا} -\bar{a}$. Examine:

subjunctive			jussive	
يكتبه	yáktubahu	→	يكتبه	yaktúbhu
نأخذها	ná'khudhaha	→	نأخذها	na'khúdhha
اجده	'ajidahu	→	اجده	'ajid-hu

Hollow verbs. For hollow verbs the jussive ending is the same as for sound verbs, but the weak middle root letter is shortened under the hollow verb rule (Lesson 6/4), also when there is no ending at all:

subjunctive			jussive	
يقول	yaqúla	→	يقُل	yáqul
يبيع	yabí9a	→	يبيع	yábi9
but: يبيعوا	yabí9ū	=	يبيعوا	yabí9ū

Doubled verbs. Forms II and V of these verbs behave like sound verbs. In all other forms (including I), the jussive is identical to the subjunctive:

نجدده	nujáddidahu II	→	نجدده	nujaddíd-hu
but: نحتله	naḥtállahu VIII	=	نحتله	naḥtállahu

Final-weak verbs. Like the subjunctive, except that whenever the final weak root letter is the last written letter in the subjunctive, drop that root letter and substitute the corresponding short vowel ($\text{و} -u$ for $\text{و} -\bar{u}$, $\text{ي} -i$ for $\text{ي} -\bar{i}$, $\text{ا} -a$ for $\text{ا} -\bar{a}$):

ينفي	yánfī/iya	→	ينف	yánfi
نبقى	nábqa	→	نبق	nábqa

Doubly weak verbs. Each root letter follows its own rule. We apply the guidelines given above, includening the shortening of a weak root letter under the hollow and final-weak verb rules where appropriate:

يجيء	yají'a	→	يجيء	yáji'
------	--------	---	------	-------

For all verb classes, the stress moves if necessary, to follow the rule.

4. Other uses of the jussive

In addition to the important لم construction, the jussive is used:

- with $\text{بعد} \dots \text{لم}$ *lam ... ba9d* or لما *lamma* 'not ... yet':
 $\text{لم يصل بعد} \text{لما يصل}$ *lam yašil ba9d/lamma yašil*.

He has not arrived yet.

Do not confuse with the conjunction لما *lamma* 'when', used in writing only with the past tense.

- to express wishes and intentions, always preceded by:
 ل *li* 'let ...' or فل *fa l/wa l* so/then let ...q
 لنذهب *li nadhhab*. Let us go.
 فلنذهب *fa l nadhhab*. Let us go, then.
- with لا *lā* to express the negative imperative:
 لا تردد ان تتصل بي. *lā tataraddad 'an tattāṣil bī.*

5. Some, some-

The indefinite form of certain nouns followed by ما *mā* is used to indicate some or some- with indefinite meaning, often adverbial:

نوعًا ما	<i>nawḡan mā</i> somewhat
يومًا ما	<i>yawman mā</i> some day, some time
لأمرٍ ما	<i>li 'amrin mā</i> for some reason

The case-ending is always pronounced in such expressions.

6. Conditional sentences

The rules for conditional sentences, both real and unreal, studied in 11/14, are all valid for written Arabic, except for what follows.

After إذا *'idha*, used for real conditions, traditional grammar requires the past tense in both clauses; but modern usage permits a choice for the main verb:

إذا جاءوا ذهبنا نذهب معًا. *'idha jā 'aw/jā 'ū, dhahabna/nadhhab maḡan*. If they come, we shall go together.

However, if the main clause begins with anything other than a past- or present-tense verb, the clause must be introduced with ف *fa*:

إذا رفضته أنا فهو سيرفضه أيضًا. *'idha rafaḍtuḥu 'ana, fa huwa sa yarfiḍuḥu 'ayḍan*. If I reject it, he will too.

إذا طلبوه فلن نسمعهم. *'idha ṭalabūḥu fa lan nasmaḡahum*.
If they request it, we shall not hear them.

The conditional clause has verbal-sentence structure. The main clause may have either verbal-sentence or nominal-sentence structure, in which latter case it is introduced by فإن *fa 'inna*:

إذا رفضته أنا فإنه سيرفضه أيضًا. *'idha rafaḍtuḥu 'ana, fa 'innahu sa yarfiḍuḥu 'ayḍan*.

The conjunction إن *'in* is also used, much less frequently, for real conditions. It is mostly found in set expressions such as إن شاء الله *'in shā' 'allāh* <'inshalla> and إن وجد(ت) *'in wujud(at)*, for which see paragraph 10 below.

The conjunction *لو* *law* introduces unreal conditions as in spoken Arabic, except that we do not use the continuous past in either clause; and a following main clause is usually introduced by the particle *ل* *la*:

لو عرفنا لقد ايدناكم. *law 9arafna la qad 'ayyadnākum.*

If we had known, we would have supported you.

The time-sequence of the whole conditional sentence often has to be inferred from the context. However, in affirmative sentences, present or future sequence can be indicated either with the main verb in the future tense (as above); while past sequence can often be underlined by using *قد* *qad* or *كان* *kāna* (i.e. the pluperfect) in either clause:

إذا سمعوا (س) يفهمون. *'idha sami9ū (sa) yaḡhamūna.*

If they listen, they will understand.

لو (كانوا) سمعوا لكانوا فهموا الفهموا. *law (kānū/qad) sami9ū la*

kānū faḡimū/la faḡimū. Had they listened, they would have understood.

In all conditional clauses we use *لم* *lam* + the jussive, not *mā* or *lā*, to negate the verb:

إذا لم ندفع اضربوا يضربون. *'idha lam nadfa9 'aḡrabū/yaḡribūna.*

If we do not pay, they will strike.

لو لم ندفع لقد اضربوا. *law lam nadfa9 la qad 'aḡrabū.*

If we had not paid, they would have struck.

Finally, note that, less frequently, the main clause may precede the condition:

نؤيدهم إذا كانت سياستهم سالمة. *nu'ayyiduhum 'idha kānat*

siyāsatum sālīma. We support them if their policy is sound.

7. Passive

Look again at 15/5. The rules which you find there for the passive tenses are those of written Arabic, in short pronunciation. We can represent the vowel pattern graphically (sound verbs, 3rd person m. sing.):

		Past			Present			
2 syllables	{	+ <i>full</i>		<i>u</i> <i>i</i> <i>a</i>	<i>u</i>	<i>a</i>		<i>u</i>
3 syllables		<i>personal</i>		<i>u</i> <i>u</i> <i>i</i> <i>a</i>	<i>u</i>	<i>a</i> <i>a</i>		<i>u</i>
4 syllables		<i>ending</i>			<i>u</i>	<i>a</i> <i>a</i> <i>a</i>		<i>u</i>

Three passive verbs occur in tenses in the passage, following this pattern. Two are from verbs with sound root letters:

أُسِّسَتْ *'ussisat* it was founded (from *أَسَّسَ* *'assasa* II)

عُبِّرَ عَنْ *9ubbir 9an* it was expressed (عن *9abbara* II *9an*)

The third is from a hollow verb:

يُشار إلى *yushār 'ila* it is pointed out (أشار إلى *'ashāra IV 'ila*)

in which the vocalised middle root letter follows the hollow verb rule.

Note that in verbs beginning with و (whether initial-*w* class or doubly weak), the present tense of Form I has أوتوا/يوتون *'aw/tū/yū/nū* as its prefix, and the past of Form III starts with و... *wū-*:

(I وجد)	يوجد	<i>yūjad</i>
(I ولي)	يولي	<i>yūla</i>
(III وافق على)	ووفق على	<i>wūfiq 9ala</i>

8. Passive participles, imperative and verbal noun

You know the participles. The passive has no imperative and no verbal noun.

9. Use of the passive

For verbs able to have a direct object, the passive can be used for all persons; it agrees in the usual manner:

كُتِبَت الرسالة أمس. *kutibat ar-risāla 'ams.*

For verbs with a prepositional object, the verb is always m. sing.:

ووافق على الوثيقة. *wūfiq 9ala l-wathīqa.*

The document was agreed upon. (There was agreement on ...)

See 10/8 for the same phenomenon with the participle.

10. Three useful expressions with passive forms of وجد *yajidu I*:

ان وجد/وجدت	<i>'in wujud/wujidat</i> if (there is/are) any
يوجد/توجد	<i>yūjad/tūjad</i> there is/are
لا يوجد/توجد	<i>lā yūjad/tūjad</i> there is/are no/none

سنشارك بالأرباح ان وجدت. *sa nushārik bi l-'arbāḥ, 'in wujudat.*

We shall participate in the profits, if (there are) any.

يوجد متظاهرون في الشارع. *yūjad mutazāhirūn fi sh-shārī9.*

There are demonstrators in the street.

اصغره مع الأسف لا يوجد. *'aṣgharuhu ma9a l-'asaf lā yūjad.*

Unfortunately no smaller one exists.

لا تبحث عن شرح لا يوجد. *lā tabḥath 9an sharḥ lā yūjad.*

Do not search for an explanation which does not exist.

The first expression is always in the past because it is conditional; the second and third expressions are in the present tense.

لا يوجدا تو جد *lā yūjad/tūjad* also expresses *inlāqin* statistics.

11. In spoken Arabic, Form VII is often used to express the passive, avoiding the complications of the written passive. Of the verbs listed in 13/4, the following are not used in writing:

⟨*inkátab, inzār, inqāl, in9add, inláqa*⟩

The others shown can all be written.

Make full use of the structures *تمّ* *tamm/tammat* I + definite verbal noun, and *جرى* *jara yajrī* I + definite verbal noun (15/6), which are easy devices commonly used in written Arabic.

12. Improper agreement

Examine the expression in the passage

الدول الدائمة العضوية *ad-duwal ad-dā'ima l-9uḍwīya*
the states with permanent membership

In this expression, the adjective *دائم* *dā'im* agrees not with *عضوية* *9uḍwīya* but with *دول* *duwal*, i.e. the wrong noun. This is 'improper agreement', a common stylistic device. Examine also:

جامعة كثيرة المال *jāmi9a kathīra l-māl* a wealthy university
الأصدقاء الكرماء القلب *al-'aṣḍiqā' al-kuramā' al-qalb*
the kind-hearted friends

Note how the definite form is made, in the last example.

We can instead use a construction with *ذو* *dhū* (etc., 24/19):

الدول ذات العضوية الدائمة *ad-duwal dhāt al-9uḍwīya d-dā'ima*
جامعة ذات مال كثير *jāmi9a dhāt māl kathīr*
الأصدقاء ذوو القلب الكريم *al-'aṣḍiqā' dhawu l-qalb al-karīm*

in which the adjective agrees normally.

Another improper agreement occurs in 23/1:

للاجتماعات ... المقررة عقدها *li l-ijtimā9āt ... al-muqarrara 9aqduha*
to the meetings ... which it has been decided to hold

where the participial phrase could be re-expressed with a relative pronoun + clause with normal agreement:

للاجتماعات التي قُرّر عقدها *li l-ijtimā9āt allātī qurrir 9aqduha*
the holding of which was decided

13. Second person dual, and feminine plural

These forms are very infrequently met and have therefore been omitted from the grammar descriptions. They are shown here for reference:

	2nd m./f. dual	2nd f. pl.	3rd f. pl.
Pronoun:			
subject	انتما 'antuma	انتنّ 'antunna	هنّ hunna
suffix*	كما -kumā	كنّ -kunna	هنّ -hunna

* also possessive suffix

Verb:			
past	تما -tuma	تنّ -tunna	ن -na
present	ت...ان t...āni	ت...ن t...na	ي...ن y...na
subjunctive + jussive }	ت...ا t...ā	ت...ن t...na	ي...ن y...na
imperative	ا -ā	ن -na	ن -na

14. Equivalent expressions

Some equivalent expressions in spoken and written Arabic which we have learned:

⟨haka yiḥkī⟩	تكلم	⟨wayn⟩	اين
⟨aja yījī⟩	جاء يجيء	⟨laysh⟩	لماذا
⟨jāb yijīb⟩	جاء يجيء ب	⟨mīn⟩	من
⟨rāḥ yirūḥ⟩	ذهب يذهب	⟨shū⟩	ما، ماذا
⟨rāyih, rāḥ-⟩	س، سوف	⟨illī⟩	الذي...
⟨shāf yishūf⟩	نظر ينظر (الى)	⟨qabl/ba9d mā⟩	قبل بعد أن
⟨qidir yiqdar⟩	استطاع أن	⟨hadhāk⟩ (etc.)	ذلك...
⟨lāzim⟩	يجب أن	⟨'inn⟩	أنّ (قال إنّ)
⟨fī⟩	يوجد/توجد، هناك	⟨kwayyis⟩	طيب
⟨mā fī⟩	ليس، لا يوجد/توجد، لا	⟨mish⟩	غير، ليس
	+ acc.	⟨mish rāyih⟩	+ subjunctive
⟨mā⟩ + present	لا + present	⟨mā⟩ + past	لم + jussive

15.

التمارين



1. Read aloud:

e.g.: عُلم من مصادر رسمية انه تم الاتفاق على العقد امس .

9ulim min maṣādir rasmiya 'annahu tamm al-ittifāq 9ala al-9aqd 'ams.

- (a) تم افتتاح المفاوضات امس.
 (b) اذا تحسن الطقس كان مفيدا للفلاحين.
 (c) ظروف الاستثمار الحالية غير مرضية.
 (d) ماذا عَلم من التقرير؟

2. Write:

e.g.: yubḥath 9an ḥall al-mashākil al-muta9alliqa bi taṣnī9 9iddat buldān nāmiya.

يُبحث عن حل المشاكل المتعلقة بتصنيع عدة بلدان نامية.

- (a) fa l nashraḥ lahum al-mashākil, 'in wujidat.
 (b) lā yūjad shay' 'ajmal fi l-9ālam.
 (c) 'a9lan nāfiq bi lisān al-ḥukūma 'anna l-9aqd qad quddim li l-majlis.
 (d) kānat mushkila fi l-mīzānīya 9indamā 'ukhbīr al-wazīr bi fashal
 al-mufawaḍāt at-tijārīya d-duwalīya..
 (e) lā tadfa9 ash-sharika mablaghan 'iḍāfiyan; 'innaha tadfa9 9ala 'asās 'as9ār
 thābita faqaṭ.

3. Join the two sentences into one conditional sentence:

e.g.: عرفنا هذا. ساعدناكم. ← لو عرفنا هذا لساعدناكم.

- (a) جاء. كان اسهل علينا.
 (b) ترفض الحكومة. نطلب من المحكمة.
 (c) تقول له هذا. سيجاب جوابا واضحا.
 (d) ارسلنا لك الرسوم. كانت عندنا.
 (e) تعرف اللغة العربية. تستفيد اكثر من اقامتك.

4. Write the following sentences in correct written form:

e.g.: <lāzim niḥkī ma9 muwazzafīn ash-sharika bukra.>

يجب ان تتكلم مع موظفي الشركة غدا.

- (a) <mīn illī kān yiḥkī 9an hadhoul al-'ashkhāṣ?
 (b) <mish wāḍiḥ shū tinwi l-ḥukūma ti9mal fi hal-ḥāla.>
 (c) <mā niqdar inqarrir al-youm; khallīna nistanna ḥatta l-'usbū9 al-jāi.>
 (d) <laysh mā turīd tiqra r-risāla qabl mā njāwib?>
 (e) <'azunn 'innhum mish moujūdīn ba9d as-sā9a th-thalātha.>

5. Read each sentence aloud, then re-express it in spoken Arabic:

e.g.: عندما تجتمع اللجنة يجب ان تأخذ هذه الأسئلة بعين الاعتبار.

9indama tajtāmi9 al-lajna yajib 'an ta'kudh hādhihi al-'as'ila bi 9ayn al-i9tibār.

⟨lamma tijtāmi9 al-lajna lāzim tākudh hādhi l-'as'ila bi 'ayn al-i9tibār.⟩

- (a) لن اذهب الى المؤتمر الا اذا جئت معي.
- (b) لم افهم الوضع الذي شرحه لنا.
- (c) ان هذه المشكلة صارت لنا اشد تعقيدا.
- (d) تصل غدا.
- (e) ان الستات كن حاضرات طول الفترة كلها.

Key to exercises

Lesson 1

1. (a) mabsūt, ḥamdilla. (b) shúkran. (c) ṣabāḥ an-nūr.
(d) mabsūṭa ḥamdilla. (e) marḥabtáyn.
2. (a) kayf ḥálík? (b) law samáḥti. (c) 'inti mabsūṭa? (d) márḥaba.
(e) 'áhlán bīkī.
3. (a) kayf ḥáلكum? (b) law samáḥtū. (c) 'intū mabsūṭín? (d) márḥaba.
(e) 'áhlán bīkum.
4. (a) kayf ḥálak? (b) 'áhlán bīk. (c) ṣabāḥ al-kháyr. (d) tfáḍḍal.
(e) 9áfwan.
5. (a) mu9állima mişrīya. (b) 'inti 'amayrkīya? (c) mabsūṭa jiddan, shúkran.
(d) 'ána 'inglīziya. (e) híya min al-'úrdun.
6. (a) mu9allimín mişrīyín. (b) 'intū 'amayrkān?
(c) mabsūṭín jiddan, shúkran. (d) 'ihna/nihna 'inglīz. (e) hum min al-'úrdun.
7. (a) húwa sūrī. (b) mu9állim 'inglīzī (c) 'int lubnānī? (d) fáḍī. (e) fáḍī.
(a) la', húwa ṭabīb. (b) húwa 'úrdunī. (c) ná9am, húwa mabsūt.
(d) ná9am, fáḍī, tfáḍḍal. (e) mabsūt, al-ḥamdilla.
9. (a) nushkurálla (b) fáḍī fáḍīya fáḍīyín (c) mabsūṭín
(d) 9árabī 9arabīya 9árab (e) ṭálib 'inglīzī

Lesson 2

1. (a) al-maṭār (b) az-ziyāra ṭ-ṭawīla (c) ar-rākib al-'amáyrkī
(d) al-kīs aṣ-ṣghīr (e) aṭ-ṭabīb al-miṣrī
2. (a) sayyārīt-hum (b) shantátkum (c) 9índ-hum (d) warāna
(e) ṣandūqkum
3. (a) fī sayyāra (b) 'aghrāḍ shakhṣīya (c) tádhkara (d) shánta
(a) 9índ-hum tádhkara. (b) 9índ-ha shánta ṣghīra. (c) 9índik fulūs.
(d) aṭ-ṭálib, 9índu kam kitāb. (e) aṭ-ṭabīb, 9índu waqt.
5. (a) kitābī (b) tadhkártu, tadhkarīt-ha (c) fulūsak, fulūsik
(d) 'amāmu, 'amāmha (e) warā, warāha (f) fīnī, fīya (g) 'iláy, 'iláyha
(h) 9aláyk, 9aláyki (j) 9ánnu, 9ánha (k) mínnak, mínnik
6. (a) rukkāb lubnānīyín (b) ṭayyāra muta'ákhkhira (c) al-mu9állim as-sūrī
(d) ṣūḥufī 9árabī (e) dīnār kuwáytī

Lesson 3

1. (a) shantāt al-musáfir (b) sayyārat mudírna (c) miftāḥ 'ouḍat fu'ád
(d) jádwal at-ṭayyārāt (e) jawāz ar-rākib
2. (a) shántat aṭ-ṭálib (b) shantāt aṭ-ṭálib (c) 'aghrāḍ aṭ-ṭálib
(d) tádhkarat aṭ-ṭálib (e) ghúrfat aṭ-ṭálib
3. (a) mu9allimín (b) sayyārāt (c) mu9allimāt (d) maṭārāt (e) musáfirín
4. (a) dákhalū. (b) nizílna. (c) shū 'amártū? (d) mā dafá9tū.
(e) aṭ-ṭayyārāt ṭíli9at 9ala l-waqt.
5. (a) mu9állima (b) maṭār (c) miṣrī (d) muhándis (e) 9árabī
6. (a) mā wajádt as-sayyāra. (b) mā dakhált al-ghúrfā?

(c) mā fī rukkāb ikthīr. (d) at-táksī mā wişil 'ilak.

(e) al-musāfirīn mā nízilū min at-ṭayyāra.



7. (a) nizilt min at-táksī. (b) khārij al-júmruk (c) at-ṭayyāra ṭili9at.

(d) taḥt al-fārsha (e) min al-bálad



8. (a) sayyāra 'urubbīya (b) sayyārāt 'urubbīya (c) 'ihna 'urubbīyīn.

(d) rukkāb 'urubbīyīn (e) 'inti 'urubbīya.

Lesson 4



1. (a) hādha sh-shurfī (b) hādha l-madkhal (c) wazīr al-9amal hādha

(d) hādha t-timthāl (e) hādhi s-sayyāra l-'amayrkīya



2. (a) 9irifnā. (b) mā katabnāha. (c) simi9nī. (d) ṭalabū minnak

(e) shū sa'altū?



3. (a) mā dakhalt al-bank. (b) hādha mish ikthīr 9alayk.

(c) mā fī 9indak fakka? (d) mā katabu kwayyis. (e) shughlu mish kwayyis.



4. (a) sayyārtayn (b) sayyārtayn 'amayrkān (c) al-baladayn (d) ṣuḥufiyyayn

(e) kitābáy

5. (a) shanta wāhida (b) 'arba9a muhandisīn (c) rākibayn (d) sitta shurfīyīn

(e) al-mustashfayāt al-khamsa

Lesson 5



1. (a) daras yudrus (b) wişil yūşal (c) 9irif ya9raf (d) shakar yushkur

(e) 'akal yākul



2. (a) 'ukhruj, 'ukhrujī, 'ukhrujū; lā tukhruj, lā tukhrujī, lā tukhrujū

(b) 'inzil, 'inzilī, 'inzilū; lā tinzil, lā tinzilī, lā tinzilū

(c) khudh, khudhī, khudhū; lā tākhudh, lā tākhudhī, lā tākhudhū

(d) 'ismaḥ, 'ismaḥī, 'ismaḥū; lā tismaḥ, lā tismaḥī, lā tismaḥū

(e) 'uktub, 'uktubī, 'uktubū; lā tuktub, lā tuktubī, lā tuktubū



3. (a) nuṭlub (b) lā tirkabū. (c) yushkurū (d) khallīna ninzil. (e) mā ta9rafū?

4 (a) mā yisma9ūna. (b) ya9rafha. (c) khallīna nushkurhum. (d) sa'altak.

(e) mā 'akaltu.



5. (a) khalīthum yuṭlubū. (b) khalīha tukhruj. (c) khalīnī 'ajlis.

(d) khalī yinzil huna. (e) khalīna nidfa9 'ujrat at-taksī.

6. (a) sa'alt laysh mā 'akhadht al-fulūs. (b) sa'alt 'idha dafa9u l-ḥisāb.

(c) sa'alt mata tūşal as-sayyāra. (d) sa'alt wayn al-mudīr.

(e) sa'alt li mīn hādha l-milaff.

7. (a) 'arba9tashr shakḥ (b) mīt musāfir

(c) al-musāfirīn al-mīya u sab9a u 9ishrīn (d) thamāniya risālāt

(e) thalāthīn muwazzaf

Lesson 6



1. (a) shuft, shufna (b) ṭirt, ṭirna (c) sa'alt, sa'alna (d) nimt, nimna

2. (a) kunna nudkhul al-bayt. (b) kānū yūşalū li l-balad.

(c) kānū yūşalū 9indna. (d) kānū yuktubu l-jawāb. (e) kan yuskun huna.

3. (a) kutub hal-mu9allim (b) ḥaṭ-ṭullāb (c) fī hal-waqt (d) 9ind han-nās

(e) hal-maktab

4. (a) buyūt (b) ṭuruq (c) zumalā' (d) niswān (e) banāt

5. (a) tullāb shuttār u mujtahidīn (b) makhāzin ikbīra (c) nusakh wāḍiḥa
(d) 'ashkhāṣ luṭafā' (e) ṣanādīq thaḳīla
6. (a) kán fī 9indna waqt ikthīr. (b) kam ṭālib kán fī huna?
(c) aṭ-ṭabīb kán 9ind al-marīḍ. (d) mā kunna mabsūṭīn.
(e) huwa kán moujūd al-youm.
7. (a) ṭālibayn (b) ithn9ashr 'ouḍa (c) sitta ṣuwar (d) 'arba9a musāfirīn
(e) shakhṣ wāḥid

Lesson 7

1. (a) shāf yishūf (b) ṭalab yuṭlub (c) nām yinām (d) ṭār yiṭīr (e) bā9 yibī9
2. (a) 'ashūfu l-youm. (b) wayn yirūḥ? (c) nṣīr 'aghniyā'.
(d) yibī9ū bayt-hum fī bayrūt. (e) tǧību l-fulūs ma9kum?
3. (a) kán lāzim inrūḥ li l-balad. (b) kán lāzim 'ashūfu bukra.
(c) kán lāzim yizūru l-mudīr. (d) kán lāzim yǧību l-kutub?
(e) kán lāzim nuṭlub minnu.
4. (a) kūn, kūnī, kūnū; lā tkūn, lā tkūnī, lā tkūnū
(b) khāf, khāfi, khāfū; lā tkhāf, lā tkhāfi, lā tkhāfū
(c) 'ukhruj, 'ukhrujī, 'ukhrujū; lā tukhruj, lā tukhrujī, lā tukhrujū
(d) qūl, qūlī, qūlū; lā tqūl, lā tqūlī, lā tqūlū
(e) ṭīb, ṭībī, ṭībū; lā tǧīb, lā tǧībī, lā tǧībū
5. (a) 'ams kán youm al-jum9a. (b) ba9d bukra yikūn youm al-ithnayn.
(c) na9am, fī 9indī/la', mǎ fī 9indī shughl al-youm.
(d) 'awwal 'ams kán youm al-khamīs.
(e) fī sab9at 'ayyām fi l-'usbū9.
6. (a) ṭalabt minha 'innha tshūf kitābha.
(b) ṭalabt minnu 'innu yǧīb al-fulūs ma9u.
(c) ṭalabt minnu 'innu yirūḥ 9a l-madrasa.
(d) ṭalabt minhum 'innhum yudkhulū 9indī.
(e) ṭalabt minhum 'innhum yirkabu t-taksī.
7. (a) as-sā9a 'arba9a u rub9 (b) as-sā9a sitta u nuṣṣ
(c) as-sā9a 9ashra u 'arba9t9ashr daqīqa (d) as-sā9a ḥd9ashr u thulthayn
(e) as-sā9a wāḥida u thamāniya u thalāthīn daqīqa/as-sā9a wāḥida u nuṣṣ u thamāniya daqāyiq
8. (a) mitayn (b) 'arba9at 'alāf u thalāth mīya u thamāniya u thalāthīn
(c) thalāth mīya u tis9a u sittīn u nuṣṣ
(d) 'arba9a malāyīn u nuṣṣ/'arba9a malāyīn u khams mīt 'alf
(e) sabī9 mīya u thnayn u sab9īn
9. (a) ithn9ashr youm (b) 'usbū9ayn (c) sittat 'ashhur
(d) 'arba9at 'imkāniyāt (e) khamsa u 'arba9īn thāniya

Lesson 8

1. (a) bada yibda (b) shakk yishukk (c) 'aja yǧī (d) nisī yinsa
(e) zann yizunn
2. (a) dill, dillī, dillū; lā tdill, lā tdillī, lā tdillū
(b) 'ibqa, 'ibqī, 'ibqū; lā tibqa, lā tibqī, lā tibqū
(c) ta9āl, ta9ālī, ta9ālū; lā tǧī, lā tǧī, lā tǧū

- (d) huṭṭ, huṭṭī, huṭṭū; lā huṭṭ, lā huṭṭī, lā huṭṭū
 (e) 'idḥak, 'idḥakī, 'idḥakū; lā tiḍḥak, lā tiḍḥakī, lā tiḍḥakū
 3. (a) tinsa (b) yimurr (c) mā yījū (d) shū tinwū? (e) yibda yiqra
 4. (a) niqdar nimshī ḥatta l-mafraq. (b) tiqdar tiḥkī 9arabī?
 (c) yiqdarū yidillū lana t-ṭarīq. (d) mā yiqdar yibda l-youm.
 (e) 'aqdar 'asma9ak kwayyis.
 5. (a) thāni, thāniya (b) 'awwal, 'ūla (c) thāmin, thāmina (d) rābi9, rābi9a
 6. (a) ta9raf al-mu9allim illī katab hādha t-taqrīr?
 (b) fī thānī su'al nisīt 'as'alu.
 (c) 'ishraḥ lī l-mushkila llī kuntū tiḥkū ḥawlha.
 (d) wayn al-milaff illī ḥaṭṭaytu 'amāmak yā 'akhūī?
 (e) bā9ū bayt sakanū fī min 9ishrīn sana.

Lesson 9



1. (a) faḍḍal yifaḍḍil (b) waqqaf yiwaqqif (c) ḥabb yiḥibb (d) rabba yirabbī
 (e) ṣaddaq yisaddiq
 2. (a) baqara (b) tuffāḥa, ḥabbat tuffāḥ (c) balāṭa (d) mouza, ḥabbat mouz
 (e) bayḍa
 3. (a) 'aṭwal, al-'aṭwal (b) 'aḥsan, al-'aḥsan
 (c) ḍarūrī 'akthar, ḍarūrī al-'akthar
 (d) 'arkhaṣ, al-'arkhaṣ (e) muthaqqaf 'akthar, muthaqqaf al-'akthar
 4. (a) huwa mu9allim dāyiman yishraḥ kwayyis.
 (b) mā qidir yiwaqqif as-sayyāra llī kān yisūqha.
 (c) kān yisūq sayyāra mā qidir yiwaqqifha.
 (d) 9allamtu shī mish lāzim yinsā 'abadan.
 (e) qarrarū mas'ala t-himmna kullna.
 5. (a) al-kitāb al-'aṭwal (b) as-sayyāra l-'ajmal (c) ash-shajara l-9ulya
 (d) al-'ab al-'akram (e) al-'umm al-'akram

Lesson 10



1. (a) bāyi9, mabī9 (b) mujaddid, mujaddad (c) muṣaddiq, muṣaddaq
 (d) kātib, maktūb (e) mudabbir, mudabbar
 2. (a) shāf yishūf (b) waqqaf yiwaqqif (c) ṭalab yuṭlub
 (d) kawwan yikawwin (e) ḥaḍḍar yiḥaḍḍir
 3. (a) qirā'a (b) tārbīya (c) taḥḍīr (d) dirāsa (e) ma9rifa
 4. (a) daras yudrus (b) darras yidarris (c) kān yikūn (d) kawwan yikawwin
 (e) dabbar yidabbir
 5. (a) bi sabab al-'arqām al-mashkūk fīha
 (b) musawwadāt muḥaḍḍara 'ams
 (c) al-'umūr al-maktūb bi khuṣūṣha (d) min an-nās as-sākinīn huna
 (e) li s-sikritayra l-mas'ūla 9an hādha sh-shughl
 6 (a) 'awwal kānūn ath-thānī/yanāyir, 'alf u tisi9 mīya u thamāniya u tis9īn
 (b) khamst9ashr ḥazīrān/yūniyū, 'alfayn u 9ashra
 (c) khamsa u 9ishrīn tishrīn al-'awwal/'oktōbir, 'alf u thamān mīya u
 thamānīn
 (d) 'iḥd9ashr 'āb/'aghustus, 'alf u tisi9 mīya u sitta u tis9īn

(e) thalātha u 9ishrīn shubāt/fibrāyir, 'alf u tisi9 mīya u thamāniya u sab9īn

Lesson 11

1. (possible answers:) (a) kān yurīd yiqābil kam mumaththil aš-šinā9a l-khafīfa.
(b) huwa mushrif qism al-'intāj.
(c) kānū yintijū qīta9 blāstikiya min sha'n al-kahraba wa l-muwāṣalāt.
(d) kān yintij min sha'n as-sūq ad-dākhiliya.
(e) mudīr al-mālīya kān mas'ul 9an as-siyāsa l-mālīya.
-  2. (a) 'adhā9 yudhī9, 'idhā9a (b) jāwab yijāwib, jāwāb
(c) kharaj yukhruj, khurūj (d) rabba yirabbī, tárbiya
3. (a) kawwan yikawwin (b) 'arsal yursil (c) wazzaf yiwazzif
(d) 'afād yufīd (e) rikib yirkab
-  4. (a) mish musāfir(a) bukra. (b) shāyifīn? (c) mish 9ārifīn
(d) jāyīn ma9na?
5. (a) law 9iriftu, kunt 'aqūl lak 'iyyā.
(b) idha huwa muwāfiq, khallī yisā9idna.
(c) law wiṣilū 'ams, kunt shuft-hum. (d) idha mish munāsib, 'akhbirnī.
(e) law mā kān munāsib, kunt 'akhbartak.
6. (a) 'arsalna laha yyāha. (b) qūl lahum iyyāha. (c) 9allamu yyāha.
(d) kunt 'urīd 'as'alu yyā. (e) 'uktubu min sha'nhum.
7. (a) mā dhakarū lana l-'akhbār al-jadīda.
(b) musāfirīn hassa? nshūfkum ba9dayn.
(c) fī talāmīdh yurīdū yiqābilūkum.
(d) mish fāhimīn laysh mā turīdū tishraḥū lana yyāha.
(e) hādhi hiya 'akbar mashākil illī lāzim inḥillha.

Lesson 12

1. (a) ḥaka yiḥkī (b) takhaṣṣaš yitkhaṣṣaš (c) 'awjab yūjib
(d) tadākhāl yitdākhāl (e) dakhal yudkhul
-  2. (a) ta'khīr (b) tawassu9 (c) tanāwul (d) wuṣūl (e) tawzīf
3. (a) taqaddam, taqaddamī, taqaddamū; lā titqaddam, lā titqaddamī, lā titqaddamū
(b) 'a9fī, 'a9fī, 'a9fū; lā ta9fī, lā ta9fī, lā ta9fū
(c) ta9āl, ta9ālī, ta9ālū; lā tījī, lā tījī, lā tījū
(d) ta9āwan, ta9āwanī, ta9āwanū; lā tit9āwan, lā tit9āwanī, lā tit9āwanū
(e) kul, kulī, kulū; lā tākul, lā tākulī, lā tākulū
-  4. (a) 9aynu ḥamrā' (b) 9aynáy ḥumr (c) al-kitāb 'aḥmar
(d) al-kutub ḥamrā' (e) as-sayyāra ḥamrā'
5. (a) nitalfin lak al-youm. (b) yifarjīnī kitāb jadīd.
(c) yitalfizū kull al-'akhbār. (d) yithassan bi sur9a.
(e) mā yitmakkanū min 'injāzu.
6. (a) mumkin, 'imkāniya, yitmakkan, yumkin
(b) 9ilm, mu9allima, ma9lūm, ma9lūmāt, ta9allamat, ta9līmī, yi9allim, 9ulūm
(c) 9irif, ma9rifā, n9arriḥu, ta9rīf, ma9rūfa

7. (a) mīn (b) shū (c) 9amma (d) mā (e) mīn

Lesson 13



1. (a) sā9ad yisā9id, musā9ada (b) kān yikūn, kawṇ
(c) ittākhadh yittākhidh, ittikhādh (d) 'ansha yunshī, 'inshā'
(e) wazzaf yiwazzīf, tawzīf
2. (a) ṭab9an nishtārik fi l-mu'tāmar. (b) yinqāl 'innu marīḍ.
(c) ash-shurṭa tiḥtall al-bināya. (d) tiktāshif shī jadīd?
(e) titwassa9 'imkānīyat at-ta9āwun baynna u baynhum.
3. (a) yūṣilū fi l-layl, 'aftākir. (b) mā na9raf laysh.
(c) huwa kthīr yiḥtāj 'ila musā9adatna.
(d) mīn yuskun huna? (e) tifhamnī yā 'akhū?
4. (a) munfāṣil (b) mursil (c) māshī (d) muḥtāj (e) muttāḥid
5. (a) idha huwa mish moujūd, 'attāṣil bi zamīlu.
(b) idha mā ndīr bālna, yikūn fi nfijār shadīd.
(c) law kān yidīr bālu, mā kān fī mithl hādha l-infijār.
(d) law kānat al-'as9ār 'aqall, qidirna nīshtarī 'akthar.
6. (a) 'ummha mara laṭīfa wa kbīra s-sinn.
(b) aṭ-ṭabība kān ithāwil itsā9id al-marīḍa.
(c) ta9rafī l-mu9allimāt al-judud? (d) ittāṣalat fīnī 'ams.
(e) laysh mā tiḥtārimha ḥtirām 'akthar?
7. (a) at-ta9āwun (b) fāhm (c) l-kitāba (d) al-intikhāb (e) tanzīm
6. (a) bāb, 'abwāb, buwayb, bawwāb
(b) fataḥ, mafāṭīḥ, infāṭaḥat, iftitāḥ, yiftah
(c) 9idda, yin9add, 9adad (d) madd, mumtadd
(e) takallum, mutakallimīn, kalima

Lesson 14



1. (a) fāhim, mafhūm (b) mustawrid, mustawrad (c) muḥtāj, muḥtāj
(d) mursil, mursal (e) mustarīḥ, mustarāḥ
2. (a) fāhm (b) istīrād (c) iḥtiyāj (d) 'irsāl (e) istirāḥa
3. (a) istaghṇayt, istaghṇū (b) inḥalalt, inḥallū (c) nisīt, nisū
(d) istajwabt, istajwabū (e) istahqaqt. istahaqqū
4. (a) mish lāzim yistashīrū mutakhaṣṣis fī hal-mouḍū9.
(b) mish lāzim tista9mil 'ibāra mish kwayyisa,
(c) mish lāzim huwa dāyiman yikūn musta9idd yit9āwan.
(d) mish lāzim tistannānī khārij al-bayt. (e) mish lāzim yijaddidu 9ala ṭūl.
5. (a) yinqāl 'innu marīḍ. (b) tinḥall al-mushkila.
(c) tistabdil shī fi l-mākīna? (d) yinsū u mā yidfa9u l-ḥisāb.
6. (a) thintayn, istithnā'īya, thānawīya, ithnayn
(b) ta9līm, 9ulūm, 9ilmī, ma9lūm, nista9lim
(c) 9imil, yi9malū, isti9māl, mu9āmala

Lesson 15



1. (a) yista9mil (b) ista9malat (c) yajid (d) iḥtāj 'ila (e) yistaghṇī 9an
2. (a) as-sufarā' qālū 'inn al-mushkila mu9aqqada.

- (b) katabū risāla t-himma jamī'na. (c) mā hiya l-mas'ala llī dhakarha?
 (d) rāḥ 'aktub al-jawāb al-'ān.
 3. (a) qāl yiqūl I (b) intākhāb yintākhīb VIII (c) 'ansha yunshī IV
 (d) rabba yirabbī II (e) tafāham yitfāham VI
 4. (a) li (b) 9ala (c) bayn, bayn (d) 9an/bi khuṣūṣ

Lesson 16

1. (a) bayt (b) thānawīya (c) muhim (d) al-'athāth (e) li 'annī
 2. (a) اهتمام ihtimām (b) التلال at-tilāl (c) ممثلين mumaththilīn
 (d) آلائي 'ālāī (e) باللبن bi l-laban
 3. (a) النيل (e) مهمتي (d) للبيت (c) المالية (b) بنتي
 4. (d) أثبتت
 5. (b) بأن
 6. (a) للبناني، للبناني (c) بالتمثال، للتمثال (b) بابني، لابني
 (d) بأول، لأول (e) باللون، للون
 7. (a) انابيب (e) المهام (d) الأمهات (c) البيوت (b) ممنونين

Lesson 17

1. (a) az-zamīl (b) wuṣūl (c) ash-shurṭa (d) al-intikhābāt
 (e) tadākhāl/tadākhul
 2. (a) اللازمة al-lāzima (b) ملابس malābis (c) متظاهرين mutazāhirīn
 (d) النظري an-naẓarī (e) خراجنا kharajna
 3. (b) اجزاء (c) مسؤول (d) بالطائرة (e) اللاجئ
 4. (a) التمويل (b) مرتين (c) بالأمراض (d) النتيجة الإيجابية
 (e) المستوردات مهمة
 5. (a) سؤال مسألة su'āl/mas'ala (b) اتخاذ ittikhādh
 (c) طلب مطلب ṭalab/maṭlab (d) احترام iḥtirām (e) استئجار isti'jār

Lesson 18

1. (a) ghurfā fāḍiya (b) al-bint aṣ-ṣughra (c) ba'īd 9an al-qāriya
 (d) 'idha kān huna (e) shakarūnī qalbīyan.
 2. (a) بالمستشفى bi l-mustashfa (b) الأساتذة al-'asātidha
 (c) هذا هو الصديق hādha huwa ṣ-ṣadīq (d) مشى masha
 (e) اجوبة ايجابية 'ajwiba 'ijābīya
 3. (a) استثنى istathnayna, istathna (b) استغنى istaghneyt, istaghna
 (c) أعطى 'aṭayt, 'aṭa (d) ربى rabbayt, rabba
 (e) مشى mashayna, masha
 4. (a) جديدًا jadīd, jadīdan (b) عادة 9āda, 9ādatan
 (c) مثلاً mathal, mathalan (d) خاصة khāṣṣa, khāṣṣatan
 (e) رسميًا rasmī, rasmīyan

5. (a) اللغة العربية صعبة. (b) في هذا البلد
(c) كنا مسرورين جداً، شكرًا. (d) دفعت اقل مما دفعنا اليوم.
(e) الأنباء الواردة من بغداد
6. (a) اسم الصديق ism aṣ-ṣadīq
(b) أكبر مني 'akbar minnī (c) تتكلم سريعًا. tatakallam sarīʿan.
(d) التدخل أشد مما كان قبلًا. at-tadakhkhul 'ashadd mimma kān qablan.
(e) هو موظف في الجمرک. huwa muwazzaf fi l-jumruk.

Lesson 19

1. (a) ma'mūr min ma'mūrī l-qism al-mālīya (b) sharikatān kabīratān
(c) ash-sharika mas'ūla 9an daf9 al-qisṭ. (d) mutakhaṣṣiṣ fi t-ta'mīn
(e) fī madrasa btidā'iya
2. (a), (b) مع مفتشي الجمرک الرئيسيين (c) انتهاء العقد
(d) في البوليصة الشاملتين (e) في السنة المقبلة
3. (a) وثيقتي wathīqatī (b) زملائي zumalā'ī
(c) تخفيف قسطه takhḥīf qisṭihī
(d) شروطها المقبولة shurūtuha l-maqbūla
(e) حسب بوليسته ḥasaba būlīṣatihī
4. (a) عندهم 9indahum (b) خالها khilālaha (c) معي ma9ī
(d) لديّ ladayya (e) بينهما baynahuma
5. (a) ممثلون مصريون (c) اجتماعات هامة (b) الوكلاء المسؤولون
(d) وكالات اجنبية (e) البوالص المعقدة
6. (a) زميلة جديدة (c) الممثل (b) المخاطرة الأجنبية
(d) العقد المؤرخ امس (e) الوثيقة الملحقة

Lesson 20

1. (a) tasallamt risālatakum. (b) al-muwāṣalāt al-lāsilkīya
(c) qad qara'na t-taqrīr. (d) 9ala matn ṭā'irat al-yawm
(e) 'arsalnāhu bi l-barīd al-jawwī.
2. (a) وجهوا لي رسالة طويلة مكتوب فيها جدول اسعارهم.
(b) الحكومة تقوم بتمديد شبكة الطرق الثانوية.
(c) ارسال البضائع بالحجم يكلفنا اقل مما يكلف بالوزن.
(d) تكون بوليصة الشحن على متن باخرة "كوبي مارو" من يوكوهاما.
(e) الوزارة تنشر جداول الصادرات عادة في الجريدتين الرسميتين.
3. (a) دلووا (e) تقولون\ يقولون (d) نأخذ (c) زاروا (b) أنظروا

4. (a) نصير (e) أستجوب (d) تحطّون (c) يرسلون (b) نبيع (a)
 5. (a) استبدلنا (e) شككنا في (d) اوجب علي (c) اخذت (b) وصلوا (a)
 6. (a) ابتداء يبتدئ، مبتدئ مبتداً، ابتداء (a)
 (b) ارسل يرسل، مرسل مرسل، إرسال (b)
 (c) كان يكون، كائن -، كَوْن (c)
 (d) استورد يستورد، مستورد مستورد، استيراد (d)
 (e) سأل يسأل، سائل مسؤل، سؤال\مسألة (e)
 7. (a) سأل (g) ورد (f) خوف (e) ورث (d) مدّ (c) نظر (b) فید (a)
 (h) وفق (k) أخذ (j) زيد (h)

Lesson 21



1. (a) 'inna ḥall al-mushkila yaḥḥar lana ghayr mumkin.
 (b) dumna muta'akkidīn min ḍarūrat at-tadakhkhul.
 (c) ḥal turīd al-'idāra sti'nāf al-mufāwaḍāt?
 (d) 'innana masrūrūn jiddan bi qtirāḥikum ḥawl muqābil ash-shughl
 al-'idāfī. (e) 'a mā tasallamt at-taqrīr? 'innana 'arsalnāhu qabla 'usbū9ayn.
 2. (a) ما رأيك حول جدول الأبدال الجارية؟
 (b) هل نظرتم جدول الرواتب للسنة المقبلة؟
 (c) ان الشركة لا تريد تطبيق هذه الأرقام الجديدة.
 (d) سيستغرق الإضراب وقتاً قصيراً فقط لعدم تأييد النقابتين.
 (e) اننا نعتبر طلب العمال غير مقبول.
 3. (a) <shū ra'yak ḥawl jadwal al-'abdāl al-jāriya>
 (b) <shuftū jadwal ar-rawātib li s-sana l-muqbila>
 (c) <ash-sharika mā turīd taṭbīq hādhi l-'arqām al-jadīda.>
 (d) <al-'idrāb rāḥyistaghriq waqt qasīr faqaṭ li 9adam ta'yīd an-niqābtayn.>
 (e) <ni9tābir ṭalab al-9ummāl ghayr/mish maqbūl.>
 4. (a) لا يتمكن منه. (c) لا يستقبله. (b) ما استقبلته.
 (d) لا يهمننا كثيراً. (e) زميله ليس مريضاً.
 5. (a) لماذا هو غائب؟ (c) ماذا نظرتم؟ (b) هل قمتم بإرسال الجواب؟
 (d) كانوا مأمورين في أي قسم؟ (e) لمن باععه؟
 6. (a) قرأ المفتشون الوثيقة بالتفصيل. (b) ذهب الممثلون الى المؤتمر.
 (c) قال ممثلو الشركة ان الاتفاقية مقبولة.
 (d) يفهم الوزير تماماً ان الوضع معقد.
 (e) خرج المتظاهرون من المصنع ودخلوا الشارع الرئيسي.
 7. (a) ان الممثلين ذهبوا الى المؤتمر.
 (b) ان المفتشين قرأوا الوثيقة بالتفصيل.
 (c) ان ممثلي الشركة قالوا ان الاتفاقية مقبولة.
 (d) ان الوزير يفهم تماماً ان الوضع معقد.
 (e) ان المتظاهرين خرجوا من المصنع ودخلوا الشارع الرئيسي.

Lesson 22



1. (a) ḡananna 'annahu min aḡ-ḡarūrī 'an yastamirr al-baḡth.
 (b) ihtamamt bi dirāsāt al-wathīqa htimāman kāmīlan.
 (c) yaqūm qism al-handasa bi dirāsāt al-'arqām.
 (d) hal tastaḡīḡ ash-sharika tajdīd tanḡīm 'aqsāmiha?
 (e) yukhbiruna mumaththilī sharikat at-taswīq bi 'annaha lan tuwazzif 'ayy mumaththil 'idāfi khilāl aṣ-sayf.
- 2 (a) يجوز للشركة استعمال جهاز حفر ثالث في حالة اكتشاف احتياطات اضافية في القطاع الجنوبي.
 (b) ان التسويق لا تجري بسهولة تحت تلك الظروف الفنية.
 (c) يمكن ان يستغرق الحفر التجريبي وقتاً طويلاً.
 (d) لقد حاولت البلدان المنتجة للنفط تخفيف انتاجها.
 (e) يجوز لنا ان نستهلك اكثر مما استهلكناه في السنة الماضية.
3. (a) يجوز ان يكتبوا الجواب هذا الأسبوع.
 (b) لا يستطيع ان يقول لي المبلغ.
 (c) تريد الوكالة ان تقوم باستبدال ممثلها بالكويت.
 (d) نفضل الا نتعاون في هذا الأمر.
 (e) هل يمكننا ان نتكلم مع السلطات بخصوص الموضوع؟
4. (a) اننا مشغولون جدا صباحا.
 (b) لا يمكنكم ان تجدوا مشاكل في مثل هذه المسائل.
 (c) ما كانوا مستعدين ان يدفعوا المبالغ.
 (d) لا تزال الحفريات التجريبية غير منتجة.
 (e) ان الجوانب تحاول ان تتعاون.
5. (a) يطلبون منا اننا نتعاون.
 (b) لماذا لا يريد ان يستفيد من هذه الفرصة؟
 (c) تفضل الشركة ان تطبق اجراءات اخرى.
 (d) ماذا فهمت مما قال؟
 (e) يجب عليك ان تعبر عن رأيك.
6. (a) هاتان تانك (b) هؤلاء أولئك (c) هذا ذلك (d), (e) مدير البنك هذا مدير البنك ذلك

Lesson 23



1. (a) 'inna dirāsātana lā tazāl tajrī quduman wa sa nanshur an-natā'ij fi sh-shahr al-muḡbil. (b) talqa l-lajna 'aḡḡā' al-ḡukūma baḡd al-buḡūth al-jāriya. (c) lā yabqa 'illa ḡadad ṣaḡhīr min at-taḡāṣīl yajib 'an nashraḡaha. (d) yasḡa mudarā' al-bank 'ila 'an yanshurū taḡrīrahū qabla ra's as-sana. (e) ḡalayna 'an nastaḡhnī ḡan taḡāwun hādha l-ma'mūr.
2. (a) تسعى الحكومة الى تنظيم المؤتمر في اقرب وقت ممكن.
 (b) تجري المفاوضات التي قامت بها الحكومتان جرياً غير مرضٍ.
 (c) من الذي دعا المندوبين للاجتماع الاستثنائي؟

- (d) ما هي المعلومات التي طلبتها الأمانة منا؟
 (e) نسي أعضاء الوفد أهم شيء في برنامجهم.
 3. (a) تنادي الحكومة مسؤولين يعرفون ماذا يحدث.
 (b) يشتركون مهتما يحتاجون اليه.
 (c) لا نتمكن من برهان على قوله.
 (d) لا يزال هذا ادعاءً شديداً ضد احزاب المعارضة.
 (e) ينفون كل ما ندعي.
 4. (a) لماذا لا ينشرون التقرير الذي حضره المتخصص؟
 (b) هل تصدق ما ادعاه؟
 (c) دعا المدير المشرف الذي كان ينتظر خارج المكتب.
 (d) لا يمكن الاعتماد على من يقول مثل هذا.
 (e) ما صار للبنية التي كان يسكن فيها؟
 5. (a) لقي (e) بقي (d) رضي (c) سعي (b) جري

Lesson 24

1. (a) khamṣa u 9ishrīn ṭāliban (b) mitayn dīnār
 (c) min 'ajl 'arba9a mashārī9 hāmma (d) 9ashra rīyālāt (e) sitta sanawāt
 (f) li muddat sittat 'asābī9 (g) thalāth mīya u khamṣa u sittīn yawman
 (h) bayna 'alf u 'alfayn dīnār (j) 'arba9a u tis9īn bi l-mīya min as-sukkān
 (k) ba9da thamāniya u 'arba9īn sā9a
 2. (a) الطلبة الخامسة (c) الدرس السادس (b) المرة الثانية
 (d) اليوم الثامن والعشرون (e) المناسبة الأولى
 3. (a) ذات (e) ذوي (d) ذات (c) ذي (b) ذات

Lesson 25

1. (a) mā zilna nadrus al-mashrū9.
 (b) ra'īs al-wafd lā yanwī 'an yusā9idana.
 (c) istimrarna nusā9iduhu li 'anna qtirāḥahu kān mufīdan.
 2. (a) اننا نعتبر هذا الاقتراح اشد تعقيدا.
 (b) ان حل مشكلة التنمية تهتم جميع الدول المحبة للسلام اهتماما
 تبدأ الحكومة تدرس مشكلة زيادة المستوردات. (c) اساسيا.
 (d) لا بد من اعادة كتابة التقرير.
 (e) كيف يمكن الحكومة العمل في هذه الظروف؟
 3. (a) <na9tābir hādha l-iqtirāḥ mu9aqqad 'akthar.>
 (b) <ḥill mushkilat at-tānmiya t-himm jamī9 ad-duwal al-muḥibba li s-salām ihtimām 'asāsī.>
 (c) <al-ḥukūma tibda tudrus mushkilat ziyādat al-mustawradāt.>
 (d) <lā budda min 'inna nuktub at-taqrīr marra thāniya/'ukhra.>
 (e) <kayf al-ḥukūma tiqdar tishtāghil fī hādhi ḍ-ḍurūf?>
 4. (a) بدأوا يؤيدون اقتراحنا.

- (b) يحاولون ان يضيفوا ارقام جديدة الى التقرير.
 (c) يريدون ان يمولوا المشروع بمساعدة البنك.
 (d) يبدأون يحفرون بئرا في ظروف صعبة جدا.
 (e) يجب ان يؤيد القطاع الخاص الحكومة في سياستها الاقتصادية.
 جيء (e) حيّاحيي (d) ولي (c) كشف (b) نظر (a) 5.

Lesson 26



1. (a) tamm iftitāḥ al-mufaḥwādāt 'ams.
 (b) 'idha taḥassan aṭ-ṭaqs kān mufīdan li l-fallāḥīn.
 (c) ʔurūf al-istithmār al-ḥālīya ghayr mūrḍiya.
 (d) mādhā ʔulim min at-taqrīr?
 2. (a) فلنشرح لهم المشاكل ان وجدت.
 (b) لا يوجد شيء اجمل في العالم.
 (c) اعلن ناطق بلسان الحكومة ان العقد قد قُدم للمجلس.
 (d) كانت مشكلة في الميزانية عندما أخبر الوزير بفشل المفاوضات التجارية الدولية.
 (e) لا تدفع الشركة مبلغا اضافيا؛ انها تدفع على اساس اسعار ثابتة فقط.
 3. (a) اذا جاء كان اسهل علينا.
 (b) اذا رفضت الحكومة نطلب من المحكمة.
 (c) اذا قلت له هذا فسيجاوب جوابا واضحا.
 (d) ارسلنا لك الرسوم لو كانت عندنا.
 (e) اذا عرفت اللغة العربية تستفيد اكثر من اقامتك.
 4. (a) من الذي كان يتكلم عن هؤلاء الأشخاص؟
 (b) ليس واضحا ما تنوي الحكومة ان تعمل في هذه الحالة.
 (c) لا نستطيع ان نقرر اليوم؛ لنتنظر حتى الاسبوع المقبل.
 (d) لماذا لا تريد ان تقرأ الرسالة قبل ان نجاب؟
 (e) اظن انهم ليسوا حاضرين بعد الساعة الثالثة.
 5. (a) lan 'adhab 'ila l-mu'tamar 'illa 'idha ji't ma9ī.
 <mish rāyih 'ila l-mu'tamar 'illa 'idha tījī ma9ī.>
 (b) lam 'afham al-waḍ9 allādhī sharaḥahu lana.
 <mā fihimt al-waḍ9 illī sharaḥ lana yyā.>
 (c) 'inna hādhihi l-mushkila šārat lana 'ashadd ta9qīdan.
 <hādhi l-mushkila šārat lana mu9aqqada 'akthar.>
 (d) taṣil ghadan. <yūṣal bukra.>
 (e) 'in as-sittāt kunna ḥāḍirāt ṭūl al-fatra kulliha.
 <as-sittāt kānū ḥāḍirīn/moujūdīn ṭūl al-fatra kulliha.>

Index of words

References indicate the lesson/paragraph with the first or fullest explanation of the word or expression. Nouns and adjectives are shown as indicated in 6/13, and verbs as indicated in 11/12, 12/12 and 20/4 (but without the particle **أَوْ**). Personal and family names are not listed.

The sign → refers you to another entry in the same index. A broken plural or irregular feminine form is referred to its singular form (m. sing. for adjectives), except where the two entries would be adjacent.

Arabic, Part I

The transcription symbols appear in the order ' *a/ā b d ḍ dh f g gh h ḥ i/ī j k kh l m n o q r s ṣ sh t ṭ th u/ū v w y z ẓ/ḏ 9*. The sign ~ repeats the headword (or that part of it preceding the hyphen -). Search also under *q* for regional forms ' and *g*, under *j* for regional forms *g* and *zh*, and under *k* for regional form *ch*.

Words normally used with the article (e.g. *al-qāhira*) are shown with the article, but listed under their own initial symbol. Expressions consisting of a preposition + noun (e.g. *bi khuṣūṣ*) are shown with the preposition but listed under the noun.

'	' <i>aghusṭus</i> August 10/15
' <i>ab</i> 'abā' father 6/3, 14, 15	' <i>ahā!</i> ah! 6/1
' <i>āb</i> August 10/15	' <i>ahālī</i> → 'ahl
' <i>ābā</i> → 'ab	' <i>ahamm yihimm</i> IV concern, be
' <i>abadan</i> (n)ever 6/1, 2	important to 11/6
' <i>abḥār</i> → baḥr	' <i>ahammīya</i> importance 15/1
' <i>abnā</i> → 'ibn	' <i>ahl</i> 'ahālī people 13/1; ~ <i>al-mudun</i>
' <i>abrīl</i> April 10/15	townspeople, ~ <i>al-qura</i> country
' <i>abwāb</i> → bāb	people 13/3; ~ <i>an</i> welcome 1/1;
' <i>abyaḍ bayḍā</i> ' bīḍ white 12/11;	~ <i>an bīk</i> (etc.) welcome to you
→ baḥr	(etc.) 1/1, 3, 4, 2/2;
' <i>adilla</i> → dalīl	~ <i>an wa sahlān</i> welcome 2/1, 2
' <i>adna</i> → sharq	' <i>ahwiya</i> → hawa
' <i>ādwiya</i> → dawā'	' <i>aḥabb yihibb</i> IV love 15/1
' <i>aḍāf yuḍāf</i> IV add, annex 11/6	' <i>aḥad</i> (some)one 9/16, 17; (m.) one
' <i>aḍḥa:</i> 9īd <i>al-</i> ~ see 10/15	of 13/1; <i>lā</i> ~ no one 9/1, 16;
' <i>ādhār</i> March 10/15	(<i>youm</i>) <i>al-</i> ~ Sunday 7/1, 14
' <i>adhā9 yudhī9</i> IV broadcast 11/6	' <i>aḥmar ḥamrā</i> ' ḥumr red 12/1, 11
' <i>afād yufīd</i> IV benefit 11/6, 15/1, 2	' <i>aḥrār</i> → ḥurr
' <i>afkār</i> → fikr	' <i>aḥsan</i> better 4/1, 9/13
' <i>afriq-i</i> African, ~ <i>iya</i> Africa 13/3	' <i>aḥwāl</i> → ḥāl
' <i>aghlāt</i> → ghalaṭ	' <i>aḥyā</i> → ḥayy
' <i>aghniyā</i> → ghanī	' <i>aḥzāb</i> → ḥizb
' <i>aghrād</i> possessions 2/1;	' <i>aja yījī</i> I come 8/9, 10
→ gharaḍ	' <i>ajadd</i> newer 9/13

' <i>ajānib</i> → ' <i>ajnabī</i>	you 14/1, 2; <i>lā samaḥ</i> ~ God/
' <i>ajashsh jashshā</i> ' <i>jushsh</i> hoarse	Heaven forbid 15/10
12/11	' <i>almāniya</i> Germany 1/2
<i>min</i> ' <i>ajl</i> for (the sake of) 15/1	' <i>alqa yulqī</i> IV deliver (speech) 11/6
' <i>ajmal</i> more beautiful, <i>mā ~u!</i> (etc.)	' <i>alsina</i> → <i>lisān</i>
how beautiful! 13/1, 2, 12	' <i>alwān</i> → <i>loun</i>
' <i>ajnabī</i> ' <i>ajānib</i> foreign(er) 8/1	' <i>amal</i> ' <i>āmal bi</i> hope for 15/1
' <i>ajnās</i> → <i>jins</i>	' <i>amām</i> in front of 2/7
' <i>ajsām</i> → <i>jism</i>	' <i>amān</i> safety, safekeeping 14/1;
' <i>ajwiba</i> → <i>jawāb</i>	<i>fī</i> ~ <i>illā</i> , <i>fī</i> ~ <i>al-karīm</i> goodbye
' <i>akal yākul</i> I, ' <i>akl</i> eat 3/7, 5/5, 9/1	14/1, 2
' <i>akbar</i> bigger 9/13, 14	' <i>amar yu</i> ' <i>mur</i> I, ' <i>amr</i> order 3/7,
' <i>ākil</i> eating 10/5	5/4, 5
' <i>akl</i> food 9/1, 11	' <i>amayrka</i> America 1/2, 15/3
' <i>akram yukrim</i> IV treat with	' <i>amayrkī</i> ' <i>amayrkān</i> American 1/1
deference 13/2	' <i>amīn</i> 9 <i>āmm</i> secretary-general 15/3
' <i>akram</i> : <i>mā ~ak</i> (etc.) how kind you	' <i>amīr</i> ' <i>umarā</i> ' prince, emir 15/3
are (etc.) 13/12	' <i>āmīr</i> ordering 10/5
' <i>akthar</i> more 9/13, 14, 11/21, 12/11	' <i>amr</i> ' <i>umūr</i> affair 4/3, 10/11;
' <i>aktharīya</i> majority 8/1	~ ' <i>awāmīr</i> order 10/11
' <i>akyas</i> → <i>kīs</i>	' <i>amraḍ</i> → <i>marad</i>
' <i>akh</i> ' <i>ikhwa</i> /' <i>ikhwān</i> brother	' <i>amrīkī</i> American 15/3
6/1, 3, 14	' <i>ams</i> yesterday, ' <i>awwal</i> ~ the day
' <i>akhadh yākhudh</i> I, ' <i>akhdh</i> take 3/7,	before yesterday 7/3
5/2, 5, 13/6; ~ <i>bi</i> 9 <i>ayn al-iḡtibār</i>	' <i>amsā</i> → <i>masa</i>
take into consideration 13/10	' <i>amtār</i> → <i>mitr</i>
' <i>akhaḥḥ</i> weaker 9/13	' <i>amḥār</i> → <i>maḥar</i>
' <i>ākhar</i> ' <i>ukhra ~īn</i> other 6/11, 12	' <i>amthāl</i> → <i>mathal</i>
' <i>akhbar yukhbir</i> IV <i>bi</i> inform of 11/6	' <i>an</i> see 15/1
' <i>akhbār</i> → <i>khavar</i>	<i>al-</i> ' <i>ān</i> now 8/1, 2;
' <i>akhḍar khaḍrā</i> ' <i>khudr</i> green 12/11	<i>li ḥadd al-ān</i> until now 11/2
' <i>akhdh</i> taking 10/11	' <i>ana</i> I 1/1, 5
' <i>akhīr</i> recent 6/12	' <i>anābīb</i> → ' <i>unbūb</i>
' <i>ākhir</i> ' <i>awākhīr</i> last 6/11, 12;	' <i>anbā</i> ': <i>tufīd al-</i> ~ it is reported
→ <i>kalima</i>	15/1, 2; → <i>naba</i> '
' <i>akhkhar</i> II delay 9/10	' <i>anfus</i> → <i>nafs</i>
' <i>akhmās</i> → <i>khums</i>	' <i>anhur</i> → <i>nahār</i> , <i>nahr</i>
' <i>akhraj yukhrij</i> IV publicise, expel	' <i>anjaz yinjiz</i> IV implement,
11/6	accomplish 11/6
' <i>akhṭiba</i> → <i>khīṭāb</i>	' <i>anna</i> that 15/1
' <i>āla kātib</i> a typewriter 5/3	' <i>ansha yunshī</i> IV construct, create
' <i>alf</i> ' <i>alāf</i> /' <i>ulūf</i> thousand 7/10	11/6
' <i>alla</i> : ~ <i>yisallimak</i> (etc.) goodbye	' <i>antaj yintij</i> IV produce 11/6
2/1, 2; ~ <i>yihfazak</i> (etc.) God bless	' <i>anwā</i> 9 → <i>nou</i> 9
you, ~ <i>yaḡfīk</i> (etc.) well done!	' <i>aqālīm</i> → ' <i>iqlīm</i>
6/1, 2; ~ <i>yibārik fīk</i> (etc.) thank	' <i>aqall</i> less 9/13; ~ <i>īya</i> minority 10/3

- 'aqmār → *qamar*
 'aqmisha → *qmāsh*
 'aqrāṣ → *qurṣ*
 'aqṣa → *shaṣ*
 'aqṣar shorter 9/13
 'aqwa stronger 9/13
 'aqwāl → *qawl*
 'āqwiyyā' → *qawī*
 'ārā' → *ra'ī*
 'arād *yurīd* IV want 11/6
 'arāqī → *'arq*
 'arbāḥ → *ribḥ*
 'arbā9 → *rub9*
 'arba9 *mīya* four hundred 7/1, 10
 'arba9a four 4/11;
 (*yum*) *al*~ Wednesday 7/14
 'arba9-īn forty,
 ~*t9ashr* fourteen 5/12
 'arq 'arāqī land 13/1
 'arkhaṣ cheaper 9/1, 13
 'arqām → *raqm*
 'arsal *yursil* IV send 11/6
 'as'ila → *su'āl*
 'asābī9 → *'usbū9*
 'asaf: *ma9 al*~ regrettably 7/1
 'asansayr lift 3/3
 'asās 'usus basis, ~ī basic 8/1;
 bi l~ basically 10/1, 2
 'asātidha → *'ustādh*
 'asbā9 → *sub9*
 'asdās → *suds*
 'āsiya Asia, ~wi Asian 13/3
 'asmā' → *'ism*
 'asmida → *samad*
 'asnān → *sinn*
 'asra9 faster 9/13
 'aswad *saudā' sūd* black 12/11
 'aswāq → *sūq*
 'as9ār → *si9r*
 'aṣarr *yīṣirr* IV *9ala* persist in,
 insist on 11/6
 'aṣbāḥ → *ṣubḥ*
 'aṣdiqā' → *ṣadīq*
 'aṣfar *ṣafra ṣufr* yellow 12/11
 'aṣghar smaller 9/13, 14
 'aṣḥāb → *ṣaḥib*
 'aṣwāt → *sawt*
 'ashadd stronger 9/1;
 more severe 9/13
 'ashār *yushūr* IV 'ila indicate, point
 out 12/1
 'ashbāh → *shibih*
 'ashidda → *shadīd*
 'ashghāl → *shughl*
 'ashhur → *shahr*
 'ashkhāṣ → *shakhṣ*
 'ashyā' → *shī*
 'atsā9 → *tus9*
 'aṭfāl → *ṭifl*
 'aṭibbā' → *ṭabīb*
 'aṭlaq *yīṭlaq* IV *an-nār* open fire 15/1
 'aṭlasī Atlantic 13/3
 'aṭrash *ṭarshā' ṭursh* deaf 12/11
 'aṭwal longer 9/13
 'aṭwāl → *ṭūl*
 'aṭyab better 9/13
 'athāth (pl.) furniture 6/3
 'athlāth → *thulth*
 'athmān → *thaman, thumn*
 'aththar II *9ala* affect 9/10
 'aw or 2/1; → *'imma*
 'awā'il → *'awwal*
 'awākhir → *'ākhir*
 'awāmir → *'amr*
 'awḍaḥ clearer 9/13
 'awjab *yūjib* IV *9ala* impose on
 11/6
 'awjaz *yūjiz* IV summarise 15/1
 'awqaf *yūqif* IV stop 11/6
 'awrāq → *waraqa, i9timād*
 'awsaṭ → *shaṣ*
 'awsa9 wider 9/13
 'awshak *yūshik* IV 'inn/*9ala* be on
 the point of 11/6
 'awṭān → *waṭan*
 'awwal 'ūla ~īn/'awā'il first 6/11,
 8/20; ~ 'ams the day before
 yesterday 7/3; ~an firstly 8/1;
 mādda ~īya raw material 11/3
 'ayād → *'īd*
 'ayār May 10/15
 'ayḍan also 3/1

'aylūl September 10/15	~an li in honour of 13/1, 2
'ayna9am yes 4/1	'ikhrāj expulsion 11/10
'aywa yes 7/1	'ikhwa/'ikhwān → 'akh
'ayy what, which 5/15; any/any- see 9/16; ~ nou9 min what kind of 5/15; ~ shakḥs anyone, no one, ~ shī anything see 9/16; ~ wāḥid which one 5/15	'ikhwāt → 'ukht
'ayyām → youm	'ila to, for 2/7, 8
'azmān → zamān, zaman	'ilay- see 2/8
'azraq zarqā' zurq blue 12/11	'ilaykum al- 'ān (we bring) to you now 15/1, 2
'azwāj → zouj	'iliktrounī → barīd
'az9aj yiz9ij IV disturb 11/6	'illa except 2/7, 8; to (an hour) 7/12; (+ negative) only 11/25
'azhar → zuhr	'ilqā' delivery (speech etc.) 11/10
'a9dād → 9adad	'imāra principality, emirate 15/3
'a9dā' → 9uḍw	'imayl e-mail 5/3
'a9jab yi9jib IV please 11/6	'imkāniya possibility 7/1
'a9la higher 9/13	'imma ... 'aw either ... or 8/1
'a9lan yi9lin IV announce 15/1	'imshī go 4/1
'a9ma 9amyā' 9umī blind 12/11	'ingiltra England, Britain 1/2
'a9mār → 9umr	'inglīzī 'inglīz English, British 1/1
'a9nāb → 9inab	'inn that 3/1, 4/7, 8, 7/15; → ka, ma9
'a9raj 9arjā' 9urj lame 12/11	'inna see 15/9
'a9shār → 9ushr	'inshalla I hope 6/1, 2
'a9ṭa ya9ṭī IV give to 11/6	'inshā' creation, composition 11/10
'a9yād → 9īd	'int you (m.) 1/1
'ibār → 'ibra	'intāj production 5/3, 11/10
'ibil camels 9/5	'inti you (f.) 1/1, 5
'ibn 'abnā' son 6/3	'intū you (pl.) 1/5
'ibra 'ibār needle, injection 12/3	'īqāf stoppage 11/10
'īd 'ayād hand, arm 12/3	'iqāma stay, residence 2/3
'idāra administration 5/3	'iqālīm 'aqālīm region 13/3
'idāf-a addition 11/10;	'irād-a wish 11/10;
~ī additional 11/1, 11	~ī intentional 11/11
'idha whether 5/16; if 9/1, 11/14	'irhāb terrorism 15/3
'idhā9a broadcasting 11/10	'irsāl despatch 11/10
'iḥd-a (f.) one of,	'ism 'asmā' name 1/1
~āhum one (f.) of them 13/1	'ismaḥ (etc.) li permit 1/1, 3, 4
'iḥd9ashr eleven 5/12	'isrā'īl Israel 15/1; ~ī Israeli 13/1
'iḥna we 1/5	'iṣrār insistence, persistence 11/10
'ījāb compulsion 11/10;	'ishāra sign(al) 4/1
~ī positive 10/1; 11/11	'īṭāl-ī Italian 1/9; ~iya Italy 1/2, 9
'ijāza leave, holiday 10/15	'iz9āj disturbance 11/10
'ijbārī compulsory 8/3	'i9ṭā' donation 11/10
'ijrā' (administrative) measure 13/1	'oktōbir October 10/15
'ikrām deference;	'ouḍa 'uwaḍ room 3/1; ~t ḥammām bathroom, ~t noum bedroom 3/3
	'ouḍā9 → waḍ9

- 'oujā9* → *waja9*
'oulād children 6/3; → *walad*
'ouqāt → *waqt*
'ujra fare 2/3; rent 6/3
'ukkid it was confirmed 15/1
'ukhra → *ākhar*
'ukht *'ikhwāt* sister 6/3, 14
'ūla → *'awwal*
'ulūf → *'alf*
al-'umam al-muttāḥida United Nations 15/3
'umarā → *'amīr*
'umm *~ahāt* mother 6/3, 14
'umūr affairs 4/3; → *'amr*
'unbūb *'anābīb* pipe 11/1
'urdun: *al-~* Jordan, *~ī* Jordanian 1/1
'ūro euro 2/3
'urubb-a Europe 1/2, 9; *~ī* European 1/9, 15/3; → *ittihād, sūq*
'usbu9 *'asābī9* week 6/1
'usus → *'asās*
'ustādh *'asātīdha* professor 6/1
'utayl hotel 3/1
'utubīs bus 2/3
'uwaḍ → *'ouḍa*
a
allātī who, which, that 15/1
b
bāb *'abwāb* door 3/1
bada yibda I begin 8/7, 8, 12
bādī beginning 10/5
baḍāyi9 → *biḍā9a*
badhla suit 14/3
baḥath yibḥath I, *baḥth* discuss 10/3
baḥr *'abḥār* sea;
al-~ al-'abyaḍ al-mutawassiḥ
 Mediterranean Sea,
al-~ al-'aḥmar Red Sea 13/3
baḥrayn Bahrain 6/1
baḥth buḥūth discussion 5/3, 10/11
bal but rather 15/1
bāl: *dār yidīr* I *~ak* (etc.) take care 12/1, 2
balad bilād town 3/1; *~īya* town/
 village hall, municipality 13/1
balagh yiblagh I amount to 15/1
balāṭ tiles 9/5
banadūra tomatoes 9/1
banāt → *bint*
bank bunūk bank 1/2;
al-~ ad-duwalī World Bank 15/3
baṇṭaloun trousers 14/3
baqar cattle 9/5; *~a* cow 9/6
bārak III *fī* bless 14/1, 2
barāmij → *barnāmaj*
barānī → *burnayṭa*
barhan IQ 9/1a, *burhān* prove 12/12
barīd mail, *~* *'iliktrounī* e-mail 5/3
bārid cold 6/1
barlamān parliament 5/3
barnāmaj barāmij programme 12/1
barrāda refrigerator 6/3
bas only 2/1
basātīn → *bustān*
basīṭ busaṭā ' simple 6/11;
 in poor supply 13/2
baṣ bus 2/3
baṭṭāl → *mish*
baṭṭānīya blanket 3/3
baṭn buṭūn stomach 12/3
bawwāb doorman 3/3
bayḍ eggs 9/5; *~a* egg 9/6
bayḍā → *'abyaḍ*
bāyi9 selling 10/5
bayn between, among 2/7, 8
bayrūt Beirut 6/1
bayt buyūt house 6/1
bay9 buyū9 sale 10/11
bā9 yibī9 I, *bay9* sell 6/4, 7/4
ba9d after 2/7, 6/18; *~ mā* after 3/1, 6/18; *~ bukra* the day after tomorrow 7/3;
~ayn afterwards 4/1;
~ ishwayy soon 11/21; → *zuhr*
ba9ḍ some 8/1, 17; each other 8/17
ba9īd 9an far from 4/1
bi with, in 2/7, 8;
~ kam (for) how much? 14/3
bī with it/him 2/8
bī- see 2/8
bid (*-di* etc.) want see 11/18

bidūn without 2/7
biḍā9a baḍāyi9 merchandise 14/1
bīḍ → 'abyaḍ
būk → 'ahlan
bilād buldān country 6/11; → *balad*
bināya building 3/1
binnī/bunnī brown 12/11
bint banāt girl, daughter 6/3
biqī yibqa I remain 8/9
bīra beer 9/1
bissa bisas cat 9/8
blāstīkī plastic 11/1
blūza blouse 14/3
bouṣṣa post office 4/1
brīṭānī British 4/1
budda: lā ~ (*min*) there~~is~~ no
 escaping 12/1, 2
buḥayra lake 13/3, 17
buḥūth → *baḥṭh*
bukra tomorrow 7/1;
 ba9d ~ the day after tomorrow 7/3
buldān → *bilād*
būlīs police 4/3
bunnī → *binni*
burhān 9ala proof of 12/12
burnayṭa barānīt hat 14/3
burtuqān oranges 9/5; ~a orange 9/6
busaṭā' → *basīt*
bustān basātīn garden 6/3
butūn → *baṭn*
buwayb small door 13/17
buyū9 → *bay9*
būza/būṣa ice 9/3

d

da this see 6/19
dabbar II arrange 9/10
dafa9 yidfa9 I, *daf9* pay 3/6, 5/4
daf9 madfū9āt payment 10/11
dajāj chicken(s) 9/1, 5;
 ~a chicken 9/6
dāk that see 6/19
dakākīn → *dukkān*
dakātira → *duktur*
dakhal yudkhul I, *dukhūl* enter 3/6,
 5/4
dākhil inside 2/7; ~īya Interior,

Internal Affairs 4/3
dalīl 'adilla directory 7/3
dall yidill I direct, indicate 8/4, 5
dam blood 12/3
danānīr → *dīnār*
daqīqa daqāyiq minute 4/1, 7/12
dār yidīr I bāl- take care 12/1, 2
daraja degree,
 ~t *ḥarāra* temperature 12/1
daras yudrus I, *dirāsa* study 4/1, 5/4
dārij colloquial 8/3
darras II instruct 9/10
dasātīr → *dustūr*
dawā' 'ādwiya medicine 12/1
dawla duwal state 5/3; ~ *kubra*
 superpower, ~ *nāmiya*
 developing country, ~ *sinā9īya*
 industrialised country 15/3;
 → *jāmi9a*
dāyiman always 6/1
di this see 6/19
dibloum diploma 8/3
diblumāsī diplomat(ic) 1/2
difā9 defence 4/3
ad-dijla Tigris 13/3
dīk that see 6/19
diktātūrīya dictatorship 13/11
dimashq Damascus 4/1
dīmuqrāfīya democracy 13/11
dīnār danānīr dinar 2/3
dirāsa study 8/1, 10/11
disimbir December 10/15
di9āya advertising 10/1
ad-douha Doha 5/1
doul these see 6/19
doulār dollar 2/3
dukkān dakākīn shop 4/3
duktur dakātira doctor 1/1, 2/4
dukhūl entry 8/1, 10/11
dulāk those see 6/19
dunya world 13/3
dustūr dasātīr constitution 15/3
duwal → *dawla*, *jāmi9a*
duwalī international 5/3;
 → *bank*, *ṣandūq*

ḍ

ḍaḥak yidḥak I, *ḍaḥk* laugh 6/1
ḍarab yuḍrub I strike 7/3;
 ~ 'ibra inject 12/3;
 ~ *tilifoun* telephone 7/3
ḍarība ḍarāyib tax 11/3
ḍarur-a necessity 11/1;
 ~*ī* necessary 5/1
ḍayf ḍuyūf guest 3/3
ḍa9īf ḍu9afā' weak 12/3
ḍidd against 2/7
ḍiffa ḍifaf bank, shore, coast 13/1
ḍuyūf → *ḍayf*
ḍu9afā' → *ḍa9īf*

dh

dhakar yudhkur I mention 9/1
dhakkar II *bi* remind 9/10
dhātī → *ḥukm*
dhū see 10/15
dhubāb flies 9/5; ~*a dhubbān* fly 9/6

f

fa so, then 4/1, 11/16
fāḍī fāḍiya fāḍiyīn empty, free
 1/1, 10, 7/13, 10/5
faḍḍal II favour 9/10
min faḍlak (etc.) please 1/1, 3, 4, 13
fahaṣ yifḥaṣ I, *fahṣ* examine 12/1
fahṣ examination 12/3
fākiha fawākih fruit 9/1
fakka small change 4/1
faks fax 5/3
fallāḥ peasant, farmer 13/3
fanājīn → *finjān*
fann funūn art 8/3; ~*ī* technical 5/1
faqat only 2/1
faqīr fuqarā' poor 6/11
farans-a France 1/2, 9;
 ~*awī* French 1/9
farja yifarjī IQ show 12/12
farsha bed 3/3
fasātīn → *fustān*
fāṣal III bargain 14/1
al-faṣīḥ literary Arabic 8/3
faṣl fuṣūl season 10/15
fataḥ yiftaḥ I open 3/6, 5/4
fatra fatarāt interval, period 7/13

fattash II *9an* look for 14/1
fāwaḍ III negotiate 15/1
fawākih → *fākiha*
fī → *fī*
fī in 2/1, 7, 8; on 10/15
fī there is/are 2/1, 11, 6/7, 7/7,
 9/16; in him/it 2/8
fibrāyir February 10/15
fihim yifham I, *fahm* understand 11/1
fikra 'aḥkār idea, thought 5/1, 2;
9ala ~ by the way 6/1, 2
filasṭīn Palestine 1/2
filḥil pepper 9/3
finjān fanājīn cup 9/3
fīṣīḥ: *9īd al-*~ Easter 10/15
fish, mā ~ there is/are no 12/1, 17
fitr: *9īd al-*~ see 10/15
fīziya physics 8/3
fouq above 2/7; up 3/1; upstairs 6/3
four boiling, ~*an* immediately 11/19
fulūs (pl.) money 2/3
funūn → *fann*
fuqarā' → *faqīr*
furaṣ → *furṣa*
al-furāt Euphrates 13/3
furṣa furaṣ occasion, opportunity,
 ~ *sa9īda* pleased to meet you
 5/1, 2; → *intāhaz*
fustān fasātīn dress 14/1
fuṣḥa: *al-lughā l-*~ literary Arabic 8/3
fuṣūl → *faṣl*
fuṭūr breakfast 3/1

g

gārāj garage 6/3
gārsoun waiter 9/1
grām gram 14/3
gravāt necktie 14/3

gh

ghadhā' lunch 3/3
ghādar III leave 11/4
ghalat 'aḥlāt mistake 5/1; error 6/15
ghālī ghāliya ghālīyīn expensive
 14/1
ghanī 'aghniyā' rich 6/11
gharaḍ 'aghrāḍ purpose 8/1;
al-~ *min* the purpose of 8/1, 2

gharb west, ~ī western 13/1
ghasīl washing 14/3;
qābil li l~ washable 14/1, 10
ghassal II wash 14/3
ghayba absence 6/1, 2
ghāyib absent 7/1
ghayr other, not, un- 7/1, 16, 10/7,
 14/10; ~ *9ādī* extraordinary 10/3;
 ~ *mumkin* impossible,
 ~ *musta9mal* unused, disused,
 ~ *9arabī* non-Arab,
u ~u/ha and so on 7/16
ghayyar II change 9/10
ghurfā ghuraf room 3/1;
 ~*t ḥammām* bathroom,
 ~*t noum* bedroom 3/3; ~*t tijāra*
 Chamber of Commerce 10/1

h

ha- this 6/9
hādī Pacific 13/3
hādha this 1/1, 4/1, 4, 5, 6/9, 19;
 ~ *wa* furthermore 15/1, 2
hadhāk that 4/4
hādhi this, these 4/1, 4, 5
hadhīk those 4/4
hadhoul these 4/4
hadhulāk those 4/4
halóu hello (on the telephone) 7/1
hamm yihimm I be important 8/4, 5
handasa geometry, engineering 8/3
hassa now 5/1
hawa 'áhwiya air 8/3, 13/3
hay here is/are 2/1, 4/10
hay'a organisation 15/3
hayāna (etc.) here we are (etc.)
 4/1, 10
hayk so, therefore, thus 8/1
hiya she, it, they 1/5
hijrī see 10/15
al-hind India 1/2, 9;
 ~ī *hunūd* Indian 1/9, 13/3
huwa he, it 1/5
hum they 1/5
huna here 4/1
hunāk there 2/1
hunūd → *hind*

ḥ

ḥabb yiḥibb I like, love 8/4, 5, 12
ḥabb grains, seeds 9/5; ~*a ḥubūb*
 grain, seed, ~*at tīn* (etc.) see 9/7
ḥadath yaḥduth I happen 15/1
ḥadd ḥudūd limit 11/1;
li ~ al-ān until now 11/2
ḥādith ḥawādith event 15/1
ḥaḍar yuḥḍur I attend 10/3
ḥaḍḍar II prepare 9/10
ḥāḍir present 7/13; ready, present,
 certainly 9/1;
fī l-waqt al~ at present 10/2
ḥaḍirtak (etc.) you (etc.) 2/1, 2
ḥafāz yiḥfāz I keep 6/1, 2
ḥaka yiḥkī I speak 8/7, 8
ḥākī speaking 10/5
ḥāl 'aḥwāl condition 1/1; *kayf ~ak*
 (etc.) how are you? (etc.) 1/1, 3, 4;
kayf al~ how are you? 5/2;
ḥusn al~ good conditions,
sū' al~ poor conditions 12/15;
9ala kull ~ in any case 11/1, 2
ḥāla case 8/1
ḥālhum (etc.) themselves (etc.)
 13/1; see 13/14
ḥalīb milk 9/3
ḥall yiḥill I, ḥill solve 8/4, 5
ḥalq ḥulūq throat 12/1
ḥamd: (al-)~illa thank you, thank
 heavens 1/1, 3; *al~ulilla* thank
 you, thank heavens 5/1
ḥammāl porter 3/1
ḥammām bath 3/3
ḥamrā' → 'aḥmar
ḥaqīqa ḥaqāyiq truth,
fī l~ in truth 11/20
ḥaql ḥuqūl field 8/1
ḥaraka movement 14/1
ḥarāra heat, fever;
darajat ~ temperature 12/1
ḥarb ḥurūb (f.) war 15/3
ḥārr hot 13/3
ḥāsis sensing 10/5
ḥass yiḥiss I feel 8/4, 5
ḥashara insect 9/8

hashd hushūd crowd 15/1
hatta until, as far as 2/7, 8;
 so that 5/1; until 8/1, 2;
 ~ *u law* even if 11/1, 15
hāṭiṭ putting 10/5
haṭṭ yihṭṭ I put 8/4, 5
hāwal III try 11/4
hāwar III dialogue with 11/4
hawālay- see 2/8
hawālī around, about 2/7, 8
hawl around, about 2/7
haya hayawāt life 13/1
hayawān animal 9/8
hayawāt → *haya*
hayy 'ahyā' quarter (of town) 4/1
hazīrān June 10/15
hazz: li husn al-~ fortunately
 12/1, 2, 15;
 li sū 'al-~ unfortunately 12/2, 15
hijja see 10/15
hikāya narrative 10/11
hill hulūl solution 9/1, 10/11
hilu, f. *hilwa* sweet 9/3
hilwa → *hilu*, *qahwa* see 9/4
hilwiyāt dessert, sweets 9/1
hisāb account 3/3; arithmetic 8/3
hiṣān ḥuṣun horse 9/8
hiwār dialogue 11/9
hizb 'ahzāb (political) party 15/3
hubūb → *habb*
hudūd → *hadd*
hukm dhātī autonomy 15/3
hukūma government 1/9;
 muwazzaf~ civil servant 1/2
hukūmi governmental 1/9
hulūl → *hill*
hulūq → *halq*
humr → *'ahmar*
huqūl → *haql*
hurr 'ahrār free, ~īya freedom 13/11
hurūb → *harb*
husn good (noun) 12/2, 15; → *hazz*
husna best 9/14
huṣun → *hiṣān*
hushūd → *hashd*

i

i'tamar VIII deliberate 13/6
i'timār deliberation 13/10
ibtāda VIII begin 13/6
ibtidā' beginning 13/1, 10; ~*an min*
 with effect from 13/10; ~ī primary
 8/3; initial, primary 13/10
ibyaḍḍ IX blanch, go white 14/4
idṭārab VIII clash 13/7
idṭirāb commotion, riot 13/10
iftākar VIII think 13/6
iftātaḥ VIII inaugurate 13/6
iftitāḥ VIII inauguration 13/6;
 ~ī inaugural 13/10
ihtamm VIII *bi/fī* be concerned by,
 look after 13/6
ihtimām concern, attention 13/10;
 ghayr qābil li l-~ unremarkable
 14/10
iḥmarr IX go red, blush 14/4
iḥmirār going red 14/4
iḥtāj VIII 'ila need 13/6
iḥtall VIII occupy 13/6
iḥtāmāl VIII tolerate, be probable
 13/6
iḥtāram VIII respect 13/6
iḥtilāl occupation 13/10
iḥtimāl tolerance, probability 13/10
iḥtirām respect 13/10
iḥtiyāj need 13/10
ijṭāhad VIII exert oneself 13/6
*ijṭāma*⁹ VIII congregate 13/6
ijtihād zeal 13/10
*ijtimā*⁹ meeting 5/3, 13/10;
 ~ī social 13/10
ikbīr → *kbīr*
iktāshaf VIII discover 13/6
ikthīr → *kthīr*
ikhḍarr IX go green 14/4
ikhtār VIII choose, select 14/1
ikhtiyārī optional 8/3
illī who, which, that 8/1, 13–15
imtadd VIII be extended 13/6
imtāz VIII be distinguished 13/6
imtidād extension 13/10
imtiḥān examination 8/1

imtiyāz distinction 13/10
inbásaṭ VII enjoy oneself,
 be pleased 13/4
inḍamm VII join, be annexed 13/4
inḍimām annexation 13/10
infājar VII explode 13/4
infāṣal VII be separated 13/4
infijār explosion 13/10
infiṣāl separation, ~ī separatist
 13/10; ~īya separatism 13/11
inhall VII be solved 13/4
inkásar VII be broken 13/4
inkátab VII be written 13/4
inláqa VII be encountered 13/4
inqāl VII be said 13/4
inqálab VII be overturned 13/4
inqásam VII be divided 13/4
inqilāb coup d'état 15/3
insáḥab VII (be) withdraw(n) 13/4
insihāb withdrawal 13/10
intáha VIII end 13/6
intáhaz VIII: ~ *furṣa* take an
 opportunity 13/2, 6
intákhāb VIII (s)elect 13/6
intáqal VIII move away 13/6
intáḍar/intázar VIII wait for 13/6
intáḍir/intázir wait 4/1
intihā' end 13/10
intiḍār/intizār wait, expectation
 13/10
intikhāb election, ~ī electoral 13/10
intiqāl transfer 13/10
inzār VII be visited 13/4
in9add VII be counted 13/4
in9áqad VII be convened, assemble
 13/4
in9iqād convening 13/10
iqtáraḥ VIII propose, suggest 13/6
iqtirāḥ proposal 13/10
iqtiṣād economy, ~ī economic 11/3
irtāḥ VIII rest 13/6
ista'dhan X ask permission 14/5
ista'jar X rent (as tenant) 14/5
ista'naḥ X resume 14/5
istabdal X exchange, substitute 14/5
istaḥḍād X *min* benefit from 14/5

istafham X *9an* enquire about 14/5
istaghfar X *min* apologise for 14/5
istaghna X *9an* do without 14/5
istaghrab X *min* be astonished at
 14/5
istaghraq X last 14/5
istaḥaqq X deserve 14/5
istaḥḍar X summon 14/5
istaḥsan X consider good 14/5
istajāb X grant a request 14/5
istajwab X interrogate 14/5
istakbar X be arrogant, consider
 great 14/5
istakhdam X employ 14/5
istamarr X *fi/9ala* continue 14/5
istankar X reject 14/5
istanna yistanna X wait for 14/5
istaqall X be independent, consider
 small 14/5
istaqbal X receive 14/5
istarāḥ X rest 14/5
istashār X consult 14/5
istathmar X invest 14/5
istathna X except 14/5
istawrad X import 14/5
istawṣaf X consult (a doctor) 14/5
istawṭan X settle (in a place) 14/5
ista9add X be ready 14/5
ista9lam X *9an* enquire of 14/5
ista9mal X use 14/5
isti'jār tenancy 14/8
isti'nāf resumption 14/8
istibdāl substitution 11/1, 14/8
istighrāb astonishment 14/8
istiḥqāq merit 14/8
istijwāb interrogation 14/8
istikhdām employment 14/8
istimrār continuation 14/8
istinkār rejection 14/8
istiqbāl reception 3/1, 14/8
istiqlāl independence 14/8
istirād importation 14/8
istirāḥa rest 14/8
istithmār investment 11/3, 14/8
istithnā' exception 14/8;
 ~ī exceptional 8/1

isti9dād readiness 14/8
isti9māl use 14/8
iswadd IX go black 14/4
işfarr IX go yellow 14/4
iştāna9 VIII manufacture 13/7
iştinā9 manufacture,
 ~ī artificial 13/10
ishtāghal VIII work 13/6
ishtāra VIII buy 13/6
ishtarak VIII/fī participate in 13/6
ishtirā' purchase 13/10
ishtirāk participation, ~ī socialist
 13/10; ~īya socialism 13/11
ittāhad VIII be united 13/6
ittāfaq VIII 9ala agree on 13/6
ittākhadh VIII take 13/6
ittāsal VIII bi/fī contact 13/6
ittifāq (spoken) agreement, ~īya
 (written) agreement 15/3
ittiḥād unity, union 13/10; *al*~
 al-*'urubbī* European Union, *al*~
 as-sufiyātī/sufiyayī Soviet Union
 15/3; ~ī federal 13/10;
 ~īya federalism 13/11
ittikhādh taking 13/10
ittiṣāl (telephone) call 7/3; contact
 13/10
ithnayn two 4/11; (*yum*) *al*~
 Monday 7/14
ithn9ashr twelve 5/12
īyyā- see 11/1, 17
izdād VIII be increased 13/7
izdāwaj VIII be double 13/7
izdiyād increase 13/10
izraq IX go blue 14/4
i9tābar VIII consider 13/6
i9tāmad VIII 9ala rely on 13/6
i9tāqad VIII believe 13/6
i9tibār consideration 13/10; ~*an min*
 starting/with effect from 13/10;
 → '*akhadh*
i9timād confidence 8/16;
 accreditation, ~ 9ala dependence
 on, confidence in 13/10;
 → '*awrāq*
i9tiqād belief 13/10

i9wajj IX become bent 14/4
j
jāb *yijīb* I bring 6/4, 7/4
jabal jibāl mountain 13/3
jabr algebra 8/3
jadāwil → *jadwal*
jaddad II renew, renovate 9/10
jadīd *judud* new 6/11;
 ~*an* recently 9/1, 11/19
jadwal *jadāwil* timetable 2/3;
 ~ '*a9māl* agenda 10/3
jāhil *juhhal* ignorant 8/3
jāī next (in time) 7/13
jākayt jacket 14/3
jalas *yijlis* I sit 8/1
jamal *jimāl* camel 9/8
jamārik → *jumruk*
jamb beside 2/7
jamīl beautiful 4/1
jamī9 all 8/19
jāmi9-a university 4/1; ~*at ad-duwal*
 al-9arabīya League of Arab
 States 15/3; ~ī university (adj.) 8/3
jānib *jawānib* side 15/1
janūb south, ~ *gharbī* southwest,
 ~ *sharqī* southeast 13/3
jara *yijrī* I flow, proceed 8/7, 8;
 see 15/6
jarāyid → *jarīda*
jarī *jāriya* *jāriyīn* current (adj.) 7/13,
 10/5; flowing 9/1
jarīda *jarāyid* newspaper 11/1
jarrab II try 9/10
jarrāḥ surgeon 12/3
jashshā' → '*ajashsh*
jawāb '*ajwiba* reply 5/1; answer 11/9
jāwab III answer 11/4
jawānib → *jānib*
jawāz, ~ *safar* passport 2/1
jawla tour 5/1, 2
al-jazāyir Algeria, Algiers 1/2
jazīlan: *shukran* ~ many thanks 1/1
jazīra *juzur* island 13/3;
 shibih ~ peninsula 13/3, 16
jibāl → *jabal*
jibna cheese 9/3

jiddan very 1/1
jimāl → *jamal*
jinayh pound (£) 2/3
jinayna garden 6/3
jins 'ajnās sort 14/1
jirāhī surgical 12/3
jism 'ajsām body 12/3
jisr *jusūr* bridge 4/3
jou9ān *jou9a* *jiyā9* hungry 9/3
judud → *jadīd*
jughrāfiya geography 8/3
juhhal → *jāhil*
jumāda see 10/15
jumhūrī republican,
 ~*ya* republic 15/3
jumruk *jamārik* customs 2/1
jum9a: (*yum*) *al*~ Friday 7/14
jusūr → *jisr*
jushsh → 'ajashsh
jūwa inside 6/1
 k
ka as 6/1; ~ 'inn as if 11/14
kabīr: *9īd al*~ Easter see 10/15
bi l-kād almost 11/20
kadha thus, so 2/1;
 mish ~ isn't that so? 4/1
kaffa II suffice 14/1
kahraba electricity 8/1
kalb *kilāb* dog 9/8
kalima word 5/1;
 'ākhir ~ your best price 14/1, 2
kallaḥ II cost 9/10
kalsa sock 14/3
kam how much/many, some 2/1, 9,
 5/15; ~ *as-sā9a/as-sā9a* ~ what's
 the time? 7/12
kama as 5/1; → *yalī*
kamān also 1/1
kambyūtir computer 5/3
kāmīl complete, perfect 12/1
kammīya quantity 14/3
kān *yikūn* I, *kawn* be 6/4, 6, 16, 7/4, 8,
 8/12, 11/13; ~ *bid*- wanted 11/19;
 kān fī there was/were 6/7, 9/16;
 ~ *9āwiz* wanted 6/21; *kayf mā* ~
 somehow or other 13/1, 2, 13;

mahma ~ anything at all, *mata*
mā ~ at some/any time, *mīn*
mā ~ anybody at all, *wayn mā* ~
 somewhere or other, 13/13;
 yikūn fī there will be 7/8
kanādir → *kundara*
kanīsa *kanāyis* church 4/3
kānūn: ~ (*al*-) 'awwal December,
 ~ (*ath*-)*thānī* January 10/15
karāsī → *kursī*
karīm *kuramā* ' generous 6/11
kās *ku 'ūs* a glass 9/1
kaslān *kasla* lazy 8/3
kassar II shatter 9/10
katab *yuktub* I, *kitāba* write 3/6, 5/4
kātab III write to 11/4, 12/5
kātib writing 10/5;
 ~ *kuttāb*, ~*a* clerk 10/9; → 'āla
kaththar II increase 13/1, 2
kawa *yikwī* I, *kawī* iron 14/3
kawī ironing 14/3
kawn existence 10/11
kawwan II constitute 9/10
kayf how 1/1; ~ *mā* as 11/15;
 → *ḥāl*, *kān*
kayfiya mode, manner 10/1
kbīr *kbār* big 3/1; → *sinn*
kilāb → *kalb*
kīlou kilogram 14/3
kīmīya chemistry 8/3
kīs 'akyās bag 2/1
kitāb *kutub* book 2/1
kitāba writing 8/3, 10/11
kthīr *kthār* much, many 3/1, 17;
 very 4/1, 2, 14
ku 'ūs → *kās*
kubra biggest 9/14; → *dawla*
kul, ~*ī*, ~*ū* eat see 5/9
kulayb puppy 13/17
kull whole, all 5/1, 8/1, 18, 19;
 9ala ~ *ḥāl* in any case 11/1, 2
kullīya faculty, college 8/3
kundura *kanādir* shoe 14/3
kuramā ' → *karīm*
kursī *karāsī* chair 6/3
kutayyib booklet 13/17

- kuttāb* → *kātib*
kutub → *kitāb*
al-kuwayt Kuwait 1/2
kwayyis good 2/1; well 4/14, 11/20
kh
khavar 'akhbār news 6/1;
 message 7/1, 2
khaḍrā → 'akhḍar
khāf yikhāf I (min), khouf fear 6/4,
 7/4, 12/2
khaffaf II reduce 14/3
khafīf khifāf light(weight) 6/11
khalīj khulūj gulf,
 al~ al-9arabī Arabian Gulf 13/3
khalla II let (go), release 9/10, 11
khallaṣ II finish 9/10
khallī- let see 5/11, 8/12
khamīs: (youm) al~ Thursday 7/14
khāmis fifth 8/20
khamis mīya five hundred 7/10
khamis-a five 4/1, 11; ~īn fifty 5/12;
 ~t9ashr fifteen 5/1, 12
kharaḡ yukhrīj I min, khurūj come/go
 out 3/1, 6, 5/4
kharrāb defective 7/1
kharrīf autumn 10/15
khārij outside 2/7;
 ~īya Foreign Affairs 4/3
kharrīf khirāf sheep 9/8
khassāra khasāyir loss 11/3
khassāyir (pl.) damage 15/1
khassir yikhsar I, khasāra lose 11/3
khāṣṣ special, private 5/3
khāṣṣa khawāṣṣ particularity 11/19;
 ~tan especially 11/1, 19
khāt yikhīt I, khayt sew 14/1
khaṭir dangerous 12/1
khaṭṭ khuṭṭ line 7/1
khawāṣṣ → *khāṣṣa*
khāyif fearing 10/5
khayl horses 9/5
khayr khayūr good (noun) 13/1;
 masa/sabāḥ al~ good evening/
 morning 1/1, 3; tiṣbih (etc.) 9ala
 ~ goodnight 9/1, 2; wa 'int (etc.)
 bi ~ goodnight 9/1, 2; yikaththir
 ~ak (etc.) God bless you 13/2
khayt sewing 14/1
khayyāl tailor, ~a dressmaker 8/23
khidm-a service 10/1;
qitā9 al~āt services sector 11/3
khifāf → *khafīf*
khilāl during 2/7; fī ~ in the course of
 15/1
khirāf → *kharrīf*
khittāb 'akhṭiba speech 11/6
khayyāl sewing 8/1, 23
khouf fear 10/11; ~an min for fear of
 12/2; ~an 9ala fearing for 12/1, 2
khubz bread 9/3
khudr → 'akhḍar
khudra vegetables 9/1
khudh, ~ī, ~ū take see 5/9
khulūj → *khalīj*
khums 'akhmās a fifth 7/11
khurūj exit 10/11
bi khuṣūṣ concerning 2/7
khuṭṭ → *khaṭṭ*
khuyūr → *khayr*
I
lā not 5/9, 15/1, 10; ~ 'aḥad no one
 9/1, 16; ~ budda thereaṣ no
 escaping 12/1, 2;
law ~ if not, but for 11/14
la' no 1/1
labas yilbis I wear 14/3
lahja accent 4/1
lahḥām welder, butcher 8/23
lahm meat 9/3
lājī refugee 8/1
lajna lijān committee 5/3
lamma when 3/1, 5/15, 6/18
lāqa III find, encounter 11/4
laṭīf luṭafā 'kind (adj.) 4/1
law if 11/1, 14-16;
 ~ *lā* if not, but for 11/14;
 ~ *samaḥt* (etc.) please 1/1, 4, 13;
 → *ḥatta*
layla layālī night 7/3
laysh why 5/15
lāzim necessary 5/1, 7/9; must 7/8
lazīz lizāz pleasant 6/11

li to, for 2/7, 8, 6/8; of 11/27; see 5/13;
 ~ 'ann because 14/1, 9;
 ~ *mīn* whose 5/15
lībiya Libya 1/2
liḥa → *liḥya*
liḥām welding 8/3, 23
liḥya liḥa beard 6/15
lijān → *lajna*
lisān 'alsina (m./f.) tongue 12/1;
 → *nāṭiq*
lissa still, yet, (+ neg.) not yet 6/1
lizāz → *lazīz*
līra lira 2/3
līsta menu 9/1
loun 'alwān colour 14/1
lubnān Lebanon 1/2
luḡha language 4/1, 8/3
luṭafā → *laṭīf*

m

mā do/does/did/will not 3/9, 5/7,
 6/5, 19, 12/17, 14/10; what 12/9;
 ~ *huwa/hiya* what 8/1, 15;
 ~ *fī shī* there~~is~~/it~~is~~ nothing 4/1, 2;
 → 'ajmal, kān, yalī
ma 'kūl eaten 10/5
ma 'mūr official (noun) 2/1;
 ordered 10/5
mabdū begun 10/5
*mabī*9 sold 10/5
mabrūk! congratulations! 14/1, 2
mabsūṭ well, pleased 1/1, 3
madākhil → *madkhal*
madāris → *madrasa*
madd yimudd I extend 8/4, 5
mādda mawādd material,
 ~ 'awwalīya raw material,
 ~ *tijārīya* commodity 11/3
maddad II extend 14/10
*madfū*9āt → *da*9
madīna mudun city 13/3
madkhal madākhil entrance 4/3
madrasa madāris school 7/1, 8/23
māḍī māḍiya māḍiyīn past 7/13
maḡāriq → *maḡraq*
maḡāṭīḥ → *miḡṭāḥ*
maḡhūm understood 8/1

maḡraq maḡāriq crossroad 4/3, 8/23
maḡtūḥ open(ed) 3/3
al-maḡhrib Morocco 1/2
mahamma mahāmm task,
 assignment 7/1
mahma, ~ *kān* whatever 11/15;
 ~ *kān* anything at all 13/13
maḡākīm → *maḡkama*
maḡall place 1/1; ~āt (pl.)
 department store 4/3
maḡaṭṭa station 8/23
*maḡḍar ijtīmā*9 minutes (of meeting)
 10/3
maḡkama maḡākīm law-court 8/23
maḡkī spoken 10/5
maḡsūs sensed, tangible 10/5
maḡtūt put 10/5
majāl baḡth terms of reference 10/3
majālis → *majlis*
majārīḥ → *majrūḥ*
majbūr forced 12/1
majlis majālis council,
 ~ *an-nuwwāb/ash-shuyūkh*
 lower/upper house of Parliament,
 ~ *al-wuzarā* ' cabinet (of
 ministers) 15/3
majrūḥ majārīḥ injured 12/3
makātib → *maktab, maktaba*
makātīb → *maktūb*
mākīna: katab yuktub I bi l-- type
 5/1
maktab makātīb office 4/3, 8/23
maktaba makātīb library, bookshop
 4/3, 8/23
maktūb written 5/1, 10/5;
 ~ *makātīb* letter 10/9
makhārij → *makhraj*
makhātīr → *mukhtār*
makhāzin → *makhzan*
makhluṭ mixed 9/1
makhraj makhārij exit 4/3
makhūf feared 10/5
makhzan makhāzin warehouse 4/3
māl: shū ~ak (etc.) what~~is~~ wrong with
 you (etc.) 12/1, 2; → *ra* 's
malābis clothes 2/1, 14/3; → *taḡt*

- malān* full 12/1
malāyīn → *mal'yūn*
malā9iq → *mal9aqa*
malik mulūk king 15/3
mālīya finance 4/3
malmūs tangible 12/1
mal'yūn malāyīn million 7/10
mal9aqa malā9iq spoon 9/3
mamlaka mamālik kingdom 15/3
mamnūn grateful 4/1, 2
mamnū9 prohibited, forbidden 8/1
manāshīf → *minshafa*
manāshīr → *minshār*
manāṭiq → *minṭaqa*
manāzil → *manzil*
manāzir → *manẓara*
mandūb delegate 10/1;
 commissioner 15/3
manzil manāzil residence 8/23
manẓara manāzir view 13/1
maqāla (press) article 11/1
maqāyis → *miqyās*
maqlī fried 9/1
maqrū read 10/5
maqtū9 cut off 7/3
marā niswān woman 6/3
marāḍ 'amrāḍ sickness 12/3
marākiz → *markaz*
marḍā → *marīḍ*
marḥab-a, ~*ṭayn* hello 1/1, 3
marīḍ marḍā ill 6/11
māris March 10/15
marjū requested 10/5
markaz marākiz centre 4/3;
 (telephone) exchange 7/1
marr yimurr I *bi/9ala* pass by 8/4, 5
marra a time 7/13
mas'ala masāyil matter 8/1, 10/11
mas'ul person in charge 5/3;
 ~ (*9an*) responsible (for) 5/1, 10/5
masa 'amsā' (m.) afternoon,
 evening, ~ *l-khayr/n-nūr* good
 afternoon/evening 1/1, 3
masābiḥ → *masbaḥ*
masājīd → *maṣjid*
masāmīr → *mismār*
masāyil → *mas'ala*
masbaḥ masābiḥ swimming pool 3/3
masīḥī Christian 13/1
maṣjid masājīd mosque 4/3
maslūq boiled 9/3
maṣādir → *maṣdar*
maṣāliḥ → *maṣlaḥa*
maṣānī9 → *maṣna9*
maṣdar maṣādir source 15/1, 2
maṣlaḥa maṣāliḥ (legal/political)
 interest 15/3
maṣna9 maṣānī9 factory 8/23
masha yimshī I walk 8/7, 8
mashāghil → *mashghal*
mashākil → *mushkila*
māshalla! Good heavens! 6/1, 2
mashārī9 → *mashrū9*
mashghal mashāghil workshop
 8/1, 23
mashghūl busy 5/3
māshī walking 10/5
mashkūk fī doubted 10/5
mashrūb drink 9/3, 10/9;
 ~*āt* (pl.) liquor 2/1
mashrū9 mashārī9 project 10/1
mashūf seen 10/5
mata when 5/15;
 ~ *mā* whenever 11/15;
 ~ *mā kān* at some/any time 13/13
maṭābikh → *maṭbakh*
maṭālib → *maṭlab*
maṭār airport 2/3, 8/23
maṭar 'amṭār rain 13/1
maṭar yumṭur I rain 13/3
maṭā9im → *maṭ9am*
maṭbakh maṭābikh kitchen 6/3, 8/23
maṭlab maṭālib request 10/11
maṭlūb requested 10/5
maṭ9am maṭā9im restaurant 3/3, 8/23
mathal 'amthāl example 11/19;
 ~*an* for example 8/1, 11/19
mawādd → *mādda*
mawānī → *mīna*
mawāsīm → *mousim*
mawā9id → *mou9id*
mawwal II finance 9/10

may miyāh water,
 ~ *ma9danī* mineral water 9/3
maydān mayādīn square (in town) 4/3
māyū May 10/15
māzza hors d'œuvres 9/1
mazbūṭ correct 4/1; → *qahwa*
ma9 with 2/7; ~ *an* together 11/19;
 ~ *as-salāma* goodbye 2/1, 2;
 ~ *'inn* although 11/15
ma9āhid → *ma9had*
ma9āmil → *ma9mal*
mā9alaysh no matter 4/1, 2
ma9ārīf → *ma9riḥa*
ma9danī mineral (adjective) 9/3
ma9had ma9āhid institute 8/1, 23
ma9īsha life 13/1
ma9lūm known, of course 8/1;
 ~ *āt* (pl.) information 10/1, 9
ma9mal ma9āmil workshop,
 laboratory 8/23
ma9riḥa ma9ārīf knowledge,
 acquaintance 5/1, 10/10, 11
ma9rūf famous 4/1; known 10/5;
 'i9mal (etc.) ~ be so kind 9/1, 2
miftāḥ maḥāṭīḥ key 3/1, 8/23
mikānīk mechanics 8/3
mīlād Christmas,
 ~ *'ī*, *sana* ~ *īya* AD 10/15
milaff file (of papers) 5/3
miliḥ salt 9/3
mimma than 9/13; from what 12/9
min from 1/1, 2/7, 8; since 3/15; than
 9/13; ~ *'ajl* for (the sake of) 15/1;
 ~ *al-* see 6/17; ~ *faḍilkum* please
 1/4; ~ *faḍlak* please 1/1, 3;
 ~ *faḍlik* please 1/1, 4; ~ *qarīb*
 recently 11/24; ~ *sha'n* for the
 sake of 6/1; ~ *zamān* for a long
 time now 6/2; (in fractions) see
 7/11
mīn who, whose 5/15; *li* ~ whose
 5/15; ~ *illī* who see 8/15;
 ~ *mā* whoever 11/15;
 ~ *mā kān* anyone at all 13/13
mīna mawānī port 13/3

minshafa manāshif towel 3/3, 8/23
minshār manāshīr saw 8/23
minṭaqa manāṭiq region, area 13/1
miqyās maqāyīs measure(ment) 8/23
miriḍ yimraḍ I be/fall ill 12/3
mismār masāmīr nail 8/23
miṣr Egypt 1/2, 9; ~ *ī* Egyptian 1/9
mish not 4/1, 13, 6/19, 7/16, 10/7;
 ~ *baṭṭāl* not bad 1/1, 3;
 ~ *qalīl* quite a lot 12/2;
 ~ *kadha* isn't that so? 4/1
mīt → *mīya*
mitayn two hundred 7/1, 10
mitr 'amlār metre 4/1
mithl like 2/7, 8/22; as ... as 9/15;
 ~ *mā* as 8/22
mī-ya hundred 5/1; ~ *t* hundred 5/12;
fi/bi l-~ya percent 7/11
miyāh → *may*
mīzānīya budget 5/3
mnīḥ mnāḥ good 6/11
mouḍū9 mawāḍī9 subject, *shaklan*
wa ~ *an* in form and content 11/19
moujūd present, available 5/1, 10/5
moulūd an-nabī the Prophet's
 birthday 10/15
mouqif: ~ *baṣ* bus stop 4/3;
 ~ *min* attitude towards 15/1
mousim mawāsim season 10/15
mouz bananas 9/5; ~ *a* banana 9/6;
ḥabbat ~ banana 9/7
mou9id mawā9id appointment 4/1
mu'allif writer 1/2
mu'tāmar conference 7/1, 13/9
mubahhar spicy 9/3
mubtādī beginner 13/9
mudad → *mudda*
mudarā' → *mudīr*
mudarris instructor 8/3, 10/9
mudda mudad period 5/1, 7/13
mudīr mudarā' director 1/2;
 manager 5/3
mudun: 'ahl al-~ townspeople 13/3;
 → *madīna*
muḍāf added 11/8
muḍīfa stewardess 1/1

- muḍṭárib* agitated 13/9
mudhakkira memorandum 10/1
mudhī9 (radio, TV) announcer 11/8
mufīd useful 11/8
mughādara departure 2/3
muhājara immigration 2/1
muhandis engineer 1/1
muhimm important 5/1, 11/8
muhaḍḍar prepared 10/6
muhaḍḍir preparing 10/6
muḥāmī lawyer 1/2
muḥammar roast(ed) 9/3
muḥarram see 10/15
muḥāsib accountant 1/2
muḥāwala attempt 11/9
muḥāwara dialogue 11/9
muḥibb; dawla/duwal ~a li s-salām
 peace-loving nation(s) (state(s))
 15/2
muḥīṭ ocean 13/3
muḥmarr reddening 14/4
muḥtāj needy 13/9
muḥtall occupied, occupying 13/9
muḥtāmal bearable, probable 13/9
muḥtāram respected 13/9
mūjab obligatory 11/8
mūjib obligating 11/8
mūjaz summary 15/1
mujtāhid industrious 6/1, 13/9
mukātaba correspondence 11/9
mukātib correspondent 11/8
mukawwan constituted 10/6; ~ *min*
 composed/consisting of 10/1
mukawwin constituting 10/6
mukayyifa (air)conditioner 6/3
mukhadda pillow 3/3
mukhtālif varied, various 8/1
mukhtār makhātīr mayor 13/1
mulāqā encounter 11/9
mulḥaq attaché 6/1
mulūk → *malik*
mumarrīḍ orderly, ~a nurse 12/3
mumaththil representative 10/1
mumkin possible 7/1, 9; may, might,
 can 7/8
mumtadd extended 13/9
mumtāz excellent 5/1; excellent,
 distinguished 13/9
munāsib suitable 8/1, 11/8
munazzama organisation, body 10/1
mundh since 2/7, 3/15
munfājir explosive 13/9
munfāṣil separate(d) 13/9
munḥall (being) solved 13/9
muntákhhab elected 13/9
muntákhhib elector 13/9
muntij productive 11/8
muqābala encounter 11/9
muqābil opposite, remuneration 11/8
muqaddam offered, presented 10/6
muqaddim offering, presenting 10/6
muqarrir reporter 10/9
muqātala fight 11/9
muqātil fighter,
 ~a fighter aircraft 11/8
muqbil next 7/13
mur, ~ī, ~ū order see 5/9
murabba jam 9/3; educated 10/6
murabbī educating 10/6;
 educator 10/9
murashshaḥ candidate 8/1
murḍī murḍiya murḍīyīn satisfactory
 13/1
mursal sent 11/8
mursil sender 11/8
murūr traffic 4/1, 10/11;
ma9 ~ az-zaman with the passage
 of time 7/3
musāfir traveller 2/3, 11/8
musā9ada help 11/9
musā9id assistant 7/1, 11/8
musakkar closed 3/3
musakkhkhan cooked in spices 9/1
musawwada draft 10/3
musta'jir tenant 14/7
mustahiqq deserving 14/7
mustahsan approved 14/7
mustajīb 'ila responsive to 14/7
mustakhdam employee 14/7
mustakhdim employer 14/7
mustamirr continuous 14/7
mustankar objectionable 14/7

mustaqbal future 14/7
mustaqbil (radio) receiver 14/7
mustaqill independent 14/7
mustarāḥ lavatory 14/7
mustarīḥ restful 14/7
mustashār counsellor 14/7
mustashfā hospital 4/3
mustathmir beneficiary 14/7
mustathna excepted 14/7
mustawrad import 11/1;
 imported 14/7
mustawrid importer 14/7
mustawṣaf clinic 14/7
mustawṭin native 14/7
musta9idd ready, prepared 8/1, 14/7
musta9mal used 7/1, 14/7
musta9mil user 14/7
muṣirr persistent, resolute 11/8
muṣṭāna9 fabricated 13/9
mushkila *mashākil* problem 7/1
mushrif supervisor 11/1
mushtārak common, joint 13/9, 15/3
mushtarayāt (pl.) shopping 14/3
mushtārik participant 13/9
muta 'akkkhir delayed, late 2/3, 12/7
muta 'assif sorry 7/1, 12/7
mutabādal mutual, reciprocal 12/7
mutakallim speaker 12/7
mutakharrij graduate 8/3
mutakhaṣṣis specialising,
 specialist 5/1, 12/7
mutanāwal available 12/7
mutanāwib alternating 12/7
mutaqaddim foremost 12/7
mutarjam translated 12/12
mutarjim translator 12/12
mutawallī in charge 12/7
mutawaqqa9 expected 12/7
mutawaqqif 9ala conditional/
 dependent on 12/7
mutawassiṭ middle, medium (adj.)
 8/1; → *baḥr*
mutazāhir demonstrator 12/7
muta9allim educated, apprentice
 12/7
muta9alliq bi relevant/pertinent to

12/7
muttāhid united 13/9, 15/3:
 → 'umam, *wilāyāt*
muthaqqaf educated, cultured 8/3
muwāfaq 9ala agreed to 11/8
muwāfiq 9ala agreeing to 11/8
muwāṣalāt communications 11/1
muwazzaf employee, clerk 3/1, 10/9;
 shu 'ūn al-~īn personnel matters
 5/3; ~ *ḥukūma* civil servant 1/2
muzdāwij double 13/9
muz9ij annoying, ~āt discomforts
 11/8
mu9allam taught 10/6
mu9allim, ~a teacher 1/2, 10/9;
 teaching 10/6
mu9āmala treatment 11/9, 12/15;
 → *sū*
mu9āraḍa opposition 15/3
mu9ayyan certain, definite 10/1
mu9jab admirer 11/8
mu9jib admirable 11/8
mu9tāmad reliable, accredited 13/9
mu9tāqad believed 13/9
mu9ta given, ~yāt data 11/8
mu9fī donor 11/8

n

naba ' 'anbā' news 15/1
nabī prophet 10/15
nāda III call 11/4
naḥs 'anfus self 8/1; self, same 8/16
nahār 'anhur daytime 7/3, 13
nahr 'anhur river 13/3
najaḥ yinjah I, *najāḥ* succeed 8/3, 12
najāḥ success 10/11
najjār carpenter 8/23
nām yinām I, *noum* sleep 6/4, 7/4
nāmiya → *dawla*
naqd → *ṣandūq*
nāqiṣ nuqqaṣ in short supply 14/3
naqqāsh painter 8/23
nār → 'aṭlaq
nās people 2/1
nāsab III suit 11/4
nasama person (in statistics) 13/1
nashar yunshur I, *nashr* publish 11/1

- nāshif* dry 14/3
nashra bulletin 15/1
nāṭiq bi lisān spokesman 15/3
nawa yinwī I intend 8/7, 8, 12
*nawwa*⁹ II assort, vary 14/1
nazzal II take down 9/10
naẓarī: bi ṣūra ~ya theoretically 8/1, 11/22
naḍīf nuḍafā 'clean 6/11
naḍḍaf II 9ala n-nāshif dry-clean 14/3
nāyib nuwwāb deputy, member of lower house of parliament 15/3
na9am yes 1/1
nbīdh wine 9/3
niḥna we 1/5
nijāra carpentry 8/3, 8/23
an-nīl Nile 13/3
niqābat 9ummāl trade union 11/3
niqāsha painting 8/23
nīsān April 10/15
nisī yinsa I forget 8/9, 12
niswān women 6/11
niṣf 'anṣāf half 7/11
nizil yinzil I, *nuzūl* get/go down 3/6, 5/4
noum sleep 10/11
*nou*⁹ 'anwā⁹ kind (noun), 'ayy ~ *min* what kind of 5/15
novimbir November 10/15
nuzūl descent 10/11
nuḍafā → *naḍīf*
numra numar number 7/1
nuqqas → *nāqis*
nuskha nusakh copy 5/3
nuṣṣ half 7/1, 11; ~ *layl* midnight 7/3
nushkuralla thank God 1/1; thank you 1/3
nuwwāb → *majlis*, *nāyib*
q
qābal III meet 11/4
qābil li: ~ l-ghasīl washable 14/1, 10; ~ *li t-tajdīd* renewable, ~ *li t-tamdīd* extensible 14/10; ~ *li l-i9timād* reliable 15/2; → *ihtimām*
qabl before 2/7, 6/18; ago 3/15; ~ *mā* before 6/18; ~ *an* before(hand) 11/19
qad see 15/11
qaddam II offer, serve, present 9/10
qadīm qudamā 'old 6/11
qaḍīya qaḍāya case, cause 15/3
al-qāhira Cairo 5/17
qahwa coffee 1/1; ~ *ḥilwa* very sweet, ~ *sāda* without sugar 9/3; ~ *mazbūṭ(a)* medium sweet 9/3
qāl yiqūl I, *qawl* say 6/4, 7/4
qalb qulūb heart 12/3; ~ *īyan* cordially 9/1
qalīl little 9/13; *mish* ~ quite a lot 12/2
qām yiqūm I *bi*, *qiyām* undertake 6/4, 7/4
qamar 'aqmār moon 13/3
qamīṣ qumṣān shirt 14/3
qammāsh draper, cloth merchant 14/1
qanānī → *qinnīna*
qanāṣil → *qunṣul*
qara yiqra I, *qirāya* read 8/7, 8
qarār resolution 10/3
qārī reading 10/5
qarīb: ~ min near to 4/1; ~ *an* soon 11/19; *min* ~ recently, *9an* ~ soon 11/23
qārra continent 13/3
qarrar II decide, report 9/10
qāriya qura village 13/1
qās yiqīs I measure 14/3
qaṣd see 12/15
qaṣīr qiṣār short 6/11
qaṣṣ yiquṣṣ I cut 14/1
qātal III fight 11/4
qawī 'aqwiyyā 'strong 9/13
qawl 'aqwāl saying, utterance 10/11
qa9da see 10/15
min qibal by, on the part of 13/15
qidir yiqdar I can, be able 8/1, 12
qinnīna qanānī bottle 9/3
qirāya reading 8/3, 10/5
qism 'aqṣām division, department 5/1

qiṣār → *qaṣīr*
qitāl fight 11/9
qīṭa9 → *qīt9a*
qītā9 sector,
 al~ al-khāṣṣ private sector,
 al~ al-9āmm public sector 5/3;
 ~ *al-khidmāt* services sector 11/3
qīt9a qīṭa9 part, component 10/11
qiyām bi undertaking 10/11
qmāsh 'aqmisha cloth 14/1
qudamā → *qadīm*
quddām in front of 2/7
quduman ahead 9/1, 2
qulūb → *qalb*
qumṣān → *qamīṣ*
qunṣul qanāṣil consul,
 ~*īya* consulate 4/3
qura: 'ahl *al~* country people 13/3;
 → *qáriya*
qurṣ 'aqrāṣ tablet 12/1
qutil he was killed 15/1
 r
ra 'ī *'arā* opinion 7/1; *shū* ~*yak*
 (etc.) what do you (etc.) think?
 7/2
ra 'īs *ru* 'asā' chairman 10/3;
 (~ *al-jumhūrīya*) president (of
 the republic) 15/3;
 ~ *al-wuzarā* prime minister 15/3;
 ~*ī* principal, main 4/3
ra 's *ru* 'ūs head 12/3; ~ *as-sana* New
 Year 10/15; ~ *māl* capital 11/3;
 ~*mālīya* capitalism 13/11;
 9ala ~*ī* certainly 4/1, 2
rabba II bring up, educate 9/10
rabiḥ yirbaḥ I min profit from 11/3
rabī9 spring (season) 10/15;
 ~ *al-'awwal/ath-thānī* see 10/15
rābi9 fourth 8/20
rādiyo radio 15/1
raghba raghabāt fī wish for 8/1
bi r-raghm min despite 2/7
rāḥ yirūḥ I go 6/4, 7/4
rāḥ- shall, will 10/14, 15/12
raja yarjū I request 8/7, 8
rajab see 10/15

rājī requesting 10/5
rajul rijāl man 6/3
rākib rukkāb passenger 2/3, 10/9
rama yirmī I throw 8/7, 8
ramādī grey 12/11
ramadān see 10/15
raml rimāl sand, ~*ī* sand (adj.) 13/3
raqm 'arqām figure, number 4/1,
 8/21
rasab yursub I fail (in examination)
 8/3
rasmī official 5/3; *bi ṣūra* ~*ya*
 officially 11/1; ~*yan* officially 11/19
rashḥ a cold 12/1
rāyih going to, shall, will 10/14, 15/12
rayy irrigation 13/1
riyāḍa sport 8/3
riyāḍīyāt mathematics 8/3
riyāḥ → *rīḥ*
ribḥ 'arbāḥ profit 11/3
rīḥ riyāḥ (f.) wind 13/3
rijāl → *rajul*
rijī9 yirja9 I return 5/4
rikib yirkab I mount, get into 3/6, 5/4
rimāl → *raml*
risāla letter 5/1
riyāl rial, riyal 2/3
rkhīṣ rkhāṣ cheap 6/11
ru 'asā' → *ra* 'īs
ru 'ūs → *ra* 's
rub9 'arbā9 a quarter 7/11
rujū9 return 10/11
rukkāb → *rākib*
rūsīya Russia 15/3
ruzz rice 9/1
 s
sa shall, will 15/12
sa 'al *yis* 'al I *su* 'āl/mas'ala enquire
 3/7, 16, 5/4
bi sabab because of 2/7
sabbab II cause 15/1
sabbāk smelter, plumber 8/23
sābiq former 6/1
sabi9 mīya seven hundred 7/10
sābi9 seventh 8/20
sabt: (youm) *as~* Saturday 7/14

- sab9a* seven 4/1, 11;
 ~*t9ashr* seventeen 5/12
sab9in seventy 5/12
sāda plain 9/3; → *qahwa*, *sayyid*
sādatī gentlemen 1/1
sādis sixth 8/20
safar → *jawāz*
sāfar III travel 11/4
safīr sufārā 'ambassador 4/3
sahil easy, ~ *suhūl* plain (noun) 13/3
sahlan → 'ahlan
sāḥa square (in town) 4/3
sahāb clouds, ~*a suḥub* cloud 13/3
sahab yishab I pull 13/4; drag 13/14;
 ~ *ḥālu* take oneself off 13/14
sakākīn → *sikkīn*
sakan yuskun I live 6/3
sākin sukkān inhabitant 13/1
sakkar II shut 9/10
salālim → *sullam*
salām peace 15/1; → *muḥibb*
salām-a: ~*tak* (etc.) no, thank you
 9/1, 2; Get well 12/1, 2; → *ma9*
sallim 9alayha (etc.) Give her (etc.)
 my/our regards 6/1, 2
sama samāwāt (m./f.) sky 13/3
samād 'asmida fertiliser 13/1
samaḥ yismaḥ I li permit 5/4, 8/12;
 → *law*
samak fish 9/1, 5; ~*a* fish 9/6
samāwāt → *sama*
samma II name 9/10
sana sanawāt/snīn year 4/1, 10/15
sanawī annual, ~*yan* annually 11/20
santimitr centimetre 14/1
sāq yisūq I drive 6/4, 7/4
saqaṭ yusquṭ I fall 13/3
sarī9 sirā9 fast 9/13
sawa together 13/1
sawāyil → *sāyil*
sawdā → 'aswad
sawfa shall, will 15/12
sawwāq driver 3/1
sāyil asking 10/5;
 ~ *sawāyil* liquid, fluid 12/1
sayyāra car 2/3
sayyid sāda gentleman, Mr 1/1;
 ~*a* lady 4/1
sā9a hour, clock, watch 7/1;
 as~ o'clock 7/12
sā9ad III help 11/4
sa9īd su9adā 'happy 5/1;
 furṣa ~*a* pleased to meet you 5/2
sa9ūdī Saudi,
 as~*ya* Saudi Arabia 1/2
sibāka smelting, plumbing 8/3, 23
sibtambir September 10/15
sīdī: *yā* ~ sir 7/1
sīdna: *yā* ~ sir 3/1
sifāra embassy 4/1
sigāra sigāyir cigarette 2/1
sikkīn sakākīn knife 9/3
sikritayra secretary 5/1
simi9 yisma9 I hear 4/1, 5/4
sinn 'asnān tooth 12/3; *kbīr as*~
 old, *sghīr as*~ young 12/14
sirā9 → *sarī9*
sitt Mrs/Miss/Ms 1/12
sitt mīya six hundred 7/1, 10
sitt-a six 4/1, 11; ~*īn* sixty 5/12;
 ~*9ashr* sixteen 5/12
siyāda Excellency 7/1, 2
siyās-a policy, politics, ~*ī* political 5/3
si9r 'as9ār price 11/3
snīn → *sana*
sū': ~ *al-ḥazz* bad luck,
 ~ *al-'idāra* mismanagement,
 ~ *al-ḥāl* poor conditions,
 ~ *al-mu9āmala* ill-treatment,
 ~ *al-qasd* ill-will 12/15;
 li ~ *al-ḥazz* unfortunately 12/2, 15
su'āl 'as'ila question 5/1, 10/11
sub9 'asbā9 a seventh 7/11
sūd → 'aswad
as-sūdān Sudan 1/2
suds 'asdās a sixth 7/11
sufar → *sufra*
sufarā → *safīr*
sufiyātī/sufiyayī Soviet 15/3
sufra sufar dining table 9/3
suhūl → *sahil*
suhūla ease, *bi* ~ easily 11/21

suḥub → *saḥāb*
sukkān: 9*adad* ~ population 13/2;
 → *sākin*
sukkar sugar 9/3
sukhn hot 9/3
sullam salālim staircase 6/3
sulṭa authority 15/3
sūq 'aswāq (f.) market 11/1;
 as~ *al*- 'urubbīya *l*-mushtāraka
 Common Market 15/3
sūriya Syria 1/2
sur9a speed, *bi* ~ fast 11/20
su9adā' → *sa9īd*
 §
ṣabāḥ: ~ *al*-*khayr*/*an*-*nūr* good
 morning 1/1, 3;
 ~*an* in the morning 11/19
ṣadar yuṣdur I be issued, appear
 10/1
ṣaddaq II believe 9/10
ṣaddar II export 11/3
ṣadiq 'aṣdiqā' friend 6/11
ṣādirāt exports 11/3
ṣadr ṣudūr chest 12/3
ṣafar see 10/15
ṣaff ṣufūf (school) class 8/1
ṣafrā' → 'aṣfar
ṣaghīr: 9īd *aṣ*~ see 10/15
ṣahyūnī Zionist 15/3
ṣaḥāra → *ṣaḥra*
ṣāḥib 'aṣḥāb owner,
 ~ *bayt* landlord 6/3;
 ~ *al*-9amal employer 11/3
ṣaḥīḥ ṣiḥāḥ true 4/1; healthy 12/3
ṣaḥn ṣuḥūn plate 9/1
ṣaḥrā' *ṣaḥāra*/*ṣaḥrāwāt* desert 13/3
ṣāloun living-room 6/3
ṣanādīq → *ṣandūq*
ṣana9 yīṣna9 I manufacture 11/3
ṣandūq ṣanādīq box, trunk 2/3;
 ~ *an*-*naqd ad-duwalī*
 International Monetary Fund 15/3
ṣanna9 II industrialise 9/10
ṣan9/ṣun9 manufacture 10/1
ṣār yīṣīr I become 6/4, 7/4; begin to
 9/12; → *yīṣir*; ~ *li* see 6/8

ṣawt 'aṣwāt voice, noise 7/1
ṣawwar II depict, photograph 9/10
ṣaydalīya pharmacy 12/1
ṣayf summer 6/1;
 ~ī summer (adj.) 14/1
ṣa9b si9āb difficult 6/11
ṣghīr ṣghār small 2/1; → *sinn*
ṣifr zero 4/11
ṣiḥāḥ → *ṣaḥīḥ*
ṣiḥḥa health 4/3
aṣ-ṣīn China, *aṣ*~ *ash-sha9bī*
 People's Republic of China 15/3
ṣinā9-a industry 4/3;
 ~ī industrial 15/3; → *dawla*
ṣi9āb → *ṣa9b*
ṣubḥ 'aṣbāḥ morning 7/3
ṣudūr → *ṣadr*
ṣufr → 'aṣfar
ṣufūf → *ṣaff*
ṣughra smallest 9/14
ṣuḥufī journalist 1/2;
 ~*ya* journalist 3/13
ṣuḥūn → *ṣaḥn*
ṣun9 → *ṣan9*
ṣūra ṣuwar form, shape, picture 5/1;
 form, image, *bi* ~ ... in a ...
 manner 11/21

sh

sha'n shu'ūn matter 6/11; *min* ~
 for the sake of 6/1
shabāb → *shābb*
shabābīk → *shubbāk*
shābb shabāb young man 13/1
shadīd 'ashiddā' severe 9/13;
 ~*an* severely, vigorously 11/19
shāf yishūf I see, look (at) 6/4, 7/4
shahāda certificate 8/1
shahr 'ashhur month 6/11
shāī tea 1/1
shajar trees 9/5; ~*a* tree 9/6
shakar yushkur I 9ala thank for 5/4
shākīk doubting 10/5
shakk yishukk I fī, *shakk* doubt 8/4, 5
shakk shukūk doubt 10/11, 11/20;
 bi lā ~ doubtless 11/20
shakl 'ashkāl form 11/19; pattern

- 14/3; *~an wa mouḏū* 9an in form and content 11/19
shakhṣ 'ashkhāṣ person 4/1;
 someone see 9/16; *~ī* personal 2/1; *~īyan* personally 11/1, 19;
'ayy ~ anyone, no one see 9/16
ash-shām Damascus, Syria 6/1
shāmil comprehensive 10/1
shams shumūs (f.) sun 13/3
shanta (suit) case 2/1
shaqqa shiqaq apartment 6/3
sharaf honour 13/1, 2
sharah *yishrah* I, *sharḥ* explain 5/4
sharāshif → *sharshaf*
sharika company,
mudīr ~ company director 1/2
shāri 9 *shawāri* 9 street 4/1
sharq east, *ash* ~ *al-* 'adna Near East, *ash* ~ *al-* 'aqsa Far East, *ash* ~ *al-* 'awsaṭ Middle East 13/3
sharraf II honour 9/10;
~tūna see 9/1, 2
sharshaf *sharāshif* sheet 3/3
sharṭ shurūṭ (pre)condition 8/1
shatawī winter (adj.) 14/3
shātīr shuṭṭār clever 6/1
shawāri 9 → *shāri* 9
shawwāl see 10/15
shāyif seeing 10/5;
~ ḥālu (etc.) conceited see 13/4
shaykh shuyūkh old man, elder 13/1; senator 15/3
sha9bān see 10/15
sha9bī people 15/3
shī 'ashyā' thing 4/1; something, nothing see 9/16; *kull* ~ everything 6/1; *'ayy* ~ anything, nothing see 9/16; *walā* ~ nothing 9/1, 17; something 6/1
shibih 'ashbāh resemblance 13/16;
~ jazīra peninsula 13/3, 16;
~ hukūmī quasi-governmental,
~ qārra subcontinent,
~ rasmī semi-official 13/16
shidda vigour, severity,
bi ~ vigorously, severely 11/20
shimāl left 4/1; north,
~ gharbī northwest,
~ sharqī northeast 13/3
shiqaq → *shaqqa*
shirīb yishrab I drink 8/1
shīta 'āshtiya winter 10/15;
 snow 13/3
shloun see 8/24
shouka shuwak fork 9/3
shouraba soup 9/1
shū what 2/1, 5/15, 12/9;
~ mālak (etc.) what's wrong with you (etc.)? 12/1, 2
shu 'ūn: *~ al-muwazzaḑīn* personnel (matters) 5/3; → *sha* 'n
shubāṭ February 10/1, 15
shubbāk shabābīk window 6/3
shughl 'ashghāl work 4/3
shukran thank you 1/1, 3
shukūk → *shakk*
shumūs → *shams*
shurṭ-a police, *~ī* policeman 4/3
shurūṭ → *sharṭ*
shuṭṭār → *shātīr*
shuwak → *shouka*
shuyūkh → *majlis*, *shaykh*
shuyū9ī communist 15/3
shwayy a little 4/1;
ba9d i ~ soon 11/23

t

ta 'akhhkar V be delayed 12/4
ta 'assaf V be sorry 12/4
ta 'khīr delay 2/3, 10/12
tabādal VI exchange with each other 12/5
tabādul exchange 12/8
tabassam V smile 12/4
taba 9 belonging to 12/1 see 12/16
tabrīd refrigeration 8/3
tadābīr → *tadbīr*
tadākhāl VI *fī* interfere in 12/5
tadakhkhāl V *fī* intervene in 12/4
tadakhkhul intervention 12/8
tadākhul interference 12/8
tadbīr tadābīr/tadbīrāt arrangement 10/12

tādfīya heating 6/3
tadrīb training 8/3
tadrīs instruction 8/3, 10/12
tadhākīr → *tadhkara*
tadhakkar V remember 12/4
tadhkara tadhākīr ticket 2/3;
 (medical) prescription 12/1
tafāhum mutual understanding 12/15
tafāṣīl → *tafṣīl*
tafalsaf IIQ philosophise 12/12
tafṣīl tafāṣīl detail,
bi t~ in detail 11/20
taghyīr change 10/12
taḥassan V improve, get better 12/4
taḥassun improvement 12/1
taḥqīr preparation 10/12;
~ī preparatory 8/1, 11/11
taḥsīn improvement 10/1
taḥt under 2/7; downstairs 6/3;
malābis ~ānīya underclothes 14/3
tajārib → *tajriba*
tajdīd renewal, renovation 10/12;
qābil li t~ renewable 14/10
tājīr tujjār businessman, trader 1/2
*tajmī*9 (act of) collecting 10/1
tajriba tajārib attempt, experiment
 10/12
tajrībī experimental 11/11
takālīf → *taklīf*
takallam V speak 12/4
takātib VI write to each other 12/5
taklīf takālīf cost 10/12
taksī taxi 2/3
takwīn formation 10/12
takyīf conditioning 8/3
takhaṣṣaṣ V fī specialise in 12/4
takhaṣṣuṣ specialisation 8/1, 12/8
takhṭīṭ planning 5/1
talāmīdh → *tilmīdh*
talāqa VI come together, meet 12/5
talfan IQ telephone 12/12
tafāz IQ, *tafāza* televise 12/12
tafāza television 12/12
tamakkan V *min* be capable of,
 possess 12/4
tamām complete, perfect, perfection

6/1; *~an* completely 9/1, 11/19
tamāthīl → *timthāl*
tamāīd extension,
qābil li t-t~ extensible 14/10
tamm yitimm I be completed 8/4, 5;
 see 15/6
tammūz July 10/15
tamr dates (fruit) 9/1, 5; *~a tumūr*
 9/6, *ḥabbat* ~ date 9/7
tamwīl financing 10/1, 12
tamyīz discrimination, *~ 9unṣurī*
 racial discrimination 15/3
tanānīr → *tannūra*
tanāwab VI alternate 12/5
tanāwal VI reach for, take
 (food/drink) 12/5
tanāwul intake (food/drink) 12/1, 8
taṣfīdh execution, fulfilment 11/1
tānmiya development 4/1
tannūra tanānīr skirt 14/3
tanẓīm organisation 5/1
taqaddam V progress 12/4
taqaddum advance, progress 12/1, 8;
~ī progressive 12/8
taqārīr → *taqrīr*
taqāwīm → *taqwīm*
taqdīm offer(ing) 10/12
taqrīb approximation 11/19;
~an approximately 2/1, 11/19
taqrīr taqārīr report 8/3, 10/12;
~ taqrīrāt decision 10/12
taqwīm taqāwīm calendar 10/15
taraddad V hesitate 12/4
taraddud hesitation 12/8
tarājīm → *tarjama*
tarak yutruk I leave 3/6, 5/4
tarashshaḥ V catch a cold 12/4
tarbawī educational 8/3
tārbiya education 4/3, 10/12;
 education, upbringing 8/3, 10/12
tārīkh tawārīkh history, date 8/3
tarjam IQ, *tarjama tarājīm* translate
 12/12
tarjama tarājīm translation 12/12
tarwīj promotion 10/1
tasallam V receive 12/4

- tāsi9* ninth 8/20
taswīq marketing 10/1
taṣnī9 industrialisation 10/12
taṣwīr depiction, photography 10/12
taṣwīt voting 10/3
tasharraḥ V be honoured 12/4
tashrīf honouring 10/12;
 ~*āt* protocol 10/12
taṭawwar V develop 12/4
taṭawwur evolution, ~*ī*
 evolutionary 12/8
tawaffār V be plentiful 14/3
tawalla V be (put) in charge 12/4
tawaqqaf V *9ala* depend on 12/4
tawaqqa9 V expect 12/4
tawārikkh → *tārīkkh*
tawassa9 V expand 12/4
tawassu9 expansion, ~*ī* expansionist
 12/8; ~*īya* expansionism 13/11
tawqīf detention, parking 10/12
tawqī9 signature 10/3
tawṣī9 broadening, expansion 11/1
tāwṣiya recommendation 10/3
tawzīf recruitment 10/1, 12
tazalzal IIQ quake 12/12
tazalzul quaking 12/12
tazawwaj V *bi* get married to 13/1
tazāhar VI demonstrate (politically)
 12/5
tazāhur (political) demonstration
 12/8
ta9āḥa VI recover health 12/5
ta9āl, ~*ī*, ~*ū* come see 8/10
ta9allam V learn 12/4
ta9allaq V *bi* depend on, pertain to
 12/4
ta9arraḥ V *bi'ila* get acquainted
 with 12/4
ta9arruḥ acquaintance 12/8
ta9āwan VI cooperate 12/5
ta9āwun cooperation 8/1, 12/8;
 ~*ī* cooperative 12/8; ~*īya*
 cooperativism 13/11
ta9bān tired 9/1
ta9līm teaching 8/1, 10/10, 12;
 ~*āt* instructions 10/1, 12;
 ~*ī* educational 8/1, 11/11
tfaḍḍal, ~*ī*, ~*ū* please 1/1, 3, 13
tijār-a trade 4/3; *ghurfat* ~ Chamber
 of Commerce 10/1;
 mādda ~*īya* commodity 11/3
tikram, ~*ī*, ~*ū* certainly 3/1, 2
tilīfoun telephone 7/1;
 ~*īyan* by telephone 7/3
tilmīdh talāmīdh pupil 6/1
timthāl tamāthīl statue 4/3
tīn figs 9/5; ~*a* fig 9/6;
 ḥabbat ~ fig 9/7
tisi9 mīya nine hundred 7/10
tis9a nine 4/1, 11;
 ~*t9ashr* nineteen 5/12
tis9īn ninety 5/1, 12
tiṣbih (etc.) *9ala khayr* good night
 9/1, 2
tishrīn see 10/15
tsallim 9alayk (etc.) she sends her
 regards 6/1, 2
tsharraḥna see 9/1, 2
tuffāḥ apples 9/5; ~*a* apple 9/1, 6;
 ḥabbat ~ apple 9/7
tufīd al- 'anbā' bi it is reported 15/2
tujjār → *tājir*
tumūr → *tamra*
tūnis Tunis(ia) 1/2
tus9 'atsā9 a ninth 7/12
 †
ṭābla table 6/3
ṭabbākh cook 8/23
ṭabīb 'aṭībba' doctor 1/1, 6/11
ṭab9an of course 4/1, 2
ṭalab yuṭlub I, *ṭalab* request 3/6, 16,
 5/4
ṭalab request 10/11
ṭālib ṭullāb, ~*a* student 1/2, 10/9;
 requesting 10/5
ṭaqs weather 13/1
ṭār yīṭir I fly 6/4, 7/4
ṭarabayza table 6/3
ṭarīq ṭuruq (m./f.) road 3/1
ṭarshā' → 'aṭrash
ṭawla table 6/3
ṭawīl ṭiwāl long 2/1

ṭayyāra aeroplane 2/3

ṭayyib good 2/1

ṭāza fresh 9/3

ṭibākha cookery 8/1, 23

ṭibb medicine (medical science),

~ī medical 12/3

ṭiḥl 'aṭḥāl child 13/1

*ṭiḥl*9 *yīḥla*9 I, *ṭulū*9 go up, rise 3/6, 5/4

ṭiwāl → *ṭawāl*

ṭoub bricks 9/5

ṭūl for the whole (duration) of 2/7;

~ 'aṭwāl length, height 14/3;

ḡala ~ immediately 9/1

ṭūla longest 9/14

ṭullāb → *ṭālīb*

ṭuruq → *ṭarīq*

ṭursh → 'aṭrash

th

thābit firm, stable 14/1

thalaj yuthluj I snow 13/3

thalāth mīya three hundred 7/10

thalātha three 2/1, 4/11; (youm)

ath~ Tuesday 7/14

thalāthīn thirty 5/1, 12

*thalatt*9ashr thirteen 5/12

thālīth third 4/1, 8/20; → *ḡālam*

thalj ice 9/3; ~ *thulūj* snow 13/3

thaman 'athmān cost 11/3

thamān mīya eight hundred 7/10

thamāniya eight 4/11

thamānīn eighty 5/12

*thamant*9ashr eighteen 5/12

thāmin eighth 8/20

thānawī secondary 7/1

thānī second, other 8/20

thāniya thawān a second 7/13

thaqāf-a culture 8/3; ~ī cultural 6/1

thaqūl thuqalā' heavy 6/11

thawān → *thāniya*

thawra revolution 15/3

thintayn two 4/11

thulth 'athlāth a third 7/1, 11

thulūj → *thalj*

thumn 'athmān an eighth 7/11

thuqalā → *thaqūl*

u

u and 1/1, 14, 5/12; while, when

6/1, 10; past (an hour) 7/12

v

vīza vīzayāt visa 2/3

w

wa and 1/1

wād wīdyan valley 13/3

wāḍiḥ clear 6/1; *bi ṣūra* ~a clearly

11/22

*wāḍ*9 'ouḍā9 situation, position 8/1

*wāḥ*9 III *ḡala* agree on/to 11/4

wāḥa oasis 13/3

wāḥid, ~a one 2/1, 4/11; *al*~ one

(pronoun) 9/1, 16; 'ayy ~ which

one 5/15; anyone 9/16

wajad yūjid I find 3/8, 5/6, 9

*waja*9 'oujā9 pain 12/3

wājid finding 10/5

wakāla agency 4/3

wakīl wukalā' agent 4/3

wala shī nothing 9/1, 17

walad 'oulād child, boy 6/3

walākin but 3/1, 4/8

wālīd parent 6/3

wallāhi Good Heavens 4/1, 2

waqqaf II (bring to a) stop 9/10

waqt 'ouqāt time 2/1, 7/13

wara behind 2/1, 7, 8

warad yūrid I come in, arrive 15/1

waraq foliage, paper 9/5;

~a 'awrāq (sheet of) paper 5/3

warsha workshop 11/1

*wāsi*9 *wisā*9 wide 9/13

wāsil arriving 10/5

waṣṣal II convey 9/10

waṭan 'awṭān home country,

~ī national 5/3

*wāṭi*9 low 14/1

wathīqa wathā'iq document 10/3

wayn where 2/1, 5/15; ~ *mā* wherever

11/15; ~ *mā kān* somewhere or

other 13/13

wazan yūzin I weigh 14/3

wazīr wuzarā' minister 4/3

wazn 'ouzān weight 12/3

wazzaf II recruit 9/10
wiḍyān → *wād*
al-wilāyāt al-muttāhida (li
 '*amayrka*/l-'*amrīkīya*) United
 States (of America) 15/3
willā or 1/1
wisā9 → *wāsi9*
wiṣil yūṣal I, *wuṣūl* arrive 3/8, 5/6, 9
wizāra ministry 4/3
wujha direction, aspect 10/1
wujūd existence 12/15
wukalā' → *wakīl*
wuṣūl arrival 2/3, 10/11
wuzarā' → *majlis, ra'īs, wazīr*
 y
yā see 1/1, 12
al-yābān Japan 1/2
yālī: *kama* ~ as follows,
 mā ~ what follows 12/9
yamīn right (not left) 4/1
yanāyir January 10/15
ya9fīk: '*alla* ~ (etc.) see 6/1, 2
ya9nī that is to say 4/1, 2
ya9fīk (etc.) *al-9āfīya* see 6/1, 2
yikaththir khayrak (etc.) God bless
 you (etc.) 13/2
yisallim: ~ *9alayk* (etc.) he (etc.)
 sends his regards 6/2; → '*alla*
yiṣīr it is acceptable 7/1, 6
youm '*ayyām* day 6/11, 7/13; *al*~
 today 1/1; ~ *al*-'*aḥad* Sunday
 7/1, 14; ~ *al*-'*arba9a* Wednesday,
 ~ *al*-*ithnayn* Monday, ~ *al*-*jum9a*
 Friday, ~ *al*-*khamīs* Thursday,
 ~ *as-sabt* Saturday,
 ~ *ath-thalātha* Tuesday 7/14;
 ~*ī*, ~*īyan* daily 11/19
yūliū July 10/15
yumkin perhaps 7/1; may, might
 7/8, 8/12; perhaps 7/9; see 9/15
yūniū June 10/15
yūro euro 2/3
 z
zabūn zabāyin customer 14/3
zād yizid I, *ziyāda* increase 6/4, 7/4
zāl: *mā* ~ *lā vazāl* I see 15/13

zılzāl IQ, *zılzāl* shake 12/12
zamān/zaman 'azmān time 6/1, 7/13;
*ma*⁹ *murūr* az~ with the passage
of time 7/3; *min* ~ for a long time
now 6/2
zamīl zumalā ' colleague 5/3
zār yizūr I, *ziyāra* visit 6/4, 7/4
*zara*⁹ *yizra*⁹ I, *zar*⁹ farm, plant,
cultivate 13/1
zarqā ' → 'azraq
zawwad II supply 14/3
zawwar II show round 9/10
zayy as, like 9/1, 2
ziyāda increase 10/11
ziyāra visit 2/1
zibda butter 9/3
zılzāl shock, earthquake 12/12
zirā^{9a} agriculture 4/3
zouj 'azwāj husband 5/1; ~a wife 6/1
zumalā ' → *zamīl*
zurq → 'azraq

z/ð
zabt accuracy, exactness 11/1;
precision, *bi z*~ precisely 11/20
zahr yizhar I appear 5/4
ḡahr ḡuhūr, *zahr zuhūr* back 12/3
ḡall yiḡall, *ḡall yiḡall* I remain 8/4, 5
ḡann yiḡunn I suppose 8/4, 5
zuhr 'aḡhār noon, midday,
ba^{9d} az~ afternoon 7/3

9
9a- to see 4/9
9abbar II *9an* express 15/1
9āda habit 11/19; ~tan usually 8/1,
11/19
9adad 'a^{9dād} number 13/1; ~ *min*
a number of 6/1;
~ *sukkān* population 13/1, 2
9adam lack of 12/1, 15
9ādī ordinary 10/3
9adīm lacking 12/15
9afwan dond mention it/youqe
welcome 1/1, 3; excuse me 4/1
9āfiya see 6/1, 2
9ala on 2/7, 8; up to see 4/9; ~ *fikra*
by the way 6/1, 2; ~ *kull hāl* in any

case 11/1, 2; ~ *ra'sī* certainly 4/1, 2; ~ *ḥūl* immediately 9/1; ~ *ḡaynī* certainly 4/2; ~ *ḡilm bi* aware of 7/1, 2; (in fractions) see 7/11

ḡālaj III treat (medically) 12/3

ḡālam ḡawālīm world 13/3;
al~ ath-thālith third world 15/3

ḡalāqa relation(ship) 10/1

ḡaláy (etc.) see 2/8, 4/1

ḡālī high 9/13;
taḡlīm ~ higher education 8/3

ḡallam II teach 9/10

ḡamal labour 4/3; ~*ī* practical 8/1;
~*īya* operation 12/3;
bi ṣūra ~īya in practice 11/22

ḡāmal III treat 11/4

ḡāmil working 10/1

ḡāmil ḡummāl, ~*a* worker 10/9;
(~ *tilīfoun*) (telephone) operator 7/3; ~ *ḡawāmil* factor 10/9

ḡāmm general, public 5/1, 3;
bi ṣūra ~a in general 5/2, 11/22

ḡamma from what 12/9

ḡammān Amman 1/1

ḡamyā' → '*aḡma*

ḡan from 2/7, 8; ~ *ḡarīb* soon 11/24

ḡanāwīn → *ḡunwān*

ḡaqad yaḡqid I, *ḡaqd* tie, hold 15/1

ḡaqqad II complicate 13/1

ḡarabī ḡarab Arab 1/2; Arabian 13/3;
Arab 15/3; *al-lugha l~ya* Arabic (language) 8/3; → *jāmiḡa*

ḡaraq arrack 9/1

ḡarḏ ḡurūḏ width 14/1, 2

ḡārīf knowing 10/5

ḡarjā' → '*aḡraj*

ḡarraḏ II acquaint 9/10

ḡaṣṣūr ḡaṣṣūr bird 9/8

ḡāṣīfa ḡawāṣīf storm,
~ *ramlīya* sandstorm 13/3

ḡāṣima ḡawāṣīm capital city 15/1

ḡaṣīr juice 9/3

ḡāsh yiḡīsh I, *maḡīsha* live 13/1

ḡashā' dinner 3/3

ḡāshir tenth 8/20

ḡashra ten 4/1, 11

ḡaṭshān ḡaṭsha ḡiṭash thirsty 9/3

ḡawālīm → *ḡālam*

ḡawāṣīf → *ḡāṣīfa*

ḡawāṣīm → *ḡāṣima*

ḡāwiz wanting 6/19

ḡayād → *ḡīd*

ḡayla ḡiyāl family 6/3

ḡayn ḡuyūn eye 4/2, 12/3

ḡaẓīm ḡuẓamā' huge, splendid 6/11

ḡīd ḡayād holiday 10/15

ḡidda (in indef. construct) a number of 5/1

ḡilāj treatment, cure 12/1

ḡilm ḡulūm science, ~*ī* scientific 8/1;
ḡala ~ *bi* informed/aware of 7/1, 2

ḡimāra building, block 6/3

ḡimil yiḡmal I, *ḡamal* do, make 5/4

ḡinab grapes 9/5; ~*a* '*aḡnāb* grape 9/6; *ḡabbat* ~ grape 9/7

ḡind at, in the presence of 2/7;
with, in the possession of 2/12;
at the time of 6/18

ḡindama when 15/1

al-ḡirāq Iraq 1/2

ḡirif yaḡraf I, *maḡrifa* know 3/6, 5/4

ḡishrīn twenty 5/1, 12

ḡiṭash → *ḡaṭshān*

ḡiyāda clinic, surgery 12/1, 3

ḡiyāl → *ḡayla*

ḡuḏw 'aḡḏā' member 15/3

ḡulūm → *ḡilm*

ḡulya highest 9/14

ḡumī → '*aḡma*

ḡummāl → *ḡāmil*

ḡumr 'aḡmār age, life 12/14

ḡunṣurī: ~*ya* racism, racialism,
tamyīz ~ racial discrimination 15/3

ḡunwān ḡanāwīn address 3/1

ḡurj → '*aḡraj*

ḡurūḏ → *ḡarḏ*

ḡushr 'aḡshār/ḡushūr a tenth 7/11

ḡuẓamā' → *ḡaẓīm*

ḡuyūn → *ḡayn*

English, Parts I and II

The following are not listed here, and can be found through the Contents or the Grammar Index: days, demonstratives, months, numbers, personal pronouns, possessives. The sign ~ repeats the headword (or that part of it preceding the hyphen -); the sign ' repeats the headword but with a capital initial letter.

A

able: be ~ *qidir yiqdar* I 8/1, 12;
استطاع *istaṭāʿa* X 22/5
-able *qābil li* 14/10; see 13/5
abound وفر *wafara yafīru* I 24/2
about *ḥawālī, ḥawl, 9an* 2/7
above *fouq* 2/7
absen-ce *ghayba* 6/1; ~t *ghāyib* 7/1
Abu Dhabi أبو ظبي *'abū ḡabī* 23/1
abundantly *jāzilan* 1/1
academic دراسي *dirāsī* 24/1
accent *lahja* 4/1
accept تقبل *taqabbala* V 24/2; ~able
مقبول *maqbul* 19/1; it is ~able
yisīr 7/6; ~ance *'akhdh* 10/11,
قبول *qabul* 24/1
access to حصول على *ḥuṣul 9ala*
20/1
according to حسب *ḥasaba* 19/1
account *ḥisāb* 3/3; ~ant *muḥāsib* 1/2;
~s محاسبات *muḥāsabāt* 24/1
accreditation *i9timād* 13/10
accredited *mu9tāmad* 13/9
accuracy *ḡabt* 11/1
acquaint *9arraḡ* II 9/10; get ~ed with
ta9arraḡ V bi 12/4; ~ance *ma9rifā*
5/1, *ta9arruf* 12/8
acquire تلقى *talaqqa* V 23/9, 12
acquisition (التلقي) *talaqqin*
(*at-talaqqī*) 23/12
action أفعال *fī9l 'af9āl* 18/4
actual فعلي *fī9lī* 26/1
AD *mīlādī* 10/15
add *'aḡāf yuḡīf* IV 11/6; ~ed *muḡāf*
11/8; ~itional *'iḡāfī* 11/1, 11
address *9unwān 9anāwīn* 3/1
administrat-ion 'idāra 5/3; ~ive
إداري *'idārī* 24/1

admir-able *mu9jib, ~er mu9jab* 11/8
advance *taqaddam* V 12/4;
تقدم *taqaddam* V bi 25/6;
~d *mutaqaddim* 12/7
advertising *di9āya* 10/1
aeroplane طائرة *ṭā'ira*
17/10
affair *'amr 'umūr* 4/3, 10/11
affect (have an effect on) *'aththar* II
9ala 9/10
aforementioned مذکور *madhkūr*
24/1
Africa *'afriqiya, ~n 'afriqī* 13/3
after *ba9d* 2/7, 6/18; *ba9d mā* 3/1,
6/18; بعد أن *ba9da 'an* 25/4;
~noon *ba9d az-zuhr* 7/3; ~wards
ba9dayn 4/1; Good ~noon *masa*
l-khayr/n-nūr 1/1, 3
again: do ~ عاد يعود *9āda ya9ūdu*
I 25/2; ~st *ḡidd* 2/7
age *9umr 'a9mār* 12/14
agency *wakāla* 4/3
agenda *jadwal 'a9māl* 10/3
agent *wakīl wukalā'* 4/3
agitated *muḡṭārib* 13/9
ago *qabl* 3/15
agree: ~ to *wāfaq* III *9ala* 11/4,
ittāfaq VIII *9ala* 13/6; ~d to
muwāfaq 9ala, ~ing to muwāfiq
9ala 11/8; ~ment (spoken) *ittifāq,*
(written) *ittifāqīya* 15/3
agriculture *zirā9a* 4/3
AH (Anno hegiræ) *hijrī* 10/15
ah! *'ahā!* 6/1
ahead *quḡuman* 9/1, 2
air hawa *'āhwiya* 13/3, (adj.) جوي *jawwī,*
~line خط جوي *khaṭṭ jawwī* 20/2; ~ conditioner

- mukayyifa* 6/3; ~ conditioning
takyīf al-hawa 8/3; ~ waybill
 بوليصة شحن *būlīṣat shahṇ* 20/2
 airport *maṭār* 2/3, 8/23
 algebra *jabr* 8/3
 Alg-eria, ~iers *al-jazāyir* 1/2
 all *kull* 8/1, 18, *jamī* 9 8/19; ~ right
maḡalaysh 4/1
 alleg-ation ادعاء *iddī9ā*, ~e ادعى
iddā9a VIII 23/1, 9
 allowance بدل ابدال *badal* 'abdāl
 21/2
 almost *bi l-kād* 11/21; ~ to (do)
 كاد *kāda yakādu* I 25/2
 alphabet ايجاد *'abjad* 24/11
 also *kamān* 1/1, 'ayḡan 3/1
 alternat-e *tanāwab* VI 12/5; ~ing
mutanāwib 12/7
 always *dāyiman* 6/1
 ambassador *saḡīr suḡarā* ' 4/3
 America 'amayrka 1/2;
 ~n 'amayrkī 'amayrkān 1/1,
 امريكي *'amrīkī* 23/1
 Amman *9ammān* 1/1
 among *bayn* 2/7
 amount مبلغ مبالغ *mablagh*
mabāligh 18/1; ~ to *balagh*
yiblagh I 15/1
 and *wa* 1/1, *u* 1/1, 14; ~ so on *u*
 وكذا *ghayru* 7/16, وكذا
wa/u kadha u kadha 24/1
 animal ḡayawān 9/8
 annex 'aḡāḡ yuḡīḡ IV 11/6; ملحق
mulḡaq 19/1; be ~ed to *inḡamm*
 VII 13/4; ~ation *inḡimām* 13/10;
 ~ed ملحق *mulḡaq* 19/1
 announce 'aḡlan yiḡlin IV 15/1;
 ~ment اعلان *'iḡlān* 24/1;
 ~r *mudhī* 9 11/8
 annoying *muzḡij* 11/8
 annual *sanawī*, ~ly *sanawīyan* 11/19
 answer *jawāb* 'ajwiba 11/9
 any 'ayy 5/15; ~one at all *mīn mā*
kān 13/13; ~one 'ayy wāḡid/
shakḡs, ~thing 'ayy shī 9/16;
 ~thing at all *mahma kān* 13/13;
- ~ way one can *kayf mā kān*
 13/2, 13; at ~ time *mata mā kān*
 13/13; in ~ case *9ala kull ḡāl* 11/1
 apartment *shaḡqa* 6/3
 apologise for *istaghḡar* X *mīn* 14/5
 appear (seem) ḡahar yiḡhar I 5/4
 (be issued) ṣadar yuṣḡur I 10/1
 apple *tuffāḡa* 9/1, 6, ḡabbat *tuffāḡ*
 9/7; ~s *tuffāḡ* 9/5
 appl-ication تطبيق *taṭbīq*, ~y طبّق
ṭabbaqa II 21/1
 appoint وتّى *walla* II, be ~ed وتّى
tawalla V 25/7; ~ment *mouḡid*
mawāḡid 4/1
 apprentice *mutaḡallim* 12/7
 appropriate *munāsib* 8/1
 approve رضى يرضى *rāḡiya*
yarḡa I *bi* 23/7; ~d *mustahsan*
 14/7
 approxim-ately *taḡrībān* 2/1, 11/19;
 ~ation *taḡrīb* 11/19
 Arab *9arabī* *9arab* 1/2; ~ic *al-(luḡha*
l-)9arabīya 8/3; ~ian *Gulf al-*
khalīj al-9arabī 13/3; ~ian Pen-
 insula *al-jazīra/shibih al-jazīra*
l-9arabīya 13/3, 16
 area (region) *minṡaḡa manāṡiq* 13/1
 arithmetic ḡisāb 8/3
 arm 'īd 'ayād (f.) 12/3
 around ḡawl, ḡawālī 2/7
 arrack *9araq* 9/1
 arrange *dabbar* II 9/10; ~ment *tadbīr*
tadābīr/tadbīrāt 10/12
 arriv-al *wuṣūl* 2/3, 10/11; ~e *waṣal*
yūṣal I, *wuṣūl* 3/8, 5/6; *warad*
yūrid I 15/1; ~ing *wāṣil* 10/5;
 ~ing from قادمًا *qādīman*
mīn 23/1
 arrogant: be~ *istakbar* X 14/5
 art *fann funūn* 8/3
 article (press) *maḡāla* 11/1
 artificial *iṣṡinā* 'ī 13/10
 as *kama* 5/1, *ka* 6/1, *mīthl mā* 8/22,
 9/15; ~ far as *ḡatta* 2/7; ~ if *ka 'inn*
 11/14; ~ if/though كان *ka 'anna*
 21/8; ~long as طالما *ṡālamā* 25/4;

- ~ follows *kama yalī* 12/9
as ... as see 9/15
Asia 'āsiya, ~n 'āsiyawī 13/3;
~ Minor أسيا الصغرى
'āsiya ṣ-ṣughra 22/8
ask (request) ṭalab yuṭlub I, ṭalab/
maṭlab maṭālib 3/6, 16, 5/4;
(enquire) sa 'al yis' al I, su'āl
'as'ila/mas'ala masā'il 3/7, 16,
4/6, 5/4; ~ing sāyil 10/5;
~ permission ista'dhan X 14/5
aspect wujha 10/1
assemble ijtāma⁹ VIII 13/6;
in9āqad VII13/4
assignment mahamma mahāmm 7/1
assistant musā⁹id 7/1, 11/8
assort nawwa⁹ II 14/1
assumption of office (التولي) تول
tawallin (at-tawallī) 25/9
astonish: be ~ed at istaghrab X min
14/5; ~ment istighrāb 14/8
at 9ind 2/7; ~ all 'abadan 6/1, 2
Atlantic Ocean al-muḥīṭ al-'aṭlasī
13/3
attaché mulḥaq 6/1
attempt tajriba tajārib 10/12;
muḥāwala 11/9
attend ḥaḍar yuḥḍur I 10/3
attention ihtimām 13/10; pay ~
dār yidīr I bālak (etc.) 12/1, 2
attitude towards mouqif min 15/1
authority sulṭa 15/3
autonomy ḥukm dhātī 15/3
autumn kharīf 10/15
available mutanāwal 12/7
await tawaqqa⁹ V 12/4
aware of 9ala 9ilm bi 7/1
- B**
- back ṣahr zuhūr, ḡahr ḡuhūr 12/3
bad: ~ luck sū' al-ḥazz 12/15;
not ~ mish baṭṭāl 1/1
bag kīs 'akyaṣ 2/1
Bahrain baḥrayn 6/1
balance توازن tawāzun, be ~d
توازن tawāzana VI 26/1
banana mouza 9/5, ḥabbat mouz 9/8;
~s mouz 9/5
bank (financial) bank bunūk 1/2;
(shore) dīffa dīfāf 13/1; → World;
~ruptcy افلاس 'iḥlās, be/go ~rupt
افلس 'aḥlās IV 26/1
bargain fāṣal III 14/1
barrel برميل barmīl barāmīl
22/2
basi-c 'asāsī 8/1, ~cally bi l-'asās
10/1, 2; ~s 'asās 'usus 8/1
bath ḥammām, ~room 'ouḍat/ghurfat
ḥammām 3/3
bay khalīj khulūj 13/3
be see 1/6; kān yikūn I, kawn 6/4, 6,
7/4; كان يكون kāna yakūnu I
21/4; → no, not, still
bear حمل يحمل ḥamala
yahmilu I, ḥaml 24/1; ~able
muḥtāmāl 13/9
beard liḥya liḥa 6/15
beautiful jamīl 4/1
because li 'annu 14/1, 9; لأن li
'anna 21/8; ~ of bi sabab 2/7; min
sha'n 6/1
become ṣār yiṣīr I 6/4, 7/4;
صار يصير ṣāra yaṣīru I 24/4
bed farsha, ~room 'ouḍat/ghurfat
noum 3/3
beer bīra 9/1
before (place) 'amām, quddām,
(time) qabl 2/7, 6/18; qabl mā
6/18; قبل ان qabla 'an 25/4;
~hand qablan 11/19
begin bada yibda I 8/7, 8, 12; see
9/1, 12; ibtāda VIII 13/6;
صار يصير ṣāra yaṣīru I,
بدأ يبدأ bada'a yabda'u I 25/2;
~ner muḥtādī 13/9; ~ning bādī
10/5, ibtīdā' 13/1; 10 see 6/11
begun mabdū 10/5
behind wara 2/1, 7
Beirut bayrūt 6/1
belief i9tiqād 13/10
believe ṣaddaq II 9/10; i9tāqad VIII
13/6; ~d mu9tāqad 13/9
belonging to taba⁹ 12/1; see 12/16

beneficiary *mustathmir* 14/7
 benefit 'aḥād yuḥīd IV 11/6; ~ from
istaḥād X min 14/5
 bent: become ~ i9wajj IX 14/4
 beside *jamb* 2/7; ~s *ghayr* 7/16
 best see 9/14
 better 'aḥsan 4/1, 9/13; get ~
taḥassan V 12/4
 between *bayn* 2/7, 8
 beyond عبر *9abra* 19/15
 big *kbīr kbār* 3/1; ~ger 'akbar 9/13;
 ~gest see 9/14
 bill *ḥisāb* 3/3; ~ of lading
 بوليصة شحن *būliṣat shaḥn* 20/2
 bird *9aṣṣūr 9aṣṣāṭir* 9/8
 Birthday: Prophet ﷺ ~ *moulūd*
an-nabī 10/15
 bitumen زفت *zift* 22/1
 black 'aswad *sawdā' sūd* 12/11;
 go ~ *iswadd* IX 14/4
 blanch *ibyaḍḍ* IX 14/4
 blanket *baṭṭānīya* 3/3
 bless *bārak* III 14/1, 2; God ~ 'alla
yih/faz 6/1, 2
 blind 'a9ma *9amyā' 9umī* 12/11
 block (of buildings) *9imāra* 6/3
 blood *dam* 12/3
 blouse *blūz* 14/3
 blue 'azraq *zarqā' zurq* 12/11; go ~
izraqq IX 14/4
 blush *iḥmarr* IX 14/4
 board: ~of directors إدارة مجلس
majlis 'idāra 21/1; (notice etc.)
 ~ لوحة *lawḥa* 24/1; on ~
 على متن *9ala matn* 20/2
 body *jism 'ajsām* 12/3; (organisation)
hay'a 15/3
 boil-ed *maslūq* 9/3; ~ing (noun) *four*
 11/19
 book *kitāb kutub* 2/1; ~let *kutayyib*
 13/17; ~shop *maktaba makātib*
 4/3, 8/23
 both كلا *kila* 18/5
 bottle *qinnīna qanāni* 9/3
 box *ṣandūq ṣanādīq* 2/3
 boy *walad 'oulād* 6/3

bravo! see 6/2
 bread *khubz* 9/3
 breakfast *fuṭūr* 3/1
 bricks *ṭoub* 9/5
 bridge *jisr jusūr* 4/3
 bring *jāb yijīb* I 6/4, 7/4; جاء يجيء
jā'a yaḥī'u I bi 25/6; ~ about
 احدث *'aḥḍatha* IV 20/1; ~up
 (educate) *rabba* II 9/10
 Brit-ain 'ingiltra 1/2; ~ish 'inglīzī
inglīz 1/1; *brīṭānī* 4/1
 broadcast 'adhā9 *yudhī9* IV 11/6;
 ~ing 'idhā9a 11/10
 broadening *tawsī9* 11/1
 broken: be ~ *inkāsar* VII 13/4
 broker سمسار *simsār*
samāsīr 19/2
 brother 'akh 'ikhwa/'ikhwān
 6/3, 14
 brown *bunnī, binnī* 12/11
 Brussels بروكسل *bruksil* 18/6
 budget *mīzānīya* 5/3
 building *bināya* 3/1; *9imāra* 6/3
 bulk حجم *ḥajm ḥujūm* 20/1
 bulletin *nashra* 15/1
 bus 'utubīs, *bāṣ* 2/3; ~ stop *mouqif*
bāṣ 4/3
 businessman *tājir tujjār* 1/2
 busy *mashghūl* 5/3
 but *walākin* 3/1, 4/8; ولكن (و)
(wa)lākinna 21/8; ~ for law *lāk*
 (etc.) 11/14; ~ rather *bal* 15/1
 butcher *laḥḥām* 8/23
 butter *zibda* 9/3
 buy *ishtāra* VIII 13/6
 by *min qibal* see 13/15; ~ the way
9ala fikra 6/1

C

cabinet (of ministers) *majlis*
al-wuzarā' 15/3
 Cairo *al-qāhira* 5/17
 calendar *taqwīm taqāwīm* 10/14
 call (name) *samma* II 9/10; (summon)
nāda III 11/4; telephone ~ *ittiṣāl* 7/3
 camel *jamal jimāl* 9/8; ~s 'ibil 9/5
 can (be able) *mumkin* 7/8; *qidir*

- yiḡdar* I 8/1, 12; استطاع *istaṭāʿa*
 X 22/5
 candidate *murashshaḥ* 8/1
 capable: be ~ of *tamakkan* V *min*
 12/4
 capacity: in the ~ of *ka* 6/1
 capital (city) *9āṣima 9awāṣim* 15/1;
 (money) *ra's māl* 11/3
 capitalism *ra'smālīya* 13/11
 car *saḡyāra* 2/3
 care: take ~ *dār yidīr* I *bālak* (etc.)
 12/1, 2
 carpent-er *najjār* 8/23; ~ry *nijāra*
 8/3, 23
 carry حمل يحمل *ḥamala*
yaḥmilu I, *ḥaml* 24/1
 case (abstract) *ḥāla* 8/1; *qaḏīya*
qaḏāya 15/3; in any ~ *9ala kull*
ḥāl 11/1, 2; (suit~) *shanta* 2/1
 cat *bissa bisās* 9/8
 catch a cold *tarashshaḥ* V 12/4
 cattle *baqar* 9/5
 cause *sabbab* II 15/1; سبب اسباب
sabab 'asbāb 21/1; (case) *qaḏīya*
qaḏāya 15/3
 cease *zāl yazāl* I see 15/13
 centimetre *santimitr* 14/1
 centre *markaz marākiz* 4/3
 century قرن قرون *qarn qurūn* 26/1
 certain *mu9ayyan* 10/1; ~ly *tikram*
 (etc.) 3/1, 2; *9ala ra'sī* 4/1, 2;
9ala 9aynī 4/2; *ḥāḏir* 9/1
 certificate *shahāda* 8/1
 chair *kursī karāsī* 6/3; ~man *ra'īs*
ru'asā' 10/3; ~manship
 رئاسة *ri'āsa/riyāsa* 17/5
 Chamber of Commerce *ḡhurfat*
tijāra 10/1
 change *ḡhayyar* II 9/10; *taghyīr*
 10/12; (small ~) *fakka* 4/1
 characterised by ذو *dhū* (etc.) see
 24/19
 charge: be put in ~ *tawalla* V 12/4;
 in ~ *mutawallī* 12/7
 cheap *rkhīṣ rkhāṣ* 6/11; ~er *'arkhaṣ*
 9/1, 13
 cheese *jibna* 9/3
 chemistry *kāmiya* 8/3
 chest (breast) *ṣadr ṣudūr* 12/3
 chicken *dajāja* 9/1, 6; ~s *dajāj* 9/5
 Chief Engineer مدير الهندسة *mudīr*
al-handasa 19/1
 child *walad 'oulād* 6/3; *ṭifl 'aṭfāl* 13/1
 China: People's Republic of ~
aṣ-ṣīn ash-sha9bī 15/3
 choose *ikhtār* VIII 14/1
 Christian *masīḥī* 13/1
 Christmas (*9īd al-)* *mīlād* 10/15
 church *kanīsa kanāyis* 4/3
 cigarette *sīḡāra saḡāyir* 2/1
 circle → club
 circular (memorandum) منشور
manshūr 24/1
 circumstance ظرف ظروف *ḡarf*
ḡurūf 21/1
 city *madīna mudun* 13/3
 civil servant *muwazzaf ḡukūma* 1/2
 claim طلب *ṭalab* 19/2; ادعى *iddā9a*
 VIII, ادعاء *iddi9ā'* 23/1
 clash *idṭārab* VIII 13/7
 class (school) *ṣaff ṣufūf* 8/1
 clean *naḡīf nuḡafā'* 6/11;
 dry-- *naḡḡaf 9ala n-nāshif* 14/3
 clear *wāḏiḥ* 6/1; ~er *'awḏaḥ* 9/13;
 ~ly *bi ṣūra wāḏiḥa* 11/21
 clerk *muwazzaf* 3/1; *kātib kuttāb,*
kātiba, muwazzaf 10/9
 clever *shāṭir shuṭṭār* 6/1
 clinic *9iyāda* 12/3; *mustawṣaf* 14/7
 clock *sā9a* 7/1
 close: be ~ to (doing) *'awshak yūshik*
 IV *9ala* 11/6
 closed *musakkar* 3/3
 cloth *qmāsh 'aqmisha, ~ merchant*
qammāsh 14/1
 clothes *malābis* 2/1
 cloud *saḡāba suḡub, ~s saḡāb* 13/3
 club (circle) نادي (النادي) *nādīn*
(an-nādī) 'āndīya 26/1
 coast ديفا ديف *ḡifṭa ḡifṭāf* 13/1; ساحل سواحل
sāḡil sawāḡil 22/1
 coat *jākayt* 14/3

- coffee *qahwa* 1/1; see 9/1, 3; بِنّ *bunn* 16/19; --house (المقهى) *maqḥan* (المقاهي) *maqāhin* (*al-maqḥa*) *maqāhin* (*al-maqāhī*) 24/20
- cold *bārid* 6/1; (noun) *rashsh* 12/1; catch a ~ *tarashshaḥ* V 12/4
- colleague *zaml̥ zumalā* V 5/3
- collection *tajmīn* 10/1
- college *kullīya* 8/3
- colloquial Arabic *al-lugha l-9arabīya/al-9arabīya d-dārija, ad-dārij* 8/3
- colour *loun* 'alwān 14/1
- come 'aja *yījī* I 8/9, 10; جاء *yījī* *jā'a yajī'u* I 25/6; ~ in *warad yūrid* I 15/1; ~ out *kharaj yukhruj* I, *khuruj* 3/6, 5/4; ~ together *talāqa* VI 12/5
- command 'amr 'awāmir 10/11
- Commerce → Chamber
- commissioner *mandūb* 15/3
- committee *lajna lijān* 5/3
- commodity *mādda tijārīya* 11/3
- common *mushtarak* 13/9; ¹ Market *as-sūq al-'urubbīya l-mushtaraka* 15/3
- commotion *iḍṭirāb* 13/10
- communications *muwāṣalāt* 11/1
- communist *shuyū9ī* 15/3
- company *sharika* 1/2
- compensation *ta9wīd* 19/1
- complaint *shakwa* شكاوة شکوات *shakawāt* 21/1
- complete *kāmil* 12/1; تَمَّ *tāmm* 16/24; اتمَّ *'atamma* IV 23/1; ~ly *tamāman* 9/1, 11/19; be ~d *tamm yitimm* I 8/4, 5
- complicate *9aqqad* II 13/1
- component *qiṭ9a qīta9* 11/1
- composed of *mukawwan min* 10/1
- composition 'inshā' 10/10
- comprehensive *shāmil* 10/1
- comprise ضَمَّ *ḍamma* yaḍummu I 26/1
- compulsion 'ijāb 10/10
- compulsory 'ijbārī 8/3
- computer *kambyūtir* 5/3
- conceited *shāyif ḥālu* (etc.) see 13/14
- concentrated: be ~ تَرَكَزَ *tarakkaza* V 26/1
- concern 'ahamm *yihimm* IV 11/6; *ihitimām* 13/10; be ~d by *ihamm bi/fī* VIII 13/6; ~ing *bi khuṣṣ* 2/7
- conclude اتمَّ *'atamma* IV 23/1
- condition (state) *ḥāl 'aḥwāl* 1/1; (pre~) *sharṭ shurūṭ* 8/1; ~al on *muta9alliq bi* 12/7; (circumstance) ظروف ظروف *ḍarf ḍurūf* 21/1; good/poor ~s *ḥusn/sū' al-ḥāl* 12/15
- conference *mu'tamar* 7/1, 13/9
- confidence (in) *i9timād (9ala)* 13/10
- confirmed: it was ~ 'ukkid 15/1
- congratulations! *mabrūk!* 14/1, 2
- congregate *ijṭama9* VIII 13/6
- consider *i9tābar* VIII 13/6; ~ good *istaḥsan* X, ~ great *istakbar* X, ~ small *istaqall* X 14/5; ~ation *i9tibār* 13/10; → take
- consisting of *mukawwan min* 10/1
- constancy مَوَالَاة *muwālā* 25/9
- constant: be ~ وَالَى *wāla* III 25/7
- constitut-e *kawwan* II 9/10; شَكَلَ *shakkala* II 24/1; ~ed *mukawwan, ~ing mukawwīn* 10/6
- constitution تشكيل *tashkīl* 26/1; (political) *dustūr dasātīr* 15/3
- construct 'ansha *yunshī* IV 11/6
- consul *qunṣul qanaṣīl, ~ate qunṣulīya* 4/3
- consult *istashār* X, (doctor) *istawsaf* X 14/5
- consum-e استهلك *istahlaka* X, ~ption استهلاك *istihlāk* 22/2
- contact *ittāṣal* VIII *bi/fī* 13/6; *ittiṣāl* 13/10
- container مستودع *mustawda9* 20/1
- content: in form and ~ *shaklan wa mouḍū9an* 11/19
- continent *qārra* 13/3
- continuation *istimrār* 14/8

- continue *istamarr* X 14/5; *mā zāl lā yazāl* I 15/1 see 15/13; استمرّ *istamarra* X 25/2; ما زال لا يزال *mā zāla lā yazālu* I 25/2
- continuous *mustamirr* 14/7
- contract (agreement) عقد *ʿuqūd* 19/2
- convened: be ~ *inʿāqad* VII 13/4
- convening *inʿiqād* 13/10
- convey *waṣṣal* II 9/10
- convinced of متأكد من *mutaʿakkid min* 21/1
- cook *ṭabbākh* 8/23; ~ery *ṭibākha* 8/1, 23; ~ed in spices *musakhkhan* 9/1
- cooperate *taʿāwan* VI 12/5
- cooperation *taʿāwun* 8/1, 12/8; non~ *ʿadam at-taʿāwun* 12/15
- cooperative *taʿāwunī* 12/8; un~ *ʿadīm at-taʿāwun* 12/15
- cooperativism *taʿāwunīya* 13/11
- copy *nuskha nusakh* 5/3
- cordially *qalbīyan* 9/1
- corps (diplomatic etc.) *hayʿa* 15/3
- correct *mazbūṭ* 4/1
- correspond: ~ with *kātab* III 11/4 ~ence *mukātaba* 11/9, مراسلة *murāsala* 24/1; ~ent *mukātib* 11/8
- cost *kallaḥ* II 9/10; *taklīf takālīf* 10/12; *thaman ʿathmān* 11/3
- council *majlis majālis* 15/3: → security
- counsellor *mustashār* 14/7
- counted: be ~ *inʿadd* VII 13/4
- country *bilād buldān* 6/1; ~ people *ahl al-qura* 13/3; home ~ *waṭan ʿawṭān* 5/3; → developing, industrialised
- coup *dḥṭat inqilāb* 15/3
- course: of ~ *ṭabʿan* 4/1, *maʿlūm* 8/1; in the ~ of *fi khilāl* 15/1
- court (law) *maḥkama maḥākīm* 8/23
- cow *baqara* 9/6
- creat-e *ʿansha yunshī* IV 11/6; ~ion *ʿinshāʿ* 10/10
- credentials (diplomatic) *ʿawrāq al-iʿtimād* 13/10
- criticis-e انتقد على *intāqada* VIII 9/ala, ~m of انتقاد على *intiḳād 9ala* 26/1
- crossroad *mafraḡ mafāriḡ* 4/3, 8/23
- crowd *ḥashd ḥushūd* 15/1
- crude oil نفتا زيت خام *naft/zayt khām* 22/1
- cubic مكعب *mukaʿ99ab* 20/2
- cultivate *zaraʿ yizraʿ* I, *zarʿ* 13/1
- cultur-al *thaqāfī* 6/1; ~e *thaqāfa*, ~ed *muthaqqaf* 8/3
- cup *finjān fanājīn* 9/3
- cure *ʿilāj* 12/1
- current (adjective) *jārī jāriya jāriyīn* 7/13, 10/5
- customer *zabūn zabāyīn* 14/3
- Customs *jumruk jamārik* 2/1
- cut *qaṣṣ yiquṣṣ* I 14/1; ~ off (telephone) *maqṭūʿ* 7/3
- D**
- daily *yumī(yan)* 11/20
- Damascus *dimashq* 4/1, 5/17; *ash-shām* 6/1
- damage *khasāyir* (pl.) 15/1
- dangerous *khaṭir* 12/1
- data *muʿṭayāt* 11/8
- date (calendar) *tārīkh tawārīkh* 8/3; ~d مؤرخ *muʿarrakh* 19/1; (fruit) *tamra tumūr* 9/6, *ḥabbat tamr* 9/7; ~s *tamr* 9/1, 5
- daughter *bint banāt* 6/3
- day *yum ʿayyām* 6/11, 7/13, 14; ~time *nahār ʿanhur*, the ~ after tomorrow *baʿd bukra*, the ~ before yesterday *ʿawwal ʿams* 7/3; → next
- deaf *ʿaṭrash ṭarshā ʿursh* 12/11
- dear عزيز اعزاء *ʿazīz ʿaʿizzāʿ* 24/4
- debt دين ديون *dayn duyūn* 26/1
- deci-de *qarrar* II 9/10; ~sion *taqrīr* 10/12
- declare صرح ب *ṣarraḥa* II bi 26/1
- defective *kharbān* 7/1
- defence *diḥāʿ* 4/3
- deference *ʿikrām* 13/1, 2; treat with ~

- 'akram yukrim IV 13/2
 definite mu9ayyan 10/1
 degree daraja 12/1
 delay ta'khīr 2/3, 10/12; 'akhkhar II 9/10; ~ed muta'akhkhar 2/3, 12/7; be ~ed ta'akhkhar V 12/4
 delegat-e mandūb 10/1; ~ion وفد وفود waḥd wuḥūd 23/1
 deliberat-e i 'tāmar VIII 13/6; ~ion i 'timār 13/10
 deliver (speech etc.) 'alqa yulqī IV 11/6; ~y (of a speech etc.) 'ilqā' 10/10
 democracy dimuqrāfiya 13/11
 demonstrat-e tazāhar VI 12/5; ~ion tazāhur 12/8; ~or mutazāhir 12/7
 den-ial نفى nafi 23/1; ~ied منفي manfi 23/10
 deny نفى ينفي nafa yanfi I, nafi 23/1, 7, 8
 department qism 'aqsām 5/1; ~ store maḥallāt 4/3
 departure mughādara 2/3
 depend on ta9allaq V bi, tawaqqaf V 9ala 12/4; ~ence (on) i9timād (9ala) 13/10; ~ent on mutawaqqif 9ala 12/7
 depict sawwar II 9/10; ~ion taṣwīr 10/12
 deput-ising for نيابة niyābatan 9an 23/1; ~y nāyib nuwwāb 15/3
 descent nuzūl 10/11
 desert ṣaḥra ṣaḥāra/ṣaḥrāwāt 13/3
 deserv-e istaḥaq X 14/5; ~ing mustaḥiq 14/7
 despatch 'irsāl 10/10
 despite bi r-rahm min 2/7
 dessert ḥilwīyāt 9/1
 detail tafṣīl tafāṣīl, in ~ bi t-tafṣīl 11/20
 detention tawqīf 10/12
 determined مصمم muṣammim 17/3
 develop طور ṭawwara II 23/1; ~ing country dawla nāmiya 15/3; ~ment tánmiya 4/1; taṭawwur 12/8; تطوير taṭwīr 23/1
 dialogue ḥiwār, muḥāwara 11/9; ~ with ḥāwar III 11/4
 dictatorship diktātūrīya 13/11
 did not mā 3/9; لم lam (+jussive) 26/2, 3
 diesel ديزل dīzil 22/1
 different ḡhayr 7/16
 difficult ṣa9b ṣi9āb 6/11
 dinar dīnār danānīr 2/3
 dining table sufra sufar 9/3
 dinner 9ashā' 3/3
 diploma dībloum 8/3
 diplomat dīblumāsī 1/2
 direct dall yidill I 8/4, 5
 direction wujha 10/1
 director mudīr mudarā' 1/2; ~ate دائرة دوائر dā'ira dawā'ir 24/1; ~y dalīl 'adilla 7/3
 disaster كارثة kāritha kawārith 19/2
 discomforts muz9ijāt (pl.) 11/8
 discover iktāshaf VIII 13/6
 discrimination: racial ~ tamyīz 9unṣurī 15/3
 discuss baḥath yibḥath I, baḥth 10/3; ~ion baḥth buḥūth 5/3, 10/11
 dismiss عزل يعزل 9azala ya9zilu I, ~al عزل 9azl 21/2
 dispute خلاف khilāf 21/1
 distance بعد ابعاد bu9d 'ab9ād 22/1
 distil قَطَّرَ qaṭṭara II 22/2
 distinction imtiyāz 13/10
 distinguished muntāz 13/9; be ~ed imtāz VIII 13/6
 disturb 'a9aj yiz9ij IV 11/6; ~ance 'iz9āj 11/10
 disused ḡhayr/mish musta9mal 7/16
 divided: be ~ inqāsam VII 13/4
 divis-ible see 13/5; ~ion qism 'aqsām 5/1
 do 9imil yi9mal I, 9amal 5/4; ~ not mā 5/7, 21/5; lā 5/9, 15/10, 21/5; ~ without istaḡhna X 9an 14/5
 doctor ṭabīb 'aṭibba 1/1, 6/11; (title) duktur 1/1, 2/4
 document wathīqa wathā'iq 10/3

does not *mā* 5/7, *lā* 15/10
 dog *kalb kilāb* 9/8
 Doha *ad-douḥa* 5/1
 dollar *doulār* 2/3
 dominate سيطر على *sayṭara IQ*
9ala 26/1
 don-ation 'i9īā' 10/10; ~or *mu9ī*
 11/8
 door *bāb 'abwāb* 3/1; ~man *bawwāb*
 3/3; small ~ *buwayb* 13/17
 double ثنائي *thunā'ī* 17/5; be ~
izdāwaj VIII 13/7; ~d *muzdāwij*
 13/9
 doubt *shakk yishukk I, fī shakk* 8/4, 5,
 10/11, 11/20; ~ed *maskūk fī*, ~ing
shākik 10/5, شاك *shākk* 20/9;
 ~less *bi lā shakk* 11/21
 downstairs *taḥt* 6/3
 draft *musawwada* 10/3
 drag *saḥab yishab I* 13/14
 draper *qammāsh* 14/1
 drawing رسم رسوم *rasm rusūm*
 19/1
 dress (woman's) *fustān fasātin*
 14/1
 dressmak-er *khayyāṭa* 8/23; ~ing
khiyāṭa 8/1, 23
 drill حفر يحفر *ḥafara yaḥfiru I,*
ḥafr 22/1; ~er حفار *ḥaffār*, ~ing
 rig جهاز حفر *jihāz ḥafr* 22/2
 drink *shirib yishrab I* 8/1; *mashrūbāt*
 2/1, 9/3; *mashrūb* 10/9
 drive *sāq yisūq I* 6/4, 7/4; ~r *sawwāq*
 3/1
 dry-clean ناظف *af II 9ala n-nāshif*
 14/3
 duration: for the ~ of *ṭūl* 2/7
 during *khilāl* 2/7
 dying مائت *mā'it* 17/5

E

each *kull* 8/18; ~ other see 8/17
 early see 6/11
 earthquake *zilzāl* 12/12
 eas-e *suhūla*, ~ily *bi suhūla* 11/20
 east *sharq* 13/3; → Far, Middle,
 Near

Easter *9īd al-fisiḥ, al-9īd al-kabīr*
 10/15
 easy *sahil* 13/3
 eat 'akal *yākul I, 'akl* 3/7, 5/5; ~en
ma 'kūl, ~ing 'ākil 10/5
 econom-ic *iqtiṣādī*, ~y *iqtiṣād* 11/3
 educate *rabba II* 9/10; ~d *muthaqqaf*
 8/3; *murabba* 10/6; *muta9allim*
 12/7
 educating *murabbī* 10/6
 education *tārbiya* 4/3, 8/3, 10/12;
ta9līm 8/1; ~al *ta9līmī* 8/1,
tarbawī 8/3; → high
 educator *murabbī* 10/9
 effect: with ~ from *ibtidā'an min,*
i9tibāran min 13/10
 effectiveness فاعلية *fā9ilīya* 26/1
 efficiency فاعلية *fā9ilīya* 26/1
 egg *bayḍa* 9/6; ~s *bayḍ* 9/5
 Egypt *miṣr* 1/2, 9; ~ian *miṣrī* 1/9
 either ... or 'imma ... 'aw 8/1
 elder *shaykh shuyūkh* 13/1
 elect *intākhab VIII* 13/6; ~ed
muntākhab 13/9; ~ion *intikhāb*
 13/10; ~or *muntākhib* 13/9; ~oral
intikhābī 13/10
 electricity *kahraba* 8/1
 e-mail *barīd 'iliktrounī, 'īmayl* 5/3
 embassy *sifāra* 4/1
 emir 'amīr 'umarā', ~ate 'imāra
 15/3; → United
 employ *istakhdam* 14/5; ~ee
muwazzaf 3/1, 10/9; ~ed
mustakhdam 14/7; ~er *ṣāhib*
 (pl. 'aṣḥāb) *al-9amal* 11/3;
mustakhdim 14/7; ~ment
istikhdām 14/8
 empty *fādī fāḍiya fāḍiyīn* 1/1, 10
 encounter *lāqa III* 11/4, *mulāqā,*
muqābala 11/9; تلاقي *talāqa VI,*
 (التلاقي) *talāqin (at-talāqī)*
 23/10; be ~ed *inlāqa VII* 13/4
 end see 6/11; *intāha VIII* 13/6;
intihā' 13/10
 energy طاقة *ṭāqa* 23/1
 engineer *muhandis* 1/1; ~ing

handasa 8/3; → Chief
 Engl-and 'ingiltra 1/2; ~ish 'inglīzī
 'inglīz 1/1
 enjoy oneself *inbāsaṭ* VII 13/4
 enquire *sa 'al yis 'al* I 3/7, 16, 5/4;
 ~about *istaṭṭham* X 9an, ~ of
istaṭṭham X 14/5
 enter *dakhal* *yudkhul* I, *dukhūl* 3/6,
 5/4
 entr-ance, ~y *madkhal* *madākhil*
 4/3; *dukhūl* 8/1, 10/11
 equal: be/make ~ ساوى *sāwa* III
 25/7; ~ity مساواة *musāwā* 25/9
 equilibrium توازن *tawāzun* 26/1
 error *ghalaṭ* 'aghlāṭ 6/15
 escaping: there is no ~ لا بُدّا
min 12/1; see 12/2
 especially *khāṣṣatan* 11/1, 20
 essen-ce ذات ذوات *dhāt dhawāt*
 24/19; ~tial *ḍarūrī* 5/1; اساسي
 'asāsī 24/1
 establish استس *'assasa* II, ~ment
 تأسيس *ta'sīs* 25/1
 Euphrates *al-furāt* 13/3
 euro 'ūro, *yūro* 2/3
 Europe 'urubba 1/2; ~an 'urubbī 1/9;
 ~an Union *al-ittihād al-'urubbī*
 15/3
 even: ~if *ḥatta u law* 11/1, 15;
 ~ though *ma*9 'inn 11/15
 evening مساء امساء *masā* 'amsā'
 17/6; → good
 event *ḥāditha ḥawādith* 15/1
 ever 'abadan 6/1, 2
 every *kull* 8/18; ~thing *kull shī* 6/1,
 8/18, 9/16
 evolution *taṭawwur*, ~ary *taṭawwūrī*
 12/8
 evolve *taṭawwar* V 12/4
 exactness *ẓabt* 11/1
 exaggerated: it is ~ *tubālagh* 15/1
 examin-e (medically) *faḥṣ yifḥṣ* I,
faḥṣ 12/1; بحث في اعلی *baḥṭha yabḥathu* I, *fī/9ala* 25/1;
 ~ation (academic) *imtiḥān* 8/1,
 (medical) *faḥṣ ṭibbī* 12/3; ~ation of

بحث بحوث علی *baḥṭh buḥūth*
9ala 26/1
 example *mathal* 'amthāl 11/19;
 امثلة مثال *mithāl* 'amthila 26/1;
 for ~ *mathalan* 8/1, 11/19
 excel يفوق *fāqa yafūqu* I 24/1
 Excellency (title) *sīyāda* 7/1, 2
 excellent *mumtāz* 5/1, 13/9
 except *istathna* X 14/5; ~ (for) 'illa
 2/7; *ghayr* 7/16; ~ed *mustathna*
 14/7; ~ion *istithnā* 14/8; ~ional
istithnā 'ī 8/1
 exchange *tabādal* VI 12/5; *tabādul*
 12/8; *istabdal* X 14/5; بدل
baddala II, تبديل *tabdīl* 23/1;
 (telephone ~) *markaz marākiz* 7/1
 excuse عفا يعفول *9afa ya9fū* I li
 23/7; ~ me 'ismaḥ lī 1/1, 3;
9afwan 4/1
 execution (of a task) *taṣfīdh* 11/1
 exert oneself *ijṭāhad* VIII 13/6
 existence *kawn* 10/11; *wujūd* 12/15
 exit *makhraj* *makhārij* 4/3; *khurūj*
 10/11
 expand *tawassa*9 V 12/4
 expansion *tawsī*9 11/1; *tawassu*9
 12/8; ~ism *tawassu9īya* 13/11;
 ~ist *tawassu9ī* 12/8
 expect *tawaqqa*9 V 12/4; ~ation
intīẓar/intīḍār 13/10; ~ed
*mutawaqqa*9 12/7
 expel 'akhraj *yukhrij* IV 11/6
 expensive *ghālī ghāliya ghālīyīn*
 14/1
 experiment *tajriba tajārib* 10/12; ~al
tajribī 11/11
 expert خبراء خبراء *khābīr khubarā*,
 ~ise خبرة *khibra* 25/1
 expiry انتهاء *intihā* 19/2
 explain *sharah yishrah* I, *sharḥ* 5/4
 explode *infājar* VII 13/4
 exploitation *istithmār* 14/8
 explor-ation استكشاف *istikshāf*,
 ~e استكشف *istakshafa* X 22/1
 explos-ion انفجار *infijār* 13/10;
 ~ive *munfājir* 13/9

- export *ṣaddar* II, ~s *ṣādirāt* 11/3
 express *ḡabbar* II *ḡan* 15/1
 expulsion *'ikhrāj* 10/10
 extend *madd* *yimudd* I 8/4, 5;
 maddad II 14/10; ~ed *mumtadd*
 13/9; be ~ed *imtadd* VIII 13/6
 extens-ible *qābil li t-tamdi'd* 14/10;
 ~ion *imtidād* 13/10
 extraordinary *ghayr 9ādī* 10/3
 eye *ḡayn 9uyūn* (f.) 12/3
F
 fabricated *muṣṭana9* 13/9
 face *wujha* 10/1; *وجه* *wājaha* III
 26/1
 facing (opposite) *muqābil* 11/8;
 tujāha 25/1
 factor *ḡāmil 9awāmil* 10/9
 factory *maṣna9 maṣāni9* 8/23
 factual *فعلي* *fī9lī* 26/1
 faculty (academic) *kullīya* 8/3
 fail (examination) *rasab yursub* I, *fī*
 8/3; ~ure *فشل* *fashal* 19/1
 fall *saqaṭ yusquṭ* I 13/3
 family *ḡayla 9iyāl* 6/3
 famous *ma9rūf* 4/1
 far: ¹ East *ash-sharq al-'aqṣa* 13/3;
 ~ from *ba9īd 9an* 4/1; as ~ as
 ḡatta 2/7
 fare *'ujra* 2/3
 farm *zara9 yizra9* I, *zar9* 13/1; ~er
 fallāḡ 13/3
 fast *sarī9 sirā9*, *bi sur9a* 11/20,
 sarī9an 22/9; ~er *'asra9*
 9/13, *بصورة* *bi ṣūra*
 'asra9 22/9
 father *'ab 'ābā'* 6/3, 14
 fax *faks* 5/3
 fear *khāf yikhāf* I, *khouf* 6/4, 7/4;
 khouf 10/11; for ~ of *khoufan min*
 12/2; ~ed *makhūf*, ~ing *khāyif*
 10/5; ~ing for *khoufan 9ala*
 12/1,2
 federal *ittiḡādī* 13/10; ~ism *ittiḡādīya*
 13/11
 feel *ḡass yiḡiss* I 8/4, 5
 fertiliser *samād 'asmida* 13/1
 festival *9īd 'a9yād* 10/15
 fever *ḡarāra* 12/1
 field *ḡaql ḡuqūl* 8/1
 fig *tīna* 9/6, *ḡabbat tīn* 9/7; ~s *tīn* 9/5
 fight *qātal* III 11/4; *qītāl*, *muqātala*
 11/9; ~er *muqātil*, (aircraft)
 muqātila 11/8; ~ against *مكافحة*
 mukāḡfaḡa 26/1
 file (of papers) *milaff* 5/3
 financ-e *mālīya* 4/3; *mawwal* II 9/10;
 ~ing *tamwīl* 10/1, 12
 find *wajad yūjid* I 3/8, 5/6; *lāqa* III
 11/4; *وجد* *wajada yajidu* I
 20/6; ~ing *wājīd* 10/4
 finish *khallaṣ* II 9/10; be ~ed *انقضى*
 inqāḡa VII 23/9
 fire *ḡariqa ḡarā'iq*
 19/1; to open ~ *'aṭlaq yiṭlaq* IV
 an-nār 15/1
 firm (stable) *thābit* 14/1
 first *'awwal 'ūla 'awā'il* 6/11;
 ~ly *'awwalan* 8/1
 fish *samak* 9/1, 5; *samaka* 9/6
 flies *dhubāb* 9/5
 flow *jara yijrī* I 8/7, 8; see 15/6;
 جری *jara yajrī* I,
 jary 23/1, 7;
 ~ing *jārī jāriya jāriyīn* 9/1
 fluid *sāyil sawāyil* 12/1
 fly *ṭār yiṭr* I 6/4, 7/4; (insect)
 dhubāba dhubbān 9/6
 foliage *waraḡ* 9/5
 follow-ing *على* *9ala 'athar* 26/1;
 as ~s *kama yalī*, the ~ing, what
 ~s *mā yalī* 12/9; the ~ing
 (التالي) *tālin (at-tālī)* 24/1
 food *'akl* 9/1, 10/11
 for *li* 2/7; (~ the sake of) *min sha'n*
 6/1, *min 'ajl* 15/1
 forbid-den *mamnū9* 8/1; → God,
 Heaven
 forced *majbūr* 12/1
 forecast *تنبؤ* *tanabbu'* 17/6
 foreign, ~er *'ajnabī 'ajānib* 8/1;
 ¹ Affairs *khārījīya* 4/3
 foremost *mutaḡaddim* 12/7

for-get *nisi yinsa* I 8/9, 12;
 نسي *nāsiya yansa* I 23/7;
 ~gotten منسي *mansīy* 23/10
 fork *shouka shuwak* 9/3
 form *šūra šuwar* 5/1; *shakl*
 'ashkāl 11/19; شكل *shakkala* II
 24/1; in ~ and substance *shaklan*
 wa mouḍū 9an 11/19
 formation *takwīn* 10/12; تشكيل
 tashkīl 26/1
 former *sābiq* 6/1
 fortunately *li ḥusn al-ḥazz* 12/1, 15;
 see 12/15
 found-ation 'asās 'usus 8/1; ~ed
 مؤسس *mu'assas*, ~er مؤسس
 mu'assis 17/5
 fraction كسر *kasr kusūr* 22/1
 France *faransa* 1/2
 free *fāḍī fāḍiya fāḍiyyīn* 1/1, 9; *ḥurr*
 'aḥrār, ~dom *ḥurriya* 13/11
 freighter ناقلة *nāqila* 20/1
 French *faransāwī* 1/9
 fresh *ṭāza* 9/3
 fried *maqlī* 9/1
 friend *ṣadīq 'aṣḍiqā'* 6/1
 from *min* 1/1; *min*, 9an 2/7; ~ whom
 ممن *mimman* 16/20; ~ what
 mimma, 9amma 12/9
 front: in ~ of 'amām, *quddām* 2/7
 frontier حدود *ḥudūd* (pl.) 20/1
 fruit *fākiha fawākiḥ* 9/1
 fulfilment *tanfīdh* 11/1
 full *malān* 12/1
 furniture 'athāth 6/3
 furthermore *hādha wa* 15/1, 2
 future *mustaqbal* 14/7

G

garage *gārāj* 6/3
 garden *jinayna*, *bustān basātīn* 6/3
 gas غاز *ghāz* 22/1
 gasolene بترين *binzīn* 22/1
 general 9āmm 5/1; in ~ *bi šūra*
 9āmma 5/1, 2, 11/21; ¹ Manager
 mudīr 9āmm 5/3; ~ly *bi šūra*
 9āmma 11/21
 generous *karīm kuramā'* 6/11

gentleman *sayyid sāda* 1/1
 geography *jughrāfiya* 8/3, 13/3
 geometry *handasa* 8/3
 Germany 'almāniya 1/2
 get: ~down/off *nizil yinzil* I, *nuzūl*
 3/6, 5/4; ~ in *rikib yirkab* I 3/6,
 5/4; ~ out *nizil yinzil* I, *nuzūl* 3/6;
 ~ up *ṭili9 yiṭla9* I 5/4, *qām yiqūm* I
 6/4, 7/4; ~ well *salāmtak* (etc.)
 12/1, 2; → married
 girl *bint banāt* 6/3
 give 'a9ṭa ya9ṭī IV see 11/6;
 ~n *mu9ṭa* 11/8; ~n that (since)
 أَنْ *ḥaythu 'anna* 26/1
 glass: (a ~) *kās ku'ūs* 9/1
 go *rāḥ yirūḥ* I 6/4, 7/4, ذهب *yذهب*
 dhahaba yadhhabu I 20/11; ~ing
 rāyih 10/5; ~ing to see 10/14;
 ~ down *nizil yinzil* I, *nuzūl*, ~ out
 kharaj yukhruj I, *khurūj*, ~ up
 ṭili9 yiṭla9 I 3/6, 5/4
 God: thank ~ *nushkuralla*, ~ be
 praised (*al-*)*ḥamdilla* 1/1,
 al-ḥamdulilla 5/1; ~ keep/bless
 'alla *yihfaz* 6/1, 2; ~ forbid *lā*
 samah 'alla 15/10
 good *kwayyis*, *ṭayyib* 2/1; *kwayyis*
 4/14; *mnīḥ mnāḥ* 6/11; (noun)
 khayr khuyūr 13/1; ~ afternoon/
 evening *masa l-khayr/n-nūr* 1/1;
 ~bye *ma9 as-salāma*, 'alla
 yisallimak (etc.) 2/1, 2, *fī 'amān*
 illa/al-karīm 14/1, 2; ¹ Heavens
 wallāhi 4/1, 2, *māshalla* 6/1, 2;
 ~ morning *ṣabāḥ al-khayr/an-nūr*
 1/1, 3; ~night see 9/1, 2;
 ~ conditions *ḥusn al-ḥāl*, ~ luck
 ḥusn al-ḥazz` ~will *ḥusn al-qasḍ*
 12/15; be so ~ as to 'i9mal (etc.)
 ma9rūf 9/2; consider ~ *istaḥsan*
 X 14/5
 government *ḥukūma*, ~al *ḥukūmī* 1/9
 grade درجة *daraja* 21/2
 graduate *mutakharrij* 8/3
 grain *ḥabba ḥubūb* 9/7; ~s *ḥabb* 9/5
 gram *grām* 14/3; غرام\جرام *grām*

18/6
 grant a request *istajāb* X 14/5
 grape *ʿinaba* 'a9nāb 9/6, *ḥabbat ʿinab* 9/7; ~s *ʿinab* 9/5
 grateful *mamnūn* 4/1
 great-ly كثيرًا *kathīran* 22/9;
 to consider ~ *istakbar* X 14/5
 green 'akhḍar *khaḍrā' khuḍr* 12/11;
 go ~ *ikhḍarr* IX 14/4
 greeting تحية *taḥīya* 24/1
 grey *ramādī* 12/11
 group (corps etc.) *hay'a* 15/3
 guarantee ضمان *ḍamān* 19/2, ضمن *ḍamīna yaḍmanu* I,
ḍamān, ~d مضمون *maḍmūn* 25/1
 guest *ḍayf ḍuyūf* 3/3
 gulf *khalīj khulūj*, Arabian ¹ *al-khalīj al-ʿarabī* 13/3

H

habit *ʿāda* 11/19
 hall: town/village ~ *baladīya* 13/1
 Hamburg هامبورج *hamburg* 18/6
 hand 'īd 'ayād (f.) 12/3;
 يد إيدي (الأيادي) *yad 'ayādīn*
 (al-'ayādī) (f.) 24/20
 happen *ḥadath yaḥduth* I 15/1
 happy *saʿīd* 5/1
 hardly *bi l-kād* + neg. 11/21
 hat *burnayṭa barānī* 14/3
 have see 2/12, 4/1, 9; ~ to *lāzim* 7/8;
 يجب *yajīb* I see 22/5
 head *ra's ru'ūs* 12/3; قاد يقود *qāda*
yaqūdu I, ~ing for متوجّهاً إلى
mutawajjihan 'ila, ~quarters
 مقارّ مقارّ *maqarr maqārr* 23/1;
 ~ for توجه إلى *tawajjaha 'ila*
 23/1
 health *ṣiḥḥa* 4/3, 12/3; ~y *ṣaḥīḥ ṣiḥāḥ*
 12/3; → world
 hear *simiʿ yismaʿ* I 4/1, 5/4
 heart *qalb qulūb* 12/3; ~ily *qalbīyan*
 9/1
 heat *ḥarāra* 12/1; ~ing *tādfīya* 6/3
 Heaven: Good ~s *wallāhi* 4/1, 2;
 mashalla 6/1, 2; ~ forbid *lā samah*
 'allah 15/10

heavy *thaqīl thuqalā'* 6/11
 height *ṭūl 'aṭwāl* 14/3
 hello *marḥaba/marḥabtayn* 1/1, 2;
 (on the telephone) *halóu* 7/1
 help *sāʿad* III 11/4; *musāʿada* 11/9;
 it canq be ~ed *lā budda* 12/2
 here *huna* 4/1; ~ are/is *hay* 2/1; ~ we
 are (etc.) *hayāna* (etc.) 4/1, 10
 hesitat-e *taraddad* V 12/4; ~ion
taraddud 12/8
 high *ʿālī*, ~er 'a9la 9/13; مرتفع
murtáfiʿ 9 21/1; ~est see 9/14; ~er
 education *at-taʿlīm al-'9ālī* 8/3
 hill تلال *tall tilāl* 16/19
 history *tārīkh tawārīkh* 8/3
 hoarse 'ajashsh *jashshā' jushsh*
 12/11
 hold (conference etc.) *9aqad ya9qid*
 I, *9aqd* 15/1
 holiday *9īd 'a9yād*, 'ijāza 10/15
 home country *waṭan 'awṭān* 5/3
 honour *sharraḥ* II 9/10; *sharaf* 13/1;
 be ~ed *tasharraḥ* V 12/4; ~ing
tashrīf 10/12; in ~ of 'ikrāman *li*
 13/1, 2
 hope: ~ for 'amal 'āmal *bi* 15/1;
 I ~ 'inshalla 6/1, 2
 horse *ḥiṣān ḥuṣn* 9/8; ~s *khayl*
 9/5
 hospital *mustashfa* 4/3;
 مستشفى (المستشفى) *mustashfan*
 (al-mustashfa) 24/20
 hot *sukhn* 9/3; *ḥārr* 13/3
 hotel 'utayl 3/1
 hour *sāʿa* 7/1, 13
 house *bayt buyūt* 6/1
 how *kayf* 1/1, 5/15; ~ are you? *kayf*
ḥālak (etc.) 1/1, *kayf al-ḥāl* 5/2;
 ~ beautiful it is (etc.) *mā 'ajmalu*
 (etc.) 13/1, 12; ~ever *kayf mā*
 11/15, ~ many/much *kam*
 2/1, 9, 5/15, 14/3
 huge *ʿaẓīm 9uẓamā'* 6/11;
 ضخم ضخم *ḍakhm ḍikhām* 20/1
 hungry *jouʿān jouʿa jiṣāʿ* 9/3
 husband *zouj 'azwāj* 5/1

I
 -ible see 13/5, 14/10
 ice *thalj*, ~-cream *būza*, *būza* 9/3
 idea *fikr* 'afkār 5/1
 identity ذوات *dhāt dhawāt* 24/19
 i.e. أي 'ay 21/6
 if 'idha 9/1, 11/14; law 11/1, 14, 15;
 ~ any (ت) إن 'in wujud(at) 26/10
 ignorant *jāhil juhhal* 8/3
 ill: ~-treatment *sū' al-mu9āmala*,
 ~ will *sū' al-qasd* 12/15; be/fall ~
miriḍ yimraḍ I 12/3
 immediately *9ala ṭūl* 9/1, *fouran* 11/19
 immigration *muhājara* 2/1
 implement 'anjaz yinjiz IV 11/6
 import *mustawrad* 11/1; *istawrad* X 14/5
 importance 'ahammīya 15/1
 important *muhimm* 5/1, 11/8; هَامَّ *hāmm* 16/22; be ~ *hamm yihimm* I 8/4, 5; 'ahamm *yihimm* IV 11/6
 import-ation *istīrād* 14/8; ~ed *mustawrad*, ~er *mustawrid* 14/7
 impose 'awjab yūjib IV *9ala* 11/6
 impossible *ghayr/mish mumkin* 7/16
 improve *taḥassan* V 12/4; ~ment *taḥsīn* 10/1, *taḥassun* 12/1
 in *fī* 2/1, 7; *bi* 2/7
 inaugur-al *iftitāḥī* 13/10; ~ate *iftitāḥ* VIII 13/6; ~ation *iftitāḥ* 13/10
 incidentally *9ala fikra* 6/1
 include يضمّ *ḍamma yaḍummu* I 26/1
 increase *zād yizīd* I, *ziyāda* 6/4, 7/4, 10/11, *izdiyād* 13/10; *kaththar* II 13/1; be ~d *izdād* VIII 13/7
 indeed *fī l-ḥaqīqa* 11/21
 independen-ce *istiqlāl* 14/8; ~t *mustaqill* 14/7; be ~t *istaqall* X 14/5
 India *al-hind* 1/2; ~n *hindī hunūd* 1/9;
 ~n Ocean *al-muḥīt al-hindī* 13/3
 indicate *dall yidill* I 8/4, 5; 'ashār

yushīr IV 'ila 12/1
 indubitably *bi lā shakk* 11/20
 industrialis-ation *taṣnīʿ* 10/12; ~e *ṣannaʿ* II 9/10; ~ed country *dawla ṣināʿiyya* 15/3
 industr-ious *mujtāhid* 6/1, 13/9; ~y *ṣināʿa* 4/3
 inform 'akhbar yukhbir IV *bi* 11/6;
 'afād yufīd IV *bi* 15/1; ~ation *ma9lūmāt* 10/1, 9, *naba'* 'anbā' 15/1; ~ed of *9ala 9ilm bi* 7/1
 inhabitant *sākin sukkān* 13/1
 inherit يرث *waritha yarithu* I 20/6
 initial (adjective) *ibtidā'ī* 13/10
 inject *ḍarab yuḍrib* I 'ibra, ~ion 'ibra 'ibār 12/3
 injured *majrūḥ majārīḥ* 12/3
 insect *ḥashara* 9/8
 inside *dākhil* 2/7, *jūwa* 6/1
 insist: ~ on 'aṣarr yiṣirr IV *9ala* 11/6; ~ence 'iṣrār 10/10
 inspect-ion تفتيش *taftīsh* 20/1; ~or *muṣfattiḥ* 18/4
 instal-lation جهاز *jihāz* *qisṭ aqsāt* 19/1
 institute *ma9had ma9āhid* 8/1, 23
 instruct *darras* II 9/10; ~ion *tadrīs* 8/3, 10/12; ~ional *ta9līmī* 11/11; ~ions *ta9līmāt* 10/1, 12; ~or *mudarris* 8/3, 10/9, مدرّس *mudarrīb* 24/1
 insur-ance تأمين *ta'mīn*, ~ed مؤمن عليه *mu'amman* *9alayhi*, ~er مؤمن *mu'ammin* 19/1
 intake (food, drink) *tanāwul* 12/1, 8
 intend *nawa yinwī* I 8/7, 8, 12;
 نوي *nawa yanwī* I 25/5
 intention نية *nīya* 25/9; ~al 'irādī 11/11
 interest (legal/political) *maṣlaḥa maṣāliḥ* 15/3
 interfer-e *tadākhil* VI 12/5; ~ence *tadākhul* 12/8

interior *dākhilīya* 4/3
 international *duwalī* 5/3;
 ¹ Monetary Fund *ṣandūq*
 an-naqd ad-duwalī 15/3
 interrogat-e *istajwab* X 14/5; ~ion
 istijwāb 14/8
 interval *fatra fatarāt* 7/13
 interven-e *tadakhkhal* V 12/4; ~tion
 tadakhkhul 12/8
 invest *istathmar* X 14/5; ~ment
 istithmār 11/3, 14/8
 Iraq *al-9irāq* 1/2
 iron (clothes) *kawa yikwī* I, *kawī* 14/3
 irrigation *rayy* 13/1
 island *jazīra juzur* 13/3
 isnq that so? *mish kadha?* 4/1
 Israel *'isrā 'īl* 15/1; ~i *'isrā 'īlī* 13/1
 issued → appear
 it is reported *tufīd al- 'anbā'* 15/2
 Ital-ian *'īṭālī* 1/9; ~y *'īṭāliya* 1/2

J

jacket *jākayt* 14/3
 jam *murabba* 9/3
 Japan *al-yābān* 1/2
 job وظائف ووظيفة *wazīfa wazā 'if*
 21/2
 join *inqamm* VII 13/4
 joint *mushtarak* 13/9
 Jordan *'urdun, ~ian 'urdunī* 1/1
 journalist *ṣuḥufī* 1/2, *ṣuḥufīya* 3/13
 judge قاض (القاضي) *qāḍin*
 (*al-qāḍī*) *quḍā* 24/20
 juice *9aṣīr* 9/3
 junior صغير صغار *ṣaghīr ṣighār* 21/1
 justice عدل *9adl* 26/1

K

keep *ḥafaz yihfaz* I 6/1, ~ it up!
 ya9ṭik al-9āfiya 6/1, 2
 key *miṣṭāḥ mafātīḥ* 3/1, 8/23
 kerosene كيروسين *kirusīn* 22/1
 killed: he was ~ *qutil* 15/1
 kilo-gram *kīlou* 14/3; ~metre كيلومتر
 kīlūmitr 22/1
 kind (noun) *nou9 'anwā9* 5/15, *jīns*
 'ajnās 14/1; (adj.) *laṭīf luṭafā'* 4/1;
 ~ness *ma9rūf* 9/1

king *malik mulūk, ~dom mamlaka*
 mamālik 15/3
 kitchen *maṭbakh maṭābikh* 6/3, 8/23
 knife *sikkīn sakākīn* 9/3
 know *9irīf ya9raf* I, *ma9rifā* 3/6, 5/4;
 ~ing *9ārīf* 10/5; ~ledge *ma9rifā*
 ma9ārīf 5/1, 10/10, 11; ~n *ma9lūm*
 8/1, *ma9rūf* 10/5
 Kuwait *al-kuwayt* 1/2

L

laboratory *ma9mal ma9āmil* 8/23
 labour *9amal, shughl* 4/3
 lack: ~ of *9adam* 12/1, 15; ~ing *9adīm*
 12/15
 lading: bill of ~ بوليصة شحن *būlīṣat*
 shaḥn 20/2
 lady *ṣayyida* 4/1
 lake *buhayra* 13/3, 17
 lame *'a9raj 9arjā' 9urj* 12/11
 land *'arḍ 'arāḍī* (f.) 13/1;
 ارض اراض (الأراضي) *'arḍ*
 'arāḍin (al-'arāḍī) (f.) 24/20;
 (adj.) برّي *barrī* 20/2;
 ~lord *ṣāḥib bayt* 6/3
 language *lughā* 4/1
 last (adj.) *'ākhir 'awākhir* 6/11;
 (verb) *istaghraq* X 14/5
 Latakia اللاذقية *al-lādhīqīya* 20/1
 late *muta 'akhkhir* 2/3, 12/7; see 6/11
 laugh *ḍaḥak yidḥak* I, *ḍaḥk* 6/1
 laundry *ghasīl* 14/3
 lavatory *mustarāḥ* 14/7
 law قانون قوانين *qānūn qawānīn*
 21/1; ~court *maḥkama maḥākīm*
 8/23; ~yer *muḥāmī* 1/2;
 (المحامي) *muḥāmin*
 (*āl-muḥāmī*) 24/20
 lazy *kaslān kasla* 8/3
 lead قاد يقود *qāda yaqūdu* I 23/1;
 ~ing كبير كبار *kabīr kibār* 21/1
 League of Arab States *jāmi9at*
 ad-duwal al-9arabīya 15/3
 learn *ta9allam* V 12/4; it was ~ed
 علم *9ulim* 25/1
 least see 9/14; at ~ على الأقل *9ala*
 l- 'aqall 20/1

leave *tarak yatrak* I 3/6, 5/4, *ghādar*

III 11/4; (noun) *'ijāza* 10/15

Lebanon *lubnān* 1/2

left (not right) *shimāl* 4/1

length *ṭūl* *'aṭwāl* 14/3

less *'aqall* 9/13; be ~ than قلّ يقلّ
عن *qalla yaqillu* I 9an 25/1

let *khalla* II 9/10; ~ me (etc.) *khallīnī*
(etc.) 5/1, 11. 8/12, لي *li* see 26/4

letter *risāla* 5/1; *maktūb makātīb* 10/9

library *maktaba makātib* 4/3, 8/23

Libya *lībiya* 1/2

life *ʔumr* *'a9mār* 12/14; *ḥaya*

ḥayawāt, *ma9īsha* 13/1

lift *'asansayr* 3/3

light (adj.) *khafīf khifāf* 6/11;

~er *'akhaff* 9/13

light (noun) ضوء *ḍaw'*
'aḍwā' 17/6

like *mithl* 2/7, 8/22; *zayy* 9/1; *ḥabb*

yihibb I, *ḥubb* 8/4, 5, 12

limit *ḥadd ḥudūd* 11/1; حدّ *يحدّ*
ḥadda yaḥuddu I 24/1; ~ed محدود
maḥdūd 24/1

line *khaṭṭ khuṭūṭ* 7/1

link رابطة *rābiṭa rawābiṭ*
20/1; ~ed مربوط *marbūṭ* 20/2

liquid *sāyil sawāyil* 12/1

liquor *mashrūbāt* 2/1

lira *līra* 2/3

listener مستمع *mustāmi* 9 24/15

literary Arabic (*al-lughā*)

(*a*)*l-9arabīya l-fuṣṣha*, *al-faṣīḥ* 8/3

little: a ~ (some) *kam* 2/9, *shwayy* 4/1,
قليل *qalīlan* 22/9

live (reside) *sakan yuskun* I 6/3; (be
alive) *9āsh yi9īsh* I, *ma9īsha* 13/1,
يحيى *ḥayya yaḥya* I 25/5

living-room *ṣāloun* 6/3

load شحن *shaḥn* 20/1

London لندن *landan* 18/6

long *ṭawīl ṭiwāl* 2/1; ~er *'aṭwal* 9/13,
→ no; ~est see 9/14; as ~ as طالما
ṭālamā 25/4

look (at) *shāf yishūf* I 6/4, 7/4,
نظر ينظر *naḍara yanḍuru* I

(*'ila*) 20/11; ~after *ihtamm* VIII

bi/fī 13/6; ~ for *fattash* II 9an 14/1

lose *khasir yikhsar* I, *khasāra*

khasāyir 11/3; ~ sight of

قطع ينقطع النظر عن *qaṭa9a*
yaṭa9u I an-naḍar 9an 24/1

lot: quite a ~ *mish qalīl* 12/1, 2

love *ḥabb yihibb* I 8/4, 5;

'aḥabb yihibb IV 15/1

low *wāṭi'* 14/1

lubricat-e شحّم *shaḥḥama* II, ~ion

تشحيم *tashḥīm* 22/1

luck: bad ~ *sū' al-ḥazz*, good ~ *ḥusn*
al-ḥazz 12/15

lunch *ghadhā'* 3/3

M

machine آلة *'āla* 16/23

mad مجنون مجانين *majnūn majānīn*
17/8

mail *barīd* 5/3

main *ra'īsī* 4/3

majority *'aktharīya* 8/1

make *9imil yi9mal* I 5/4; ~ for

إلى *tawajjaha* V *'ila* 23/1

man *rajul rijāl* 6/3; old ~ *shaykh*
shuyūkh, young ~ *shābb shabāb*
13/1

manager *mudīr mudarā'* 1/2;

→ general

management → personnel

manner *kayfīya* 10/1

manufactur-e *ṣana9 yiṣna9* I, *ṣan9/*
ṣun9 11/3; *iṣṭāna9* VIII 13/6;

iṣṭinā9 13/10; ~ing *ṣan9/ṣun9* 10/1

many *kthīr(a)*, *kthār* 3/1, 17; → how

market *sūq 'aswāq* (f.) 11/1; سوق
sawwaqa II 22/2; → common;

~ing *taswīq* 10/1

married: get ~ to *tazawwaj* V *bi* 13/1

material *mādda mawādd*, raw ~

mādda 'awwalīya 11/3

mathematics *riyāḍīyāt* 8/3

matter *mas'ala masāyil* 8/1, 10/11;

'amr 'umūr 10/11

may *mumkin*, *yumkin* 7/8;

يمكن\يجوز *yumkin/yajūz* 22/5

- mayor (of a village) *mukhtār*
makhātīr 13/1
 maza (hors d'œuvres) *māzza* 9/1
 means: by ~ of بواسطة *bi wāsiyat*
 20/1; it ~ *ya9nī* 4/1
 measure *miqyās maqāyīs* 8/23; *qās*
yiqīs I 14/3; (administrative)
tadbīr tadābīr 10/12; 'ijrā' 13/1;
 ~ment *miqyās maqāyīs* 8/23
 meat *lahm* 9/3
 mechanics *mikānīk* 8/3
 medi-cal *ṭibbī* 12/3; ~cine (drug)
dawā 'ādwiya 12/1; (medical
 science) *ṭibb* 12/3
 Mediterranean Sea *al-baḥr*
al-'abyaḍ al-mutawassiṭ 13/3
 medium (adjective) *mutawassiṭ* 8/1;
 ~ sweet (coffee) *maqḥūt* 9/1, 3
 meet *qābal* III 11/4, *talāqa* VI 12/5,
 يلتقي *lāqiya yalqa* I 23/7;
 ~ing *ijtimā9* 5/3, 13/10
 member *9uḍw 'a9dā* 15/3; ~ship
 عضوية *9uḍwīya* 26/1
 memorandum *mudhakkira* 10/1,
 منشور *manshūr* 24/1
 mention *dhakar yudhkur* I 9/1; ~ed
 مذكور *madhkūr* 24/1; donq ~ it
9afwan 1/1
 menu *līsta* 9/1
 merchandise *biḍā9a baḍāyi9* 14/1
 merit *istiḥqāq* 14/8
 message *khabar 'akhbār* 7/1, 2
 metre *mitr 'amtār* 4/1; cubic ~
 متر مكعب *mitr muka99ab* 20/2
 midday *zuhr 'aẓhār* 7/3
 middle (adjective) *mutawassiṭ* 8/1;
 1 East *ash-sharq al-'awsaṭ* 13/3
 midnight *nuṣṣ layl* 7/3
 might (verb) (*kān*) *mumkin/yumkin*
 7/8; يمكن\يجوز (*kān*)
yumkin/yajūz 22/5
 milk *ḥalīb* 9/3, لبن *laban* 16/19
 mind: never ~ *ma9alaysh* 4/1, 2
 mineral water *may ma9danī* 9/3
 minist-er *wazīr wuzarā* ', ~ry *wizāra*
 4/3; ~erial وزاري *wizārī* 23/1;
 prime ~ *ra'īs al-wuzarā* 15/3
 minority 'aqallīya 10/3
 minute *daqīqa daqāyiq* 4/1, 7/12;
 ~s (of meeting) *maḥḍar ijtimā9*
 10/3
 mismanagement *sū' al-'idāra*
 12/15
 Miss *sitt* 1/12
 mission (delegation) وفد وفود *wafd*
wuḍūd 23/1
 mistake *ghalaṭ 'aghlāt* 5/1
 misunderstanding → mutual
 mixed *makhluṭ* 9/1
 mode *kayfiya* 10/1
 modern حديث حدائق *ḥadīth*
ḥidāth 24/1
 money *fulūs* (pl.) 2/3
 month *shahr 'ashhur* 2/1
 moon *qamar 'aqmār* 13/3
 more 'akthar 9/13
 morning *ṣubḥ 'aṣbāḥ* 7/3; good ~
ṣabāḥ al-khayr/an-nūr 1/1, 3;
 in the ~ *ṣabāḥan* 11/19
 Morocco *al-maghrib* 1/2
 mosque *masjid masājīd* 4/3
 mother 'umm 'ummahāt 6/3, 14
 mount *rikib yirkab* I 3/6, 5/4
 mountain *jabal jibāl* 13/3
 move (administrative) *tadbīr*
tadābīr 10/12; ~ away *intāqal*
 VIII 13/6; ~ment *ḥaraka* 14/1
 Mr *sayyid sāda* 1/1, 12
 Mrs, Ms *sitt* 1/12
 much *kthīr* 3/1, 17, 9/13;
 → how, very
 mud طين *ṭīn* 22/2
 municipality *baladīya* 13/1
 must *lāzim* 7/8; يجب *yajīb* 22/5
 mutual *mutabādal* 12/7; ~ misunder-
 standing *9adam at-tafāhum* 12/15
 N
 nail *mismār masāmīr* 8/23
 name 'ism 'asmā' 1/1; *samma* II
 9/10
 narrat-e حکي يحكي *ḥaka yaḥkī*
 I 23/7; ~ive *ḥikāya* 10/11

national *waṭanī* 5/3; ~isation تأميم *ta 'mīm* 16/20
 native *mustawfīn* 14/7
 natural طبيعي *ṭabīʿī* 19/2;
 ~ly *ṭabʿan* 4/2
 near: ~ to *qarīb min* 4/1; ¹ East
ash-sharq al- 'adna 13/3
 necess-ary *lāzim* 5/1, 7/9; واجب
wājib 25/1; ~ity *qarūra* 11/1
 need *iḥtāj* VIII 'ila 13/6; *iḥtiyāj*
 13/10; ~y *muḥtāj* 13/9
 needle 'ibra 'ibar 12/3
 neglect قطع ينظر عن *qaṭaʿa*
yaqṭaʿu I an-naḍar 9an 24/1
 negotiate *fāwaḍ* III 15/1
 network شبكة شباك *shabaka*
shibāk 20/2
 never 'abadan (+ neg.) 6/1, 2; ~ mind
maʿalaysh 4/1, 2
 new *jadīd* *judud* 6/11; ~er 'ajadd
 9/13; ¹ Year Day ra's as-sana
 10/15
 news *khavar* 'akhbār 6/1, 15/1;
naba ' 'anbā' 15/1; ~paper *jarīda*
jarāyid 11/1, صحيفة صحف
ṣaḥīfa ṣuḥuf 18/4
 next (in time) *jāī*, *muqbil* 7/13; ~day
thānī youm 8/20; be ~ ولي يلي
wāliya yalī I 25/5
 night *layla layālī* 7/3; → good
 nil (in statistics) لا يوجد توجد *lā*
yūjad/tūjad 26/10
 Nile an-nīl 13/3
 qineties التسعينات التسعينيات
at-tis9īn(īy)āt 24/14
 no *la* ' 1/1; ~body *lā 'aḥad* 9/1; ~ one
 see 9/16, 17; ~ thank you *salāmtak*
 (etc.) 9/1, 2; be ~ longer
 ما عاد لا يعود *mā 9āda lā*
ya9ūdu I 21/4; → there
 noise *ṣawt 'aṣwāt* 7/1
 non-Arab *ghayr 9arabī* 7/16
 non-cooperation *9adam at-ta9āwun*
 12/15
 none → there
 noon *zuhr 'aẓhār*, after~ *ba9d*

az-zuhr 7/3
 north *shimāl*, ~east *shimāl sharqī*,
 ~west *shimāl gharbī* 13/3
 not *mish* 4/1; ~ at all 'abadan (+ neg.)
 6/1, 2; ~ bad *mish baṭṭāl* 1/1; am/
 is/are ~ *mish* 4/13, ليس *laysa* I
 21/5; ~ yet *lissa* (+ neg.) 6/1,
 بعد ... لم *lam ... ba9d*, لَمَّا *lamma*
 26/4; → did, do
 nothing *wala shī* 9/1, 17; it~ ~ *mā*
fī shī 4/1, 2
 notice إعلان *'i9lān*, ~board لوحة
lawḥa 24/1
 now *hassa* 5/1, *al- 'ān* 8/1; ~ that *u*
 see 6/10; up to ~ *li ḥadd al- 'ān*
 11/2
 number *raqm 'arqām* 4/1; *9adad*
'a9dād 13/1; *numra numar*
 7/1; a ~ of *9idda* (in indef.
 construct) 5/1, *9adad min* 6/1
 nurse *mumarriḍa* 12/3

O

oasis *wāḥa* 13/3
 objectionable *mustankar* 14/7
 obligat-ory *mūjab*, ~ing *mūjib* 11/8
 occasion *furṣa furaṣ* 5/1; *marra* 7/13
 occup-ation *iḥtīlāl* 13/10; ~ied, ~ying
muḥtall 13/9; ~y *iḥtall* VIII 13/6
 ocean *muḥīṭ* 13/3
 o'clock *as-sā9a* see 7/12, 13
 offer *qaddam* II 9/10; *taqdīm* 10/12;
 ~ed *muqaddam*, ~ing *muqaddīm*
 10/6
 office *maktab makātib* 4/3, 8/23; ~r
 ضابط ضباط *ḡābiṭ ḡubbāṭ* 17/11;
 → assumption, post
 official (noun) *ma 'mūr* 2/1, 10/9;
mas 'ul 5/3; (adj.) *rasmī* 5/3; ~ly *bi*
ṣūra rasmīya 11/1; *rasmīyan*
 11/20
 oil بترول *bitroul* 20/1; نفط *naft*,
 زيت *zayt* 22/1
 old (things) *qadīm qudamā* ' 6/11;
 (people) *kbīr as-sinn* 12/14;
 ~ man *shaykh shuyūkh* 13/1
 on *9ala* 2/7; ~ the part of *min qibal*

- 13/15
 one (indef. pronoun) *al-wāḥid*
 9/1, 16
 one of 'aḥad, 'iḥda 13/1 see 5/14;
 أحدي 'iḥda (f.) 18/2, 3
 only *faqat* 2/1; 'illa + negative 11/25
 OPEC → organisation
 open *maftūḥ* 3/3; *fataḥ yiftaḥ* I 3/6,
 5/4; ~ fire 'aṭlaq yitlaq IV *an-nār*
 15/1
 operation *ʿamalīya* 12/3
 operator (telephone) *ʿāmil ʿummāl*,
ʿāmila 7/3
 opinion *raʿī* 'arā' 7/1, 2
 opportunity *furṣa furaṣ* 5/1
 opposite-e *muqābil* 11/8; تجاه *tujāha*
 25/1; ~ion (political) *mu9āraḍa*
 15/3
 optional *ikhtiyārī* 8/3
 or *willā* 1/1; 'aw 2/1; → either
 orange *burtuqāna* 9/6; ~s *burtuqān*
 9/5
 order 'amar *yu'mur* I, 'amr 3/7,
 5/4, 5; 'amr 'awāmir 10/11;
 (system) انظمة *niḡām*
 'anḡima 26/1; ~ed *ma'mūr*, ~ing
 'āmir 10/5
 orderly (hospital) *mumarriḡ* 12/3
 ordinary *9ādī* 10/3
 organisation (act) *tanzīm* 5/1; (body)
munazzama 10/1; ¹ of Petroleum
 Exporting Countries (OPEC)
 منظمة الدول المصدرة للنفط
 (أوبيك) *munaḡḡamat ad-duwal*
al-muṣaddira li n-naft ('oubek)
 23/1; → world
 other 'ākhar 'ukhra 'ākharīn 6/11,
 12; *thānī* 8/20; *ghayr* see 7/16
 outside *khārij* 2/7
 overlook قطع يقطع النظر عن
qaṭa9a yaqṭa9u I an-naḡar 9an
 24/1
 overthrown: be ~ *inqālab* VII 13/4
 overtime (work) شغل إضافي *shughl*
 'iḡāfī 21/2
- P
 Pacific Ocean *al-muḡīt al-ḡādī* 13/3
 pain *waja9* 'oujā9 12/3
 painter *naqqāsh* 8/23
 painting (activity) *niqāsha* 8/23
 Palestine *filasṭīn* 1/2
 paper *waraqā* 5/3, *waraq* 9/5
 paraffin كيروسين *kirusīn* 22/1
 parent *wālid* 6/3
 parking *tawqīf* 10/12
 parliament *barlamān* 5/3; lower
 house of ~ *majlis an-nuwwāb*,
 upper house of ~ *majlis*
ash-shuyūkh 15/3
 part *qiṭ9a qīṭa9* 11/1; اجزاء *juzʿ*
juzʿ 'ajzā' 17/8; → on
 particip-ant *mushtārik* 13/9; ~ate in
ishtārak VIII *fī* 13/6; شارك *fi*
shāraka III *fī* 25/1
 participation *ishtirāk* 13/10; مشاركة
mushāraka 25/1; ~ (in profits)
 مساهمة (في الأرباح)
musāhama (fi l-'arbāḡ) 19/2
 particularity *khāṣṣa khawāṣṣ* 11/19
 party (political) *ḡizb* 'aḡzāb 15/3;
 → third
 pass (examination) *najaḡ yinjah* I
 8/3; ~ by *marr yimurr* I *bi/9ala*
 8/4
 passage of time *murūr az-zaman/*
zamān 7/3
 passenger *rākih rukkāb* 2/3, 10/9
 passport *jawāz (saḡar)* 2/1
 past *māḡī māḡiya māḡiyīn* 7/13
 pattern *shakl* 'ashkāl 14/3
 pay *dafa9 yidfa9* I 3/6, 5/4; ~ scale
 جدول رواتب *jadwal rawātib*
 21/2; ~ment *daf9 madfū9āt* 10/11;
 ~ attention *dār yidīr* I *bālak* (etc.)
 12/1
 peace *salām* 15/1; ~keeping
 حفظ السلام *ḡifḡ as-salām* 26/1;
 ~-loving *muḡibb li s-salām* 15/2
 peasant *fallāḡ* 13/3
 peninsula *shibih jazīra* 13/3, 16
 people *nās* 2/1; 'ahl 'ahālī 13/1;

→ China, country, town
 pepper *fiḷḷil* 9/3
 perfect *kāmil* 12/1; *tamām* 6/1, 12/1;
 ~ion *tamām* 6/1
 perhaps *yumkin* 7/1, 9; قد *qad*
 (+ present) 22/9
 period *mudda mudad* 5/1, 7/13;
zaman/zamān 'azmān, *fatra*
fatarāt 7/13
 permanent دائم *dā'im* 26/1
 permission: ask ~ *ista'dhan* X 14/5
 permit me (etc.) 'ismah *lī* (etc.) 1/1, 3;
samah yismah I *li* 5/4, 8/12
 persist: ~ in 'ašarr *yīširr* IV 9/1a
 11/6; دام *dāma yadūmu* I
 21/4; ~ence 'iṣṣār 11/10; ~ent
muširr 11/8
 person *shakhṣ* 'ashkhāṣ 4/1; (in
 statistics) *nasama* 13/1; ~al
shakhṣī 2/1; ~ally *shakhṣīyan*
 11/1, 19
 personnel: ~ management إدارة
 الموظفين *'idārat shu'ūn*
al-muwaḍḍaḥfīn 21/1; ~ matters
shu'ūn al-muwazẓaḥfīn 5/3
 per-tain to *ta9allaq* V *bi* 12/4; ~tinent
 to *muta9alliq bi* 12/7
 petrochemicals بتروكيميائيات
bitrukīmīyā 'īyāt 22/1
 petrol بترين *binzīn* 22/1;
 ~eum بترول *bitroul* 20/1
 pharmacy *ṣaydalīya* 12/1
 philosophise *tafalsaf* IIQ 12/12
 photograph *ṣawwar* II 9/10;
 ~y *taṣwīr* 10/12
 physics *fīziya* 8/3
 picture *ṣūra ṣuwar* 5/1
 pilgrimage حج *hajj* 17/8
 pillow *mukhadda* 3/3
 pipe 'unbūb 'anābīb 11/1
 place *maḥall* 1/1; ḥaṭṭ *yihuṭṭ* I
 8/4, 5; → take
 plain (noun) *sahil suhūl* 13/3;
 (adj., invariable) *sāda* 9/3
 plan خطط *khaṭṭaṭa* II 24/1; ~ning
takhṭīṭ 5/1

plant *zara9 yizra9* I, *zar9* 13/1;
 (industrial) جهاز *jihāz*
'ajhiza 22/1
 plastic *blāstikī* 11/1
 plate *ṣaḥn ṣuḥūn* 9/1
 play لعب يلعب *la9iba*
yal9abu I, *lu9b* 26/1
 pleasant *laziz lizāz* 6/11
 please 'a9jab *yī9jib* IV 11/6; *min*
faḍlak (etc.), *tfadḍal* (etc.) 1/1, 3, 4;
law samaḥt (etc.) 1/1, 4; see 1/13;
 ~d *mabsūt* 1/1; سرور *masrūr*
 17/2; be ~d *inbāsaṭ* VII 13/4;
 ~d to meet you *furṣa sa9īda*,
mabsūt bi ma9rifṭak (etc.) 5/1, 2
 pleasure سرور *surūr* 17/2; it was
 a ~/the ~ mine (etc.) see 9/1, 2
 plentiful: be ~ *tawaffar* V 14/3
 plumb-er *sabbāk* 8/23; ~ing *sibāka*
 8/3, 23
 point: ~ of view وجهة نظر *wujhat*
naḍar 25/1; ~out 'ashār *yushūr*
 IV 'ila 12/1; be on the ~ of
'awshak yūshik IV 'inn 11/6
 police *shurṭa, būlīs*, ~man *shurṭī* 4/3
 policy (insurance) بوليصة *būliṣṣa*
bawālīs 19/1
 poli-cy, ~tics *siyāsa*, ~tical *siyāsī* 5/3
 pool: → swimming~
 poor *faqīr fuqarā'* 6/11; ~ conditions
sū' al-ḥāl 12/15; in ~ supply *basīṭ*
busaṭā' 13/2
 population (in statistics) *9adad*
sukkān 13/2
 port *mīna mawānī* 13/3;
 (الموانئ) ميناء *mīnā'*
mawānīn (al-mawānī) 24/20
 porter *ḥammāl* 3/1
 position (situation) *wad9 'oudā9* 8/1
 positive 'ijābī 10/1, 11/11
 possess *tamakkan* V *min* 12/4
 possession-s 'aghrāḍ 2/1; take ~
 of استولى *istawla* X 25/7
 possessor of ذو *dhū* (etc.) see 24/19
 possibility 'imkānīya 7/1
 possible *mumkin* 7/1, 9; as ... as ~

- see 9/15
 post office *bouṣṭa* 4/1
 pound (£) *jīnayh* 2/3
 power قُوَّة *qūwa* 22/2
 practical *ʿamalī* 8/1
 practice: in ~ *bi ṣūra ʿamalīya* 11/21
 precis-ely *bi ṣ-ḥabṭ* 11/20; بالضبط
bi ḥ-ḥabṭ 17/10, 22/9; ~ion *ṣabṭ*
 11/20; ضبط *ḥabṭ* 22/9
 prefer *faḍḍal* II 9/10
 premium (insurance) قسط اقساط
qisṭ 'aqsāt 19/1
 prepar-ation *taḥdīr* 10/12; ~atory
taḥdīrī 8/1, 11/11; ~e *ḥaḍḍar* II
 9/10; ~ed *muḥaḍḍar* 10/6;
mustaʿidd 8/1; ~ing *muḥaḍḍir*
 10/6
 prescription (medical) *tadhkara*
tadhākir (tibbīya) 12/1
 presence: in the ~ of *ʿind* 2/7; لدى
lada 19/15
 present (actual) *ḥāḍir* 7/13; (not
 absent) *moujūd* 5/1, 10/5;
 at ~ *fi l-waqt al-ḥāḍir* 10/2;
 حَالِيًا *ḥālīyan* 24/1
 present *qaddam* II 9/10; ~ed
muqaddam, ~ing *muqaddim* 10/6
 presiden-cy رئاسة/رياسة *ri 'āsa/*
riyāsa 17/5;
 ~t *ra'īs (al-jumhūrīya)* 15/3
 pressure ضغط *ḍaḡḥ* 22/1
 price *si9r 'as9ār* 11/3; best/last ~
'ākhīr kalīma 14/1, 2
 primary *ibtidā'ī* 8/3, 13/10
 prince 'amīr 'umarā' 15/3
 principal (adjective) *ra'īsī* 4/3
 principality 'imāra 15/3
 private *khāṣṣ* 5/3
 probab-ility *iḥtīmāl* 13/10; ~le
muḥtāmāl 13/9; be ~le *iḥtāmāl*
 VIII 13/6
 problem *mushkila mashākil* 7/1
 procedure إجراءات *'ijrā'āt* (pl.)
 21/1
 proceeding *jārī/jāriya quduman* 9/2
 produce 'antaj *yintij* IV 11/6
 product منتج *mantūj* 22/1; ~ion
'intāj 5/3, 11/10; ~ive *mintij* 11/8
 profess-ion *mihna mihan* 1/2;
 ~or 'ustādh 'asātīdha 6/1
 profit from *rabiḥ yirbaḥ* I *min, ribḥ*
'arbāḥ 11/3
 programme *barnāmaj barāmij* 12/1
 progress *taqaddum* 12/1, 8;
taqaddam V 12/4; ~ive *taqaddumī*
 12/8
 prohibited *mamnū* 9 8/1
 project *mashrūʿ mashārīʿ* 10/1
 promot-e رَفَى *raqqa* II 21/1;
 ~ion *tarwīj* 10/1; تَرْفِية *tārqiya* 21/1
 proof of *burhān ʿala* 12/12
 Prophet's Birthday *moulūd an-nabī*
 10/15
 propos-e *iqṭarāḥ* VIII 13/6; ~al
iqṭirāḥ 13/10
 property مَال اموال *māl 'amwāl*
 16/20
 protection وقاية *wiqāya* 19/2
 protocol *tashrīʿāt* (pl.) 10/12
 prove *barhan IQ ʿala* 12/12; أثبت
'athbata IV 16/9
 provisional موقت\مؤقت
muwaqqat/mu'aqqat 19/1
 public ʿāmm 5/1, 3; ~ation *nashra*
 15/1; ~ise 'akhraj *yukhrij* IV 11/6
 publish *nashar yunshur* I 11/1
 pull *saḡab yishab* I 13/4
 pump ضَخ يَضَخ *ḍakhkha*
yaḍukhku I, طلمبة *tulumba* 22/1
 pupil *tilmīdh talāmīdh* 6/1
 puppy *kulayb* 13/17
 purchase *ishtirā'* 13/10
 purpose *gharaḍ 'aghrāḍ* 8/1; قصد
qaṣd 24/1
 pursue (policy etc.) انتهج *intāhaja*
 VIII 26/1
 put *ḥaṭṭ yihuṭṭ* I 8/4, 5; *maḥṭūt* 10/5;
 ~ting *ḥāṭiṭ* 10/5

Q

- quak-e *tazalzal IIQ*, ~ing *tazalzul*
 12/12
 qualif-ications مؤهلات *mu'ahhilāt*,

~ied مؤهل *mu'ahhal* 21/2
 quality *jins 'ajnās* 14/1
 quantity *kammīya* 14/3
 quarter (part of town) *ḥayy* 4/1
 quasi- *shibih* see 13/15
 question *su'āl 'as'ila* 5/1, 10/11
R
 racial discrimination *tamyīz ʔunṣurī,*
 ~ialism, ~ism *ʔunṣurīya* 15/3
 radio *rāḍiyo* 15/1; (adj.) لاسلكي
lāsilkī 20/1
 railway سكة حديدية *sikka*
sikak ḥadīdīya 20/1
 rain *maṭar 'amīār* 13/1; *maṭar*
yumṭur I, itṣ ~ing *yumṭur,*
as-sama tumṭur, yusquṭ al-maṭar
 13/3
 rather (but instead) *bal* 15/1
 reach for *tanāwal* VI 12/5
 read *qara yiqra* I *qirāya* 8/7, 8;
maqrū 10/5
 readiness *isti9dād* 14/8
 reading *qirāya* 8/3, 10/11; قراءة
qirā'a 16/1, 20/9; *qārī* 10/5
 ready *musta9idd* 8/1; *ḥāḍir* 9/1; be ~
ista9add X 14/5; ~ for *musta9idd*
9ala 14/7
 real فعلي *fi9lī* 26/1; ~isation تحقيق
taḥqīq, ~ise حقق ḥaqqāqa II
 26/1
 reason: for some ~ or other لأمرٍ ما
li 'amrin mā 26/4
 reasonable معقول *ma9qūl* 25/1
 receive *tasallam* V 12/4; *istaqbal* X
 14/5; تلقى *talaqqa* V 23/9; ~er
 (radio/TV) *mustaqbil* 14/7
 recent 'akhīr 6/12; ~ly *jadīdan* 9/1,
 11/19; *min qarīb* 11/23; أخيراً
'akhīran 25/1
 reception *istiqbāl* 3/1, 14/8
 reciprocal *mutabādal* 12/7
 recommendation *tāwṣīya* 10/3
 reconstitution إعادة التشكيل *'i9ādat*
at-tashkīl 26/1
 recover (in health) *ta9āfa* VI 12/5
 recruit *wazzaf* II 9/10; ~ment *tawzīf*

10/1, 11
 red 'aḥmar *ḥamrā' ḥumr* 12/1, 11;
¹ Sea *al-baḥr al-'aḥmar* 13/3;
 go ~ *iḥmarr* IX 14/4
 reduce *khaffaf* II 14/3
 reduction of tension
 تخفيف حدة التوتر *takhfīf ḥiddat*
at-tawattur 25/1
 reference إشارة *'ishāra* 24/1; with ~
 to بالإشارة *bi l-'ishāra 'ila*
 24/1
 refin-e كَرَّر *karrara* II, ~ing تَكَرَّر
takrūr 22/1
 reform إعادة التشكيل *'i9ādat*
at-tashkīl 26/1
 refrigera-tion *tabrīd* 8/3; ~tor *barrāda*
 6/3
 refugee *lājī* 8/1
 regards: give my (etc.) ~ *sallim 9alāy*
 (etc.) 6/1, 2
 region *minṭaqa manāṭiq* 13/1; 'iqlīm
'aqālīm 13/3
 regist-er سجل *sajjala* II; ~ration
 تسجيل *tasjīl* 21/1
 regret 'asaf' 7/1
 reinforcement تقوية *tāqwiya* 19/1
 reject *istankar* X 14/5;
 رفض يرفض *rafada*
yarfiḍu I, *rafḍ* 24/1;
 ~ion *istinkār* 14/8; رفض *rafḍ* 24/1
 relation(ship) *9alāqa* 10/1
 release *khalla* II 9/10
 relevant to *muta9alliḡ bi* 12/7
 reliable *mu9tāmad* 13/9; *qābil li*
l-i9timād 15/2
 rely on *i9tāmad* VIII *9ala* 13/6
 remain *ḡall yiḡill/zall yiḡill* I 8/4, 5;
biḡi yibqa I 8/9; ظلّ يظلّ *ḡalla*
yaḡallu I 21/4, 25/2; بقي يبقى
bāḡiya yabqa I 23/7
 remember *tadhakkar* V 12/4
 remind *dhakkar* II *bi* 9/10
 remuneration *muqābil* 11/8
 renew *jaddad* II 9/10; ~able *qābil li*
t-tajdīd 14/10; ~al *tajdīd* 10/12
 renovat-e *jaddad* II 9/10; ~ation

- tajdīd* 10/12
 rent 'ujra 6/3; (as tenant) *ista'jar* X 14/5
 reorganisation إعادة التنظيم *'i9ādat at-tanzīm* 26/1
 reply *jawāb* 'ajwiba 5/1; ~ to *jāwab* III 11/4
 report *taqrīr taqārīr* 8/3, 10/12;
 qarrar II 9/10; ~er *muqarrir* 10/9;
 it is ~ed ... *tufīd al-'anbā' bi* 15/2
 representative *mumaththil* 10/1
 republic *jumhūrīya*, ~an *jumhūrī* 15/3
 repudiat-e نفى ينفي *nafa yanfī*
 I, *nafy* 23/1, 7; ~ion نفى *nafy* 23/1; ~ed منفي *manfīy* 23/10
 request *ṭalab yuṭlub* I, *ṭalab/maṭlab maṭālib* 3/6, 16, 5/4; *raja yirjū* I 8/7, 8; رجا *raja yarjū* I 23/7; *ṭalab, maṭlab maṭālib* 10/11; ~ed *marjū, maṭlūb* 10/5; مرجو *marjūw* 23/10; ~ing *rājī, ṭālib* 10/5; grant a ~ *istajāb* X 14/5
 resemblance *shibih 'ashbāh* 13/16
 reserve احتياطي *iḥtiyāfī* 22/2
 residence 'iqāma 2/3; (official) *manzil manāzil* 8/23
 resign استقال *istaqāla* X, ~ation استقالة *istiqaḷa* 21/1
 resolut-e *muṣirr* 11/8; ~ion *qarar* 10/3
 resource مورد موارد *mawrid mawārid* 23/1
 respect *iḥtāram* VIII 13/6; *iḥtirām* 13/10; ~ed *muḥtāram* 13/9
 respons-ible for *mas'ul 9an* 5/1, 10/5; ~ive to *mustajīb 'ila* 14/7
 rest irtāḥ VIII 13/6; *istarāḥ* X 14/5; *istirāḥa* 14/8
 restaurant *maṭ9am maṭā9im* 3/3, 8/23
 restful *mustarīḥ* 14/7
 result نتيجة نتائج *natīja natā'ij* 17/8
 resum-e *ista'naf* X 14/5; ~ption *isti'nāf* 14/8
 retreat *insāḥab* VII 13/4
 return *riji9 yirja9* I, *rujū9* 5/4; *rujū9* 10/11
 review راجع *rāja9a* III, مراجعة *murāja9a* 26/1
 revis-e راجع *rāja9a* III; ~ion مراجعة *murāja9a* 26/1
 revolution *thawra* 15/3
 rial *riyāl* 2/3
 rice *ruzz* 9/1
 rich *ghanī 'aghniyā'* 6/11
 rig جهاز اجهزة *jihāz 'ajhiza* 22/1, 2
 right (not left) *yamīn* 4/1; (noun) حق حقوق *ḥaqq huqūq* 18/4
 riot *iḍtirāb* 13/10
 rise *qām yiqūm* I 6/3
 risk مخاطرة *mukhātara* 19/2
 river *nahr 'anhur* 13/3
 riyal *riyāl* 2/3
 road *ṭarīq turuq* (m.f.) 3/1
 roast(ed) *muḥammad* 9/3
 rôle دور ادوار *dawr 'adwār* 26/1
 room *ghurfa ghura, 'ouḍa 'uwaḍ* 3/1
 Russia *rūsiya* 15/3
S
 safekeeping 'amān 14/1
 safety 'amān 14/1; امن *'amn* 19/1
 said: be ~ *inqāl* VII 13/4
 sake → for
 salary راتب راتب *rātib rawātib* 21/2
 sale *bay9* 10/11
 salt *miliḥ* 9/3
 same *nafs* see 8/16; ذات *dhāt* see 24/19
 sand *raml rimāl*, ~storm *9aṣīfa 9awāṣif ramlīya* 13/3
 satellite قمر صناعي *qamar ṣinā9ī* 20/1
 satis-factory *murḍī murḍiya murḍīyīn* 13/1; be ~fied with رضى يرضى *rāḍiya yarḍa* I *bi* 23/7
 Saudi *sa9ūdī*, ~ Arabia *as-sa9ūdīya* 1/2
 saw *minshār manāshūr* 8/23
 say *qāl yiqūl* I, *qawl* 6/4; ~ing *qawl 'aqwāl* 10/11; → that

- scale → pay
 school *madrasa madāris* 7/1, 8/23
 scien-ce *ʿilm ʿulūm*, ~tific *ʿilmī* 8/1
 sea *baḥr* 'abḥār 13/3; (adj.) بحري *baḥrī* 20/2; → Mediterranean, red
 search for بحث عن *baḥṭh ʿan* 26/1
 season *faṣl fuṣūl*, mousim *mawāsim* 10/15
 second (of time) *thāniya thawān* 7/13; ~ary *thānawī* 7/1
 secretar-iat امانة *'amāna* 23/1; ~y *sikritayra* 5/1; ~y-general *'amīn 9āmm* 15/3
 sector *qīṭāʿ* 5/3; services ~ *qīṭāʿ al-khidmāt* 11/3
 security امن *'amn* 19/1; ¹ Council مجلس الأمن *majlis al-'amn* 26/1; → social
 see *shāf yishūf* I 6/4, 7/4; نظر ينظر *naḡara yaṇḡuru* I 20/10, 11; رأى يرى *ra'a yara* I 25/6; ~ing *shāyif* 10/5
 seed *ḥabba ḥubūb* 9/7; ~s *ḥabb* 9/5
 seen *mashūf* 10/5
 seismic زلزالي *zilzālī* 22/2
 seize an opportunity *intāhaz furṣa* VIII 13/6
 select *ikhtār* VIII 14/1
 -self *nafs* 'anfus 8/1, 16; ذات *dhāt* see 24/19; *ḥālu* (etc.) see 13/14
 self-confidence *iʿtimād ʿala n-nafs* 8/16
 sell *bāʿ yibīʿ* I, *bayʿ* 6/4, 7/4; ~ing *bāyī* 10/5
 semi- *shibih*, ~official *shibih rasmī* 13/16
 senator *shaykh shuyūkh* 15/3
 send 'arsal *yursil* IV 11/6; وجّه *wajjah* II 20/2; ~er *mursil* 11/8
 senior كبار كبير *kabīr kibār* see 21/11
 sens-ed *maḥsūs*, ~ing *ḥāsis* 10/5
 sent *mursal* 11/8
 sentence جملة جمل *jumla jumal* 17/8
 separate جَزَأَ *jazza'a* II 22/1; ~d *munfāsil* 13/9;
 be ~d *infāṣal* VII 13/4
 separation *infīṣāl* 13/10
 separatis-m *infīṣālīya* 13/11; ~t *infīṣālī* 13/10
 servant: civil ~ *muwazzaf ḥukūma* 1/2
 serve *qaddam* II 9/10
 service *khidma* 10/1; → sector
 set: ~ up أُسِّسَ *'assasa* II, ~ting up تأسس *ta'sīs* 25/1
 settle (in a place) *istawṭan* X 14/5;
 be ~d استقرَّ *istaqarra* X 26/1
 settlement (of dispute) تسوية *tāswiya* 21/1, 25/9
 severe *shadīd 'ashiddā'*, more ~ *'ashadd* 9/13; ~ly *shadīdan* 11/19;
bi shidda 11/20
 severity *shidda* 11/20
 sew *khāṭ yikhīṭ* I 14/1; ~ing *khiyāṭa* 8/1, 23
 shake *zalzal* IQ 12/12
 shall *rāyih/rāḥ-* 10/14; سوف \ لن *sawfa/sa* 15/12, 21/11; ~ not لن *lan* see 22/4
 shape *ṣūra ṣuwar* 5/1
 sharpness حِدَّة *hidda* 25/1
 shatter *kassar* II 9/10
 sheep *kharūf khirāf* 9/8
 sheet *sharshaf sharāshif* 3/3
 shift (work) نوبة نوب *nawba nuwab* 19/1
 ship سفينة سفن *safīna sufun* 20/1;
 باخرة بواخر *bākhira bawākhir* 20/2
 shirt *qamīṣ qumṣān* 14/3
 shock *zilzāl* 12/12
 shoe *kundura kanādir* 14/3
 shop *dukkān dakākīn* 4/3; ~ping *mushtarayāt* (pl.) 14/3; ~floor *warsha* 11/1
 shore ساحل سواحل *ḡiffa ḡifaf* 13/1; ساحل *sāḥil sawāḥil* 22/1
 short *qaṣīr qīṣār* 6/11; ~er *'aqṣar* 9/13; in ~ supply *nāqīṣ nuqqas*

- 14/3
show *farja* IQ 12/12; ارى *'ara*
yurī IV 25/7; ~ round *zawwar* II
9/10
shut *sakkar* II 9/10
sick *marīd* *marḍa* 6/11; ~ness
marad 'amrād 12/3
side *jānib* *jawānib* 15/1
sign وقع *waqqa* 9a II 24/1; ~, ~al
'ishāra 4/1; ~ature *tawqī* 9 10/3
simple *basīṭ* *busaṭā* ' 6/11
since *mundh*, *mīn* 2/7
sincere مخلص *mukhlis*, to be ~
أخلص *'akhlaṣa* IV 24/1, 2;
Yours ~ly see 24/2
sir *yā sīdna* 3/1; *yā sīdī* 7/1
sister 'ukht 'ikhwāt 6/3, 6/14;
~(-state) شقيق شقائق *shaqīq*
shaqā 'iq see 23/1
sit *jalas* *yijlis* I 8/1
situation *waḍ* 9 'ouḍā 9 8/1
skirt *tannūra* *tanānīr* 14/3
sky *sama* *samāwāt* (m./f.) 13/3
sleep *nām* *yinām* I, *noum* 6/4, 7/4;
noum 10/11
small *ṣghīr* *ṣghār* 2/1; ~ door *buwayb*
13/7; ~er 'aṣghar 9/13; ~est
'aṣghar, *ṣughra* 9/14;
→ change, consider
smelt-er *sabbāk*, ~ing *sibāka* 8/23
smile *tabassam* V 12/4
snow *shita* 'āshtiya, *thalj* *thulūj*,
thalaj *yuthluj* I, itṣ ~ing *yuthluj*,
as-sama *tuthluj*, *yusquṭ* *ath-thalj*
13/3
so *kadha* 2/1; *hayk* 8/1, *fā* 4/1; ~ let
me (etc.) فل *fā l* 26/4; ~ that *ḥatta*
5/1; ان 'an, ل *li*, لأن *li 'an*, كي
kay, لي *li kay*, حتى *ḥatta*,
~ that ... not لئلا *li'allā* 22/4; and
~ on *u ghayru* 7/16, وكذا *wa/u*
kadha u kadha 24/1
social *ijtimā* 9ī 13/10; ~ security
الضمان الاجتماعي *aḍ-damān*
al-ijtimā 9ī 19/2
social-ism *ishtirākīya* 13/11; ~ist
ishtirākī 13/10
sock *kalsa* 14/3
sold *mabī* 9 10/5
solution *ḥill* *ḥulūl*; 9/1, 10/11
solve *ḥall* *yihill* I, *ḥill* 8/4, 5; be ~d
inhall VII 13/4; ~d *munḥall* 13/9
some *kam* 2/1, 9; ~ day/time ما
يوماً *yawman mā* 26/5; ~ of *ba* 9d
8/1, 17; ~how or other *kayf mā kān*
13/1, 2, 13; ~one see 9/16; ~thing
shī 6/1; see 9/16; ~what ما
نوعاً *nawḡan mā* 26/1, 5; ~where or
other *wayn mā kān*, at ~ time
mata mā kān 13/13; for ~ reason
or other ما لأمر *li 'amrin mā* 26/5
son 'ibn 'abnā' 6/3
soon *qarīban* 11/19; 9an *qarīb*, *ba* 9d
ishwayy 11/23; as ~ as possible
see 9/15
sorry *muta* 'assif 7/1, 12/7; be ~
ta 'assaf V 12/4
sort *jīns* 'ajnās 14/1
sound (adj.) سالم *sālim* 21/1
soup *shouraba* 9/1
source *maṣdar* *maṣādir* 15/1
south *janūb*, ~east *janūb sharqī*,
~west *janūb gharbī* 13/3
Soviet Union *al-ittihād as-sufiyātī*/
sufiyaytī 15/3
speak *ḥaka* *yihkī* I 8/7, 8; *takallam* V
12/4; تكلم *takallama* V 23/7; ~er
mutakallim 12/7; ~ing *ḥākī* 10/5
special *khāṣṣ* 5/3
specialisation *takhaṣṣuṣ* 8/1, 12/8
specialis-e in *takhaṣṣaṣ* V *fī* 12/4;
~ing *mutakhaṣṣiṣ* 5/1, 12/7;
~t *mutakhaṣṣiṣ* 5/1, 12/7
speech (oration) *khiṭāb* 'akhṭiba
10/6;
speed *sur* 9a 11/20
spices → cooked
spicy *mubahhar* 9/3
splendid *ḡaẓīm* *ḡuzamā* ' 6/11
spoken *maḥkī* 10/5
spokesman *nāṭiq bi lisān* 15/3
spoon *mal* 9aqa *malā* 9iq 9/3

- sport *riyāḍa* 8/3
spring (season) *rabīʿ* 10/15
square (open place) *sāḥa*, *maydān*
mayādīn 4/3
stab-le (adj.) *thābit* 14/1; be ~ استقرَّ *istaqarra* X, ~ility استقرار *istiqrār* 26/1
staircase *sullām salālīm* 6/3
stand up *qām yiqūm* I 6/4, 7/4
starting from *ibtidāʿan min*,
iʿtibāran min 13/10
state (country) *dawla duwal* 5/3;
→ united
station *maḥaṭṭa* 8/23
statue *timthāl tamāthīl* 4/3
stay *ʿiqāma* 2/3
steadiness استقرار *istiqrār* 26/1
steel فولاذ *fūlādh* 25/1
step خطوة *khuṭwa* 25/1
stewardess *muḍīfa* 1/1
still *lissa* 6/1; ~ to be يدوم *dāma*
yadūmu I 21/4;
~ to be/do ما زال لا يزال *mā zāla lā yazālu* I 21/4, 25/2
Stockholm استكهولم *istok-holm* 18/6
stomach *baṭn buṭūn* 12/3
stop *waqqaʿ* II 9/10; 'awqaf IV 11/6;
وقف يقف *waqafa yaqifu* I 20/6;
قف *qif* 20/10; (bus etc.) ~
mouqif 4/3; ~page 'īqāf 11/10
storage تخزين *takhzīn* 19/1
store: department ~ *maḥallāt* (pl.) 4/3
storm *9āṣifa 9awāṣif* 13/3
street *shāri9 shawāri9* 4/1
strength قوة *qūwa* 22/2
strike *ḍarab yuḍrub* I 7/3;
(from work) اضرب *aḍraba* IV,
اضراب *iḍrāb* 21/1
strive for الى يسعى *sa9a*
yis9a I 'ila 23/7
strong *qawī 'aqwiyā'* 9/13;
~er 'ashadd 9/1; 'aqwa 9/13
student *ṭālib ṭullāb, ṭāliba* 1/2, 10/9
study *daras yudrus* I, *dirāsa* 4/1, 5/4;
dirāsa 8/1, 10/11
subcontinent *shibih qārra* 13/16
subject *mouḍū9 mawāḍi9* 11/19
substance → form
substitut-e *istabdāl* X 14/5; ~ion
istibdāl 11/1; 14/8
succeed *najah yinjah* I, *najāḥ* 8/12
success *najāḥ* 10/11; ~ful موفق *muwaḥḥaq* 24/1
such *kadha* 2/1; ~ a *mithl* see 8/22
such-and-such وكذا وكذا *kadha*
wa/u kadha 24/1
Sudan *as-sūdān* 1/2
suffice *kaffa* II 14/1;
كفى يكفي كفاية *kafa yakfī* I,
كفاية *kifāya* 25/1
sugar *sukkar* 9/3
suggest *iqṭaraḥ* VIII 13/6
suit *nāsab* III 11/4; ~able *munāsib* 8/1, 11/8
suit (of clothes) *badhla* 14/3
suitcase *shanta* 2/1
summar-ise 'awjaz *yūjiz* IV,
~y *mūjaz* 15/1
summer *ṣayf* 6/1; (adj.) *ṣayfī* 14/1
summon *nāda* III 11/4, *istahḍar* X 14/5; دعا يدعو *da9a yad9ū* I 23/7
sun *shams shumūs* (f.) 13/3
super-power *dawla kubra* 15/3;
~tanker ناقلة ضخمة *nāqila*
ḍakhma 20/1
supervisor *mushrif* 11/1
supplement 'idāfa 11/10; ~ary 'idāfī 11/11
supply *zawwad* II 14/3; poor ~ *basīt busaṭā'* 13/2; → short
support تأييد 'ayyada II, تأيد *ta'yīd*,
in ~ of تأييداً *ta'yīdan li* 21/1
suppose *ẓann yizunn* I 8/4, 5
sure of متأكد من *muta'akkid min* 21/1
surg-eon *jarrāḥ* 12/3; ~ery (clinic) *9iyāda* 12/1, 3; ~ical *jirāḥī* 12/3
sweet *ḥilū*, f. *ḥilwa* 9/3; ~s *ḥilwīyāt* 9/1
swimming-pool *masbah masābiḥ* 3/3

Syria *sūriya* 1/2; *ash-shām* 6/1
system أنظمة نظام *nizām* 'anẓima
26/1

T

table *ṭarabayza*, *ṭābla*, *ṭawla* 6/3;
dining ~ *sufra sufra* 9/3; (of data)
جدول *jadwal jadāwil*
19/1
tablet *qurṣ* 'aqraṣ 12/1
tailor *khaṣṣ* 8/23
take 'akhadh *yākhudh* I, 'akhdh 3/7,
5/5, 9; ittākhadh VIII 13/6; (food,
drink) *tanāwal* VI 12/5; ~ down
nazzal II 9/10; ~ into consideration
'akhadh *yākhudh* I bi 9ayn
al-i9tibār 13/10; ~ place *ḥadath*
yaḥduth I 15/1; ~ the place of
حلّ محلّ *ḥalla yaḥullu* I
maḥall 25/1
taking 'akhdh 10/11; ittikhādh 13/10
talk *ḥaka yiḥkī* I 8/7, 8
tangible *maḥsūs* 10/5, *malmūs* 12/1
tank صهريج صهاريج *ṣahrīj ṣahārīj*
19/1; ~er ناقلة *nāqila* 20/1
tar زفت *zift* 22/1
task *mahamma mahāmm* 7/1
taught *mu9allam* 10/6
tax *ḍarība ḍarāyib* 11/3
taxi *taksī* 2/3
tea *shāī* 1/1
teach *9allam* II 9/10;
~er *mu9allim(a)* 1/2, 10/6, 9;
~ing *ta9līm* 8/1, 3, 10/10, 12
techn-ical *fannī* 5/1; ~ology
تكنولوجيا *tiknuluḡiyya* 25/1
telephone *tilifoun* 7/1, 3; *ḍarab*
yudrub I *tilifoun* 7/3; *talfan* IQ
12/12; by ~ *tilifonīyan* 7/3
televis-e *talfaz* IQ, *talfaza*, ~ion
talfaza 12/12
temperature *darajat ḥarāra* 12/1
temporary مؤقت مؤقت *muwaqqat/mu'aqqat* 19/1
tenant-ry *isti'jār* 14/8; ~t *musta'jir*
14/7
tens-e: be توتر *tawattara* V, ~ion

توتر *tawattur* 25/1
terms of reference *majāl baḥṭh* 10/3
terrorism 'irhāb 15/3
test *tajrīb* 10/12
than *min*, *mimma* 9/13
thank: ~ for *shakar yushkur* I 9ala,
shukr 5/4; ~ God *mushkuralla*,
~ you *shukran* 1/3; 'alla *ya9fīk*
(etc.) see 6/1, 2; 'alla *yibārik fīk*
(etc.) see 14/1, 2; ~ you/Heavens
(al-)ḥamdilla 1/1, 3;
(al-)ḥamdulilla 5/1; → no
that (conjunction) 'inn 3/1, 4/7;
أنّ 'anna 21/8, 22/4; إنّ 'inna
21/12; أنّ 'an, ~ ... not ألاّ 'allā
22/4; (relative) *illī* 8/1, 13; الذي
allādhī (etc.) 23/1; ~ is to say
ya9nī 4/1, 2; → so
theft سرقة *sariqa* 19/2
then (afterwards) *ba9dayn* 4/1; (so)
fa 4/1; see 11/16; ف *fa* 26/4
theoretically *bi ṣūra naẓarīya* 8/1,
11/21
there *hunāk* 2/1; ~ are/is *fī* 2/1, 11;
يوجد\توجد *yūjad/tūjad* 26/10;
~ is no/none لا يوجد\توجد
la yūjad/tūjad 26/10; لا *lā*
... -a see 25/3; ~ nothing *mā fī*
shī 4/1, 2; ~ was/were *kān fī* 6/7;
~ will/wonḡ be (*mā*) *yikūn fī* 7/7
therefore *ḥayk* 8/1
thing *shī* 'ashyā' 4/1
things (possessions) 'aghrāḡ 2/1
think *iftākar* VIII 13/6
third: ~ party طرف ثالث *ṭaraḡ*
thālith 19/2; ~ world *al-9ālam*
ath-thālith 15/3
thirsty *9aṭshān 9aṭsha 9iṭash* 9/3
thought *fikra* 'afkār 5/1
throat *ḥalq ḥulūq* 12/1
through عبر *9abra* 19/15
throw *rama yirmī* I 8/7, 8; رمى *rama*
yarmī I 23/7
thus *kadha* 2/1; *ḥayk* 8/1
ticket *tadhkara tadhākir* 2/3
tie *9aqad ya9qid* I, *9aqd* 15/1;

(neck~) *gravāt* 14/3
 Tigris *ad-dijla* 13/3
 tiles *balāṭ* 9/5
 time *waqt* 'ouqāt 2/1, 7/13; *zaman/*
zamān 'azmān 6/1, 7/3, 13; a ~
marra 7/13; at the ~ of 9ind 6/18;
 for a long ~ now *min zamān* 6/1, 2
 timetable *jadwal jadāwil* 2/3
 tired *ta9bān* 9/1
 to 'ila, li 2/7; 9a see 4/9; ان 'an
 see 22/4
 today *al-youm* 1/1
 together *ma9an* 11/19; *sawa* 13/1
 toler-ance *iḥtimāl* 13/10; ~ate
iḥtāmāl VIII 13/6
 tomatoes *banadūra* 9/1
 tomorrow *bukra* 7/1; غداً *ghadan*
 18/11; the day after ~ *ba9d bukra*
 7/3
 ton(ne) طنّ *ṭunn* 'aṭnān 20/2
 tongue *lisān* 'alsina (m./f.) 12/1
 too (also) *kamān* 1/1
 tooth *simn* 'asnān 12/3
 total مجموع *majmū* 9 24/1
 tour *jawla* 5/1, 2
 towards تجاه *tujāh* 25/1
 towel *minshafa manāshif* 3/3, 8/23
 town *balad bilād* 3/1; ~ hall *baladīya*
 13/1; ~speople 'ahl *al-mudun* 13/3
 trade *tijāra* 4/3; ~r *tājir* 1/2; ~ union
niqābat al-9ummāl 11/3
 traffic *murūr* 4/1, 10/11
 train درّاب *darraba* II 24/1; (noun)
 قطار *qīṭār quṭur* 20/2;
 ~er مدرّاب *mudarrīb* 24/1;
 ~ing *tadrīb* 8/3
 transfer *intiḡāl* 13/10; حوّل *ḥawwala*
 II, تحويل *taḥwīl* 25/1
 translat-e *tarjam* IQ, *tarjama*
tarājīm, ~ed *mutarjam*, ~ion
tarjama tarājīm, ~or *mutarjīm*
 12/12
 transport نقل *naql* 20/1
 travel *saḡra saḡarāt* 2/3; *sāḡar* III 11/4;
 ~ler *musāḡir* 2/3, 11/8
 treat *9āmal* III 11/4; (medically) *9ālaj*

III 12/3
 treatment *mu9āmala* 11/9; (medical)
9ilāj 12/1; → ill
 treaty *ittiḡāqīya* 15/3
 tree *shajara* 9/6; ~s *shajar* 9/5
 Tripoli طرابلس *ṭrāblus* 23/1
 trousers *baṇṭaloun* 14/3
 true *ṣaḡīḥ* 4/1
 trunk *ṣandūq ṣanādīq* 2/3
 truth *ḥaqīqa ḥaqāyiq*, in ~ *fi l-ḥaqīqa*
 11/20
 try *jarrab* II 9/10; *ḥāwal* III 11/4;
 حاول *ḥāwala* III 22/5
 tube 'unbūb 'anābīb 11/1
 Tunis, ~ia *tūnis* 1/2
 turn نوبة نوب *nawba nuwab* 19/1
 type *katab yuktub* I bi *l-mākina* 5/1;
 ~writer *mākīna* 5/1, 'āla *kātība* 5/3

U

unclear see 11/21
 uncooperative *9adīm at-ta9āwun*
 12/15
 uncountable see 13/5
 under *taḡt* 2/7; ~clothes *malābis*
taḡtānīya 14/3
 under-stand *fiḥim yifḥam* I 11/1;
 ~stood *maḡhūm* 8/1
 undertak-e *qām yiqūm* I bi 6/4;
 ~ing *qiyām bi* 10/11
 unfortunately *li sū' al-ḥazz* 12/2, 15
 union *ittihād* 13/10; → trade, Europe
 united *muttāḡid* 13/9; ¹ Arab Emirates
 الإمارات العربية المتحدة
al-'imārāt al-9arabīya
l-muttāḡida 23/1; ¹ Nations
 (Organisation) *(hay'at) al-'umam*
al-muttāḡida, ¹ States of America
al-wilāyāt al-muttāḡida
l-'amrīkīya/li 'amayrka 15/3;
 be ~ *ittāḡad* VIII 13/6
 unity *ittihād* 13/10
 university *jāmi9a* 4/1; (adj.) *jāmi9ī*
 8/3
 unless 'idha + negative 11/14
 unofficially *mish/ghayr rasmīyan*
 11/19

unprepared *ghayr muḥaḍḍar* 10/7
 unremarkable *ghayr qābil li*
l-ihtimām 14/10
 until *ḥatta* 2/7, 8/1
 unused *ghayr mustaʿmal* 7/16
 up *fouq* 3/1
 upbringing *tārbiya* 8/3
 upstairs *fouq* 6/3
 use *istaʿmal* X 14/5; *istiʿmāl* 14/8;
 ~d *mustaʿmal* 7/1, 14/7;
 ~r *mustaʿmil*, ~ful *mufīd* 14/7
 usually *ʿādatan* 8/1, 11/19
 utterance *qawl* 'aqwāl 10/11

V

valley *wād widyān* 13/3
 varied, various *mukhtālif* 8/1
 vary *nawwaʿ* II 14/1
 vegetables *khuḍra* 9/1
 very *kthīr* 4/1, 14; ~ much *jiddan*,
jazīlan 1/1
 view *manẓara manāẓir* 13/1; in ~ of
 نظرًا *naḍaran li* 20/1; point of ~
 وجهة نظر *wujhat naḍar* 25/1;
 ~er مشاهد *mushāhid* 24/15
 vigorous *shadīd* 'ashiddā' 9/13;
 more ~ 'ashadd 9/13; ~ly
 shadīdan 11/19; *bi shidda* 11/20;
 more ~ly *shadīdan* 'akthar 11/19
 vigour *shidda* 11/20
 village *qāriya qura*, ~ hall *baladīya*
 13/1
 visa *vīza* 2/3; فيزا *vīza* 18/16
 visit *ziyāra* 2/1; *zār yizūr* I, *ziyāra*
 6/4; be ~ed *inzār* VII 13/4
 vital *ḍarūrī* 5/1
 voice *ṣawt* 'aṣwāt 7/1
 volume (bulk) حجم *ḥajm*
 ḥujūm 20/1
 voting *taṣwīt* 10/3

W

wages اجر *'ajr* 'ujūr 21/2
 wait (for) *intāẓir/intāḍir* 4/1; *intāzar*/
intāḍar VIII 13/6; *intizār/intiḍār*
 13/10; *istanna yistanna* X 14/5
 waiter *gārsoun* 9/1
 walk *masha yimshi* I 8/7, 8;

يمشي *masha yamshī* I 23/7;
 ~ing *māshī māshiya mashīyīn*
 10/5
 want 'arād *yurīd* IV 11/6;
bid- see 11/18; يريد (كان) (*kān*)
yurīd IV 22/5; ~ing *ʿāwiz* 6/19
 war *ḥarb ḥurūb* (f.) 15/3
 warehouse *makhzan makhāzin* 4/3
 wash *ghassal* II, ~ing *ghasīl* 14/3;
 ~able *qābil li l-ghasīl* 14/1, 10
 Washington واشنطن *wāshintūn* 18/6
 watch (timepiece) *sāʿa* 7/1
 water *may miyāh* 9/3
 wax موم *mūm* 16/21
 way: by the ~ *ʿala fikra* 6/1, 2
 weak *ḍaʿīf ḍuʿafā* 12/3
 wear *labas yilbis* I 14/3
 weather *ṭaqs* 13/1
 week 'usḥūʿ *'asābīʿ* 6/1
 weigh *wazan yūzin* I 14/3; ~t *wazn*
 'ouzān 12/3
 welcome 'ahlan 1/1; 'ahlan wa
sahlan 2/1, 2
 weld-er *laḥḥām* 8/23; ~ing *liḥām*
 8/3, 23
 well (adj.) *mabsūt* 1/1; get ~ *salāmtak*
 (etc.) 12/1, 2; (adverb) *kwayyis*
 4/14; (noun) بئر آب *bi'r 'ābār*
 (f.) 22/1; ~ done! *yaʿfīk al-ʿāfiya*
 see 6/1, 2
 west *gharb*, ~ern *gharbī* 13/1
 what *shū* 2/1, 5/15; *mā huwa/hiya*
 8/1; *mā huwa/hiya llī* 8/15; *mā*
 12/9; ماذا *mādhā/mā* 21/6;
 ~ kind of 'ayy *nouʿ min* 5/15
 whatever *mahma kān/huwa* 11/15
 when (conjunction) *lamma* 3/1, 6/18;
 u see 6/1, 10; عندما *ʿindama*/
 lamma 25/4; (interrogative) *mata*
 5/15
 whenever *mata mā* 11/15
 where *wayn* 2/1, 5/15; أين *'ayna* 21/6
 whereas *u* see 6/10, غير أن *ghayr*
 'anna 26/1
 wherever *wayn mā* 11/15
 whether *'idha* 5/16, 11/14; ما إذا *mā*

'idha 21/3
 which 'ayy 5/15, 8/15; ~ one 'ayy
 wāḥid 5/15
 which (relative) illī 8/1, 13, 15; الذي
 allādhī (etc.) 23/1; الأمر الذي
 al- 'amr allādhī 23/2
 while u see 6/1, 10
 white 'abyaḍ bayḍā' bīḍ 12/11; go ~
 ibyaḍḍ IX 14/4
 who mīn 5/15; من man 16/20, 21/6
 who (relative) illī 8/1, 13; mīn
 illī 8/15; الذي allādhī (etc.) 23/1
 whoever mīn mā 11/15
 whole kull 5/1, 8/18; for the ~
 (duration) of ṭūl 2/7
 whose (li) mīn 5/15; من (li) man
 16/20, 21/6
 why laysh 5/15; لماذا li mādhā/li
 mā 21/6
 wid-e wāṣiḥ, ~er 'awṣaḥ 9/13; ~th
 9arḍ 9urūḍ 14/1
 wife zouja 6/1
 will rāyih/rāḥ- 10/14; سوف
 sawfa/sa- 15/12, 21/11; ~ not لن
 lan see 22/4; → good, ill
 wind rīḥ riyāḥ 13/3
 window shubbāk shabābīk 6/3
 wine nbīdh 9/3
 winter shita 10/15; (adj.) shatawī 14/3
 wire سلك اسلاك silk 'aslāk, ~less
 لاسلكي lāsilkī 20/1
 wish 'irāda 11/10; ~ for ragħba fī 8/1
 with bi, ma9 2/7
 withdraw insāḥab VIII 13/4;
 ~al insiḥāb 13/10
 without bidūn 2/7; to do ~ istaghna X
 9an 14/5
 woman mara niswān 6/3

word kalima 5/1
 work shughl 'ashghāl 4/3; ishtāghal
 VIII 13/6; ~man 9āmīl 9ummāl
 10/9; ~ing 9āmīl 10/1; ~shop
 mashghal mashāghil 8/23;
 ma9mal ma9āmīl 8/1, 23; warsha
 11/1
 world 9ālam 9awālim, dunya 13/3;
¹ Bank al-bank ad-duwalī 15/3;
¹ Health Organisation
 منظمة الصحة العالمية
 munaḍḍamat aṣ-ṣiḥḥa l-9ālamīya
 23/1; → third
 writ-e katab yuktub I, kitāba
 3/5, 6, 5/4; ~e to kātab 11/4;
 ~e to each other takātab VI 12/5;
 ~er mu'allif 1/2; ~ing kātib 10/5;
 kitāba 8/3, 10/11; ~ten maktūb 5/1,
 10/5; be ~ten inkātab VII 13/4
 wrong: whatṣ ~ with shū malu (etc.)
 12/1, 2

Y

year sana snīn/sanawāt 4/1; عام
 9ām 'a9wām 24/1
 yellow 'aṣfar ṣafrā' sufr 12/11;
 go ~ iṣfarr IX 14/4
 yes na9am 1/1; 'ayna9am 4/1;
 'aywa 7/1
 yesterday 'ams, the day before ~
 'awwal 'ams 7/3
 yet → not
 yoghurt لبن laban 16/19
 young sghīr as-sinn 12/14; ~ man
 shābb shabāb 13/1

Z

zeal ijtiḥād 13/10
 Zionist ṣahyūnī 15/3

Arabic, Part II

Words normally used with the article (e.g. اللادفية *al-lādhīqīya*) are shown with the article, but listed under their own initial letter. Expressions consisting of a preposition + noun (e.g. بواسطة *bi wāsiṭat*) are listed under the noun. If you do not find your word in this index, look under its transcribed form in the Arabic Part I index.

أ	أساسي 'asāsī essential 24/1
أ see 21/3	سبب → اسباب
آبار → بئر	استطاع <i>istaṭāʿa</i> can, be able 22/5,
أبجد 'abjad alphabet 24/11	26/14
أبدل → ابدال	استقال <i>istaqāla</i> X resign 21/1
أبعد → بعد	استقالة <i>istiqāla</i> resignation 21/1
أبو ظبي 'abū dhabī Abu Dhabi 23/1	استقرّ <i>istaqarra</i> X be stable/
أتمّ 'atamma IV conclude, complete	settled 26/1
23/1	استقرار <i>istiqrār</i> stability,
أثر 9ala 'athar following 26/1	steadiness 26/1
أجر أجور 'ajr 'ujūr wages 21/2	استكشف <i>istikshāf</i> exploration
أجراءات (pl.) 'ijrā'āt procedure	22/1
21/1	استكشف <i>istakshafa</i> X explore 22/1
أجزاء → جزء	استمرّ <i>istamarra</i> X continue (doing)
أجهزة → جهاز	25/2
أجر → أجور	أسّس 'assasa II establish, set up
احتياطي <i>iḥtiyāfī</i> reserve 22/1	25/1; found 26/7
أحدث 'aḥdatha IV bring about 20/1	استهلك <i>istahlaka</i> X consume 22/2
أخطر → خطر	استوكهولم <i>istok-holm</i> Stockholm
أخلص 'akhlaṣa IV be sincere 24/1	18/6
أخيراً 'akhīran recently 25/1	استولى <i>istawla</i> X take possession
إداري 'idārī administrative 24/1	of 25/7
إدعاء 'iddi9ā' allegation 23/1	أسرع 'asra9 faster 22/9
إدعى iddā9a VIII allege 23/1, 9	سلّك → اسلاك
إدوار → دور	اسم اسماء <i>ism 'asmā'</i> name 17/1
إذا 'idha if 26/6	آسيا الصغرى 'āsiya ṣ-ṣughra Asia
أرض أراضٍ (الأراضي) 'arḍ	Minor 22/8
'arāḍīn (al-'arāḍī) land 24/20	أشار إلى 'ashāra IV 'ila point out
أرضى 'arḍa IV satisfy 23/11	26/7
أرى 'ara IV show 25/7	بالإشارة 'ishāra reference, الإشارة

الى <i>bi l-'ishāra 'ila</i> with reference to 24/1	اللتان <i>allatāni</i> see 23/2
اضافي: اضافي <i>shughl 'idāfī</i> overtime (work) 21/2	اللتين <i>allatayni</i> see 23/2
اضراب <i>'idrāb</i> strike (from work) 21/1	اللدان <i>alladhāni</i> see 23/2
اضرب <i>'aḍraba</i> IV strike (from work) 21/1	الذين <i>alladhayni</i> see 23/2
اضواء → ضوء	اللواتي <i>allawātī</i> see 23/2
اطنّ → اطنان	آلة <i>'āla</i> machine 16/24
اعاد <i>'a9āda</i> IV (do) again 25/2	امانة <i>'amāna</i> secretariat 23/1
اعادة التشكيل <i>'i9ādat at-tashkīl</i> reform, reconstitution 26/1	امثال → امثلة
اعادة التنظيم <i>'i9ādat at-tanzīm</i> reorganisation 26/1	الأمر الذي: امر <i>al-'amr allādhī</i> see 23/2; لأمرٍ ما <i>li 'amrin mā</i> for some reason or other 26/5
اعزّاء → عزيز	امريكي <i>'amrikī</i> American 23/1
اعلان <i>'i9lān</i> announcement, notice 24/1	امساء → امساء
عام → اعوام	الأمم المتحدة <i>al-'umam</i> <i>al-muttāhida</i> United Nations 26/1
افعال → فعل	امن <i>'amn</i> safety, security 19/1; مجلس →
افلاس <i>'iflās</i> bankruptcy 26/1	مال → اموال
افلس <i>'aflasa</i> IV be/go bankrupt 26/1	أنّ <i>'an</i> (so) that, to, see 22/4
اقساط → قسط	أنّ <i>'anna</i> that 21/8, 26/14
علي الأقلّ <i>9ala al-'aqall</i> at least 20/1	إنّ <i>'in</i> if see 26/6
ألاّ <i>'allā</i> that ... not 22/4	إنّ <i>'inna</i> see 21/8, 26/14
إلاّ <i>'illa</i> except 19/15	إنّ شاء الله <i>'in shā' 'allāh</i> see 26/6
الألف\الألفي <i>al-'alf(ī)</i> thousandth 24/10	إنّ وجد (ت) <i>'in wujud(at)</i> if any 26/10
الإمارات (العربية) المتحدة <i>al-'imārāt (al-9arabīya)</i> <i>al-muttāhida</i> United Arab Emirates 23/1	انت <i>'anta</i> (m.) <i>'anti</i> (f.) you 20/3
الثي <i>allātī</i> see 23/2	انتقد على <i>intāqada</i> VIII <i>9ala</i> criticise 26/1
الذي <i>allādhī</i> see 23/1, 2, 26/14	انتقاد على <i>intiqād 9ala</i> criticism of 26/1
الذين <i>alladhīna</i> see 23/2	انتم <i>'antum</i> you (pl.) 20/3
	انتما <i>'antuma</i> both of you 26/13
	انتنّ <i>'antunna</i> you (f. pl.) 26/13
	انتهاء <i>intihā'</i> expiry 19/2
	انتهج <i>intāhaja</i> VIII pursue (e.g. a policy) 26/1

- نادٍ → اندية
 انظر *unḡur* see 20/10
 انظمة → نظام
 انقضى *inqāḏa* VII be finished 23/9
 اوبيك *'oubek* OPEC 23/1
 اولئك *'ūlā'ika* see 22/3
 اي *'ay* i.e. 21/6
 ايّ *'ayy* which, any 21/6
 يد → ايادٍ (الأيادي)
 إياه *'iyyā-* see 21/14
 ايّتها *'ayyatuha* see 24/15
 ايّد *'ayyada* II support 21/1
 اين *'ayna* where 21/6, 26/14
 ايّة → ايّ
 ايّها *'ayyuha* see 24/15
- ب
- باخرة باخر *bākhira bawākhir*
 ship 20/2
 بتروكيميائيات *bitrukīmīyā 'īyāt*
 petrochemicals 22/1
 بترول *bitroul* oil, petroleum 20/1
 بحث بحوث على *baḥṡ buḥūṡ*
9ala examination of 26/1
 بحث يبحث في على *baḥṡa*
yabḥathu I fi/9ala examine 25/1
 بحث بحوث عن *baḥṡ buḥūṡ 9an*
 search for 26/1
 بحري *baḥrī* sea (adj.) 20/2
 بحث → بحوث
 بدأ يبدأ *bada'a yabda'u* I begin
 (doing) 25/2
 بدل ابدل *badal 'abdāl* allowance
 21/2
 بدّل *baddala* II exchange 23/1
 برميل براميل *barmīl barāmīl* barrel
 22/2
- بروكسل *bruksil* Brussels 18/6
 برّي *barrī* land (adj.) 20/2
 بعد ابعاد *ba9d 'ab9ād* distance
 22/1
 بعد انّ *ba9d 'an* after 25/4, 26/14
 بقي يبقى *bāqiya yabqa* I remain
 23/7
 بنّ *bunn* coffee 16/19
 بترين *binzīn* petrol, gasoline 22/1
 باخرة → بواخر
 بوليصة بواليص *būlīṡa bawālīṡ*
 (insurance) policy 19/1;
 بوليصة شحن *būlīṡat shaḥn* air
 waybill, bill of lading 20/2
 بئر آبار (f., noun) *bi'r 'ābār* well
 22/1
- ت
- تأسيس *ta'sīs* establishment,
 setting-up 25/1
 تالٍ (التالي) *tālīn (at-tālī)* (the)
 following 24/1
 تآمّ *tāmm* complete 16/24
 تأميم *ta'mīm* nationalisation 16/20
 تأمين *ta'mīn* insurance 19/1
 تانك *tānika* see 22/3
 تأييداً ل *ta'yīd* support, تأييد
ta'yīdan li in support of 21/1
 تبديل *tabdīl* exchange 23/1
 تجاه *tujāha* opposite, facing,
 towards 25/1
 تحقيق *taḥqīq* realisation 26/1
 تحويل *taḥwīl* transfer 25/1
 تحية *taḥīya* greeting 24/1;
 تحية طيبة وبعد *taḥīya ṡayyiba*
wa ba9du Dear ... see 24/1, 2
 تخزين *takhzīn* storage 19/1

تخفيف حدة التوتر *takhfīf ḥiddat*
at-tawattur reduction of tension
 25/1
 ترقية *tārqiya* promotion 21/1
 تركّز *tarakkaza* V be concentrated
 26/1
 تسجيل *taṣjīl* registration 21/1
 التسعينات \ التسعينيات *at-tis9īnāt/*
at-tis9īnīyāt the 90s 24/14
 تسوية *táswiya* settlement (of a
 dispute) 21/1, 25/9
 تشحيم *tashhīm* lubrication 22/1
 تشكيل *tashkīl* formation,
 constitution 26/1
 تطبيق *taṭbīq* application 21/1
 تطوير *taṭwīr* development 23/1
 تعويض *ta9wīd* compensation 19/1
 تفتيش *tafīsh* inspection 20/1
 تقبل *taqabbala* V accept 24/2
 تقدّم *taqaddama* V bi advance
 (e.g. a proposal) 25/6
 تقوية *tāqwiya* reinforcement 19/1
 تكرير *takrīr* refining 22/1
 تكلم *takallama* V speak 23/7, 26/14
 تكنولوجيا *tiknuluḡiyya* technology
 25/1
 تلّ تلال *tall tilāl* hill 16/19
 تلاقى *talāqa* VI encounter 23/12
 تلاقٍ (التلاقي) *talāqin (at-talāqī)*
 encounter 23/12
 تلّ → تلال
 تلقّى *talaqqa* V acquire, receive
 23/9, 12
 تلقّ (التلقّي) *talaqqin (at-talaqqī)*
 acquisition 23/12
 تلك *tilka* see 22/3

تنبؤ *tanabbu'* forecast 17/6
 توازن *tawāzana* VI be balanced,
 توازن *tawāzun* equilibrium,
 balance 26/1
 توتر *tawattara* V be tense,
tawattur tension 25/1
 لا توجد *tūjad* there is/are; لا توجد *lā*
tūjad there is no/none, nil (in
 statistics) see 26/10
 توجه الى *tawajjaha* V 'ila make
 for, head for 23/1
 توقيع *tawqī9* signature 24/1
 تولى *tawalla* V be appointed 25/7
 تولّى *tawallin (at-tawallī)*
 assumption of office 25/9
 تينك *taynika* see 22/3
 ث
 الثالث عشر *ath-thālith 9ashar*
 thirteenth 24/10
 ثانٍ (الثاني) *thānin (ath-thānī)*
 second 24/10
 الثاني عشر *ath-thānī 9ashar*
 twelfth 24/10
 ثنائي *thunā'ī* double 17/5
 ج
 جاء يجيء *jā'a yajī'u* I come,
 جاء يجيء ب *jā'a yajī'u* I
bi bring 25/6, 26/14
 جدول جداول *jadwal jadāwil*
 table (of data) 19/1
 جدول رواتب *jadwal rawātib* pay
 scale 21/2
 جرام *grām* gram 18/6
 جرى يجري جري *jara yajrī* I, jary
 flow 23/1, 7
 جزأ *jazza'a* II separate 22/1

- اجزاء *juz* 'ajzā' part 17/8
 جملة *jumla jumal* sentence 17/8
 جهاز *jihāz 'ajhiza* installation, plant, rig 22/1;
 جهاز حفر *jihāz ḥafr* drilling rig 22/2
 جوي *jawwī* air (adj.) 20/2
 ح
 الحادي عشر *al-ḥādī 9ashar* eleventh 24/10
 الحادي والعشرين *al-ḥādī wa l-9ishrīn* twenty-first 24/10
 حاليًا *ḥālīyan* at present 24/1
 حاول *ḥāwala* III try 22/5
 حتى *ḥatta* so that 22/4; until 25/4
 حجّ *ḥajj* pilgrimage 17/8
 حجم حجوم *ḥajm ḥujūm* volume, bulk 20/1
 حدّ يحدّ *ḥadda yaḥuddu* I limit 24/1
 حديث → حدث
 حدة *ḥidda* sharpness 25/1;
 تخفيف →
 حديث حدث *ḥadīth ḥidāth* modern 24/1
 حدود *ḥudūd* (pl.) frontier 20/1
 حريق حرائق *ḥarīqa ḥarā'iq* fire 19/1
 حسب *ḥasaba* according to 19/1
 حصول على *ḥuṣul 9ala* access to 20/1
 حطّي *ḥuṭī* see 24/11
 حفّار *ḥaffār* driller 22/2
 حفر يحفر حفر *ḥafara yaḥfiru* I, ḥafr drill 22/1
 حفظ السلام *ḥifḏ as-salām* peace-keeping 26/1
 حقّ حقوق *ḥaqq ḥuqūq* right (noun) 18/4
 حقق *ḥaqqāqa* II realise 26/1
 حقّ → حقوق
 حكى يحكي *ḥaka yaḥkī* I narrate 23/7
 حلّ يحلّ محلّ *ḥalla yaḥullu* I *maḥall* ... take the place of ... 25/1
 حمل يحمل حمل *ḥamila yaḥmilu* I, ḥaml carry, bear 24/1
 حوّل *ḥawwala* II transfer 25/1
 حيّ يحيي *ḥayya yaḥya* I live 25/5
 حيث أنّ *ḥaythu 'anna* given that 26/1
 خ
 زيت، نفط → خام
 خبير → خبراء
 خبرة *khibra* expertise 25/1
 خبراء *khabīr khubarā'* expert 25/1
 خطّ جويّ *khaṭṭ jawwī* airline 20/2
 خطّط *khaṭṭaṭa* II plan 24/1
 خطوة *khuṭwa* step 25/1
 خلاف *khilāf* dispute 21/1
 د
 دام يدوم *dāma yadūmu* I persist, still to be 21/4; still to (do) 25/2
 دائرة دوائر *dā'ira dawā'ir* directorate 24/1
 دائم *dā'im* permanent 26/1
 دراسي *dirāsī* academic 24/1
 درّب *darraba* II train 24/1
 درجة *daraja* grade 21/2

دعا يدعو *da9a yad9ū* I summon

23/7

دائرة → دوائر

دور ادوار *dawr 'adwār rôle* 26/1

ديزل *dīzil diesel* 22/1

دين ديون *dayn duyūn debt* 26/1

ذ

ذا *dhā* see 24/19

ذات *dhāt* see 24/19

ذانك *dhānika* see 22/3

ذات ذوات *dhāt dhawāt essence, identity, same, -self* 24/19

ذلك *dhālika* see 22/3, 26/14

ذهب يذهب *dhahaba yadhhabu* I go 20/11, 26/14

ذو *dhū* see 24/19

ذوا *dhawā* see 24/19

ذوات *dhawāt* see 24/19;

→ ذات

ذواتا *dhawātā* see 24/19

ذواي *dhawātay* see 24/19

ذوو *dhawū* see 24/19

ذوي *dhaway/dhawī* see 24/19

ذي *dhī* see 24/19

ذينك *dhaynika* see 22/3

ر

رابطه روابط *rābiṭa rawābiṭ link* 20/1

راتب رواتب *rātīb rawātīb salary* 21/2

راجع *rāja9a* III review, revise 26/1

رأى يرى *ra'a yara* I see 25/6

رجا يرجو *raja yarjū* I request 23/7

رسم رسوم *rasm rusūm drawing* 19/1

رضي يرضى *rāḍiya yarḍa* I bi

approve of, be satisfied with 23/7

رفض يرفض *rafaḍa yarfiḍu*

I, *rafḍ* reject 24/1

رقي *raqqa* II promote 21/1

رمى يرمي *rama yarmī* I throw 23/7

رابطه → روابط

راتب → رواتب

رئاسة\رياسة *ri'āsa/riyāsa*

chairmanship, presidency 17/5

ز

ما زال لا يزال *mā zāla lā*

yazālu I still to be 21/4; continue to (do) 25/2

زفت *zift* bitumen, tar 22/1

زلزالي *zilzālī* seismic 22/2

زيت خام *zayt zuṣūt oil*, زيت زيوت *zayt khām crude oil* 22/1

س

س *sa* shall, will 21/11, 26/14

ساحل سواحل *sāḥil sawāḥil* shore, coast 22/1

سلم *sālim* sound (adj.) 21/1

ساوى *sāwa* III be/make equal 25/7

سبب اسباب *sabab 'asbāb cause* 21/1

سجل *sajjala* II register 21/1

بسرعة اكثر *bi sur9a 'akthar faster* 22/9

سرقة *sariqa* theft 19/2

سرور *surūr* pleasure 17/2

سريعاً *sarī9an* fast 22/9

سعادة *sa9āda* see 23/1

سعى يسعى الى *sa9a yas9a* I 'ila strive for 23/7

سفينة سفن *saḥīna sufun ship* 20/1

سكة سكة حديدية *sikka sikak*

- ḥadīdīya* railway 20/1
 حفظ → سلام
 سلك اسلاك *silk 'aslāk* wire 20/1
 سمسار سمسائر *simsār samāsīr*
 broker 19/2
 بسهولة (اكثر) *bi suhūla ('akthar)*
 (more) easily 22/9
 ساحل → سواحل
 سوف *sawfa* shall, will 21/11, 26/14
 سوق *sawwaqa* II market 22/2
 سيطر على *sayṭara* IQ 9ala
 dominate 26/1
 ش
 شارك في *shāraka* III *fī* participate in
 25/1
 شبكة شباك *shabaka shibāk*
 network 20/2
 شحّم *shahḥama* II lubricate 22/1
 شحن *shaḥn* load 20/1; → بوليصة
 شقيق شقائق *shaqīq shaqā'iq*
 sister-(state etc.) 23/1
 لا → شكّ
 شكل *shakkala* II form, constitute
 24/1
 شكوة شكوات *shakwa shakawāt*
 complaint 21/1
 شؤون الموظفين *shu'ūn*
al-muwaḏḏafīn personnel
 (matters) 21/1
 شيء اشياء *shay' 'ashyā'* thing 17/6
 ص
 صار يصير *sāra yaṣīru* I become
 21/4; begin (doing) 25/2
 صحيفة → صحف
 منظمّة → صحّة
 صحيفة صحف *ṣaḥīfa ṣuḥuf*
 newspaper 18/4
 صرّح ب *ṣarraḥa* II *bi* declare 26/1
 صغار *ṣaghīr ṣighār* (also)
 junior 21/1
 صهريج صهاريج *ṣahrīj ṣahārīj*
 tank (container) 19/1
 بصورة اسرع *bi ṣūra 'asra*9
 faster 22/9
 ض
 ضابط ضباط *ḏābiṭ ḏubbāṭ/zābiṭ*
ḏubbāṭ officer 17/11
 بالضبط *bi ḏ-ḏabṭ* precisely 22/1;
 بضبط اكثر *bi ḏabṭ 'akthar*
 more precisely 22/9
 ضحّ ضحّ يضحّ *ḏakhkha yaḏukhkhu* I
 pump 22/1
 ضخّم ضخام *ḏakhm ḏikhām* huge
 20/1
 ضغط *ḏaghṭ* pressure 22/1
 ضمّ يضمّ *ḏamma yaḏummu* I
 comprise, include 26/1
 ضمان *ḏamān* guarantee,
 الضمان الاجتماعي *aḏ-ḏamān*
al-ijtimā'ī social security 19/2
 ضمن يضمن ضمان *ḏamina*
yaḏmanu I, *ḏamān* guarantee
 25/1
 ضوء ضوء *ḏaw' 'aḏwā'* light 17/6
 ط
 طاقة *tāqa* energy 23/1
 طالما *tālamā* as long as 25/4
 طائرة *tā'ira* aeroplane 17/10
 طبّق *ṭabbaqa* II apply 21/1
 طبيعي *ṭabī'ī* natural 19/2
 طرابلس *ṭrāblus* Tripoli 23/1
 طرف ثالث *ṭaraf thālīth* third party

19/2
 طلب *ṭalab* claim 19/2
 طلمبة *ṭulumba* pump 22/1
 طنّ اطنان *ṭunn 'aṭnan* ton(ne) 20/2
 طور *ṭawwara* II develop 23/1
 طيّب *ṭayyib* good 16/14
 طين *ṭīn* mud 22/2
 ظ
 ظرف ظروف *ḍarf ḍurūf* condition, circumstance 21/1
 ظلّ يظلّ *ḍalla yaḍallu* I remain 21/4; remain (doing) 25/2
 ع
 عاد عود *āda yaʿūdu* I (do) again 25/2; ما عاد لا يعود *mā āda lā yaʿūdu* I be no longer 21/4
 منظّمة → عالمي
 عام اعوام *ām 'a9wām* year 24/1
 عبر *abra* through, beyond 19/15
 عبّر عن *abbara* II *an* express 26/7
 عدل *adl* justice 26/1
 عزل *azl* dismissal 21/2
 يعزل *azala yaʿzilu* I dismiss 21/2
 عزيز اعزّاء *azīz 'a9izzā* 'Dear ... 24/4
 العشرين *al-9ishrīn* twentieth 24/10
 عضوية *uḍwīya* membership 26/1
 عفا يعفو ل *aḡa yaʿfū* I li excuse 23/7
 عقد عقود *aqd 9uqūd* contract 19/2
 عندما *indama* when 25/4
 غ
 غاز *ghāz* gas 22/1
 غداً *ghadan* tomorrow 18/11

غرام *grām* gram 18/6
 غيّر *ghayr* see 26/14
 غيّر غير أنّ *ghayr 'anna* whereas 26/1
 ف
 ف *fa* see 26/4, 6
 فاعلية *fāʿilīya* effectiveness, efficiency 26/1
 فاق يفوق *fāqa yaʿfūqu* I excel 24/1
 فإنّ *fa 'inna* see 26/6
 فشل *fashal* failure 19/1
 فعل افعال *fiʿl 'aʿ9āl* action 18/4
 فعلي *fiʿlī* real, actual 21/1; factual 26/1
 فولاذ *fūlādh* steel 25/1
 فيزا *vīza* visa 18/6
 ق
 قاد يقود *qāda yaqūdu* I lead, head 23/1
 قادماً من *qādiman min* arriving from 23/1
 قاضٍ (القاضي) قضاة *qāḍīn (al-qāḍī) quḍā* judge 24/20
 قانون قوانين *qānūn qawānīn* law 21/1
 قبل انّ *qabla 'an* before 25/4, 26/14
 قبول *qabūl* acceptance 24/1
 قد *qad* (+ present) perhaps 22/10
 قراءة *qirā'a* reading 16/1, 20/9
 قرن قرون *qarn qurūn* century 26/1
 قسط اقساط *qisṭ 'aqsāt* premium, instalment 19/1
 قصد *qaṣd* purpose 24/1
 قضاة → قاضٍ
 قطار قطر *qīṭār qutur* train 20/2
 قطر *qaṭṭara* II distil 22/2
 قطع يقطع النظر عن *qaṭaʿa*

yaqṭa9u I *an-naḡar 9an* over-look, neglect, lose sight of 24/1
 قف *qif* stop 20/10
 قلّ يقلّ عن *qalla yaqillu* I *9an* be less than 25/1
 قليلاً *qalīlan* little (adverb) 22/9
 قمر صناعي *qamar šinā9ī* satellite 20/1
 قانون → قوانين
 قوة *qūwa* power, strength 22/2
 ك
 كاد يكاد *kāda yakādu* I almost to (do) 25/2
 كارثة كوارث *kāriṭha kawāriṭh* disaster 19/2
 كان يكون *kāna yakūnu* I be 21/4, 22/5
 كأن *ka 'anna* as if, as though 21/8
 كبير كبار *kabīr kibār* (also) senior, leading 21/1
 كثيراً *kathīran* greatly 22/9
 كذا وكذا *kadha u kadha* such-and-such, كذا وكذا *wa/u*
kadha u kadha and so on 24/1
 كرّر *karrara* II refine 22/1
 كسر كسور *kasr kusūr* fraction 22/1
 كفى يكفي *kafa yakfī* I, *kifāya* suffice 25/1
 كلا *kila* both 18/5
 كارثة → كوارث
 كي *kay* so that 22/4
 كيروسين *kirusīn* kerosene, paraffin 22/1
 كيلومتر *kīlūmitr* kilometre 22/1

ل
 لي *li* so that 22/4; let me (etc.) 26/4;
 فلّول *fa l/wa l* so/then let me (etc.) 26/4
 ل *la* see 26/6
 لا *lā* do/does not 21/5, see 26/14;
 + acc. there is no/not see 25/3, 26/14; (+ jussive) do not 26/4
 اللاذقية *al-lādhīqīya* Latakia 20/1
 لاسلكي *lāsilkī* wireless, radio (adj.) 20/1
 لا شكّ في *lā shakka fī* there is no doubt 25/1
 لأنّ *li 'an* so that 22/4
 لأنّ *li 'anna* because 21/8
 لبن *laban* milk, yoghurt 16/19
 لدى *lada* in the presence of 19/15
 لعب يلعب لعب *la9iba yal9abu* I, *lu9b* play 26/1
 لقد *laqad* see 22/10
 لقي يلقى *lāqiya yalqa* I meet 23/7
 لكنّ → لكنّ (و)
 لكي *li kay* so that 22/4
 لم *lam* did not, see 26/2, 6, 14
 لمد ... بعد *lam ... ba9d* (+ jussive) not yet 26/4
 لما *lamma* (+ past) when 25/4; (+ jussive) not yet 26/4
 لماذا *li mādha* why 21/6, 26/14
 لمن *li man* whose 16/20, 21/6
 لن *lan* (+ subjunctive) will not 22/4, 26/14
 لندن *landan* London 18/6
 لو *law* if 26/6
 لوحة *lawḥa* board 24/1
 ليس *laysa* not to be, see 21/5, 26/14

لئلا *li'allā* so that ... not see 22/4

م

ما *mā* did not 21/5; what 21/6, 14

إذا *mā 'idha* whether 21/13

ماذا *mādhā* what 21/6, 26/14

أموال *māl 'amwāl* property

16/20

ماتت *mā'it* dying 17/5

مائة *māya* hundred 24/9

مبلغ *mablagh mabāligh*

amount 18/1

متأكد من *muta'akkid min*

convinced/sure of 21/1

متن *9ala matn* on board 20/2

متوجهًا إلى *mutawajjihān 'ila*

(heading) for 23/1

أمثلة *mithāl 'amthila* example

26/1

مجانين → مجانين

مجلس إدارة *majlis 'idāra* board of

directors 21/1

مجلس الأمن *majlis al-'amn*

Security Council 26/1

مجموع *majmū9* total 24/1

مجنون مجانين *majnūn majānīn* mad

17/8

محاسبات *muḥāsabāt* accounts 24/1

محامٍ (المحامي) *muḥāmin (al-muḥāmī)*

lawyer 24/20

محدود *maḥdūd* limited 24/1

محَلّ → محلّ

مخاطرة *mukhāṭara* risk 19/2

مخلص *mukhlis* sincere 24/1, 2

مدرب *mudarrib* trainer, instructor

24/1

مدير الهندسة *mudīr al-handasa*

Chief Engineer 19/1

مذكور *madhkūr* (afore-)mentioned

24/1

مراجعة *murāja9a* review, revision

26/1

مراسلة *murāsala* correspondence

24/1

مربوط *marbūt* linked 20/2

مرتفع *murtafī9* high 21/1

مرجوّ *marjūw* requested 23/10

مساء مساء *masā' 'amsā'*

afternoon, evening 17/6

مساهمة *musāhama* participation 19/2

مساواة *musāwā* equality 25/9

مستشفى (المستشفى) *mustashfan*

(al-mustashfa) hospital 24/20

مستمع *mustāmi9* listener 24/15

مستودع *mustawda9* container 20/1

مسرور *masrūr* pleased 17/2

مشاركة *mushāraka* participation

25/1

مشاهد *mushāhid* viewer 24/15

مشى يمشي *masha yamshī* I walk

23/7

منظمة → مصدر

مضمّم *muṣammim* determined 17/3

مضمون *maḍmūn* guaranteed 25/1

معقول *ma9qūl* reasonable 25/1

مفتّش *mufattish* inspector 18/4

مقرّ → مقارّ

مقهى → مقاهٍ (المقاهي)

مقبول *maqbul* acceptable 19/1

مقرّ مقارّ *maqarr maqārr*

headquarters 23/1

المقرّرة عقدها *al-muqarrara*

9aqduha see 23/1, 26/12

- مَقَهَى (المقهى) مقاهٍ (المقاهي)
maqhan (al-maqha) maqāhin
 (al-maqāhī) coffee-house 24/20
 مكافحة *mukāfaḥa* fight against
 26/1
 مكعب *mukaʿab* cubic 20/2
 ملحق *mulḥaq* annex(ed) 19/1
 ممّن *mimman* from whom 16/20
 من *man* who 16/20, 21/6, 26/14
 منتج *mantūj* product 22/1
 منسيّ *mansīy* forgotten 23/10
 منشور *manshūr* memorandum,
 circular 24/1
 منظمة الدول المصدّرة للنفط
 (أوبك) *munaḍḍamat ad-duwal*
al-muṣaddira li n-naft ('oubek)
 Organisation of Petroleum Ex-
 porting Countries (OPEC) 23/1
 منظمة الصحة العالمية
munaḍḍamat aṣ-ṣiḥḥa l-9ālamīya World
 Health Organisation (WHO) 23/1
 منفيّ *manfīy* denied, repudiated
 23/10
 مهنة مهن *mihna mihan* profession
 21/2
 مورد → موارد
muwāṣalāt
 communications 20/1
 موالة *muwālā* constancy 25/9
 ميناء → موانٍ (المواني)
mu'arrakh dated 19/1
 مورد موارد *mawrid mawārid*
 resource 23/1
 مؤسس *mu'assas* founded,
mu'assis founder 17/5
 موفق *muwaffaq* successful 24/1
- موقت\مؤقت *muwaqqat/mu'aqqat*
 provisional, temporary 19/1
 موم *mūm* wax 16/21
 مؤمن *mu'ammin* insurer 19/1
 مؤمن عليه *mu'amman 9alayhi*
 insured 19/1
 مؤهل *mu'ahhal* qualified 21/2
 مؤهلات *mu'ahhilāt* qualifications
 21/2
 ميناء موانٍ (المواني)
mīnā' mawānin
 (al-mawānī) port 24/20
 مئة *mīya* hundred 24/9
 المئة\المئوي *al-mīya(wī)* hundredth,
 المئة والواحد *al-mīya wa l-wāḥid*
 101st 24/10
 ن
 نادٍ (النادي) اندية *nādīn (an-nādī)*
 'āndīya club, circle 26/1
 ناقلة *nāqila* freighter, tanker,
 ناقلة ضخمة *nāqila ḍakhma*
 supertanker 20/1
 نتيجة نتائج *natīja natā'ij* result
 17/8
 نحن *naḥnu* we 20/3
 نسي ينسى *násiya yansa* I forget
 23/7
 نظام انظمة *nīḍām 'anḍima* order,
 system 26/1
 وجهة → نظر
 نظر ينظر *naḍara yanḍuru* I see,
 نظر ينظر الى *naḍara yanḍuru l-*
'ila look at 20/11, 26/14
 نظراً ل *naḍaran li* in view of 20/1
 نفط *naft* oil, نفط خام *naft khām*
 crude oil 22/1
 نفي *naḥy* denial, repudiation 23/1

نفى ينفى نفي *nafa yanfī* I, *nafy*

deny, repudiate 23/1, 7

نقل *naql* transport 20/1

نوبة نوب *nawba nuwab* shift, turn

19/1

نوعاً ما *nawʿan mā* somewhat

26/1, 5

نوى ينوي نية *nawa yanwī* I, *nīya*

intend 25/5

نيابةً عن *niyābatan ʿan* deputising

for 23/1

نية *nīya* intention 25/9

هـ

هامّ *hāmm* important 16/22

هامبورج *hamburg* Hamburg 18/6

هاتان\هاتين *hātāni/hātayni* see

22/3

هذان *hādhāni* see 22/3

هذه *hādhihi* see 22/3

هذين *hādhayni* see 22/3

هل *hal* see 21/13

هما *huma* both of them 20/3

هنّ *hunna* they (f.) 26/13

مدير → هندسة

هوّز *hawwaz* see 24/11

هؤلاء *hāʿulāʾi* see 22/3

و

واجب *wājib* necessary 25/1

واجه *wājaha* III face 26/1

بواسطة *bi wāsiṭat* by means of 20/1

واشنطن *wāshinṭun* Washington

18/6

والى *wāla* III be constant 25/7

إنّ → وجد (ت)

واجه *wājaha* II send 20/2

وجهة نظر *wujhat naḍar* point of

view 25/1

وزاري *wizārī* ministerial 23/1

وظيفة وظائف *waḍīfa waḍāʾif* job

21/2

وفد وفود *wafḍ wufūd* delegation,

mission 23/1

وفر يفر *wafara yafīru* I abound

24/2

وفد → وفود

وقاية *wiqāya* protection 19/2

وقع *waqqaʿa* II sign 24/1

ولكن (و) *(wa)lākinna* but 21/8

ولّى *walla* II appoint 25/7

ولي يلي *wāliya yalī* I be next 25/5

ي

يجب *yajīb* must see 22/5, 26/14

يجوز *yajūz* may see 22/5

يد ايادٍ (الأيادي) *yad ʿayādīn*

(al-ʿayādī) hand 24/20

يلي: يلي (في) *(fī) mā yalī* (in) what

follows, كما يلي *kama yalī* as

follows 25/5

يمكن *yumkin* may see 22/5

يوجد *yūjad* there is/are 26/10, 14;

لا يوجد *lā yūjad* there is

no/none, nil (in statistics) see

26/10

يوماً ما *yawman mā* some day,

some time (in the future) 26/5

Grammar index

References indicate Lesson no./paragraph no. The sign → refers you to another entry in the index.

Adjective 1/9, 11; 2/8, 9; 3/4, 17
4/11, 12, 14; 6/11–13, 17, 20, 21
7/8, 13, 16; 8/13, 20; 10/4, 5, 7, 9
11/19, 26; 14/10; 18/2, 11; 19/4–12
21/4–6; 22/9; 24/16, 17, 20
agreement 1/10; 2/6; 7/8, 13; 8/20
9/13, 14; 10/8, 14; 11/24; 12/13
19/10; 24/9, 10, 19; 26/12
colours/physical afflictions 12/11
comparison 9/13–15; 12/11; 13/12
18/2; 22/8
compound 12/14, 15; 13/16; 24/19
demonstrative 4/4, 5, 12; 6/19; 22/3
diptote 24/17
interrogative 5/15; 21/6
nisba 1/9, 10; 3/13; 9/13; 11/11
12/8, 11; 13/10, 11
possessive 2/8
sound 1/10; 3/13
→ **Definite, indefinite**
Number, plural
Verb, participle
Adverb 1/11; 4/14; 7/8, 16; 11/19–23
13/2; 18/11; 19/7; 21/5; 22/8; 26/5
comparison 9/13–15; 11/19–22
22/9
interrogative 5/15; 21/6, 13
'alif 16/3, 4, 6, 9–11, 13, 14, 17, 18, 21
17/4, 9; 18/2, 3, 5–7, 10–13, 16; 19/7
20/5, 10, 12; 21/3; 22/3, 4
23/5, 8, 9, 13, 14; 24/17; 25/5
'alif maqṣūra 18/2, 3, 7, 11, 12; 22/8
23/5, 8, 9, 15; 25/5; 26/3
Animate, inanimate 1/5, 10; 2/8, 9
3/6, 13, 17; 4/12; 6/11; 10/8; 12/11
15/5; 16/16, 24; 19/8, 10; 21/10
Antecedent 8/13, 14; 9/16; 23/2
Article 1/7; 2/5, 6, 10; 3/4; 4/4; 6/19
7/10; 8/17; 16/12, 17–19; 18/14
19/9, 12; 24/12, 15, 19
Calendar 7/14; 10/15; 24/13

Case 19/5–9, 14, 15; 20/9; 21/4–6, 8
22/3, 8; 23/2, 7; 24/7, 8, 16–20; 25/3
26/5, 14
Circumstance 12/13; 19/7; 25/2
→ **Clause**, circumstance
Clause 6/18; 9/13; 21/8; 22/5; 23/2
26/12
circumstance 6/10
concession 11/15, 16
condition 11/14, 16; 26/6, 10
main 26/6
relative 8/13, 14; 9/16; 23/2; 26/12
purpose 11/18; 22/4
time 11/18; 25/4
Complement 2/6, 8; 19/5; 21/4, 5, 8
23/7; 25/2
Conjunction 4/7, 8; 5/15; 6/18; 8/22
9/13; 10/13; 15/9; 21/8, 9, 12
22/4, 6; 25/2, 4; 26/4, 6
Consonant 2/5, 8, 10; 3/18; 3/6; 4/12
5/17; 6/4; 7/4, 18; 8/7; 9/10, 13
11/6; 12/16; 13/4; 16/10, 19, 21
17/6; 18/8, 14
Construct 3/4; 4/5; 5/14, 15; 7/2
8/16–18, 20; 9/7; 10/13; 11/9, 27
12/15, 16; 13/16; 15/6; 16/24; 18/16
19/5, 9; 21/4; 24/9, 18–20
Definite, indefinite 2/5, 6, 8; 3/4
4/9, 11, 12; 5/12; 7/16
8/13, 16–18, 20; 9/13, 14, 16
12/15, 16; 11/20, 26; 12/15; 14/10
15/6; 19/6–9; 21/4, 6; 22/6, 8, 9
23/10, 11; 24/17, 19, 20
26/5, 11, 12; → **Construct; Noun**
Dictionary 20/4, 12; 23/14
Gender 1/4, 5, 10; 2/2, 4–6; 3/13, 17
4/4, 11, 12; 5/2, 11, 15; 6/7, 19
9/4, 13, 14; 10/8, 9; 12/11; 19/13
22/3, 4; 23/2, 5, 7, 10, 11
24/9, 10, 15, 17, 19; 26/13
feminine 6/11; 7/12, 13; 9/6, 14

10/4–6, 8; 16/16, 24; 18/2; 19/8 21/6; 22/8; 25/9 masculine 4/14; 8/7, 16, 20; 9/5, 16 10/8; 11/19, 15/5; 18/10, 11 19/9; 20/10; 21/3, 4; 22/5 23/12; 24/7; 26/7, 9	5/2, 11, 12; 6/7, 9, 19; 7/10, 11, 16 9/4, 13; 10/8; 12/11; 15/5; 16/16 19/8, 13; 20/3; 21/4, 10; 22/3, 4 23/2, 4, 5, 10, 11; 24/17, 19; 26/13 dual 3/13, 4/11, 12; 6/11; 7/12 16/16, 24; 18/10; 19/9, 10, 13 20/5–7; 21/4; 23/7; 24/7, 9 25/5, 6; 26/3, 13
Greeting 1/3, 4, 10; 2/2; 6/2; 9/2; 12/2 14/2	plural 3/6, 13, 14, 17; 4/12; 6/11, 13 7/13, 16; 8/19; 9/2, 5–7 10/4–6, 9, 12; 11/9, 10; 12/11 13/2, 9–11; 14/8; 15/9 16/16, 24; 18/2, 10; 19/6–9 20/10; 21/3, 4 24/2, 7, 9, 17, 20; 26/13
hamza 5/9, 17; 6/11; 7/10; 8/7, 8 11/18; 14/5; 16/3, 4, 9, 14, 15, 17 17/4–7; 18/7, 9, 13, 16 20/5, 9, 10–12; 21/13, 14; 23/3 24/11, 17; 25/6–8 → Verb , <i>hamza</i> , hamzated	singular 3/13; 4/12, 14; 5/15 8/7, 16, 18, 20; 9/16; 10/8 11/19; 12/13; 15/9; 16/16; 19/7 20/10; 21/4, 6; 22/5; 23/12 24/8, 18, 20; 26/7, 9 → Animate , inanimate
Indirect speech command and request 7/15; 22/4 question 5/16; 11/14; 12/9; 21/13 statement 4/7; 21/12	Numbers (1, 2, 3 ...) 19/4; 24/5–12 ' <i>abjad</i> 24/11 cardinal 4/11; 5/12; 7/10, 11, 14 8/21; 10/15, 24/6–11 fractions/percentages 7/11; 24/12 numerals 24/5 ordinal 8/20, 21; 9/14; 24/10, 12 → Number , dual
Inanimate → Animate Indefinite → Definite lām 16/11–13, 19; 18/5, 7; 23/2	nūn 16/9; 17/1; 18/4, 5, 7; 19/9; 21/4 24/9
Negative 2/12; 3/9; 4/13; 5/7, 9, 11 6/5, 7, 10, 19, 21; 7/4, 5, 8, 16 8/10, 11, 15; 9/16, 17; 10/7, 14 11/7, 18, 19, 21, 25; 12/6, 15, 17 14/10; 15/10, 13; 19/15; 21/5, 11, 13 22/4; 25/3; 26/2, 4, 6	Object 8/13; 9/16; 10/4; 12/10; 21/3 22/5 absolute 12/10; 19/7 direct 3/16; 4/6; 6/19; 8/13 9/10; 10/8, 13; 11/4, 6, 17, 18 12/4, 12; 13/4, 13; 14/4, 5 15/5, 6, 14; 19/5; 21/14 22/5; 26/9 prepositional 3/16; 8/13; 10/8 13/13; 26/9 → Rule , Object pronoun Suffix , pronoun
Nominal sentence 15/9; 21/7, 8; 26/6	Predicate → Complement
Noun 1/5, 9, 10; 2/6–9, 12; 3/4, 13 4/4, 5, 9, 11, 12; 5/12, 14, 15 6/9, 11, 13, 17, 18, 19 7/2, 9, 10, 13, 16 8/13, 16–18, 20, 21; 9/13, 14, 16 10/8, 9; 11/19, 20; 12/14, 15, 16 13/16; 15/9; 18/11; 19/4–12, 14, 15 21/4, 6, 10; 22/8, 9 24/6–10, 15, 16–20; 25/3; 26/5, 12 abstract 13/11 collective 9/5–8 compound 13/16 diminutive 13/17 diptote 24/17 proper 3/4; 18/6 → Number ; Verb , verbal noun	Preposition 2/7, 8, 12; 3/16; 6/8, 18 7/2; 8/13, 15, 22; 9/13, 16; 10/8, 13
Number (singular/dual/plural) 1/4, 5, 10; 2/2, 5, 6, 9; 3/17; 4/4	

- 11/12, 17, 19, 20, 26; 12/9
 19/5, 15, 16; 21/3
 → **Object**, prepositional
- Pronoun** 1/5, 6, 9, 10; 2/6, 8, 9, 12; 3/6
 4/4, 7; 6/18, 20, 21; 7/2, 9, 10, 16
 8/13, 14; 9/13; 11/17, 18; 13/13
 14/9; 15/9; 20/3; 21/6, 8, 10; 26/13
 demonstrative 4/4; 6/19; 22/3
 emphatic 8/16
 indefinite 9/16, 17
 interrogative 5/15; 21/6, 13
 personal 1/5, 6; 2/8; 4/7; 6/10; 20/3
 26/13
 reciprocal 8/17
 reflexive 8/16; 13/14
 relative 8/13; 12/9; 23/2; 26/12
 → **Interrogative; Object**
 Rule, Object pronoun
 Subject; Suffix, pronoun
- Pronunciation** 1/14; 2/5, 8, 10; 3/18
 5/17; 8/24; 10/15; 11/6; 15/6–8
 16/24; 17/10, 11; 18/2, 6
 19/4, 6–9, 12, 15; 20/4, 5; 21/3–5
 22/4, 8; 23/2, 4, 6, 7, 10–13
 24/6, 10, 13, 15, 16, 18, 19; 25/3, 5
 26/3, 5, 7
- Questions** 1/8; 2/9, 11; 5/15, 16; 8/15
 21/13
 → **Indirect speech**, questions
- Regional variations**
 Egypt 5/17; 6/19; 7/17; 11/18; 12/17
 Gulf 8/24
 Iraq 8/24
 Levant 5/17; 6/19; 7/17; 11/18
 12/17
 North-west Africa 5/17; 8/24
 12/17
 Peninsula 5/17; 6/19
 Sudan 6/19; 12/17
- Rule**
 Complement 21/4
 Construct 3/4
 Doubled verb 13/4, 6; 14/5; 20/7
 Dual noun 4/12; 6/11; 19/10
 Demonstrative 4/5
 Final-weak verb 8/10; 9/10; 11/4, 6
 12/4; 13/4; 23/5, 9; 25/7; 26/3
 Hollow verb 6/4; 11/6; 13/4, 6; 14/5
 26/3, 7
 Inanimate plural 1/5; 2/6; 3/14; 4/4
 6/11; 19/10
 Indirect speech 4/7; 5/16; 7/15
 11/14; 21/8, 13
 Long vowel 2/10; 3/11; 19/9
 Nominal sentence 21/8
 Object pronoun 4/6; 5/11; 8/11
 Qualifying word 1/11; 4/14
 Relative 8/13
 Short pronunciation 19/4, 7, 12
 Verbal sentence 21/10; 22/7
- shadda** 18/14–16; 23/2
- Stress** 1/10; 2/2, 5, 8, 12; 3/13, 18
 4/6, 12; 6/7, 14; 7/7; 12/17
 13/4, 6, 9, 10; 15/5; 19/6, 9; 23/9, 13
 26/3
- Subject** 1/8; 3/12, 14; 4/7; 6/18, 19
 7/8; 8/13; 9/16; 10/4, 14; 11/24
 12/13; 15/9; 19/5; 20/3; 21/8, 10
 22/5; 25/3; 26/13
- Suffix** 2/8; 6/1; 12/13, 17; 19/4, 5
 possessive 2/8; 3/4; 4/6, 12; 6/14
 7/2; 8/16–18; 11/9, 18; 12/16
 13/12, 14; 16/24
 19/6, 7, 9, 13, 14, 16; 20/9
 21/4; 24/18, 26/13
 pronoun 2/12; 4/6–10; 5/10, 11
 6/5, 8; 7/4, 10; 8/11, 13, 15
 10/8; 11/14, 17; 12/17; 14/9
 15/7, 9; 19/15, 16; 20/4, 5, 8
 21/3, 8, 9; 22/4; 23/8, 9, 13, 15
 26/13
- tā' marbūṭa** 16/24; 18/7, 11, 16
 19/6, 12; 24/9
- tanwīn** 18/11, 16; 19/7; 21/4; 22/8
 24/8, 17
- Time** 3/15; 7/12, 13; 24/12
 → **Clause**, time
- Toothed letters** 16/8–10, 20
 17/2, 3, 8, 9
- Verb** 1/6, 11; 2/6; 3/5–12, 14; 4/6, 7, 13
 6/18; 7/2, 8, 9; 8/13, 15; 9/9, 16
 10/4, 10, 13, 14

11/12, 13, 17, 18, 25; 12/10, 13, 17	25/2, 7
15/6, 7, 9; 19/4, 5; 20/4–11	future meaning 5/8; 7/4, 7, 8
21/3–5, 8, 10, 12; 22/4, 6; 26/9, 13	9/16; 11/18; 26/6
auxiliary 8/12; 9/12; 10/14; 11/18	→ Verb , tense, future
15/13; 20/11; 22/5, 7; 25/2	<i>hamza</i> , hamzated 3/7; 5/5, 9
causative 9/10; 14/5; 15/14	10/5; 20/4, 5, 9; 22/4; 23/3
dependent 7/9; 8/12; 12/4; 22/5	25/6–8; 26/3
doubled 8/4–6, 11; 9/10; 10/5, 12	hollow 6/4; 7/4, 5; 8/5, 6
11/4, 6, 10; 13/4, 6, 10	9/10, 11; 10/5, 12
14/4, 5, 8; 15/5; 20/4, 5, 7, 9	11/4, 6, 9, 10; 12/4
22/4; 26/3	13/4, 6, 10; 14/4, 5, 8
doubly weak 25/5–9; 26/3, 7	15/5, 13; 20/4, 9, 11; 21/5
final-weak 8/7–11; 9/10; 10/5, 8, 12	22/4; 26/3, 7
11/4, 6, 9, 10; 12/4, 5, 7, 8	imperative 5/9–11; 7/5
13/4, 6, 10; 14/5, 8; 15/5; 18/2	8/6, 10, 11; 9/11; 11/5, 7
20/5, 7; 23/3–15; 24/20; 26/3	12/6, 12; 13/8; 14/4–6
Form (I–X, IQ, IIQ) 9/9; 10/10	20/10; 21/3; 26/4, 8, 13
11/11, 12; 12/10; 15/7, 14	impersonal 15/5, 6; 22/5
20/4, 8; 22/4; 23/9, 11; 25/9	initial- <i>w</i> 3/8; 5/6, 9; 9/10
I: 9/9–11; 10/5, 6, 9–11	10/5, 12; 11/4, 6, 8–10
11/4, 6, 12; 13/4, 6	12/4; 13/4, 6, 10; 14/5, 8
15/5, 6, 13, 14; 20/4, 5–11	15/5; 20/4–6; 22/4; 26/3, 7
21/4, 5, 12; 22/4, 5	participial verb 11/24; 13/14
23/5, 7, 8, 10, 11, 14	participle 10/4–9; 11/8
25/2, 5–9; 26/7, 10, 11	12/7, 12; 13/9; 14/4, 5, 7
IQ: 12/12; 20/4	18/10, 16; 20/9; 22/8
II: 9/10, 11; 10/6, 12; 11/4, 5	23/10, 11; 24/20; 25/8; 26/9
12/4, 6, 12; 13/8; 15/5, 14	active 10/14; 11/24; 12/13
18/16; 22/5; 25/7, 9; 26/3, 7	19/7; 23/12
IIQ: 12/12; 20/5, 8	passive 25/9; 26/8
III: 11/4, 5, 8, 9; 12/5; 15/5, 14	passive 12/4; 13/9, 15
22/5; 25/7–9; 26/7	15/5, 6, 14; 18/10, 16
IV: 11/6–8, 10; 13/2; 14/5–8	25/9; 26/7–11
15/5, 14; 18/16; 20/4, 5, 10	person, personal ending
22/5; 25/2, 7	3/6, 11; 5/4, 6, 9; 6/4
V: 12/4–8, 12; 15/5, 14; 18/16	7/4, 5, 8; 8/4, 7, 8, 10; 9/10
20/5, 8, 10; 23/7, 12; 24/2	11/6, 13, 24; 13/4; 15/5
25/6, 7, 9; 26/3	21/3, 10; 22/4, 5
VI: 12/5–8; 15/5, 14; 20/5, 8	23/4, 5, 7, 13; 24/2
23/9, 12	25/5, 6; 26/3, 7, 9, 13
VII: 13/4–6, 8–10; 14/6–8;	prefix 5/4, 6; 7/4, 5; 8/8
15/14; 20/10; 26/11	9/10; 10/6; 11/6–8, 18
VIII: 13/6–10; 14/4, 6–8	12/4, 7, 12; 13/6, 9; 15/7, 13
15/5, 14; 20/10	20/4, 5, 8; 26/7
IX: 14/4; 15/14; 20/10	present meaning 1/6; 3/15
X: 14/5–8; 15/5, 14; 20/10; 22/5	4/13; 6/6, 19; 7/8; 8/12

- 11/14, 24; 21/5; 26/6
 → **Verb**, tense, present
 principal parts 5/4; 6/4; 8/4, 7
 10/6; 11/4, 8, 12; 12/7, 8, 12
 13/4, 6, 9; 14/5, 7; 15/14
 20/4; 23/7, 9
 quadrilateral 12/12; 20/4, 5
 22/4
 reciprocal 12/5; 15/14
 reflexive 12/4; 15/14
 sound 3/6–8; 5/4, 6, 9; 6/4, 5
 7/4; 8/8, 10; 9/10; 10/5, 12
 11/4, 6, 9, 10; 13/4, 6, 10
 14/4, 5, 8; 15/14; 20/4–6
 22/4; 23/4; 26/3, 7
 tense 4/7; 7/8; 8/10, 11
 11/14, 24; 12/4, 12; 13/14
 15/5, 7; 20/5; 22/7; 23/3, 4
 25/7
 continuous past 6/16; 11/6
 21/10; 22/5; 26/6
 future 10/14; 15/12; 21/11
 → **Verb**, future
 meaning
 jussive 26/2–4, 6, 13, 14
 past 3/5–10, 15; 5/4, 7
 6/4–8, 16; 8/4, 7–9
 9/10, 12, 16
 11/4, 6, 13, 14, 18
 12/4, 5, 12; 13/4, 6
 14/4, 5; 15/5, 6, 10, 11, 13
 20/5, 7; 21/3, 5; 22/5, 10
 23/5, 7; 25/4–6
 26/2, 4, 6, 7, 10, 13, 14
 pluperfect 3/10; 11/13
 21/10; 26/6
 present 5/4–11; 6/16, 19
 7/2, 4, 5, 8, 15
 8/5, 8, 9, 12; 9/10
 11/4, 6, 18
 12/4, 5, 12, 13; 13/4, 6
 14/4, 5; 15/5–7, 10, 12, 13
 20/5, 6, 10; 21/5, 11
 22/4, 10; 23/5, 7, 9, 13
 25/2, 5, 6
 26/3, 6, 7, 10, 13, 14
- **Verb**, present
 meaning
 subjunctive 22/4, 5; 23/13
 25/9; 26/3, 13, 14
 to ask 3/16
 to be 1/6; 2/6; 4/13; 6/6; 21/5
 to have 2/12
 trilateral 3/5; 12/12
 verbal noun 10/10–13; 11/4, 9–12
 12/8, 10, 12, 15; 13/2, 10
 14/4, 5, 8, 10; 15/6; 20/9
 22/6, 8; 23/12; 25/2, 9; 26/8, 11
Verbal sentence 15/9; 21/7, 10
 22/4, 5, 7; 26/6
Vocative 1/12; 24/15
Vowel 2/8; 3/6; 4/6, 8; 5/4, 6; 6/4
 7/2, 4; 8/5, 8, 24; 9/10; 11/6, 18
 12/4; 15/5, 7; 16/9, 19; 18/11, 13
 20/4, 5; 24/18; 26/7
 deepened *a* 2/5; 5/17; 8/24
 diphthong 15/8; 16/10, 21
 18/10, 13; 19/9
 final 2/10; 7/10; 16/6; 18/2; 20/8
 21/5
 long 2/10; 3/11; 4/6; 7/4; 11/4; 12/5
 16/4, 6, 8, 10, 21; 17/9; 18/2, 10
 short 2/10; 6/4; 7/17; 15/7
 16/1, 3, 6, 8, 9
 18/2, 3, 9–11, 15; 19/16; 20/8
 26/3
 transition 3/18; 7/4; 11/18; 18/6
 weak 1/14; 2/5; 13/4, 6; 14/5; 16/3
 18/13; 20/10; 21/14
w, wāw 3/8; 6/4; 7/4; 8/7, 8; 11/6; 13/6
 16/21; 17/4; 18/6, 7, 10; 20/6, 12
 21/3; 23/3, 5, 7, 8, 10, 13, 14
 25/5, 7; 26/3, 7
 → **Verbs**, initial-*w*
Word-order 1/11; 2/7; 3/12
 4/4, 5, 11, 14; 5/12, 15; 6/19; 7/16
 8/20, 21; 15/9; 21/8, 10; 22/8, 9; 26/6
y, yā' 6/4; 7/4; 8/7, 8; 11/6, 18
 13/6; 16/10, 19, 24; 17/4
 18/2, 3, 6, 7, 10; 19/7, 14, 16
 20/6, 12; 23/3, 5, 7–10, 13–15
 25/5, 7; 26/3

